

Tourism and Industrial Interpreting: A Practical Guide for Chinese-Speaking Professionals in India

旅游与工业口译：面向在印中文专业人士的实用指南

Dr Umesh Kumar Gupta
Senior Assistant Professor of Chinese
Amity University Rajasthan



BLUEROSE PUBLISHERS

India | U.K.

Copyright © Dr Umesh Kumar Gupta 2025

All rights reserved by author. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the author. Although every precaution has been taken to verify the accuracy of the information contained herein, the publisher assumes no responsibility for any errors or omissions. No liability is assumed for damages that may result from the use of information contained within.

BlueRose Publishers takes no responsibility for any damages, losses, or liabilities that may arise from the use or misuse of the information, products, or services provided in this publication.



BlueRoseONE
Stories Matter

For permissions requests or inquiries regarding this publication,
please contact:

BLUEROSE PUBLISHERS

www.BlueRoseONE.com

info@bluerosepublishers.com

+91 8882 898 898

+4407342408967

ISBN: 978-93-7139-401-7

First Edition: July 2025

Preface

The growing collaboration between India and China in the tourism and industrial sectors has created exciting opportunities for professionals to act as cultural and linguistic bridges between these two great nations. As Chinese tourists flock to India's historical landmarks and industrial ties between the two economies deepen, the demand for skilled Chinese guides and industrial interpreters has reached new heights. This book, 'Tourism and Industrial Interpreting: A Practical Guide for Chinese-Speaking Professionals in India', is born from the vision of equipping professionals with the necessary knowledge and skills to meet these demands. It is not just a guidebook—it is a comprehensive resource designed to enhance understanding, communication, and professionalism in contexts ranging from exploring tours to industrial negotiations.

This handbook is inspired by the real challenges faced by Chinese professionals working in India, as no specific course is available within the country. Navigating the intricacies of India's rich cultural heritage, industrial diversity, and linguistic landscape requires a unique skill set. The book seeks to address these challenges by offering theoretical knowledge, practical guidance, mock drills, detailed insights, and accessible language tools & techniques to support professionals in their roles.

The content has been carefully curated from different sources after in-depth research to cater to two primary audiences: Tourist Guides who are responsible for delivering an engaging and informative experience to Chinese travellers and the Industrial Interpreters who play a critical role in facilitating effective communication between Chinese Engineers and Indian counterparts in business and industrial settings.

The first section of the book introduces readers to India's diverse cultural and geographical highlights, providing the foundational knowledge in both Chinese and English needed to enrich guided tours and interactions. The second section focuses on India's key industries and equips interpreters with the vocabulary and insights necessary for effective communication in technical and business contexts. Additionally, the book features theoretical aspects, practical conversational scenarios, common phrases, and a specialized vocabulary list. These resources are tailored to real-world situations, making the book an essential reference for daily use. The goal is to empower Chinese guides and interpreters to confidently navigate the complexities of cross-cultural exchanges, ensuring that tourists and professionals alike have fulfilling and seamless experiences. It is hoped that this book will serve as a bridge, fostering deeper connections and mutual understanding between India and China.

I extend my sincere gratitude to the professionals who provided valuable suggestions during the development of this handbook. Your insights have enriched its content, ensuring it meets the needs of those it seeks to support. The paucity of available literature in this field, material taken from diverse sources and the use of AI tools to create content may have affected the accuracy and quality of the material, however, the pioneering efforts to design this book will definitely help the readers in attaining excellence in the field. The suggestions and feedback from the readers, professionals and stakeholders are invited to further improve this handbook.

As you embark on this journey of exploration, learning, and connection, may this handbook be your trusted companion.

Dr Umesh Kumar Gupta

Introduction

In an era of increasing global interactions, the exchange of culture, industrial cooperation, and tourism between India and China has reached unprecedented heights. India, with its rich cultural heritage, breathtaking landscapes, and booming industrial sectors, has become a popular destination for Chinese tourists and business professionals alike. For Chinese guides and industrial interpreters, navigating these dynamic interactions demands not only a thorough understanding of India's tourist attractions and industries but also fluency in relevant language skills and cultural nuances.

This handbook is designed to be a practical resource for Chinese-speaking professionals working as tourist guides or industrial interpreters in India. It offers a comprehensive guide to Indian culture, landmarks, industrial practices, and essential conversational tools that enable seamless communication in various contexts.

Key Features of this Handbook at a glance include:

The first section provides a detailed overview of India's cultural, historical, and geographical diversity. It introduces major cities, iconic landmarks, and the unique aspects of Indian traditions, helping guides provide rich narratives to tourists.

Tourist Highlights:

This book explores India's top tourist destinations, from the majestic Taj Mahal and Jaipur's palaces to Delhi's attractions and the tourist places in Bihar.

It also includes theoretical aspects and practical tips for guiding Chinese tourists, addressing cultural expectations, and ensuring memorable experiences.

Industrial Insights:

For interpreters engaged in industrial interpretation, this section delves into India's key industries, such as information technology, pharmaceuticals, textiles, and renewable energy. It highlights common industrial processes, terminology, and practices, helping interpreters bridge communication gaps.

Practical Conversations:

A curated collection of mock conversations tailored to tourism and industrial contexts. This section covers scenarios such as guiding a group at a monument, facilitating factory tours, interpreting during Machine installation, repairing, business negotiations, and resolving unforeseen challenges.

Vocabulary and Expressions:

A comprehensive list of commonly used words and phrases in Mandarin (Characters & Pinyin) and English, is provided with a focus on tourism and industrial jargon. This serves as a quick reference for professionals who need precise translations on the go.

This handbook is crafted for:

Chinese tourist guides working in India who aim to enhance their knowledge of Indian culture and communicate effectively with Chinese communities.

Industrial interpreters facilitating collaboration between Chinese and Indian enterprises in sectors like manufacturing, trade, and technology.

Language enthusiasts and students looking to specialize in Mandarin-English translation in the tourism and industrial sectors.

By blending cultural insights with linguistic tools, this handbook empowers its readers to excel in their roles, fostering stronger connections between India and China. Whether guiding travellers or facilitating business exchanges, readers will find this resource invaluable for creating meaningful and impactful interactions.

The sources used in compiling the handbook range from Government websites, policy documents, books, brochures, AI and translation tools and the practical experiences of professionals working in the field. Readers are advised to

further explore the fundamental information given in the book by employing continuous research, updating and practical experiences.

Embark on this journey to bridge languages and cultures, and let this handbook be your trusted companion in navigating the vibrant relationship between India and China.

Dr Umesh Kumar Gupta

Contents

Part I: Overview of India

第一部：印度概况

Ser No	Topic	Topic	Page No
1.	印度概况	Overview of India	1
2	简 况	Brief introduction	3
3	自然地理	Physical geography	6
4	人口	Population	8
5	简史	Brief History	10
6	主要城市	Main cities	12
7	政治	Politics	14
8	政府	Government	19
9	政党	Political party	21
10	经济	Economy	24
11	资源	Resource	28
12	旅游业	Tourism	31
13	财政金融	Finance	38
14	外交	Diplomacy	41
15	印中关系	India-China Relations	46
16	同美国的关系	Relations with the United States	61
17	同俄罗斯的关系	Relations with Russia	63
18	同巴基斯坦的关系	Relations with Pakistan	67
19	军事	Military	69
20	文化	Culture	79
21	印度的风俗	Indian customs	83
22	印度的节日	Festival in India	84
23	灯节	Diwali, Festival of Lights	86
24	印度杜尔加女神节	Dussehra, Durga Festival in India	87
25	印度共和国日	Republic Day of India	90
26	印度象头神节	Ganesh Chaturthi in India	91
27	印度崛起	Rise of India	94

28	教育	Education	96
29	新闻出版	News Publishing	97
30	平凡体育	Ordinary sports	99
31	计划生育	Family planning	103
32	风土人情	Local customs and practices	106
33	传统服饰	Traditional clothing	112
34	饮食习惯	Eating habits	116
35	印度瑜伽	Indian Yoga	119

第二部：印度著名的地方
Part II : Famous Tourist Destinations in India

1	德里 Delhi	123
2.	红堡 Red Fort	124
3.	贾马清真寺 Jama Masjid	125
4.	康诺特广场 Connaught Place	127
5.	拉杰巴特 Raj Path	127
6	印度门 India Gate	128
7	印度总统府 Rashtrapati Bhavan	129
8	库杜布塔 Kutub Minar	130
9	莲花庙 Bahai Temple	131
10.	甘地陵 Gandhi Samadhi Sthal	132
11.	国会大厦 Parliament House	133
12.	古城堡 Purana Quila	133
13.	比尔拉曼迪尔 Birla Mandir	134
14.	阿格拉 AGRA: 泰姬陵 Taj Mahal	135
15.	阿格拉堡 Agra Fort	136
16.	法地布尔·西格里 Fatehpur Sikri	137
17.	斋浦尔 Jaipur	139
18.	风之宫殿 Hawa Mahal	141
19.	琥珀堡 Amber Fort	142
20.	城市皇宫 City Palace	142

21.	老虎堡 Jaguar Fort	143
22.	古天文台 Jantar Mantar	144
23.	拉克施密—拿拉央那神庙 Laksmi Narayana Temple	145
24.	印度其他重要旅游景点 Other Important Tourist Places in India	145
25.	瓦拉纳西 Banaras	145
26.	菩提迦耶 Bodhgaya	146
27.	王舍城 Rajgir	147
28.	那兰陀 Nalanda	148
29.	灵鹫山 Gridhkutta Hill	148
30.	拘尸那加 Kushinagar	149
31.	到达 On Arrival	149
32.	游览有名的地方 Visit to Tourist Places	151

Part III Tourist Guide: Theory & Practice

第三部：导游：理论与实践

Ser No.	Topic in Chinese	English	Page No
1	印度导游的工作简介与职责	The Tour Guide Job Profile and Responsibilities in India	153
2	中国游客对印度优秀导游有何期望？	What do Chinese tourists expect from an excellent tour guide from India?	154
3	出发前的准备工作	Preparations required before embarking on any tour	155
4	如何以最佳方式处理紧急情况	How can emergencies be handled in the best way?	157
5	口译使用的新技术。旅游导游工具。	The new technologies used in interpreting and the Tools of the Tourist Guiding.	160
6	成为印度中文导游的步骤	Steps to Becoming a Chinese Tour Guide in India	165
7	导游理论和原则	Theories and Principles for Tourist Guides	167
8	印度中文导游实用技巧	Practical Tips for Chinese Tour Guides in India	170
9	中文导游的基本注意事项	General dos and don'ts for Chinese tour guides	173
10	应对中国游客提问的技巧	Handling questions from Chinese tourists	175
11	导游行为准则	Code of Conduct for Tourist Guide	177

12	为导游提供全面、有用、实用且能提高技能的信息	All-encompassing, useful, practical and skill-enhancing information for Tour Guides	185
13	以导游的身份介绍自己	Presenting yourself as a guide	189
14	游客——客户	Tourist – the customer	191
15	为中国人提供导游服务的机制	Mechanics of tour guiding for Chinese people	194
16	处理难缠游客的方法	Methods of Handling Difficult Tourists	197
17	如何提高人际交往能力	How to enhance interpersonal skills?	200
18	中文导游如何提高讲故事的能力?	How can a Chinese guide enhance storytelling?	203
19	高效管理旅游团体与行程	Effectively Managing Tourist Groups and Itineraries	206
20	高效沟通与客户服务技巧	Effective Communication and Customer Service Skills	208
21	印度地理 与 环境意识	Indian Geography and Environmental Awareness	210
22	印度的艺术、建筑与遗产	Indian Art, Architecture, and Heritage	212
23	游览德里、阿格拉、斋浦尔的中国游客与导游的详细模拟对话。	Detailed mock conversations between the Chinese tourists and the guide visiting Delhi, Agra, and Jaipur.	214
24	抵达德里并参观德里	Arrival in Delhi & Visit to Delhi	221
25	前往阿格拉并参观泰姬陵	Travel to Agra and visit the Taj Mahal	227
26	参观游览斋浦尔——粉红之城	Visit to Jaipur - The Pink City	229
27	游览比哈尔邦：菩提伽耶（佛陀成道之地）	Visit to Bihar: At Bodhgaya (Place of Buddha's Enlightenment)	235
28	印度各邦及其主要城市列表	List of Indian states, their major cities	239
29	印度中文导游与中国游客的详细对话	Detailed Conversation between a Chinese Guide and Chinese Tourists Visiting India	241
30	购物时的详细对话	Detailed Conversation at Shopping	242
31	关于酒店舒适度的详细对话	Detailed Conversation About Comfort at the Hotel	244
32	酒店物品和服务列表	List of Items and Services in a Hotel	245
33	餐厅就餐时的对话	Conversation During Dining at a Restaurant	247
34	印度菜肴列表	List of Indian Dishes in Chinese	248
35	详谈中印文化异同	Detailed Conversation on Cultural Similarities and Differences Between China and India	249

Part IV: Industrial Interpretation: Theory & Practice

第四部分：工业口译员：理论与实践

1	Role and Responsibilities of Chinese Industrial Interpreters in India 印度中文工业口译员的角色和职责	274
2	Consecutive Interpretation: Theory & Practice 交替传译：理论与实践	276
3	Interpreting Tools and Techniques 口译工具和技术	277
4	Professional Ethics of Interpreters 口译员的职业道德	278
5	Knowledge and Skill Sets Required by Industrial Interpreters in India 印度工业口译员所需的知识和技能	279
6	Training for industrial interpreters 工业口译员培训	282
7	Importance of Hierarchy in Chinese Corporate Culture vs. Indian Workplace Dynamics 中国企业文化中等级制度的重要性及印度职场动态	285
8	Building Rapport: Tips for Trust and Cooperation 建立融洽关系：信任与合作的秘诀	288
9	The importance of note-taking for interpreters: 口译员记笔记的重要性	292
10	Mock Conversation drill during Industrial Interpretation 工业口译模拟对话练习	293
11	Mock Conversation: Chinese Engineer and Indian Interpreter 模拟对话：中国工程师和印度口译员	296
12	Training Technicians and Providing Instructions 培训技术人员并提供说明	300
13	Installation and Maintenance Procedures for machines 机器的安装和维护程序	305
14	Technical vocabulary 技术词汇	308
15	Mechanical Terms 机械术语	313
16	Industrial safety terminology 工业安全术语	315
17	Measurement and scientific units 测量和科学单位	317
18	List of tools and equipment used by industrial engineers, 工业工程师使用的工具和设备清单，	321
19	Metals and chemical compounds 金属和化合物	323
20	A list of vocabulary on major industries in India: 印度主要行业词汇表：	329
21	Technical vocab 技术词汇	336
22	Concluding Remarks	355
23	References	356

PART –I
KNOWLEDGE ABOUT INDIA (IN CHINESE)

第一课
印度概况 Yìndù gàikuàng Overview of India

1	中文名称:	Zhōngwén míngchēng:	Chinese name:	印度共和国	Yìndù gònghéguó	Republic of India
2	英文名称:	yīngwén míngchēng:	English name:	Republic of India	Republic of India	Republic of India
3	所属洲:	suǒshǔ zhōu:	Continent:	亚洲	Yàzhōu	Asia
4	首都:	shoudu	Capital:	新德里	Xīndélǐ	New Delhi
5	主要城市:	zhǔyào chéngshì	Major cities:	班加罗尔, 孟买, 加尔各答	Bānjiālǔo'ěr, mèngmǎi, jiǎ'ěrgèdá	Bengaluru, Mumbai, Kolkata
6	国庆日:	guóqìng rì	National Day:	1947 年 8 月 15 日	1947 Nián 8 yuè 15 rì	August 15, 1947
7	国歌:	guógē	National Anthem:	人民的意志	“Rénmín de yìzhì”	Jan Gan Man
8	国家代码:	guójiā dàimǎ	Country code:	IND	IND	IND
9	官方语言:	guānfāng yǔyán	Official Languages:	印地语, 英语	Yìn dì yǔ, yīngyǔ	Hindi, English
10	货币:	huòbì	Currency:	卢比	Lúbǐ	Rupee
11	时区:	shìqū	Time zone:	GMT+5.30	GMT+5.30	GMT+5.30
12	政治体制:	Zhèngzhì tǐzhì	Political system:	议会制共和制	Yìhuìzhì gònghézhì	Parliamentary republic
13	国家领袖:	guójiā lǐngxiù	National Leaders:	德劳帕迪·穆尔穆	Dé láo pà dí·mù ěr mù	Droupadi Murmu
14	人口数量:	rénkǒu shùliàng	Population:	14.5 亿 (2024 年)	14.5 yì (2024 nián)	1.45 billion (2024)
15	人口密度:	rénkǒu mìdù	Population Density:	488 人/平方公里 (2024 年)	488 Rén/píngfāng gōnglǐ (2024 nián)	488 people/km2 (2024)
16	主要民族:	zhǔyào mínzú	Main Ethnic Groups:	印度斯坦族, 泰卢固族, 孟加拉族	Yìndù sītǎn zú, tài lú gù zú, mèngjiālā zú	Hindustani, Telugu, Bengali
17	主要宗教:	zhǔyào zōngjiào	Main religions:	印度教, 伊斯兰教, 锡克教	Yìndùjiào, yīslán jiào, xī kè jiào	Hinduism, Islam, Sikhism
18	国土面积:	guótǔ miànjī	Land area:	328.78 万平方公里	328.78 Wàn píngfāng gōnglǐ	3.2878 million square kilometers
19	GDP 总计:	GDP zǒngjì	Total GDP:	3.89 万亿美元 (2024 年)	3.89 Wàn yì měiyuán (2024 nián)	\$3.89 trillion (2024)
20	人均 GDP:	rénjūn GDP:	GDP per capita:	2698 美元 (2024 年)	2698 meiyuan (2024 nián)	\$2698 (2024)
21	国际电话区号:	guójì diànhuà qūhào	International dialing code:	+91	+91	+91

印度

印度，是印度共和国 (Republic of India) 的简称，位于亚洲南部，是南亚次大陆最大的国家，最悠久的文明古国之一，具有绚丽的多样性和丰富的文化遗产和旅游资源。与孟加拉国、缅甸、中华人民共和国、不丹、尼泊尔和巴基斯坦等国家接壤，与斯里兰卡和马尔代夫等国隔海相望。古印度人创造了光辉灿烂的古代文明，印度也是世界三大宗教之一佛教的发源地。

Yìndù, shì yìndù gònghéguó (Republic of India) de jiǎnchēng, wèiyú yàzhōu nánbù, shì nányà cǐdàlù zuìdà de guójiā, zuì yōujiǔ de wénmíng gǔguó zhī yī, jùyǒu xuànlì de duōyàng xìng hé fēngfù de wénhuà yíchǎn hé lǚyóu zīyuán. Yǔ mèngjiālā guó, miǎndiàn, zhōnghuà rénmin gònghéguó, bù dān, nǐbó'ěr hé bājīstǎn děng guójiā jiērǎng, yǔ sīlīlǎnkǎ hé mǎ'ěrdàifū děng guó gé hǎi xiāng wàng. Gǔ yìn duó rén chuàngzàole guānghuī cǎnlàn de gǔdài wénmíng, yìndù yěshì shìjiè sān dà zōngjiào zhī yī fōjiào de fā yuán dì.

India

India, a short form of the Republic of India, is located in southern Asia. It is the largest country in the South Asian subcontinent and one of the oldest ancient civilizations. It has gorgeous diversity, rich cultural heritage, and tourism resources. It borders countries such as Bangladesh, Myanmar, the People's Republic of China, Bhutan, Nepal, and Pakistan, and faces countries such as Sri Lanka and the Maldives across the sea. The ancient Indians created a splendid ancient civilization, and India is also the birthplace of Buddhism, one of the three major religions in the world.

生词 Shengci New words

1.	简称	Jiǎnchēng	In short
2.	位于	wèiyú	Located at
3.	悠久	yōujiǔ	Long standing
4.	绚丽	xuànlì	Floweriness
5.	多样性	duōyàng xìng	Diversity
6.	遗产	yíchǎn	Heritage
7.	旅游	lǚyóu	Tour
8.	接壤	jiērǎng	Border on
9.	隔海相望	gé hǎi xiāng wàng	Facing each other across the sea
10.	光辉灿烂	guānghuī cǎnlàn	Splendor, effulgence
11.	发源地	fāyuán dì	Cradleland

第二课 Lesson 2

简况 Brief Introduction

国名: 印度共和国

国名释义: 得名于印度河。河名出自梵文“信度”意为“河”。别称: 婆罗多

Guómíng: Yìndù gònghéguó (The Republic of India)

Guómíng shìyì: Dé míng yú yìndù hé. Hé míng chūzì fānwén “xìn dù”, yì wèi “hé”. Biéchēng: Póluó duō

Country name: The Republic of India

Name explanation: It is named after the Indus River. The name of the river comes from the Sanskrit word "Indus", which means "river". Other names: Bharat

国旗: 呈长方形, 长与宽之比为 3:2。自上而下由橙、白、绿三个相等的横长方形组成, 白色 长方形中心绘有 24 根轴条的蓝色法轮。橙色象征勇敢和自我牺牲精神, 也是教士法衣的颜色, 舍身为国的英雄们的颜色; 白色象征纯洁的真理; 绿色表示信心, 代表人类生命所依存的生产力。法轮是印度孔雀王朝阿育王时代佛教圣地石柱柱头的狮首图案之一, 对于印度人而言, 它是神圣之轮、真理之轮、向着进步转动之轮, 永远轮回苍穹之轮。

Guóqí: Chéng chángfāngxíng, zhǎng yǔ kuān zhī bǐ wéi 3:2. Zì shàng ér xià yóu chéng, bái, lǜ sān gè xiāngděng de héng chángfāngxíng zǔchéng, báisè chángfāngxíng zhōngxīn huì yǒu 24 gēn zhóu tiáo de lán sè fǎlún. Chéngsè xiàngzhēng yǒnggǎn hé zìwǒ xīshēng jīngshén, yěshì jiàoshì fāyī de yánsè, shěshēn wèi guó de yīngxióngmèn de yánsè; báisè xiàngzhēng chúnjié de zhēnlǐ; lǜsè biǎoshì xīnxīn, dàibiǎo rénlèi shēngmìng suǒ yīcún de shēngchǎnlì. Fǎlún shì yìndù kǒngquè wángcháo āyù wán shídài fōjiào shèngdì shízhù zhùtóu de shī shǒu tú'àn zhī yī, duìyú yìndù rén ér yán, tā shì shénshèng zhī lún, zhēnlǐ zhī lún, xiàngzhe jìnbù zhuǎndòng zhī lún, yǒngyuǎn lúnhuí cāngqióng zhī lún.

National flag: Rectangular, with a length-to-width ratio of 3:2. From top to bottom, it consists of three equal horizontal rectangles of orange, white and green. In the center of the white rectangle is a blue Dharma wheel with 24 spokes. Orange symbolizes bravery and self-sacrifice, and is also the color of priests' vestments and heroes who sacrificed their lives for their country; white symbolizes pure truth; green represents faith and represents the productivity on which human life depends. The Dharma wheel is one of the lion head patterns on the Buddhist holy stone pillars during the Maurya Dynasty of India. For Indians, it is a sacred wheel, a wheel of truth, a wheel that turns toward progress, and a wheel that revolves forever in the sky.

国徽: 图案来源于孔雀王朝阿育王石柱顶端的石刻。圆形台基上站立着四只金色的狮子, 象征信心、勇气和力量。台基四周有四个守卫四方的守兽: 东方是象、南方是马、西方是牛, 北方是狮。守兽之间雕有法轮。图案下面有句用梵文书写的、出自古代印度圣书的格言“唯有真理得胜”。

国歌《人民的意志》

Guóhūi: Tú'àn láiyuán yú kǒngquè wángcháo āyù wáng shízhù dǐngduān dì shíkè. Yuán xíng tái jī shàng zhànlizhe sì zhī jīnsè de shīzi, xiàngzhēng xīnxīn, yǒngqì hé lìliàng. Tái jī sìzhōu yǒu sì gè shǒuwèi sīfāng de shǒu shòu: Dōngfāng shì xiàng, nánfāng shì mǎ, xīfāng shì niú, běifāng shì shī. Shǒu shòu zhī jiān diào yǒu fǎlún. Tú'àn xiàmiàn yǒu jù yòng fānwén shūxiě de, chūzì gǔdài yìndù shèng shū de géyán “wéi yǒu zhēnlǐ déshèng”.

Guógē “rénmín de yìzhì”

National Emblem: The design is derived from the stone carving on the top of the Ashoka Pillar of the Maurya Dynasty. Four golden lions stand on the circular base, symbolizing confidence, courage and strength. There are four guardian animals around the base to guard the four directions: an elephant in the east, a horse in the south, an ox in the west, and a lion in the north. There is a Dharma wheel carved between the guardian animals. Below the design is a motto written in Sanskrit from an ancient Indian holy book: "Only Truth Wins".

National Anthem "The Will of the People *Jan gan man*"

国花 荷花: **国鸟** 蓝孔雀: **国树** 菩提树

独立日 8月15日 (1947年)

国庆日 (共和国日) 1月26日 (1950年)

国家政要总统德劳帕迪·穆尔穆 Draupadi Murmu, 2022年7月当选总统; 印度副总统兼联邦院议长贾格迪普·丹卡尔 Jagdeep Dhankar, 2022年8月当选; 总理纳伦德拉莫迪 Narendra Modi, 2014年5月任职; 2019年5月连任, 2024年5月再一次连任。印度议会人民院首位女议长奥姆·比拉 Om Birla, 2024年6月出任; 印度国大党主席马利卡琼·哈格 Mallikarjun Kharge。首都新德里 (New Delhi), 位于德里西南, 是德里的新城。人口连同老德里共 3210 万 (2022年)。

Guóhuā héhuā: Guó niǎo lán kǒngquè: Guó shù pútí shù dúlì rì 8 yuè 15 rì (1947 nián)

guóqīng rì (gònghéguó rì) 1 yuè 26 rì (1950 nián)

guójiā zhèngyào zǒngtǒng dé láo pà dí·mù ěr mù, 2022 nián 7 yuè dāngxuǎn zǒngtǒng; yìndù fù zǒngtǒng jiān liánbāng yuàn yìzhǎng jiǎ gé dí pǔ·dān kǎ'ěr Jagdeep Dhankar, 2022 nián 8 yuè dāngxuǎn; zǒnglǐ nà lún dé lā mò dí (Narendra Modi), 2014 nián 5 yuè rènzhí; 2019 nián 5 yuè liánrèn, 2024 nián 5 yuè zài yīcì liánrèn. Yìndù yìhuì rénmin yuàn shǒuwèi nǚ yìzhǎng ào mǔ·bǐ lā, 2024 nián 6 yuè chūrèn; yìndù guó dà dǎng zhǔxí mǎ lì kǎ qióng·hā gé.

Shǒudū xīndélí (New Delhi), wèiyú délí xīnán, shì délí de xīnchéng. Rénkǒu liántóng lǎo délí gòng 3210 wàn (2022

nián).

National flower: Lotus; National bird: Blue peacock; National tree: Bodhi tree Independence Day: August 15 (1947); National Day (Republic Day): January 26 (1950);

National leaders: President Draupadi Murmu, elected in July 2022; Vice President and Speaker of the Rajya Sabha: Jagdeep Dhankar, elected in August 2022; Prime Minister Narendra Modi, assumed office in May 2014; re-elected in May 2019, and elected again in May 2024. Om Birla, the speaker of the Lok Sabha of the Indian Parliament, assumed office in June 2024; Mallikarjun Kharge, president of the Indian National Congress.

The capital: New Delhi, located in the southwest of Delhi, is the new city of Delhi. The population, including Old Delhi, is 32.1 million (2022).

1.	简况	Jiǎnkàng	Brief introduction
2.	释义	shìyì	Explain the meaning
3.	梵文	fànwén	Sanskrit
4.	别称	biéchēng	Another name
5.	婆罗多	póluó duō	Bharat
6.	国旗	guóqí	National flag
7.	呈	chéng	Assume
8.	长方形	chángfāngxíng	Rectangular
9.	橙	chéng	Orange
10.	横	héng	Horizontal
11.	绘有	huì yǒu	Drawn
12.	根	gēn	measure word
13.	轴条	zhóu tiáo	Spokes
14.	法轮	fǎlún	Dharm chakra
15.	象征	xiàngzhēng	Symbolize
16.	自我牺牲	zìwǒ xīshēng	Self-sacrifice
17.	精神	jīngshén	Spirit
18.	教士	jiàoshì	Clergyman
19.	法衣	fǎyī	Gown
20.	舍身	shěshēn	Sacrifice oneself
21.	纯洁	chúnjié	Chastity
22.	真理	zhēnlǐ	Truth
23.	依存	yīcún	Dependence
24.	生产力	shēngchǎn lì	Productive forces
25.	孔雀王朝	kǒngquè wángcháo	Mourya dynasty
26.	阿育王	āyù wáng	Ashoka
27.	时代	shídài	Era
28.	圣地	Shèngdì	Holyland
29.	石柱	shízhù	Stone Pillar
30.	狮首图案	shī shǒu tú'àn	Lion head pattern
31.	对于...而言	duìyú...ér yán	Speaking from the viewpoint of...
32.	神圣	shénshèng	Holiness
33.	转动	zhuǎndòng	wheel
34.	苍穹	cāngqióng	Sky
35.	国徽	guóhuī	National emblem
36.	石刻	shíkè	Stone inscription
37.	圆形台基	yuán xíng tái jī	Round base
38.	狮子	shīzi	Lion
39.	四周	sìzhōu	Around

40.	守兽	shǒu shòu	Defending animals
41.	雕有	diāo yǒu	Carved
42.	书写	shūxiě	write
43.	圣书	shèng shū	Holy book
44.	格言	géyán	Maxim
45.	“唯有真理得胜”	“wéi yǒu zhēnlǐ déshèng”	<i>Satyamev Jayate</i> Only the Truth Wins
46.	人民的意志	rénmín de yìzhì	Jan gan man
47.	荷花	héhuā	lotus
48.	蓝孔雀	lán kǒngquè	Blue peacock
49.	菩提树	pútí shù	Banyan tree
50.	独立日	dúlì rì	Independence Day
51.	国庆日	guóqìng rì	National day
52.	共和国日	gònghéguó rì	Republic day
53.	政要	zhèngyào	Important members of govt.
54.	当选	dāngxuǎn	Elected
55.	联邦院议长	liánbāng yuàn yìzhǎng	Speaker of Rajya Sabha
56.	纳伦德拉 莫迪	nà lún dé lā mò dí	Narendra Modi
57.	任职	rènzhi	Appointed
58.	连任	liánrèn	Reappointed
59.	印度议会	yìndù yìhuì	Indian parliament
60.	人民院	rénmín yuàn	Lok Sabha
61.	首位	shǒuwèi	The first
62.	议长	yìzhǎng	Speaker
63.	出任	chūrèn	Take up the post of
64.	印度国大党	yìndù guó dà dǎng	Indian National Congress Party
65.	索尼娅·甘地	Suǒní yà·gāndì	Sonia Gandhi
66.	首都	shǒudū	Capital
67.	连同	liántóng	In connection with, cum

第三课 自然地理

“印度”梵文的意思是月亮，中文名称是唐代高僧玄奘所著《大唐西域记》中的译法，在这以前称天竺或身毒。印度领土为 32,87,263 平方公里。印度面积居世界第七位。

印度位于亚洲南部，是南亚次大陆最大的国家，与巴基斯坦、中国、尼泊尔、不丹、缅甸和孟加拉国为邻，濒临孟加拉湾和阿拉伯海，大陆、拉克沙群岛和安达曼和尼科巴群岛海岸线总长度为 7,516.6 公里。印度全境分为德干高原和中央高原、平原及喜马拉雅山区等三个自然地理区。属热带季风气候，气温因海拔高度不同而异，喜马拉雅山区年均气温 $12^{\circ}\text{C} \sim 14^{\circ}\text{C}$ ，东部地区 $26^{\circ}\text{C} \sim 29^{\circ}\text{C}$ 。一年分为凉季（10 月至 3 月）、暑季（4 月至 6 月）和雨季（7 月至 9 月）三季。降雨量忽多忽少，分配不均。与中国时差 - 2.5 小时。印度西部门户——孟买

Zírán dìlǐ “yìndù” fānwén de yìsī shì yuèliàng, zhōngwén míngchēng shì táng dài gāosēng xuán zàng suǒzhe dà táng xīyù jì zhōng de yì fǎ, zài zhè yǐqián chēng tiānzhú huò shēndú. Yìndù lǐngtǔ wéi 32,87,263 píngfāng gōnglǐ. Yìndù miànjī jū shìjiè dì qī wèi.

Yìndù wèiyú yàzhōu nánbù, shì nányà cìdàlù zuìdà de guójiā, yǔ bājīsītǎn, zhōngguó, nǐbó'ěr, bù dān, miǎndiàn hé mèngjiālā guó wéi lín, bīnlín mèngjiālāwān hé ālābó hǎi, Dàlù, lākè shā qúndǎo hé āndá mǎn hé ní kē bā qúndǎo hǎi'ànxiàn zǒng chángdù wéi 7,516.6 Gōnglǐ. Yìndù quán jìng fēn wéi dé gàn gāoyuán hé zhōngyāng gāoyuán, píngyuán jí xīmǎlāyǎ shānqū děng sān gè zírán dìlǐ qū. Shǔ rèdài jìfēngqìhòu, qīwēn yīn hǎibá gāodù bùtóng ér yì, xīmǎlāyǎ shānqū nián jūn qīwēn $12^{\circ}\text{C} \sim 14^{\circ}\text{C}$, dōngbù dìqū $26^{\circ}\text{C} \sim 29^{\circ}\text{C}$. Yī nián fēn wéi liáng jì (10 yuè zhì 3 yuè), shǔ jì (4 yuè zhì 6 yuè) hé yǔjì (7 yuè zhì 9 yuè) sānjì. Jiàngyǔ liàng hū duō hū shǎo, fēnpèi bù jūn. Yǔ zhōngguó shíchá-2.5 Xiǎoshí. Yìndù xībù ménhù —mèngmǎi

Physical geography

"India" in Sanskrit means the moon, and the Chinese name 'Yindu' is the translation of 'The Records of the Western Regions' written by Xuanzang, an eminent monk in the Tang Dynasty. Before this, it was called Tianzhu or Shendu *Shidhu*. The Indian territory is 32,87,263 square kilometers. India is the seventh-largest country in the world by area.

Located in southern Asia, India is the largest country in the South Asian subcontinent. It is adjacent to Pakistan, China, Nepal, Bhutan, Myanmar and Bangladesh, and borders the Bay of Bengal and the Arabian Sea. The total length of the coastline of the mainland, Lakshadweep Islands and Andaman & Nicobar Islands is 7,516.6 km. The whole of India is divided into three natural geographical regions, the Deccan Plateau and the Central Plateau, the Plains and the Mountainous regions of the Himalayas. It belongs to the tropical monsoon climate, and the temperature varies according to the altitude. The average annual temperature in the Himalayas is $12^{\circ}\text{C} \sim 14^{\circ}\text{C}$, and the eastern region is $26^{\circ}\text{C} \sim 29^{\circ}\text{C}$. A year is divided into three seasons: winter season (October to March), summer season (April to June) and rainy season (July to September). Rainfall fluctuates from time to time and is unevenly distributed. Time difference with China - 2.5 hours. Gateway to Western India – Mumbai

1.	自然地理	Zírán dìlǐ	Physical geography
2.	高僧	gāosēng	Dignitary, High monk
3.	玄奘	xuán zàng	Fahyan
4.	著	zhe	Write
5.	大唐西域记	dà táng xīyù jì	Name of book
6.	译法	yì fǎ	Translated version
7.	天竺	tiānzhú	Old name of India in China
8.	身毒	juān dú	Sindhu
9.	居..位	jū.. Wèi	Hold ...position
10.	濒临	bīnlín	Border on, close to
11.	孟加拉湾	mèngjiālāwān	Bay of Bengal
12.	阿拉伯海	ālābó hǎi	Arabian sea
13.	海岸线	hǎi'ànxiàn	Coastal line
14.	全境	quán jìng	Entire territory
15.	德干高原	dé gàn gāoyuán	Deccan plateau
16.	中央	zhōngyāng	Central
17.	平原	píngyuán	Plains

18.	喜马拉雅山	xǐmǎlāyǎ shān	Himalaya mountains
19.	热带季风气候	rèdài jìfēngqìhòu	Tropical monsoon climate
20.	气温	qìwēn	Atmospheric temperature
21.	海拔高度	hǎibá gāodù	Height from sea level
22.	不同而异	bùtóng ér yì	Different
23.	年均	nián jūn	Average annual
24.	凉季	liáng jì	Cold season, winters
25.	暑季	shǔ jì	Summer
26.	雨季	yǔjì	Rainy season
27.	降雨量	jiàngyǔ liàng	Rainfall
28.	忽多忽少	hū duō hū shǎo	Unequal
29.	分配不均	fēnpèi bù jūn	Distribution uneven
30.	门户	ménhù	Gate
31.	孟买	mèngmǎi	Bombay, Mumbai

第四课
印度人口

印度人口的结构主要以语言、宗教以及种姓来划分。2024 总人口数 14.50 亿人。印度人口超过中国人口，成为世界人口最多的国家。印地语是印度共和国的唯一全国官方语言，但不同的邦和地区还有其他 14 种不同的半官方语言，包括：德拉维达诸语（Dravidian）马拉雅拉姆语（Malayalam）泰米尔语（Tamil）泰卢固语（Telugu）雅利安语（Indo-Aryan）马拉地语（Marathi）乌尔都语（Urdu）古吉拉特语（Gujarati）奥里亚语（Oriya）旁遮普语（Punjabi）阿萨姆语（Assamese）克什米尔语（Kashmiri）信德语（Sindhi）经典梵文。其他登记的还有超过 1,600 种语言，但英语仍是最被广泛使用于法律和政府机关的官方语言。虽然 83% 的人口是印度教教徒，印度仍是全球第三大的伊斯兰国家，其他的宗教团体包括了基督教、锡克教、耆那教、佛教和祆教。

印度的种姓制度（caste system）反映了印度的宗教继承观念。传统上，印度一共由 4 个主要的阶层（varnas）。虽然印度经历了经济的现代化以及有关禁止歧视以及结束阶级结构的法律的制订，虽然明显的排斥已经减少，种姓制度在印度依然十分重要，往往和一个人的社会前途发展挂钩。

Yìn duó rén kǒu:

Yìn du rén kǒu de jiégòu zhǔyào yǐ yǔyán, zōngjiào yǐjī zhōngxìng lái huàfēn. 2024 Nian Zǒng rén kǒu shù 14.50 Yì rén. Yìn du rén kǒu chāoguò zhōngguó rén kǒu, chéngwéi shìjiè rén kǒu zuìduō de guójiā. Yìn dì yǔ shì yìndù gònghéguó de wéiyī quánguó guānfāng yǔyán, dàn bùtóng de bānghé dìqū hái yǒu qítā 14 zhǒng bùtóng de bàn guānfāng yǔyán, bāokuò: Dé lā wéi dá zhū yǔ (Dravidian) mǎ lā yǎ lā mǔ yǔ (Malayalam) tài mǐ'ěr yǔ (Tamil) tài lú gù yǔ (Telugu) yǎ lǐ'ān yǔ (Indo-Aryan) mǎ lā de yǔ (Marathi) wū ěr dū yǔ (Urdu) gǔ jí lā tè yǔ (Gujarati) ào lǐ yǎ yǔ (Oriya) pángzhēpǔ yǔ (Punjabi) ā sà mǔ yǔ (Assamese) kèshénmǐ'ěr yǔ (Kashmiri) xìn déyǔ (Sindhi) jīngdiǎn fānwén qítā dēngjì de hái yǒu chāoguò 1,600 zhǒng yǔyán, dàn yīngyǔ réng shì zuì bèi guāngfān shìyòng yú fǎlǜ hé zhèngfǔ jīguān de guānfāng yǔyán. Suīrán 83%de rén kǒu shì yìndù jiào jiàotú, yìndù réng shì quánqiú dì sān dà de yīslán guójiā, qítā de zōngjiào tuántǐ bāokuòle jīdūjiào, xī kè jiào, qí nà jiào, fójiào hé xiān jiào. Yìndù de zhōngxìng zhìdù (caste system) fǎnyìng le yìndù de zōngjiào jìchéng guānniàn. Chuántǒng shàng, yìndù yīgòng yǒu 4 gè zhǔyào de jiēcéng (varnas). Suīrán yìndù jīnglì le jīngjì de xiàndàihuà yǐjī yǒuguān jìnzhǐ qíshì yǐjī jiéshù jiējí jiégòu de fǎlǜ de zhìdìng, suīrán míngxǐǎn de páichì yǐjīng jiǎnshǎo, zhōngxìng zhìdù zài yìndù yīrán shí fēn zhòngyào, wǎngwǎng hé yīgèrén de shèhuì qiántú fāzhǎn guāngōu.

The population of India:

The structure of the Indian population is mainly divided by language, religion, and caste. The total population in 2024 was 1.45 billion. India's population surpasses China's, becoming the world's most populous country. Hindi is the only national official language of the Republic of India, but there are 14 other semi-official languages in different states and territories, including Dravidian, Malayalam, Tamil Language (Tamil), Telugu , Aryan (Indo-Aryan), Marathi, Urdu, Gujarati, Oriya Punjabi Assamese Kashmiri, Sindhi Classic Sanskrit.

More than 1,600 other languages are registered, but English remains the most widely used official language in law and government offices.

Although 83% of the population is Hindu, India is still the third-largest Islamic country in the world. Other religious groups include Christianity, Sikhism, Jainism, Buddhism, and Zoroastrianism.

India's caste system reflects India's concept of religious succession. Traditionally, India consists of 4 main classes (varnas). Although India has undergone economic modernization and the enactment of laws prohibiting discrimination and ending class structures, and although apparent exclusion has diminished, the caste system remains very important in India and is often linked to a person's social future.

1.	预计, 众多	Yùjì, zhòngduō	Estimated, numerous
2.	各异	gè yì	Diverse
3.	保存	bǎocún	Preserve
4.	完好	wánhǎo	Perfect, whole
5.	人种	rén zhǒng	Race, ethnic group
6.	印度斯坦	yìndù sītǎn	Hindustan
7.	泰卢固	tài lú gù	Telgu
8.	孟加拉	mèngjiālā	Bangla
9.	泰米尔	tài mǐ'ěr	Tamil
10.	多民族	duō mínzú	Multi-national, multi-racial
11.	居民	jūmín	Residents
12.	信奉	xìnfèng	Believe in, faith in
13.	印度教	yìndùjiào	Hindu religion
14.	其次为	qíci wèi	Next is

15.	伊斯兰教	yīslán jiào	Islamic religion
16.	基督教	jīdūjiào	Christianity
17.	锡克教	xí kè jiào	Sikh religion
18.	佛教	fójiào	Buddhism
19.	语言异常	yǔyán yìcháng	Language variation/difference
20.	繁杂	fánzá	Miscellaneous
21.	宪法	xiànfǎ	Constitution
22.	承认	chéngrèn	Admit, accept, acknowledge
23.	登记注册	dēngjì zhùcè	Registration
24.	同为	Tóng wèi	Together
25.	官方语言	guānfāng yǔyán	Official language

第五课 简史

印度是世界四大文明古国之一，公元前 2 0 0 0 年前后创造了灿烂的印度河文明。约在公元前 1 4 世纪，原居住在中亚的雅利安人中的一支进入南亚次大陆，并征服了当地土著，建立了一些奴隶制小国，确立了种姓制度，婆罗门教兴起。约公元前 1 0 0 0 年，开始形成以人种和社会分工不同为基础的种姓制度。公元前 4 世纪崛起的孔雀王朝开始统一印度次大陆，公元前 3 世纪阿育王统治时期疆域广阔，政权强大，佛教兴盛并开始向外传播。公元前 2 世纪灭亡，小国分立。公元 4 世纪笈多王朝建立，后形成中央集权大国，统治 2 0 0 多年。中世纪小国林立，印度教兴起。

自 1 1 世纪起，来自西北方向的穆斯林民族不断入侵并长期统治印度。1398 年突厥化的蒙古族人由中亚侵入印度。1526 年建立莫卧儿帝国，成为当时世界强国之一。1600 年英国侵入，建立东印度公司。1757 年，印度和英国之间爆发了普拉西大战，印度因战败而逐步沦为英国的殖民地。1849 年，英国侵占印度全境。1857 年爆发反英大起义，次年英国政府直接统治印度。1947 年 6 月，英国通过“蒙巴顿方案”，将印度分为印度和巴基斯坦两个自治领。同年 8 月 15 日，印度在与巴基斯坦分治后实现独立。1950 年 1 月 26 日，印度宣布成立印度共和国，但仍为英联邦成员国。

Dì wǔ kè jiǎn shǐ:

Yìndù shì shìjiè sì dà wénmíng gǔguó zhī yī, gōngyuán qián 2000 nián qiánhòu chuàngzàole cànlan de yìndù hé wénmíng. Yuē zài gōngyuán qián 14 shìjì, yuán jūzhù zài zhōng yà de yǎ lì'ān rén zhōng de yī zhī jìnrù nányà cìdàlù, bìng zhēng fú liǎo dàng de tǔzhù, jiànlìlè yīxiē núlì zhì xiǎoguó, quèlìlè zhōngxìng zhìdù, pólómén jiào xīngqǐ. Yuē gōngyuán qián 1000 nián, kāishǐ xíngchéng yǐ rén zhōng hé shèhuì fēngōng bùtóng wéi jīchǔ de zhōngxìng zhìdù. Gōngyuán qián 4 shìjì juéqǐ de kǒngquè wángcháo kāishǐ tǒngyī yìndù cìdàlù, gōngyuán qián 3 shìjì āyù wáng tǒngzhì shíqí jiāngyù guǎngkuò, zhèngquán qiángdà, fōjiào xīngshèng bìng kāishǐ xiàng wài zhuàn bō. Gōngyuán qián 2 shìjì mièwáng, xiǎoguó fēn lì. Gōngyuán 4 shìjì jīduō wángcháo jiànlì, hòu xíngchéng zhōngyāng jíquán dàguó, tǒngzhì 200 duōnián. Zhōngshìjì xiǎoguó lín lì, yìndùjiào xīngqǐ.

Zì 11 shìjì qǐ, láizì xīběi fāngxiàng de mùsīlín mínzú bùduàn rùqīn bìng chángqí tǒngzhì yìndù. 1398 Nián tūjué huà de ménggǔ zúrén yóu zhōng yà qīnrù yìndù. 1526 Nián jiànlì mò wò er dìguó, chéngwéi dāngshí shìjiè qiángguó zhī yī. 1600 Nián yīngguó qīnrù, jiànlì dōng yìndù gōngsī. 1757 Nián, yìndù hé yīngguó zhī jiān bàofāle pǔ lǎ xī dàzhàn, yìndù yīn zhànbài ér zhúbù lún wéi yīngguó de zhímíndì. 1849 Nián, yīngguó qīnzhàn yìndù quán jìng. 1857 Nián bàofā fǎn yīng dà qǐyì, cì nián yīngguó zhèngfǔ zhǐjiē tǒngzhì yìndù. 1947 Nián 6 yuè, yīngguó tǒngguó "méng bādùn fāng'àn", jiāng yìndù fēn wéi yìndù hé bājīstān liǎng gè zìzhìlǐng. Tóngnián 8 yuè 15 rì, yìndù zài yǔ bājīstān fēn zhì hòu shíxiàn dúlì. 1950 Nián 1 yuè 26 rì, yìndù xuānbù chénglì yìndù gònghéguó, dàn réng wéi yīng liánbāng chéngyuán guó.

Lesson No 5

Brief History:

India is one of the four ancient civilizations in the world. Around 2000 BC, India created the splendid Indus River civilization. Around the 14th century BC, one of the Aryans who originally lived in Central Asia entered the South Asian subcontinent and conquered the local indigenous peoples. They established some small slave states and established the caste system, and the rise of Brahmanism was witnessed. Around 1000 BC, a caste system based on differences in race and social division of labor began to form. The Mauryan Dynasty, which rose in the 4th century BC, began to unify the Indian subcontinent. During the reign of King Ashoka in the 3rd century BC, the territory was vast, the regime was powerful, and Buddhism flourished and began to spread. In the 2nd century BC, it perished and the small kingdoms were divided. The Gupta Dynasty was established in the 4th century AD, and later formed a centralized power, which ruled for more than 200 years. In the Middle Ages, there were many small countries, and Hinduism was on the rise.

Since the 11th century, Muslim ethnic groups from the northwest have continuously invaded and ruled India for a long time. In 1398 the Turkic Mongols invaded India from Central Asia. The Mughal Empire was established in 1526 and became one of the world's powers at that time. In 1600 the British invaded and established the East India Company. In 1757, the Plassey War broke out between India and Britain, and India gradually became a British colony due to its defeat. In 1849, the British occupied the whole of India. The anti-British uprising broke out in 1857, and the British government directly ruled India the following year. In June 1947, the United Kingdom adopted the "Mountbatten Plan" to divide India into two dominions, India and Pakistan. On August 15 of the same year, India achieved independence after partitioning with Pakistan. On January 26, 1950, India declared the establishment of the Republic of India but was still a member of the Commonwealth of Nations.

1.	简史	Jiǎn shǐ	Brief history
2.	居住	jūzhù	Reside in, dwell
3.	雅利安	yǎ lì'ān	Aryans
4.	征服	zhēngfú	Conquer, subjugate

5.	当地土著	dāngdì tǔzhù	Local original inhabitants
6.	奴隶制	núlì zhì	Slave system
7.	确立种姓制度	quèlì zhǒngxìng zhìdù	Establish caste system
8.	婆罗门教	póluómén jiào	Brahmanism
9.	兴起	xīngqǐ	Rise
10.	形成	xíngchéng	To form
11.	分工	fēngōng	Division of work
12.	崛起	juéqǐ	Grow up
13.	疆域	jiāngyù	Border
14.	广阔	guǎngkuò	Vastitude
15.	政权	zhèngquán	Regime
16.	传播	chuánbò	spread
17.	灭亡	mièwáng	Death, die out
18.	分立	fēnlì	divide & setup
19.	笈多王朝	jíduō wángcháo	Gupta dynasty
20.	统治	tǒngzhì	Rule, govern
21.	中央集权	zhōngyāng jíquán	Centralization of power
22.	林立	línlì	Stand in a great number
23.	来自	láizì	Come from, hail from
24.	入侵	rùqīn	Infall
25.	突厥	tūjué	Turks
26.	蒙古族	ménggǔ zú	Mangols
27.	莫卧儿	mò wò er	Mughal
28.	帝国	dìguó	Empire
29.	东印度公司	dōng yìndù gōngsī	East India Company
30.	爆发	bàofā	Break out, burst out
31.	普拉西大战	pǔ lā xī dàzhàn	Battle of Plassey
32.	逐步	zhúbù	Step by step
33.	沦为	lún wèi	Reduced to
34.	殖民地	Zhímíndì	Colony
35.	反英大起义	fǎn yīng dà qǐyì	Anti British uprising
36.	通过	tōngguò	Pass through
37.	“蒙巴顿方案” 自治领	“méng bādùn fāng'àn”zìzhìlǐng	"Mountbatten Plan" self-rule
38.	分治	fēn zhì	Divide & rule
39.	实现独立	shíxiàn dúlì	Realize independence
40.	英联邦成员国	yīng liánbāng chéngyuán guó	Member of the British Commonwealth

第六课

主要城市

孟买：英语：Mumbai；印度西岸大城市和全国最大海港和印度棉纺织中心。是印度马哈拉施特拉邦的首府。
德里 印度前首都德里分为旧德里和新德里两部分，新德里位于南部，与旧城隔着一座德里门。2022 年德里的都会区人口为 32,066,000。

加尔各答是印度的最大城市，也是印度的第二大港口城市，和麻纺织中心。

金奈（泰米尔语："Chennai"）以前称为马德拉斯（英文"Madras"），南印度东岸的一座城市。

班加罗尔（Bengaluru）印度南部城市，卡纳塔克邦首府。2022 年班加罗尔的都会区人口为 13,193,000。也是印度高科技高科技工业区。

艾哈迈达巴德（Ahmadabad）

一译“阿默达巴德”。印度西部古吉拉特邦最大城市和重要纺织中心。人口为 8,517,000。

海得拉巴（Hyderabad），印度南部城市，安得拉邦的首府，2022 年海得拉巴的都会区人口为 10,534,000。

坎普尔（Kānpur）印度北部北方邦南部城市，临恒河，加尔各答以西 970 千米。市区面积 262 平方千米。2022 年坎普尔的都会区人口为 3,190,000。

浦那（Pune）印度西部城市，在孟买东南 140 公里。马哈拉施特拉邦（Maharashtra）第二大城。2022 年普纳的都会区人口为 6,987,000。

那格浦尔（Nagpur）印度中部城市。位于马哈拉施特拉邦东北部。濒临纳格河，几乎位于印度的地理中心。2022 年那格浦尔的都会区人口为 2,991,000。

Lesson No Six

Main cities

Mumbai: A large city on the west coast of India and the largest seaport in the country and the center of Indian cotton textiles. It is the capital of the Indian state of Maharashtra.

Delhi

The former capital of India, Delhi, is divided into two parts: Old Delhi and New Delhi. New Delhi is located in the south, separated from the old city by a Delhi Gate. The metropolitan area population of Delhi in 2022 was 32,066,000.

Kolkata is India's largest city, India's second largest port city, and a hemp textile center. **Chennai** (Tamil: "Chennai"), formerly known as Madras (English "Madras"), is a city on the east coast of South India.

Bengaluru is a city in southern India and the capital of the state of Karnataka. The population was even suburban 2.914 million (1981). It is also a high-tech high-tech industrial zone in India. **Ahmadabad**

A transliteration of "Ahmedabad is Ài hā mài dá bā dé ". The largest city and an important textile center in the western state of Gujarat, India. The metropolitan area population of Bengaluru in 2022 was 13,193,000.

Hyderabad, a city in southern India, the capital of Andhra Pradesh, the metropolitan area population of Hyderabad in 2022 was 10,534,000.

Kanpur (Kānpur) is a city in the southern state of Uttar Pradesh, northern India, on the Ganges River, 970 kilometers west of Calcutta. The urban area is 262 square kilometres. The metropolitan area population of Kanpur in 2022 was 3,190,000.

Pune is a city in western India, 140 kilometers southeast of Mumbai. The second largest city in Maharashtra. The metropolitan area population of Pune in 2022 was 6,987,000.

Nagpur is a city in central India. Located in the northeastern part of Maharashtra. Near the Nag River, it is almost located in the geographic center of India. The metropolitan area population of Nagpur in 2022 was 2,991,000.

Dì liù kè

Zhǔyào chéngshì

Mèngmǎi: yìndù xī'àn dàchéngshì hé quánguó zuìdà hǎigǎng hé yìndù mǐ á n fǎngzhī zhōngxīn. Shì yìndù mǎ hā lā shī tè lābāng de shǒufǔ.

Délǐ

Yìndù qián shǒudū délí fēn wéi jiù délí hé xīndélǐ liǎng bùfèn, xīndélǐ wèiyú nánbù, yǔ jiù c héng gézhe yīzuò délí mén.

2022 Nián déli mùqián de dūhui qū rén kǒu wèi 32,066,000.

Jiā'ěrgèdá shì yīndù de zuìdà chéngshì, yěshì yīndù de dì èr dà gǎngkǒu chéngshì, hé má fǎ ngzhī zhōngxīn.

Jīn nài (tài mǐ'ěr yǔ:"Chennai") yīqián chēng wéi mǎ dé lā sī (yīngwén"Madras"), nán yīndù dōng àn de yīzuò chéngshì.

Bānjiālúo'ěr (Bengaluru) yīndù nánbù chéngshì, kǎ nà tǎ kè bāng shǒufǔ. 2022 Nián bānjiā luó'ěr mùqián de dūhui qū rén kǒu wèi 13,193,000,. Yěshì yīndù gāo kējì gāo kējì gōngyè qū.

Ài hā mài dá bā dé (Ahmadabad) yī yì "ā mò dá bā dé". Yīndù xībù gǔjīlātèbāng zuìdà chéngshì hé zhòngyào fāngzhī zhōngxīn. 2022 Nián bānjiālúo'ěr mùqián de dūhui qū rén kǒu wèi 13,193,000.

Hǎi dé lābā (Hyderābād), yīndù nánbù chéngshì, ān dé lā bāng de shǒufǔ,2022 nián hǎi dé lā bā mùqián de dūhui qū rén kǒu wèi 10,534,000.

Kǎn pǔ'ěr (Kānpur) yīndù běibù běifāng bāng nánbù chéngshì, lín héng hé, jiā'ěrgèdá yīxī 970 qiān mǐ. Shì qū miànjī 262 píngfāng qiān mǐ.2022 Nián kǎn pǔ'ěr mùqián de dūhui qū rén kǒu wèi 3,190,000.

Pǔ nà (Pune) yīndù xībù chéngshì, zài mèngmǎi dōngnán 140 gōnglǐ. Mǎ hā lā shī tè lā bān g (Maharashtra) dì èr dà chéng.2022 Nián pǔ nà mùqián de dūhui qū rén kǒu wèi 6,987,000.

Nà gé pǔ'ěr (Nagpur) yīndù zhòng bù chéngshì. Wèiyú mǎ hā lā shī tè lā bāng dōngběi bù. Bīnlín nà gé hé, jīhū wèiyú yīndù dì dīlǐ zhōngxīn.2022 Nián nà gé pǔ'ěr mùqián de dūhui qū rén kǒu wèi 2,991,000.

1.	港口城市	Gǎngkǒu chéngshì	Port city
2.	棉纺织中心	mián fǎngzhī zhōngxīn	Cotton textile centre
3.	金奈	jīn nài	Chennai
4.	泰米尔语	tài mǐ'ěr yǔ	Tamil
5.	马德拉斯	mǎ dé lā sī	Madras
6.	班加罗尔	bānjiālúo'ěr	Bengaluru
7.	卡纳塔克邦	kǎ nà tǎ kè bāng	Karnataka state
8.	首府	shǒufǔ	State capital
9.	连郊区	lián jiāoqū	Linked suburb
10.	高科技	gāo kējì	High technology
11.	工业区	gōngyè qū	Industrial area
12.	艾哈迈达巴德	ài hā mài dá bā dé	Ahmedabad
13.	一译	yī yì	One translation
14.	“阿默达巴德”	“ā mò dá bā dé”	Ahmedabad
15.	古吉拉特邦	gǔjīlātèbāng	Gujarat state
16.	海得拉巴	hǎi dé lābā	Hyderabad
17.	安得拉邦	ān dé lā bāng	Andhra Pradesh
18.	坎普尔	kǎn pǔ'ěr	Kanpur
19.	北方邦	Běifāng bāng	Utter Pradesh
20.	临恒河	lín héng hé	Close to Ganga River
21.	加尔各答	jiā'ěrgèdá	Calcutta
22.	千米	qiān mǐ	Kilometer
23.	浦那	pǔ nà	Pune
24.	马哈拉施特拉邦	mǎ hā lā shī tè lā bāng	Maharashtra state
25.	那格浦尔	nà gé pǔ'ěr	Nagpur
26.	濒临	bīnlín	Border on
27.	纳格河	nà gé hé	Nag river

第七课

政治

印度独立后长期由国大党统治，反对党曾在1977年至1979年、1989年至1991年两次短暂执政。1996年后印度政局不稳，到1999年先后举行3次大选，产生了5届政府。1999年至2004年，印度人民党为首的24党全国民主联盟上台执政，瓦杰帕伊任总理。

2004年4月20日至5月10日，印举行第14届人民院选举。国大党领导的团结进步联盟获得的议席居首位，国大党获得组阁的优先权。5月15日，国大党主席索尼娅·甘地被选为国大党议会党团领袖。19日，曼莫汉·辛格被推选为总理。22日，新政府正式成立。

印度是一个联邦共和国，印度的总统是国家元首，但其职责是象征性的。国家的总统及副总统任期5年，由一个特设的选举机构间接选举产生。印度副总统在总统无法行使权力时，并不能自动接任总统。行政权力主要控制在以总理为首的部长会议（即印度的内阁）。议会多数党向总统提名总理人选，由总统任命总理。然后再由总理向总统提名其他内阁成员。总理是纳伦德拉·莫迪，在2014年大选后掌握政权。

印度的国会两院制包括了上院联邦院(Rajya Sabha)和下院人民院(Lok Sabha)。部长会议对人民院负责。联邦院议员任期6年，每2年改选三分之一，其中238名成员由地方选举产生，其余12人由总统任命。人民院共有545席，任期5年，其中543人由人民选举产生，其余2人由总统任命。

团结进步联盟政府根据《最低共同纲领》，对内强调维护社会弱势群体的权益；推行人性化的经济改革；强调社会和谐与地区平衡发展；提高对教育和卫生的投入。对外强调外交独立性；突出周边外交，优先发展与邻国关系；重视大国外交，注意发展同大国关系。

宪法 1950年1月26日生效的宪法规定印度为联邦制国家，是主权的、社会主义的、世俗的民主共和国。印度采取英国式的议会民主制。公民不分种族、性别、出身、宗教信仰和出生地点，在法律面前一律平等。

议会 联邦议会由总统和两院组成。总统为国家元首和武装部队的统帅，由联邦议会及邦议会组成“选举团”选出，每届任期5年。总统依照以总理为首的部长会议的建议行使职权。

根据宪法，印度总统选举每五年举行一次，总统由联邦议会议员和各邦议会成员组成的选举团选出。宪法规定，印度为联邦制国家，总统为名义上的国家元首和武装部队统帅，不代表任何党派组织，更多的是一种象征。总统平时依照以总理为首的部长会议建议行使职权，总统实际权力有限，真正掌握实权的是总理。

但当国家受到战争威胁、外部侵略或者发生武装暴动时，总统有权宣布国家进入紧急状态。如果政府陷入瘫痪，总统也可以履行政府首脑的职能。总统还有权否决政府提出的法案和在大选僵持不下时指定政党组阁。因此，在印度政坛上，总统的政治分量越来越重。

两院包括联邦院（上院）和人民院（下院）。联邦院共250席，由总统指定12名具有专门学识或实际经验的议员，和不超过238名各邦及中央直辖区的代表组成，任期6年，每两年改选1/3。联邦院每年召开4次会议。宪法规定副总统为法定的联邦院议长。

人民院为国家主要立法机构，其主要职能为：制定法律和修改宪法；控制和调整联邦政府的收入和支出；对联邦政府提出不信任案，并有权弹劾总统。人民院共545席，543由选民直接选举产生，每5年举行一次大选。

Dì qī kè Zhèngzhì

Yìndù dúlì hòu chángqī yóu guó dà dǎng tǒngzhì, fānduìdǎng céng zài 1977 nián zhì 1979 nián, 1989 nián zhì 1991 nián liǎng cì duǎnzàn zhízhèng. 1996 Nián hòu yìndù zhèngjǔ bù wěn, dào 1999 nián xiānhòu jǔxíng 3 cì dàxuǎn, chǎnshēng 5 jiè zhèngfǔ. 1999 Nián zhì 2004 nián, yìn duó rénmin dǎng wéishǒu de 24 dǎng quánguó mínzhǔ liánméng shàngtái zhízhèng, wǎ jié pà yǐ rén zǒnglǐ.

2004 Nián 4 yuè 20 rì zhì 5 yuè 10 rì, yìn jǔxíng de 14 jiè rénmin yuàn xuǎnjǔ. Guó dà dǎng lǐngdǎo de tuánjié jìnbù liánméng huòdé de yìxí jū shǒu wèi, guó dà dǎng huòdé zǔgé de yōuxiān quán. 5 Yuè 15 rì, guó dà dǎng zhǔxí suǒnǐ yà·gāndì bèi xuǎn wèi guó dà dǎng yìhuì dǎngtuán lǐngxiù. 19 Rì, màn mò hàn·xīn gé bèi tuīxuǎn wèi zǒnglǐ. 22 Rì, xīn zhèngfǔ zhèngshì chénglì.

Yìndù shì yīgè liánbāng gònghéguó, yìndù de zǒngtǒng shì guójiā yuánshǒu, dàn qí zhízé shì xiàngzhèng xíng de. Guójiā de zǒngtǒng jī fù zǒngtǒng rènqī 5 nián, yóu yīgè tè shè de xuǎnjǔ jīgòu jiànjie xuǎnjǔ chǎnshēng. Yìndù fù zǒngtǒng zài zǒngtǒng wúfǎ xíngshǐ quánlǐ shí, bìng bùnéng zìdòng jiēren zǒngtǒng. Xíngzhèngquánlǐ zhǔyào kòngzhì zài yǐ zǒnglǐ wéishǒu de bùzhǎng huìyì (jí yìndù de nèigé). Yìhuì duōshù dǎng xiàng zǒngtǒng tíming zǒnglǐ rén xuǎn, yóu zǒngtǒng rènming zǒnglǐ. Ránhòu zài yóu zǒnglǐ xiàng zǒngtǒng tíming qítā nèigé chéngyuán. Xiànrén zǒnglǐ shì nà lún dé lā·mò dí, zài 2014 nián dàxuǎn hòu zhǎngwò zhèng quǎn.

Yìndù de guóhuì liǎngyuánzhì bāokuòle shàngyuán liánbāng yuàn (rājya sabhā, Rajya Sabha) hé xiàyuán rénmin yuàn (lōka sabhā, Lok Sabha). Bùzhǎng huìyì duì rénmin yuàn fùzé. Liánbāng yuán yìyuán rènqī 6 nián, měi 2 nián gǎixuǎn sān fēn zhī yī, qízōng 233 míng chéngyuán yóu dìfāng xuǎnjǔ chǎnshēng, qíyú 12 rén yóu zǒngtǒng rènming. Rénmin yuàn gòngyǒu 545 xí, rènqī 5 nián, qízōng 543 rénmin xuǎn chǎnshēng, qíyú 2 rén yóu zǒngtǒng rènming.

Tuánjié jìnbù liánméng zhèngfǔ gēnjù “zuìdī gòngtóng gānglǐng”, duì nèi qiángdiào wéihù shèhuì ruòshì qúntǐ de

quányì; tuīxíng rénxìng huà de jīngjì gǎigé; qiángdiào shèhuì héxié yǔ dìqū pínghéng fāzhǎn; tígāo duì jiàoyù hé wèishēng de tóurù. Duìwài qiángdiào wàijiāo dúlì xìng; túchū zhōubiān wàijiāo, yōuxiǎn fāzhǎn yǔ lín guó guānxì; zhòngshì dàguó wàijiāo, zhùyì fāzhǎn tóng dàguó guānxì.

Xiànfǎ 1950 nián 1 yuè 26 rì shēngxìào de xiànfǎ guīdìng yìndù wèi liánbāng zhì guójiā, shì zhǔquán de, shèhuì zhǔyì de, shìsù de mínzhǔ gònghéguó. Yìndù cǎiqǔ yīngguó shì de yìhuì mínzhǔ zhì. Gōngmín bù fēn zhǒngzú, xìngbié, chūshēn, zōngjiào xìnyǎng hé chūshēng dìdiǎn, zài fǎlǚ miànrán yǐlǚ píngděng.

Yìhuì liánbāng yìhuì yǒu zǒngtǒng hé liǎng yuàn zǔchéng. Zǒngtǒng wèi guójiā yuánshǒu hé wǔzhuāng bùduì de tǒngshuài, yǒu liánbāng yìhuì jí bāng yìhuì zǔchéng “xuǎnjǔ tuán” xuǎn chū, měi jiè rènnqí 5 nián. Zǒngtǒng yīzhào yǐ zǒnglǐ wéishǒu de bùzhǎng huìyì de jiànyì xíngshì zhíquán.

Gēnjù xiànfǎ, yìndù zǒngtǒng xuǎnjǔ měi wǔ nián jùxíng yīcì, zǒngtǒng yǒu liánbāng yìhuìyìyuán hé gè bāng yìhuì chéngyuán zǔchéng de xuǎnjǔ tuán xuǎn chū. Xiànfǎ guīdìng, yìndù wèi liánbāng zhì guójiā, zǒngtǒng wèi míngyì shàng de guójiā yuánshǒu hé wǔzhuāng bùduì tǒngshuài, bù dàibiào rènhe dǎngpài zǔzhǐ, gèng duō de shì yī zhǒng xiàngzhēng. Zǒngtǒng píngshí yīzhào yǐ zǒnglǐ wéishǒu de bùzhǎng huìyì jiànyì xíngshì zhíquán, zǒngtǒng shíjī quánlì yǒuxiǎn, zhēnzhèng zhǎngwò shíquán de shì zǒnglǐ.

Dàn dāng guójiā shòudào zhànzhēng wēixié, wàibù qīnlüè huòzhě fāshēng wǔzhuāng bàodòng shí, zǒngtǒng yǒu quán xuānbù guójiā jìnrù jǐnjí zhuàngtài. Rúguǒ zhèngfǔ xiànrù tānhuàn, zǒngtǒng yě kěyǐ lǚxíng zhèngfǔ shǒunǎo de zhínéng. Zǒngtǒng hái yǒu quán fǒujué zhèngfǔ tíchū de fǎn hé zài dàxuǎn jiāngchí bùxià shí zhǐdìng zhèngdǎng zǔgē. Yīncǐ, zài yìndù zhèngtán shàng, zǒngtǒng de zhèngzhì fēnliàng yuè lái yuè zhòng.

Liǎng yuàn bāokuò liánbāng yuàn (shàngyuàn) hé rénmin yuàn (xiàyuàn). Liánbāng yuàn gòng 250 xí, yǒu zǒngtǒng zhǐdìng 12 míng jùryǒu zhuānmén xuésì huò shíjī jīngyàn de yìyuán, hé bù chāoguò 238 míng gè bāng jī zhōngyāng zhí xiǎqū de dàibiào zǔchéng, rènnqí 6 nián, měi liǎng nián gǎixuǎn 1/3. Liánbāng yuàn měinián zhàokāi 4 cì huì yì. Xiànfǎ guīdìng fù zǒngtǒng wèi fǎdìng de liánbāng yuàn yìzhǎng.

Rénmín yuàn wèi guójiā zhǔyào lǐfǎ jīgòu, qí zhǔyào zhínéng wéi: Zhǐdìng fǎlǚ hé xiūgǎi xiànfǎ; kòngzhì hé tiáozhēng liánbāng zhèngfǔ de shǒurù hé zhīchū; duì liánbāng zhèngfǔ tíchū bù xìnren àn, bìng yǒu quán tánhé zǒngtǒng. Rénmín yuàn gòng 545 xí, 543 yǒu xuǎnmín zhíjiē xuǎnjǔ chǎnshēng, měi 5 nián jùxíng yīcì dàxuǎn.

Lesson 7

Politics

India has been ruled by the Congress Party for a long time since its independence.

After India's independence, it was ruled by the Congress Party for a long time, and the opposition party was briefly in power from 1977 to 1979 and from 1989 to 1991. After 1996, the political situation in India was unstable. By 1999, three general elections were held, resulting in five governments. From 1999 to 2004, the 24-party National Democratic Alliance (NDA) led by the BJP came to power, with Vajpayee as prime minister.

From April 20 to May 10, 2004, India held the 14th Lok Sabha election. The United and Progressive Alliance led by the Congress Party won the first seat, and the Congress Party was given priority to form a cabinet. On May 15, Congress Party President Sonia Gandhi was elected as the leader of the Congress Party's parliamentary caucus. On the 19th, Manmohan Singh was elected as Prime Minister. On the 22nd, the new government was formally established.

India is a federal republic, and the president of India is the head of state, but his duties are symbolic. The president and vice president of the country are elected for a five-year term and are indirectly elected by a special electoral body. The vice president of India does not automatically take over the presidency when the president is unable to exercise power. Executive power is mainly controlled by the Council of Ministers (i.e. India's Cabinet) headed by the Prime Minister. The majority party in the parliament nominates a candidate for prime minister to the president, who appoints the prime minister. The prime minister then nominates other cabinet members to the president. The current prime minister is Narendra Modi, who came to power after the 2014 election.

India's bicameral parliament consists of the upper house of the Federal House, (Rajya Sabha) and the lower house of the Lok Sabha. The Council of Ministers is responsible to the House of Representatives. Members of the Rajya Sabha are elected for a term of six years, with one-third elected every two years, of which 238 members are elected by local elections and the remaining 12 are appointed by the president. The Lok Sabha has 545 seats, with 5-year terms, of which 543 are elected by the people, and the remaining 2 are appointed by the president.

According to the "Minimum Common Program", the government of the Alliance for Solidarity and Progress emphasizes the protection of the rights and interests of vulnerable groups in society; promotes humane economic reform; emphasizes social harmony and balanced regional development; and increases investment in education and health. Externally, it emphasizes the independence of diplomacy; emphasizes neighboring diplomacy, and prioritizes the development of relations with neighboring countries; attaches great importance to the diplomacy of major countries, and

pays attention to the development of relations with major countries.

The Constitution

The Constitution that came into effect on January 26, 1950 stipulates that India is a federal state, a sovereign, socialist, secular democratic republic. India adopts a British-style parliamentary democracy. Citizens are equal before the law regardless of race, gender, origin, religion and place of birth.

Parliament

The Federal Parliament consists of the President and two chambers. The President is the head of state and the commander-in-chief of the armed forces. The President exercises his powers on the advice of the Council of Ministers headed by the Prime Minister.

According to the constitution, presidential elections in India are held every five years. The president is elected by an electoral college composed of members of the federal parliament and state assemblies. The constitution stipulates that India is a federal state, and the president is the nominal head of state and commander-in-chief of the armed forces. It does not represent any partisan organization, but is more of a symbol. The President usually exercises his/her powers in accordance with the recommendations of the Council of Ministers headed by the Prime Minister. The actual power of the President is limited, and the Prime Minister really holds the real power.

But when the country is threatened by war, external aggression or armed riots, the president has the right to declare the country into a state of emergency. The president can also perform the functions of head of government if the government is paralyzed. The president also has the power to veto government-sponsored bills and to designate a party to form a cabinet in the event of a deadlocked election. Therefore, in Indian politics, the political weight of the president is getting heavier and heavier.

The two houses include the Rajya Sabha (upper house) and the Lok Sabha (lower house). The Rajya Sabha consists of 250 seats, composed of 12 members with specialized knowledge or practical experience designated by the President, and no more than 238 representatives of states and central territories. The Rajya Sabha meets four times a year. The Constitution stipulates that the Vice-President is the statutory Speaker of the Rajya Sabha .

The Lok Sabha is the main legislative body of the country, and its main functions are: to formulate laws and amend the constitution; to control and adjust the income and expenditure of the federal government; to raise a motion of no confidence in the federal government, and to have the power to impeach the president. There are 545 seats in the Lok Sabha, of which 543 are directly elected by the voters, and general elections are held every five years.

1.	政治	Zhèngzhì	Politics
2.	反对党	fǎnduìdǎng	Opposition party
3.	短暂	duǎnzàn	Impermanency
4.	执政	zhízhèng	Come into power
5.	政局	zhèngjú	Political situation
6.	不稳	bù wěn	Unstable
7.	大选	dàxuǎn	General election
8.	产生	chǎnshēng	Form, come into being
9.	5 届政府	5 jiè zhèngfǔ	5 governments
10.	全国民主联盟	quánguó mínzhǔ liánméng	National democratic alliance (NDA)
11.	上台执政	shàngtái zhízhèng	Assume the reins of govt
12.	瓦杰帕伊	wǎ jié pà yī	Bajpei
13.	选举	xuǎnjǔ	Election, elect
14.	团结进步联盟	tuánjié jìnbù liánméng	United progressive alliance (UPA)
15.	议席	yìxí	Parliamentary seat
16.	居首位	jū shǒu wèi	Be on first position
17.	组阁	zǔgé	Form cabinet

18.	优先权	Yōuxiān quán	Priority
19.	议会党团领袖	yìhuì dǎngtuán lǐngxiù	Leader of the group of parliamentary parties
20.	推选为	tuīxuǎn wéi	Elected as
21.	最低共同纲领	zuìdī gòngtóng gānglǐng	Minimum common programme
22.	强调	qiángdiào	Stress, emphatically state
23.	社会弱势群体	shèhuì ruòshì qúntǐ	Socially backward class
24.	权益	quányì	Rights and interests
25.	人性化	rénxìng huà	Humanism
26.	经济改革	jīngjì gǎigé	Economic reforms
27.	和谐	héxié	Harmonious
28.	地区平衡	dìqū pínghéng	Regional balance
29.	卫生	wèishēng	Sanitation; health
30.	投入	tóurù	Input, investment
31.	外交独立性	wàijiāo dúlì xìng	Independent diplomacy
32.	突出周边外交	túchū zhōubīan wàijiāo	Gave prominence to peripheral diplomacy
33.	优先	yōuxiān	Priority, preference
34.	重视	zhòngshì	Attach importance to
35.	宪法	xiànfǎ	Constitution
36.	生效	shēngxiào	Become effective
37.	规定	guīdìng	Stipulate
38.	联邦制国家	liánbāng zhì guójiā	Federal state
39.	主权	zhǔquán	Sovereignty
40.	社会主义	shèhuì zhǔyì	Socialism
41.	世俗的	shísú de	Secular
42.	民主共和国	mínzhǔ gònghéguó	Democratic republic
43.	议会民主制	yìhuì mínzhǔ zhì	Parliamentary form of democracy
44.	公民	gōngmín	Citizen
45.	种族	zhǒngzú	Caste, race, tribe
46.	性别	xìngbié	Sex (Male /female)
47.	出身	chūshēn	Birth
48.	宗教信仰	zōngjiào xìnyǎng	Religious faith
49.	出生地点	chūshēng dìdiǎn	Place of birth
50.	法律	fǎlǜ	Law
51.	一律平等	yīlǜ píngděng	Equality of all
52.	联邦议会	liánbāng yìhuì	Rajya Sabha
53.	元首	yuánshǒu	Head of state
54.	武装部队	wǔzhuāng bùduì	Armed forces
55.	统帅	tǒngshuài	Supreme Commander
56.	邦议会	bāng yìhuì	States assembly
57.	选举团	xuǎnjǔ tuán	Electoral college
58.	任期	rènnqí	Tenure
59.	部长会议	bùzhǎng huìyì	Cabinet
60.	行使职权	xíngshǐ zhíquán	Exercise power
61.	真正掌握	Zhēnzhèng zhǎngwò	In word and deed hold,

62.	实权	shíquán	Real power
63.	战争威胁	zhànzhēng wēixié	Threat of war
64.	外部侵略	wàibù qīnlüè	External aggression
65.	武装暴动	wǔzhuāng bàodòng	Armed rebellion
66.	进入紧急状态	jìnrù jǐnjí zhuàngtài	Impose emergency
67.	陷入瘫痪	xiànrù tānhuàn	Run into paralysis
68.	履行	lǚxíng	Perform
69.	职能	zhínéng	Function
70.	否决	fǒujué	Overrule, deny, veto
71.	法案	fǎ'àn	Act, bill
72.	僵持不下	jiāngchí bùxià	Refuge to budge
73.	指定	zhǐdìng	appoint
74.	政坛	zhèngtán	Political forum
75.	分量	fēnliàng	Weight
76.	联邦院（上院）	liánbāng yuàn (shàng yuàn)	Rajya Sabha (upper house)
77.	人民院（下院）	rénmín yuàn (xiàyuàn)	Lok Sabha (lower house)
78.	席	xí	Seat
79.	专门学识或实际经验	zhuānmén xuéshì huò shíjì jīngyàn	Special knowledge or practical experience
80.	超过	chāoguò	Exceed
81.	中央直辖区	zhōngyāng zhí xiáqū	Union Territory
82.	代表	dàibiǎo	Representative
83.	改选	gǎixuǎn	Reelection
84.	召开	zhàokāi	Convene
85.	副总统	fù zǒngtǒng	Vice president
86.	法定的	fǎdìng de	Legal, statutory
87.	联邦院议长。	liánbāng yuàn yìzhǎng.	Chairman of Rajya Sabha
88.	立法机构	Lǐfǎ jīgòu	Legislative body
89.	制定法律	zhìdìng fǎlǜ	Formulate law
90.	修改宪法	xiūgǎi xiànfǎ	Amend constitution
91.	控制和调整	kòngzhì hé tiáozhěng	Control and regulate
92.	收入和支出	shōurù hé zhīchū	Income and expenditure
93.	弹劾	tánhé	Impeachment
94.	选民	xuǎnmín	Electorate

第八课 政府

以总理为首的部长会议是最高行政机关。总理由总统任命人民院多数党的议会党团领袖担任，部长会议还包括内阁部长、国务部长。总理和内阁部长组成的内阁是决策机构。

司法机构 最高法院是最高司法权力机关，有权解释宪法、审理中央政府与各邦之间的争议问题等。各邦设有高等法院，县设有县法院。最高法院法官由总统委任。总检察长由政府任命，其主要职责是就执法事项向政府提供咨询和建议，完成宪法和法律规定的检察权，对宪法和法律的执行情况进行监督等。

Dì bā kè

Zhèngfǔ

Yǐ zǒnglǐ wéishǒu de bùzhǎng huìyì shì zuìgāo xíngzhèng jīguān. Zǒnglǐ yóu zǒngtǒng rènming rénmin yuàn duōshù dǎng de yìhuì dǎngtuán lǐngxiù dānrèn, bùzhǎng huìyì hái bāokuò nèigé bùzhǎng, guówù bùzhǎng. Zǒnglǐ hé nèigé bùzhǎng zǔchéng de juécè shì juécè jīgòu.

Sīfǎ jīgòu

Zuìgāo fǎyuàn shì zuìgāo sīfǎ quánli jīguān, yǒu quán jiěshì xiànfǎ, shěnlǐ zhōngyāng zhèngfǔ yǔ gè bāngzhī jiān de zhēngyì wèntí děng. Gè bāng shè yǒu gāoděng fǎyuàn, xiàn shè yǒu xiànfǎyuàn. Zuìgāo fǎyuàn fǎguān yóu zǒngtǒng wěirèn. Zǒng jiǎnchá zhǎng yóu zhèngfǔ rènming, qí zhǔyào zhízé shì jiù zhífǎ shìxiàng xiàng zhèngfǔ tígōng zīxún hé jiànyì, wánchéng xiànfǎ hé fǎlǜ guīdìng de jiǎnchá quán, duì xiànfǎ hé fǎlǜ de zhí háng qíngkuàng jìnxíng jiāndū děng.

Lesson 8 The Government

The Council of Ministers, headed by the Prime Minister, is the highest executive organ. The Prime Minister is the leader of the parliamentary caucus of the majority party in the Lok Sabha appointed by the President. The Council of Ministers also includes Cabinet Ministers and Ministers of State. The Cabinet, consisting of the Prime Minister and Cabinet Ministers, is the decision-making body.

Judiciary

The Supreme Court is the highest judicial authority and has the power to interpret the Constitution, hears disputes between the central government and the states, etc. There are high courts in each state and district courts in the districts. Judges of the Supreme Court are appointed by the President. The Attorney General is appointed by the government and his or her main duties are to advise and make recommendations to the government on law enforcement matters, to fulfil the prosecutorial powers provided by the Constitution and laws, and to supervise the implementation of the Constitution and laws etc.

1.	以...为首	Yǐ...wéishǒu	Take ...as main
2.	行政机关	xíngzhèng jīguān	Administrative organ
3.	任命	rènming	Appoint
4.	多数党	duōshù dǎng	Majority party
5.	担任	dānrèn	Assume the office of
6.	包括	bāokuò	Include
7.	内阁部长	nèigé bùzhǎng	Cabinet minister
8.	国务部长	guówù bùzhǎng	State minister
9.	决策机构。	juécè jīgòu.	Decision making body
10.	司法机构	Sīfǎ jīgòu	Judiciary body
11.	最高法院	zuìgāo fǎyuàn	Supreme court
12.	解释	jiěshì	Explain, interpret
13.	审理	shěnlǐ	Hear
14.	中央政府	zhōngyāng zhèngfǔ	Central government
15.	争议问题	zhēngyì wèntí	Disputed issues
16.	高等法院	gāoděng fǎyuàn	High court

17.	县	xiàn	District/ County
18.	设有	shè yǒu	Have
19.	县法院	xiàn fǎyuàn	District court
20.	法官	fǎguān	Judge
21.	委任	wěirèn	Depute
22.	总检察长	zǒng jiǎnchá zhǎng	Attorney General
23.	职责	zhízé	Duties and responsibilities
24.	法事项	fǎ shìxiàng	Legal matters
25.	咨询	zīxún	Consultation, advice
26.	检察权	jiǎnchá quán	Procuratorate rights
27.	执行监督	zhíxíng jiāndū	Exercise supervision

第九课

政党

印度人民党（Bharatiya Janata Party）：1980 年 4 月成立，其前身是 1951 年成立的印度人民同盟。自称有 1.1 亿党员。代表北部印度教徒势力和城镇中小商人利益，具有强烈民族主义和教派主义色彩。1996 年首次成为议会第一大党并短暂执政。1998 年至 2004 年两度执政。2014 年再次赢得人民院过半议席，成为第一大党，在中央单独执政。在 2019 年人民院选举中席位进一步增加，成功连任。现任主席贾加特·普拉卡什·达（Jagat Prakash Nadda），2020 年 1 月任命。

印度国民大会党（The Indian National Congress）：简称国大党。据称有初级党员 3000 万，积极党员 150 万。国大党成立于 1885 年 12 月，领导了反对英国殖民统治和争取印度独立的斗争。印独立后长期执政，1969 年和 1978 年两次分裂。1978 年英·甘地组建新党，改用现名。2004 年和 2009 年人民院选举中两次成为议会中第一大党，在 2014 年人民院选举中遭受重挫，仅获得 44 个议席。在 2019 年人民院选举中稍有起色，获 52 席。现任主席马利卡尔·卡尔格（Mallikarjun Kharge）。

德拉维达进步联盟（Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam）：1949 年 9 月成立，泰米尔纳德邦地区性政党，主要政治力量在泰邦和本地治理中央直辖区。在 2019 年人民院选举中位列第三大党，现任党主席斯大林（MK Stalin）。

草根国大党（Trinamul Congress Party）：1998 年 1 月成立，主要政治力量在西孟加拉邦，主要代表中低阶层利益。在 2019 年人民院选举中位列第四大党。现任党主席玛玛塔·班纳吉（Mamata Banerjee）。

印度共产党（马克思主义）（Communist Party of India〔Marxist〕）：简称印共（马）。1964 年以孙达拉雅和南布迪里巴德为代表的一派从印度共产党分出后成立。党员 81.4 万（2002 年），是印度最大的左翼政党。曾在西孟加拉邦长期执政，2011 年 5 月结束在该邦连续 34 年的执政地位。现任总书记西塔拉姆·亚秋里（Sitaram Yechury）。

Dì jiǔ kè

Zhèngdǎng

Yìn du rén mín dǎng (Bharatiya Janata Party):

1980 Nián 4 yuè chénglì, qí qiánshēn shì 1951 nián chéng lì de yìn duó rén mín tóngméng. Zìchēng yǒu 1.1 Yì dǎngyuán. Dàibiǎo běibù yìndù jiàotiú shìlì hé chéngzhèn zhōngxiào shāngrén liyì, jùyǒu qiángliè mínzú zhǔyì hé jiàopài zhǔyì sècǎi. 1996 Nián shǒucì chéngwéi yìhuì dì yī dà dǎng bìng duǎnzàn zhízhèng. 1998 Nián zhì 2004 nián liǎng dù zhízhèng. 2014 Nián zàicì yíngdé rén mín yuàn guòbàn yìxí, chéngwéi dì yī dà dǎng, zài zhōngyāng dāndù zhízhèng. Zài 2019 nián rén mín yuàn xuǎnjǔ zhōng xíwèi jìnyībù zēngjiā, chénggōng liánrèn. Xiànrèn zhǔxí jiǎ jiā tè·pǔ lā kǎ shēn·nà dá (Jagat Prakash Nadda), 2020 nián 1 yuè rènming.

(1) Yìndù guómín dàhuì dǎng (The Indian National Congress): Jiǎnchēng guó dà dǎng. Jù chēng yǒu chūjí dǎngyuán 3000 wàn, jījī dǎngyuán 150 wàn. Guó dà dǎng chénglì yú 1885 nián 12 yuè, língdǎole fānduì yīngguó zhímín tǒngzhì hé zhēngqǔ yìndù dúlì de dòuzhēng. Yìn dúlì hòu chángqí zhízhèng, 1969 nián hé 1978 nián liǎng cì fēnliè. 1978 Nián yīng·gāndì zǔjiàn xīndǎng, gǎi yòng xiàn míng. 2004 Nián hé 2009 nián rén mín yuàn xuǎnjǔ zhōng liǎng cì chéngwéi yìhuì zhōng dì yī dà dǎng, zài 2014 nián rén mín yuàn xuǎnjǔ zhōng zāoshòu zhòng cuò, jìn huòdé 44 gè yìxí. Zài 2019 nián rén mín yuàn xuǎnjǔ zhōng shǎo yǒu qǐsè, huò 52 xí. Xiànrèn zhǔxí shì Mǎlikā'ěrjūn Kǎ'ěrgé.

(2) Dé lā wéi dá jìnbù liánméng (Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam): 1949 Nián 9 yuè chénglì, tài mǐ'ěr nà dé bāng dìqū xìng zhèngdǎng, zhǔyào zhèngzhì lìliàng zài tàibāng hé běndì zhìlǐ zhōngyāng zhí xiáqū. Zài 2019 nián rén mín yuàn xuǎnjǔ zhōng wèi liè dì sān dà dǎng, xiànrèn dǎng zhǔxí sīdàlín (MK Stalin).

(3) Cǎogēn guó dà dǎng (Trinamul Congress Party): 1998 Nián 1 yuè chénglì, zhǔyào zhèngzhì lìliàng zài xī mèngjiālā bāng, zhǔyào dàibiǎo zhōng dī jiēcéng liyì. Zài 2019 nián rén mín yuàn xuǎnjǔ zhōng wèi liè dì sì dà dǎng. Xiànrèn dǎng zhǔxí mǎ mǎ tā·bān nà jí (Mamata Banerjee).

(4) Yìndù gòngchǎndǎng (mǎkèsī zhǔyì) (Communist Party of India〔Marxist〕): Jiǎnchēng yìn gòng (mǎ). 1964 Nián yǐ sūn dá lā yǎ hé nán bù dí lǐ bā dé wèi dàibiǎo de yìpài cóng yìndù gòngchǎndǎng fèn chū hòu chénglì. Dǎngyuán 81.4 Wàn (2002 nián), shì yìndù zuìdà de zuǒyì zhèngdǎng. Céng zài xī mèngjiālā bāng chángqí zhízhèng, 2011 nián 5 yuè jiéshù zài gāi bāng liánxù 34 nián de zhízhèng dìwèi. Xiànrèn zǒng shūjì xī tā lǎ mǔ·yà qīuǐlǐ (Sitaram Yechury)

Lesson 9

Political parties

(1) Bharatiya Janata Party: Established in April 1980, its predecessor was the Bharatiya Jan Sangh established in 1951. It claims to have 110 million party members. Representing the interests of northern Hindus and small and medium-sized businessmen in towns, it has strong nationalism and sectarianism. In 1996, it first became the largest party in parliament and was in power for a short time. It was in power twice from 1998 to 2004. In 2014, it won more than half of the seats in the Lok Sabha again, becoming the largest party and ruling independently in the central government. In the 2019 Lok Sabha election, the number of seats was further increased and BJP was successfully re-elected. Current Chairman Jagat Prakash Nadda, was appointed in January 2020.

(2) The Indian National Congress: referred to as the Congress Party. It is said that there are 30 million junior party members and 1.5 million active party members. The Congress Party was established in December 1885 to lead the fight against British colonial rule and for Indian independence. India has been in power for a long time after independence, and it split twice in 1969 and 1978. In 1978, British Gandhi formed a new party and changed it to its current name. In the 2004 and 2009 Lok Sabha elections, it became the largest party in the parliament twice, but suffered a severe setback in the 2014 Lok Sabha election, winning only 44 seats. There was a slight improvement in the 2019 Lok Sabha election, winning 52 seats. The current chairman is Mallikarjun Kharge.

(3) Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam: Founded in September 1949, it is a regional political party in Tamil Nadu. The main political force is in Tamil Nadu and the local government. The third-largest party in the 2019 Lok Sabha election, the current party chairman is MK Stalin.

(4) Trinamul Congress Party: Established in January 1998, the main political force is in West Bengal, mainly representing the interests of the middle and lower classes. The fourth-largest party in the 2019 Lok Sabha election. The current party chairman is Mamata Banerjee.

(5) Communist Party of India (Marxist) (Communist Party of India (Marxist)): referred to as the Communist Party of India (M). In 1964, the faction represented by Sundaraya and Nambudiribad was established after splitting from the Communist Party of India. With 814,000 members (2002), it is the largest left-wing party in India. It has been in power in West Bengal for a long time and ended his 34-year ruling in the state in May 2011. The current general secretary is Sitaram Yechury.

1.	政党	Zhèngdǎng	Political party
2.	印度国民大会党	yìndù guómín dàhuì dǎng	Indian national congress party
3.	(英迪拉·甘地派)	(yīng dí lā· gāndìpài)	Indira Gandhi group
4.	国大党(英)	guó dà dǎng (yīng)	Congress (I)
5.	通常	tōngcháng	Customarily, usually
6.	反对	fǎnduì	Oppose
7.	争取	zhēngqǔ	Strive for
8.	斗争	dòuzhēng	Battle, struggle
9.	分裂	fēnliè	Split, divide
10.	组建	zǔjiàn	Compose, form
11.	印度人民党	yìn duó rénmin dǎng	Bhartiya Janata Party (BJP)
12.	前身	qiánshēn	Predecessor, prelife
13.	印度人民同盟	yìn duó rénmin tóngméng	Indian people's alliance
14.	印度教教徒	yìndù jiào jiàotú	Followers of Hindu religion
15.	势力	shìlì	Influence
16.	城镇	chéngzhèn	Town
17.	商人	shāngrén	Businessman
18.	利益	lìyì	Interests
19.	强烈	qiángliè	Strong
20.	民族主义	mínzú zhǔyì	Nationalism
21.	教派主义	jiàopài zhǔyì	Sectarianism
22.	色彩	sècǎi	Colour
23.	失利	shīlì	Give ground

24.	在野党	zài yědǎng	Opposition party
25.	印度共产党	yìndù gòngchǎndǎng	CPI
26.	马克思主义	mǎkèsī zhǔyì	Marxism
27.	印共（马）	yìn gòng (mǎ)	CPI (M)
28.	左翼政党	zuǒyì zhèngdǎng	Leftwing political party
29.	西孟加拉邦	xī mèngjiālā bāng	West Bengal state
30.	主席	zhǔxí	Chairman
31.	仍	réng	Still, yet
32.	沿用	yányòng	Continue to use, follow
33.	分歧	fēnqí	Difference
34.	开除出党	kāichú chū dǎng	Dismiss from the party

第十课 印度经济

马哈拉施特拉邦的孟买是印度的金融中心. 货币印度卢比 (INR) (₹) = 100 派沙

财政年度 4月1日至3月31日

贸易组织 世界贸易组织 (WTO), 南亚自由贸易区 (SAFTA), 金砖国家 (BRICS), 二十国集团 (G20) 和其它统计数据

国内生产总值 2.946兆美元 (国际汇率, 2024年)

13.17 兆美元 (购买力平价, 2024年)

- 排名: 第5名 (国际汇率) / 购买力平价: 第3名

- 增长率: 8.9% (2021-22年度)

Mǎ hā lā shī tè lā bāng de mèngmǎi shì yīndù de jīnróng zhōngxīn. Huòbì yīndù lú bǐ (INR)

(₹)= 100 pài shā

cáizhèng niándù 4 yuè 1 rì zhì 3 yuè 31 rì

màoyì zǔzhī shìjiè màoyì zǔzhī (WTO), nányà zìyóu màoyì qū (SAFTA), jīn zhuān guójiā (BRICS), èrshí guó jítuán (G20)

hé qítā tǒngjìshùjù

guónèi shēngchǎn zǒng zhí

2.946 Zhào měiyuán (guóji huìlǜ, 2024 nián)

13.17 Zhào měiyuán (gòumǎilì píngjià, 2024 nián)

- páimíng: Dì 5 míng (guóji huìlǜ)/gòumǎilì píngjià: Dì 3 míng

- zēngzhǎng lǜ: 8.9%(2021-22 Niándù)

Indian economy

Mumbai in Maharashtra is the financial capital of India. Currency Indian Rupee (INR)

(₹) = 100 paisa

Financial year: April 1 to March 31

Trade organizations: World Trade Organization (WTO), South Asian Free Trade Area (SAFTA), BRICS, Group of Twenty (G20) and others

Statistics:

GDP:

\$2.946 trillion (international exchange rate, 2024)

\$13.17 trillion (PPP, 2024)

- Rank: 5th (international exchange rate)/PPP: 3rd

- Growth rate: 8.9% (2021-22)

印度经济是全球成长最快的新兴经济体之一、世界十大经济体之一。以IMF公布的全球购买力平价 (PPP) 数据, 印度是世界第三大经济体。以美元作为货币单位的GDP计算, 印度是世界第五大经济体, 并且一直保持著高速度增长。许多专家预测2050年印度将会成为仅次于中国的经济体, 并且与美国经济总量相等。自21世纪初以来, 印度的GDP年平均成长率为6%至7%, 印度在2014/15财政年度的GDP增长达7.3%, 是成长最快的世界主要经济体。

印度经济产业多元化, 涵盖农业、手工艺、纺织以至服务业。虽然印度三分二人口仍然直接或间接依靠农业维生, 后来服务业日益重要, 占国内生产总值的55.6%, 是增长最迅速的部门。印度凭借资讯科技及大量受过教育并懂得英语的青年, 发展成为全球企业将客户服务和技术支援等“后勤工序”外判的中心。印度成为软体及金融技术人员的“输出国”, 其他行业如制造业、制药、生物科技、电讯、造船、航空和旅游的发展潜力也十分庞大。

2019年, 印度的十大贸易伙伴包括美国, 中国, 德国, 南韩, 瑞士, 香港, 阿联酋, 沙乌地阿拉伯和伊拉克等。在2018-19财年, 印度的外国直接投资 (FDI) 为644亿美元。印度与多国缔结有自由贸易协定, 包括日本, 东盟, 南韩和SAFTA等。

自英独立后, 印度奉行社会主义的经济路线, 严格限制私营公司、对外贸易和外来投资。冷战后期, 印度开放市场, 实施经济改革, 减少政府对贸易和投资的控制。印度政府将公营机构私营化以及开放行业予私营和外资参与。

印度可能在2023年间成为人口最多的国家, 预计将在2030年代拥有红利, 潜力巨大, 不过其人均收入依然处于发展中国家水平。庞大的人口也使印度面对贫富悬殊。印度是世界第四大汽车工业国, 并且是世界上增长最快的电子商务市场之一。印度矿业贡献了该国工业GDP的11%和GDP的2.5%。印度是世界第二大钢铁产业国, 第二大煤炭产业国, 第二大水泥产业国和发电量第三大的国家。

Yīndù jīngjì shì quánqiú chéngzhǎng zuì kuài de xīnxīng jīngjì tǐ zhī yī, shìjiè shí dà jīngjì tǐ zhī yī. Yǐ IMF gōngbù de quánqiú

gòumǎili píngjià (PPP) shùjù, yìndù shì shìjiè dì sān dà jīngjì tǐ. Yǐ měiyuán zuòwéi huòbì dānwèi de GDP jìsuàn, yìndù shì shìjiè dì wǔ dà jīngjì tǐ, bǐngqiě yǐzhí bǎochízhe gāo sùdù zēngzhǎng. Xǔduō zhuānjiā yùcè 2050 nián yìndù jiāng huì chéngwéi jīn cì yú zhōngguó de jīngjì tǐ, bǐngqiě yǔ měiguó jīngjì zǒng liàng xiāngděng. Zì 21 shìjì chū yǐlái, yìndù de GDP nián píngjūn chéngzhǎng lǜ wèi 6%zhì 7%, yìndù zài 2014/15 cáizhèng niándù de GDP zēngzhǎng dá 7.3%, Shì chéngzhǎng zuì kuài de shìjiè zhǔyào jīngjì tǐ.

Yìndù jīngjì chǎnyè duōyuán huà, hángài nóngyè, shōugōngyì, fǎngzhī yǐzhì fúwù yè. Suǐrán yìndù sān fēn èr rénkǒu réngǎn zhíjiē huò jiànjiē yīkào nóngyè wéi shēng, hòulái fúwù yè rìyì zhòngyào, zhàn guónèi shēngchǎn zǒng zhí de 55.6%, Shì zēngzhǎng zuì xùnsù de bùmén. Yìndù píngjiè zīxùn kējì jí dàliàng shòuguò jiàoyù bìng dǒngdé yīngyǔ de qīngnián, fāzhǎn chéngwéi quánqiú qīyè jiāng kèhù fúwù hé jìshù zhīyuán děng “hòuqín gōngxù” wài pàn de zhōngxīn. Yìndù chéngwéi ruǎntǐ jí jīnróng jìshù rényuán de “shūchū guó”, qítā hángyè rú zhìzào yè, zhìyào, shēngwù kējì, diànxùn, zàochuán, hángkōng hé lǚyóu de fā zhǎn qiánli yě shífēn pángdà.

2019 Nián, yìndù de shí dà mào yì huòbàn bāokuò měiguó, zhongguo, déguó, nánhán, ruìshì, xiānggǎng, āliánqiú, shā wū dì ālābó hé yīlākè děng. Zài 2018-19 cái nián, yìndù de wàiguó zhíjiē tóuzī (FDI) wèi 644 yì měiyuán. Yìndù yǔ duōguó dìjié yǒu zìyóu mào yì xiédìng, bāokuò ribēn, dōngméng, nánhán hé SAFTA děng.

Zì yīng dúlì hòu, yìndù fèngxíng shèhuì zhǔyì de jīngjì lùxiàn, yángé xiànzhi sīyíng gōngsī, duìwài mào yì hé wàilái tóuzī. Lěngzhàn hòuqī, yìndù kāifāng shìchǎng, shíshì jīngjì gǎigé, jiǎnshǎo zhèngfǔ duì mào yì hé tóuzī de kòngzhì. Yìndù zhèngfǔ jiāng gōngyíng jīgòu sīyíng huà yǐjī kāifāng hángyè yǔ sīyíng hé wàizī cānyù.

Yìndù kěnéng zài 2023 niánjiān chéngwéi rénkǒu zuìduō de guójiā, yùjì jiàng zài 2030 niándài yǒngyǒu rénkǒu hónglì, qiánli jùdà, bùguò qí rénjūn shòurú yīrán chǔyú fāzhǎn zhōng guójiā shuǐpíng. Pángdà de rénkǒu yě shì yìndù miàn duì pín fù xuánshū. Yìndù shì shìjiè dì sì dà qìchē gōngyèguó, bǐngqiě shì shìjiè shàng zēngzhǎng zuì kuài de diànzǐ shāngwù shìchǎng zhī yī. Yìndù kuàngyè gòngxiànle gāi guó gōngyè GDP de 11%hé GDP de 2.5%. Yìndù shì shìjiè dì èr dà gāngtiě chǎnyè guó, dì èr dà mèitán chǎnyè guó, dì èr dà shuǐní chǎnyè guó hé fādiàn liàng dì sān dà de guójiā.

The Indian economy is one of the fastest-growing emerging economies in the world and one of the top ten economies in the world. Based on global purchasing power parity (PPP) data released by the IMF, India is the third-largest economy in the world. India is the world's fifth-largest economy based on GDP in US dollars and has been growing at a high rate. Many experts predict that by 2050 India will become an economy second only to China and equal to the total economic size of the United States. Since the beginning of the 21st century, India's GDP has grown at an average annual rate of 6% to 7%. India's GDP growth in the 2014/15 fiscal year reached 7.3%, making it the fastest-growing major economy in the world.

India's economic industry is diversified, covering agriculture, handicrafts, textiles and services. Although two-thirds of India's population still relies directly or indirectly on agriculture for their livelihood, the service industry has become increasingly important, accounting for 55.6% of GDP and is the fastest growing sector. With information technology and a large number of educated young people who understand English, India has developed into a center for global companies to outsource "back-office processes" such as customer service and technical support. India has become an "exporting country" for software and financial technology personnel. The development potential of other industries such as manufacturing, pharmaceuticals, biotechnology, telecommunications, shipbuilding, aviation and tourism is also huge.

In 2019, India's top ten trading partners included the United States, China, Germany, South Korea, Switzerland, Hong Kong, the United Arab Emirates, Saudi Arabia and Iraq. In the financial year 2018-19, foreign direct investment (FDI) in India was \$64.4 billion. India has concluded free trade agreements with many countries, including Japan, ASEAN, South Korea and SAFTA.

Since independence from Britain, India has pursued a socialist economic line and strictly restricted private companies, foreign trade and foreign investment. In the late Cold War, India opened its market, implemented economic reforms, and reduced government control over trade and investment. The Indian government has privatized public institutions and opened up industries to private and foreign investment.

India may become the most populous country in 2023 and is expected to have a demographic dividend in the 2030s, with huge potential. However, its per capita income is still at the level of developing countries. A huge population also makes India face a great disparity between rich and poor. India is the world's fourth-largest automotive industry and one of the world's fastest-growing e-commerce markets. Indian mining contributes 11% of the country's industrial GDP and 2.5% of its GDP. India is the world's second largest steel industry, the second largest coal industry, the second largest cement industry and the third largest power generation country.

1.	经济	Jīngjì	Economy

2.	农业	nóngyè	Agriculture
3.	严重	yánzhòng	Serious
4.	缺粮	quē liáng	Be short of grain
5.	基本自给	jīběn zìgěi	Basic self sufficiency
6.	形成	xíngchéng	Come into being
7.	完整	wánzhěng	Full, integrity
8.	体系	tǐxì	System
9.	服务业	fúwù yè	Service industry
10.	迅速	xùnsù	Rapid
11.	比重	bǐzhòng	Proportion
12.	逐年	zhúnián	Year by year
13.	上升	shàngshēng	Ascend
14.	全球	quánqiú	Global
15.	软件	ruǎnjiàn	Software
16.	金融	jīnróng	Finance
17.	实行	shíxíng	Implement, carry out
18.	全面	quánmiàn	All out
19.	放松	fàngsōng	Relax, slacken, loosen
20.	外贸	wàimào	External trade
21.	部门	bùmén	Department, branch
22.	管制	guǎnzhi	Put under surveillance
23.	增长	zēngzhǎng	Grow
24.	九五计划	jiǔwǔ jìhuà	9 th five-year plan
25.	阶段	jiēduàn	Phase
26.	出台	chūtái	Come on
27.	深化	shēnhuà	Deepen
28.	加速	jiāsù	Accelerate
29.	国有企业	guóyǒu qīyè	State-owned enterprises
30.	私有化	sīyǒu huà	Privatization
31.	包括.. 在内的	bāokuò.. Zài nèi de	Including
32.	农产品	nóngchǎnpǐn	Agricultural product
33.	生活必需品	shēnghuó bìxūpǐn	Necessities of life
34.	销售	xiāoshòu	Sell
35.	自由化	zìyóu huà	Making free
36.	投资环境	tóuzī huánjìng	Environment for investment
37.	精简	jīngjiǎn	Simplify, cut, reduce
38.	削减	xuējiǎn	Cut, scissor
39.	财政赤字	cáizhèng chizì	Financial deficit
40.	分别	fēnbié	Separately
41.	高于	gāo yú	Higher than
42.	国民收入	guómín shōurù	National income
43.	基础设施建设	jīchǔ shèshī jiànshè	Infrastructure building
44.	缓慢	huǎnmàn	Slow, tardiness
45.	通胀	tōng péng	Inflation
46.	压力	yālì	Pressure
47.	加大	jiā dà	Increase

48.	引人注目	yǐn rén zhù mù	Catch sb's eyes
49.	天体物理	tiān tǐ wù lǐ	Metaphysics
50.	空间技术	kōng jiān jì shù	Space technology
51.	分子生物	fēn zǐ shēng wù	Molecular biology
52.	电子技术	diàn zǐ jì shù	Electronic technology
53.	高科技	gāo kē jì	Hi-tech
54.	领域	lǐng yù	Field, arena
55.	水平	shuǐ píng	Level
56.	东盟	dōng méng	ASEAN
57.	《货物贸易协议》	“huò wù mào yì xié yì”	Commodity trade agreement
58.	交易产品	jiāo yì chān pǐn	Trade product
59.	取消	qǔ xiāo	Cancel
60.	进口关税	jìn kǒu guān shuì	Import custom
61.	货币	huò bì	Currency
62.	印度卢比	yīn dù lú bǐ	Indian rupee
63.	派士	pài shì	Paisa

第十一课 资源

资源丰富，拥有云母、煤、铁、铝、铬、锰、锌、铜、铅、磷酸盐、黄金、石油等丰富的矿产资源近 1 0 0 种，其中云母产量和储量世界第一，煤和重晶石产量居世界第三。森林 6 7.8 3 万平方公里，覆盖率为 2 0.6 4 %。

工业：印度工业已形成较为完整的体系，自给能力较强。主要工业包括纺织、食品加工、化工、制药、钢铁、水泥、采矿、石油和机械等。近年，印度政府实行全面经济改革，经济发展速度 引人注目。目前，印度在天体物理、空间技术、分子生物、电子技术等高科技领域都已达到较高水平。

农业 印度是一个农业大国，拥有世界十分之一的可耕地，面积约 1.6 亿公顷，人均 0.1 7 公顷，是世界上最大的粮食生产国之一。主要农产品有稻米、小麦、油料、甘蔗、茶叶、棉花和黄麻等。印度还是世界第一大产奶国，也是世界重要的产棉国和产茶国。牛、山羊、绵羊、水牛头数居世界第一。欧盟报告：印度已成为农产品净出口国。

农村人口占总人口 7 2 %。由于投资乏力、化肥使用不合理等因素，近年来农业发展缓慢。

Zīyuán

Zīyuán fēngfù, yǒngyǒu yúnmǔ, méi, tiě, lǚ, gè, měng, xīn, tóng, qiān, lín suān yán, huángjīn, shíyóu děng fēngfù de kuàngchǎn zīyuán jìn 100 zhǒng, qízhōng yúnmǔ chǎnliàng hé chùliàng shìjiè dì yī, méi hé zhòng jīng shí chǎnliàng jū shìjiè dì sān. Sēnlín 67.83 Wàn píngfāng gōnglǐ, fùgài lǜ wéi 20.64%. Gōngyè: Yīndù gōngyè yǐ xíngchéng jiàowéi wánzhěng de tǐxì, zìgěi nénglì jiào qiáng. Zhǔyào gōngyè bāokuò fǎngzhī, shípǐn jiāgōng, huàgōng, zhìyào, gāngtiě, shuǐní, cǎikuàng, shíyóu hé jīxié děng. Jīnnián, yīndù zhèngfǔ shíxíng quánmiànjīngjì gǎigé, jīngjì fāzhǎn sùdù yǐn rén zhù mù. Mùqián, yīndù zài tiāntǐ wùlǐ, kōngjiān jìshù, fēnzǐ shēngwù, diànzǐ jìshù děng gāo kējì lǐngyù dōu yǐ dá dào jiào gāo shuǐpíng.

Nóngyè

Yīndù shì yīgè nóngyè dàguó, yǒngyǒu shìjiè shí fēn zhī yī de kě gēngdì, miàn jī yuē 1.6 Yì gōngqīng, rénjūn 0.17 Gōngqīng, shì shìjiè shàng zuìdà de liángshí shēngchǎn guózhī yī. Zhǔyào nóngchǎnpǐn yǒu dàomǐ, xiǎomài, yóuliào, gānzhe, chàyè, miánhuā hé huángmá děng. Yīndù háishi shìjiè dì yī dà chǎn nǎi guó, yěshì shìjiè zhòngyào de chǎn mián guó hé chǎn chá guó. Niú, shānyáng, miányáng, shuǐ niútóu shù jū shìjiè dì yī. Ōuméng bàogào: Yīndù yǐ chéngwéi nóngchǎnpǐn jìng chūkǒu guó. Nóngcūn rénǒu zhàn zǒng rénǒu 72%. Yóuyú tóuzī fǎlì, huàféi shǐyòng bù héilǐ děng yīnsù, jīnnián lái nóngyè fāzhǎn huǎnmàn.

Resources

India is rich in resources, it has nearly 100 kinds of rich mineral resources such as mica, coal, iron, aluminium, chromium, manganese, zinc, copper, lead, phosphate, gold, oil, etc. Among them, the output and reserves of mica are the first in the world, and coal and barytes are the largest in the world. Stone production ranks third in the world. Forests are 678,300 square kilometres, with a coverage rate of 20.64%.

Industry: India's industry has formed a relatively complete system with strong self-sufficiency. Major industries include textiles, food processing, chemicals, pharmaceuticals, steel, cement, mining, petroleum and machinery. In

recent years, the Indian government has implemented comprehensive economic reforms, and the speed of economic development has been remarkable. At present, India has reached a high level in high-tech fields such as astrophysics, space technology, molecular biology, and electronic technology.

Agriculture

India is a big agricultural country, with one-tenth of the world's arable land, an area of about 160 million hectares, 0.17 hectares per capita, and is one of the world's largest food producers. The main agricultural products are rice, wheat, oilseeds, sugarcane, tea, cotton and jute. India is also the world's largest milk-producing country, as well as an important cotton and tea-producing country in the world. The number of cattle, goats, sheep and buffaloes ranks first in the world. EU report: India has become a net exporter of agricultural products.

The rural population accounts for 72% of the total population. Due to factors such as weak investment and unreasonable use of chemical fertilizers, agricultural development has been slow in recent years.

1.	资源	Zīyuán	Resources
2.	丰富	fēngfù	Rich
3.	云母	yúnmǔ	Mica
4.	煤	méi	Coal
5.	铁	tiě	Iron
6.	铝	lǚ	Aluminium
7.	铬	gè	Chromium
8.	锰	měng	Magnese
9.	锌	xīn	Zinc
10.	铜	tóng	Copper
11.	铅	qiān	Lead
12.	磷酸盐	lín suān yán	Phosphate
13.	黄金	huáng jīn	Gold
14.	石油	shí yóu	Petroleum
15.	矿产	kuàng chǎn	Minerals
16.	储量	chú liàng	Reserves
17.	重晶石	zhòng jīng shí	Barytes
18.	产量	chǎn liàng	Output
19.	森林	sēn lín	Forest
20.	覆盖率	fù gài lǜ	Coverage
21.	工业	gōng yè	Industry
22.	完整	wán zhěng	Full, integrity
23.	体系	tǐ xì	System
24.	自给能力	zì gěi néng lì	Self support ability
25.	纺织	fǎng zhī	Textile
26.	食品加工	shí pǐn jiā gōng	Food processing
27.	化工	huà gōng	Chemical industry
28.	制药	zhì yào	Pharmacy
29.	钢铁	gāng tiě	Steel
30.	水泥	shuǐ ní	Cement
31.	采矿	cǎi kuàng	Mining
32.	机械	jī xiè	Machinery
33.	引人注目	yǐn rén zhù mù	Catch sb's eyes
34.	天体物理	tiān tǐ wù lǐ	Celestial bodies physics
35.	空间技术	kōng jiān jì shù	Space technology
36.	分子生物	fēn zǐ shēng wù	Molecular biology
37.	电子技术	diàn zǐ jì shù	Electronics technology
38.	高科技	gāo kē jì	High tech
39.	领域	lǐng yù	Field

40.	农业	nóngyè	Agriculture
41.	可耕地	kě gēngdì	Arable land
42.	公顷	gōngqīng	Hectare
43.	人均	rénjūn	Per capita
44.	粮食	liángshí	Grains
45.	农产品	nóngchǎnpǐn	Agro product
46.	稻米	dàomǐ	Paddy
47.	小麦	xiǎomài	Wheat
48.	油料	yóuliào	Vegetable oil
49.	甘蔗	gānzhè	Sugarcane
50.	茶叶	cháyè	Tea leave
51.	棉花	miánhuā	Cotton
52.	黄麻	huángmá	Jute
53.	产奶国	chǎn nǎi guó	Milk producing country
54.	牛	niú	Ox
55.	山羊	shānyáng	Goat
56.	绵羊	miányáng	Sheep
57.	水牛	shuǐ niú	Buffalo
58.	头数	tóu shù	Number
59.	欧盟	ōuméng	European union
60.	农村投资	nóngcūn tóuzī	Rural investment
61.	不合理	bù hélǐ	Irrationality
62.	因素	yīnsù	Factor

第十二课

印度的旅游业

作者：伊普西塔·亚达夫

印度地理多样，文化多样，具有独特的体验，是国际旅游支出领先的国家之一。根据 IBEF 关于旅游和酒店业增长的报告，旅游业是印度最大的两个行业，对该国 GDP 的贡献总计约为 1780 亿美元。该国的海岸线上分布着几处迷人的海滩。预计到 2027 财年，印度旅游市场规模将达到 1250 亿美元。预计到 2028 年国际游客人数将达到 3050 万人次。与其他多个行业一样，十多年来，印度企业一直将技术作为推动该行业增长的关键因素。从搜索引擎和全球分销系统 (GDS) 服务到在线旅行社，旅游业已经见证了重大创新，并且还有更多创新空间。旅游和酒店公司技术导向型增长的主要驱动力是采用云解决方案和开发软件即服务 (SaaS) 技术。

印度是一个巨大的旅游市场。它提供多元化的利基旅游产品组合——邮轮、探险、医疗、保健、体育、会奖旅游、生态旅游、电影、乡村和宗教旅游。印度被公认为国内外游客的精神旅游目的地。世界经济论坛发布的《2019年旅游业竞争力报告》中印度排名第34位。

根据 Startup India 的数据，旅行和旅游业有近 1500 家初创公司，其中包括提供平台的公司，这些平台可以规划和预订旅行服务，或协助旅行服务提供商提供技术解决方案。这包括提供服务的公司，使用户能够通过在线门户发现和预订旅行相关服务，例如交通、住宿、设施管理、旅游、票务和活动。

旅游领域为崭露头角的企业家提供了大量机会。下面列出了其中一些：

虚拟技术 - 在印度，旅游和酒店业对虚拟技术的使用虽然日益增多，但仍然有限。旅游部通过其“Dekho Apna Desh”网络研讨会已经开始提供虚拟旅游、虚拟狩猎、博物馆和美术馆参观以及展览。因此，虚拟旅游的下一步可能是与国际大学合作，特别是历史和建筑系。印度还可能利用实时虚拟宗教旅游渠道，为因旅行禁令而无法出行的国际朝圣者提供服务。例如，比哈尔邦的菩提伽耶是重要的佛教朝圣地，每年吸引大量游客。可以考虑对这些重要朝圣目的地的日常仪式进行直播。此外，这也将为中期国际旅游业开放奠定基础，类似瑞士的“现在梦想，以后旅行”。

积极营销 - 广告和传播信息至关重要。可以采取积极的在线和其他营销策略来推广印度作为必游之地。无论是广播活动“不可思议的印度”举办旅游研讨会或为印度提供拍摄场地，以促进外国电影在印度的制作。积极的营销对于获得良好的关注和倾听至关重要。考虑到疫情引发的担忧，印度或将考虑为游客提供“清洁印度”卫生标准排名，并将其年度“清洁印度”调查再推进一步。

创造体验 - 世界上大多数旅游目的地都是由精心策划的体验组成的。无论是植物园、建筑纪念碑、回水区还是喜马拉雅山，一个地方吸引游客的潜力都可以即兴发挥，而不是依赖其自然美景。该行业的公共和私人参与者需要将目的地视为体验，而不仅仅是观光点。例如，可以采取的措施让旅游更加丰富，包括导游、儿童活动、美食之旅、游客与当地文化的互动等。

特色旅游区 - 由于存在太多的差异化点，印度旅游业应该专注于如何为所有类别、所有预算的每个人提供一些服务，从销售定制体验、豪华水疗服务、珍稀动物保护区、宗教朝圣之旅到极限喜马拉雅之旅。穷困的印度、奢华的印度、皇家的印度、城市的印度、普通人的印度、历史悠久的印度等等，都可以探索。

可持续解决方案 - 旅游业可以通过场地的可用性以及在沿海地区和野生动物园建设生态友好型酒店的政策来改变。一种“有意识的奢华”意识，体现在越来越多的小型私密酒店——宫殿、种植园休养所和丛林小屋——这些酒店的精神是通过变革性旅行来定义的，这种旅行可以教育、丰富和鼓励人们在需要时进行数字排毒，但在需要时允许连接。推动旅游业可持续发展是关键，所有利益相关者现在必须朝这个方向采取积极行动。

然而，该行业面临一些挑战，例如缺乏适当的基础设施，如道路、电力、供水、污水处理和电信、通往新目的地的接入和连接以及探索利基市场。其他问题包括缺乏足够的营销和促销、与签证和内部许可证相关的监管问题、人力资源、服务水平、税收和安全。

为了应对这些挑战，并意识到印度在旅游业的潜力后，印度政府采取了多项措施，将印度打造为全球旅游中心。印度总理纳伦德拉·莫迪在红堡发表独立演讲时呼吁人们到 2022 年游览印度 15 个国内旅游目的地，以促进旅游业。这 2022 年国家旅游政策草案还致力于将旅游业定位为国家优先事项，提高旅游目的地的竞争力，并创建世界一流的基础设施。

截至 2023 年 4 月 17 日，旅游业内获得 DPIIT 认可的初创企业约有 1497 家。这些获认可的初创企业遍布全国 262 个地区。他们雇佣了约 13,919 名员工。该领域获得认可的初创企业数量最多的是德里，约有 222 家。该领域

约 58% 的初创企业来自二线和三线城市。

初创企业成为焦点:

Param People Infotech Solutions Private Limited: 2020 年国家创业奖得主 Param People Infotech 与 MakeMyTrip、Zoomcar、本田、博世、卡纳塔克邦旅游局和 Bharat Petroleum 合作, 为旅行者开发了一个完整的公路旅行支持平台。‘Highway delite 是一个数字化连接的高速公路路边便利设施平台, 可帮助游客精确规划行程。

Villotalle 技术私人有限公司: 2021 年全国创业奖得主 Villotalle 是一家科技初创公司, 专注于乡村目的地和体验式旅游, 吸引当地社区参与。Villotalle 利用技术, 与乡村寄宿家庭和乡村服务提供商(如房主、徒步旅行者、农民、工匠、导游、乡村厨师等)合作, 帮助他们改进产品销售、服务质量、客户处理、客户沟通和交付标准, 并帮助他们获得业务。

Ucurve 商业服务私人有限公司: 2021 年国家创业奖得主 udChalo 通过网站为国防人员提供旅行服务 www.udchalo.com, 应用平台和 70 多个线下售票处, 为 280 多万国防人员、退伍军人及其家属提供服务。udChalo 的售票处由印度武装部队社区的退伍军人/Veer Naris/家属经营。

除了政府计划外, 包括孵化器和加速器在内的利益相关者也支持旅游业的初创企业。例如, CII EIMA、NSCREL IIMB 是支持该行业初创企业的孵化器。此外, 还有印度政府支持的 PRASHAD、Swadesh Darshan、SAATHI、Dekho Apna Desh 和 NIDHI 等计划。

总之, 旅游业是印度经济的重要贡献者, 为数百万人提供了就业机会。凭借正确的支持生态系统, 印度的食品加工工业有潜力成为全球市场的主要参与者。

印度的旅游业和服务业也比较发达, 在国民经济中占有相当的比例。旅游业是印度政府重点发展产业, 也是重要就业部门, 提供两千多万个岗位。入境旅游人数近年来逐年递增, 旅游收入不断增加。主要旅游点有阿格拉、德里、斋浦尔、昌迪加尔、那烂陀、迈索尔、果阿、海德拉巴、特里凡特琅等。

交通运输 铁路是印度最大的国营部门, 铁路是印度最大的国营部门, 亦为主要运输手段, 总长度居亚洲第一位, 世界第四位。近年来, 公路运输发展较快, 已承担了全国 85% 的客运量和 70% 的货运量, 全国日平均客运量逾 6000 万人次, 为世界最大的公路网之一。水运方面, 主要港口有 12 个, 包括孟买、加尔各答、钦奈(原名马德拉斯)、科钦、果阿等, 承担 3/4 货运量。孟买为最大港口, 1/5 海运和 1/2 集装箱运输经此港。中小港口 200 个。内陆可航行河道总长 1.4 万公里, 但实际使用不足 30%。有 83 家海运公司, 其中 19 家承担远洋运输业务, 49 家承担近海运输业务, 其余两兼。海运能力居世界第 18 位。空运方面, 经营定期航班的航空公司共 14 家, 包括印度国际航空公司、印度航空公司等, 有飞机 334 架。专营非定期航班的空运企业 65 家, 飞机 201 架。航线通达各大洲主要城市。国际机场

5 个, 分别位于德里、孟买、加尔各答、钦奈和特里凡特琅。国内机场 92 个。

Yìndù de lǚyóu yè

Zuòzhě: Yī pǔ xīǎ·yà dá fū

Yìndù dìlǐ duōyàng, wénhuà duōyàng, jùyǒu dútiè de tīyàn, shì guójì lǚyóu zhīchū língxiān de guójiā zhī yī. Gēnjù IBEF guānyú lǚyóu hé jiùdiàn yè zēngzhǎng de bàogào, lǚyóu yè shì yìndù zuìdà de liǎng gè hángyè, duì gāi guó GDP de gòngxiàn zǒngjì yuē wèi 1780 yì měiyuán. Gāi guó dì hǎi'ānxiàn shàng fēnbùzhe jǐ chù mǐrén dì hǎitān. Yùjì dào 2027 cái nián, yìndù lǚyóu shìchǎng guīmó jiāng dádào 1250 yì měiyuán. Yùjì dào 2028 nián guójì yóukè rénshù jiāng dádào 3050 wàn réncì. Yǔ qítā duō gè hángyè yīyàng, shí duō nián lái, yìndù qīyè yīzhí jiāng jìshù zuòwéi tuīdòng gāi hángyè zēngzhǎng de guānjiàn yīnsù. Cóng sōusuǒ yǐnqíng hé quánqiú fēnxiāo xìtǒng (GDS) fúwù dào zàixiàn lǚxíngshè, lǚyóu yè yǐjīng jiànzhèngle zhòngdà chuàngxīn, bìngqiě hái yǒu gèng duō chuàngxīn kōngjiān. Lǚyóu hé jiùdiàn gōngsī jìshù dàoxiàng xíng zēngzhǎng de zhǔyào qūdòng lì shì cǎiyòng yún jiějué fāng'àn hé kāifā ruǎnjiàn jí fúwù (SaaS) jìshù.

Yìndù shì yīgè jùdà de lǚyóu shìchǎng. Tā tígōng duōyuán huà de lì jī lǚyóu chǎnpǐn zǔhé——yóulún, tànxiǎn, yīliáo, bǎojiàn, tiyù, huì jiāng lǚyóu, shēngtài lǚyóu, diànyǐng, xiāngcūn hé zōngjiào lǚyóu. Yìndù bèi gōnggrèn wéi guónèi wài yóukè de jīngshén lǚyóu mùdì de. Shìjiè jīngjì lùntán fābù de “2019 nián lǚyóu yè jīngzhēng lì bàogào” zhōng yìndù páimíng dì 34 wèi.

Gēnjù Startup India de shùjù, lǚxíng hé lǚyóu yè yǒu jìn 1500 jiā chūchuàng gōngsī, qízhōng bāokuò tígōng píngtái de gōngsī, zhèxiē píngtái kěyǐ guīhuà hé yùdìng lǚxíng fúwù, huò xiézhù lǚxíng fúwù tígōng shāng tígōng jìshù jiějué fāng'àn. Zhè bāokuò tígōng fúwù de gōngsī, shìyòngghù nénggòu tōngguò zàixiàn ménhù fāxiàn hé yùdìng lǚxíng xiāngguān fúwù, lǐrú jiāotōng, zhùsù, shèshì guǎnlǐ, lǚyóu, piàowù hé huódòng.

Lǚyóu língyù wèi zhānlùtóujiào de qīyè jiā tíngōnglè dàliàng jīhuì. Xiàmiàn liè chūle qízhōng yīxiē:

Xūnǐ jìshù - zài yìndù, lǚyóu hé jiùdiàn yè duì xūnǐ jìshù de shǐ yòng suīrán rìyì zēngduō, dàn réngrán yǒuxiàn. Lǚyóu bù tōngguò qí “Dekho Apna Desh” wǎngluò yántǎo huì yǐjīng kāishǐ tíngōng xūnǐ lǚyóu, xūnǐ shòuliè, bówùguǎn hé měishù guǎn cāngguān yǐjī zhǎnlǎn. Yīncǐ, xūnǐ lǚyóu de xià yībù kěnéng shì yǔ guójià dàxué hézuò, tèbié shì lìshǐ hé jiànzhù xī. Yìndù hái kěnéng liyòng shíshí xūnǐ zōngjiào lǚyóu qúdào, wéi yīn lǚxíng jìnlǐng ér wúfǎ chūxíng de guójià cháoshèng zhě tíngōng fúwù. Lǐrú, bǐ hā ěr bāng de pútí jiāyè shì zhōngyào de fójiào cháoshèng dì, měinián xīyīn dàliàng yóukè. Kěyǐ kǎolǔ duì zhèxiē zhōngyào cháoshèng mùdì dì de rícháng yìshì jìnxíng zhíbō. Cǐwài, zhè yě jiāng wéi zhōngqí guójià lǚyóu yè kāifāng diǎndìng jīchǔ, lèisi ruìshì dì “xiànzài mèngxiāng, yǐhòu lǚxíng”.

Jījī yíngxiāo - guǎnggào hé chuánbō xīnxī zhì guān zhōngyào. Kěyǐ cǎiqǔ jījī de zàixiàn hé qítā yíngxiāo cèlǜe lái tuīguāng yìndù zuòwéi bì yóu zhī dì. Wúlùn shì guǎngbō huódòng ‘bùkěsīyì de yìndù’ jǔbàn lǚyóu yántǎo huì huò wéi yìndù tíngōng pāishè chǎngdì, yǐ cùjìn wàiguó diànyǐng zài yìndù de zhìzuò. Jījī de yíngxiāo duìyú huòdé liánghǎo de guānzhù hé qīngtīng zhì guān zhōngyào. Kǎolǔ dào yíqíng yǐnfā de dānyōu, yìndù huò jiāng kǎolǔ wéi yóukè tíngōng “qīngjié yìndù” wéishēng biāozhǔn páimíng, bìng jiāng qí niándù “qīngjié yìndù” diào chá zài tuī jìnyībù.

Chuàngzào tǐyàn – shìjiè shàng dà duōshù lǚyóu mùdì de dōu shì yóu jīngxīn cèhuà de tǐyàn zǔchéng de. Wúlùn shì zhíwùyuán, jiànzhù jìniànbēi, huí shuǐ qū háishì xīmǎlāyǎ shān, yīgè dìfāng xīyīn yóukè de qiánli dōu kěyǐjìxíng fāhuī, ér bùshì yīlái qí zìrán měijīng. Gāi hángyè de gōnggòng hé sīrén shēn yù zhè xūyào jiāng mùdì dì shì wéi tǐyàn, ér bùjīn jīn shì guāngguāng diǎn. Lǐrú, kěyǐ cǎiqǔ cuòshī ràng lǚyóu gèngjiā fēngfù, bāokuò dàoyóu, értóng huódòng, měishì zhī lǚ, yóukè yǔ dāngdì wénhuà de huódòng děng.

Tèsè lǚyóu qū - yóuyù cúnzài tài duō de chāyì huà diǎn, yìndù lǚyóu yě yīng gāi zhuānzhù yú rúhé wéi suǒyǒu lèibié, suǒyǒu yùsuàn de měi gèrén tíngōng yīxiē fúwù, cóng xiāoshòu dīngzhì tǐyàn, háohuà shuǐliáo fúwù, zhēnxī dòngwù bǎohù qū, zōngjiào cháoshèng zhī lǚ dào jíxiàn xīmǎlāyǎ zhī lǚ. Qióngkùn de yìndù, shēhuà de yìndù, huángjiā de yìndù, chéngshì de yìndù, pǔtōng rén de yìndù, lìshǐ yōujiù de yìndù děng děng, dōu kěyǐ tànsuǒ.

Kě chíxù jiějué fāng'àn - lǚyóu yě kěyǐ tōngguò chǎngdì de kèyòngxíng yǐjī zài yánhǎi dìqū hé yěshēng dòngwùyuán jiànshè shēngtài yóuhǎo xíng jiùdiàn de zhèngcè lái gǎibiàn. Yī zhǒng “yóuyìshí de shēhuà” yìshì, tìxiànzài yuè lái yuè duō de xiǎoxíng sīmì jiùdiàn——gōngdiàn, zhōngzhí yuán xiūyǎng suǒ hé cónglín xiǎowū——zhèxiē jiùdiàn de jīngshén shì tōngguò biàngé xíng lǚxíng lái dīngyì de, zhè zhǒng lǚxíng kěyǐ jiàoyù, fēngfù hé gǔlì rénmen zài xūyào shí jìnxíng shǔ zì páidú, dàn zài xūyào shí yǔnxù liánjiē. Tuīdòng lǚyóu yě kě chíxù fāzhǎn shì guānjiàn, suǒyǒu liyì xiāngguān zhě xiàn zài bīxū cháo zhège fāngxiàng cǎiqǔ jījī xíngdòng.

Rán'ér, gāi hángyè miànlín yīxiē tiǎozhàn, lǐrú quēfā shìdàng de jīchǔ shèshī, rú dàolù, diànlì, gōngshuǐ, wūshuǐ chǔlǐ hé diànxīn, tōng wǎng xīn mùdì dì de jiē rù hé liánjiē yǐ jí tànsuǒ lì jī shìchǎng. Qítā wèntí bāokuò quēfā zúgòu de yíngxiāo hé cùxiāo, yǔ qiānzèng hé nèibù xūkè zhèng xiāngguān de jiānguǎn wèntí, rénli zīyuán, fúwù shuǐpíng, shuǐshōu hé ānquán.

Wèile yīngduì zhèxiē tiǎozhàn, bìng yìshí dào yìndù zài lǚyóu yè de qiánli hòu, yìndù zhèngfǔ cǎiqǔle duō xiàng cuòshī, jiāng yìndù dǎzào wéi quánqiú lǚyóu zhōngxīn. Yìndù zōnglǐ nà lún dé lǎ-mò dí zài hóngbào fābiào dúlì yǎnjiāng shí hūyǔ rénmen dào 2022 nián yóulán yìndù 15 gè guónèi lǚyóu mùdì de, yǐ cùjìn lǚyóu yè. Zhè 2022 nián guójiā lǚyóu zhèngcè cǎo'àn hái zhīlì yú jiāng lǚyóu yè dīngwèi wéi guójiā yōuxiān shìxiàng, tígāo lǚyóu mùdì dì de jìngzhēng lì, bìng chuàngjiàn shìjiè yīliú de jīchǔ shèshī.

Jiézhì 2023 nián 4 yuè 17 rì, lǚyóu yènèi huòdé DPIIT rènkè de chūchuàng qīyè yuē yǒu 1497 jiā. Zhèxiē huò rènkè de chūchuàng qīyè biānbù quánguó 262 gè dìqū. Tāmen gùtónglè yuē 13,919 míng yuángōng. Gāi língyù huòdé rènkè de chūchuàng qīyè shùliàng zuìduō de shì déli, yuē yǒu 222 jiā. Gāi língyù yuē 58% de chūchuàng qīyè láizi èrxīn hé sānxīn chéngshì.

Chūchuàng qīyè chéngwéi jiāodiǎn:

Param People Infotech Solutions Private Limited: 2020 Nián guójiā chuàngyè jiǎng dézhǔ Param People Infotech yǔ MakeMyTrip, Zoomcar, bēntián, bóshì, kǎ nà tǎ kè bāng lǚyóu jú hé Bharat Petroleum hézuò, wéi lǚxíng zhě kāifāle yīgè wánzhèng de gōnglù lǚxíng zhīchí píngtái. ‘Highway delite shì yīgè shùzì huà liánjiē de gāosù gōnglù lù biān biànlì shèshī píngtái, kè bāngzhù yóukè jīngquè guīhuà xíngchéng.

Villotalle jìshù sīrén yōuxiàn gōngsī: 2021 Nián quánguó chuàngyè jiǎng dézhǔ Villotalle shì yījiā kējì chūchuàng gōngsī, zhuānzhù yú xiāngcūn mùdì de hé tǐyàn shì lǚyóu, xīyīn dāngdì shèqū cānyù. Villotalle liyòng jìshù, yǔ xiāngcūn jìsù jiāting hé xiāngcūn fúwù tíngōng shāng (rú fáng zhǔ, túbù lǚxíng zhě, nóngmín, gōngjiāng, dàoyóu, xiāngcūn chùshī děng) hézuò, bāngzhù tāmen gǎijin chǎnpǐn xiāoshòu, fúwù zhiliàng, kèhù chǔlǐ, kèhù gōutōng hé jiāofù biāozhǔn, bìng bāngzhù tāmen huòdé yèwù.

Upcurve shāngyè fúwù sīrén yǒuxiàn gōngsī: 2021 Nián guójiā chuàngyè jiǎng dézhǔ UdChalo tōngguò wǎngzhàn wèi guófāng rényuán tígōng lǚxíng fúwù www.Udchalo.Com, yíngyòng píngtái hé 70 duō gè xiàn xià shòupiào chù, wèi 280 duō wàn guófāng rényuán, tuìwǔ jūnrén jí qí jiāshǔ tígōng fúwù. UdChalo de shòupiào chù yóu yìndù wǔzhuāng bùduì shèqū de tuìwǔ jūnrén/Veer Naris/jiāshǔ jīngyíng.

Chúle zhèngfǔ jìhuà wài, bāokuò fūhuàqì hé jiāsùqì zài nèi de liyì xiāngguān zhě yě zhīchí lǚyóu yè de chūchuàng qǐyè. Lìrú, CIIE IIMA, NSCREL IIMB shì zhīchí gāi hángyè chūchuàng qǐyè de fūhuàqì. Cíwài, hái yǒu yìndù zhèngfǔ zhīchí de PRASHAD, Swadesh Darshan, SAATHI, Dekho Apna Desh hé NIDHI děng jìhuà.

Zǒngzhī, lǚyóu yè shì yìndù jīngjì de zhòngyào gòngxiàn zhě, wéi shù bǎi wàn rén tígōnglè jiù yè jīhuì. Píngjiè zhèngquè de zhīchí shēngtài xitōng, yìndù de shípǐn jiā gōngyè yǒu qiánli chéngwéi quánqiú shìchǎng de zhǔyào cānyù zhě.

Yìndù de lǚyóu yè hé fúwù yè yě bǐjiào fādá, zài guómín jīngjì zhōng zhànyǒu xiāngdāng de bǐlì. Lǚyóu yè shì yìndù zhèngfǔ zhòngdiǎn fāzhǎn chǎnyè, yěshì zhòngyào jiù yè bùmén, tígōng liǎng qiān duō wàn gè gǎngwèi. Rùjìng lǚyóu rénshù jìnnián lái zhúnián dìzēng, lǚyóu shōurù bùduàn zēngjiā. Zhǔyào lǚyóu diǎn yǒu ā gélā, déli, zhāi pǔ ěr, chāng dí jiǎ ěr, nà làn tuó, mài suǒ ěr, guǒ ā, hǎidé lābā, tè lì fán tè láng děng. Jiāotōng yùnshū tiēlù shì yìndù zuì dà de guóyíng bùmén, tiēlù shì yìndù zuì dà de guóyíng bùmén, yì wéi zhǔyào yùnshū shǒuduàn, zǒng chángdù jū yàzhōu dì yī wèi, shìjiè dì sì wèi. Jìnnián lái, gōnglù yùnshū fāzhǎn jiào kuài, yì chéngdānle quán guó 85% de kèyùn liàng hé 70% de huòyùn liàng, quán guó rì píngjūn kèyùn liàng yú 6000 wàn rén cì, wéi shìjiè zuì dà de gōnglù wǎng zhī yī. Shuǐyùn fāngmiàn, zhǔyào gǎngkǒu yǒu 12 gè, bāokuò mèngmǎi, jiā'ěrgèdá, qīn nài (yuánmíng mǎ dé lǎ sī), kēqīn, guǒ ā děng, chéngdān 3/4 huòyùn liàng. Mèngmǎi wéi zuì dà gǎngkǒu, 1/5 hǎiyùn hé 1/2 jízhuāngxiāng yùnshū jīng cǐ gǎng. Zhōngxiǎo gǎngkǒu 200 gè. Nèi lù kě hángxíng hé dào zǒngzhǎng 1.4 Wàn gōnglǐ, dàn shíjì shǐyòng bù zú 30%. Yǒu 83 jiā hǎiyùn gōngsī, qízhōng 19 jiā chéngdān yuǎnyáng yùnshū yèwù, 49 jiā chéngdān jìn hǎi yùnshū yèwù, qíyú liǎng jiān. Hǎi yùn nénglì jū shìjiè dì 18 wèi. Kōngyùn fāngmiàn, jīngyíng dīngqí hángbǎn de hángkōng gōngsī gòng 14 jiā, bāokuò yìndù guójiā hángkōng gōngsī, yìndù hángkōng gōngsī děng, yǒu fēijī 334 jià. Zhuānyíng fēi dīngqí hángbǎn de kōngyùn qǐyè 65 jiā, fēijī 201 jià. Hángxìan tōngdà gè dàzhōu zhǔyào chéngshì. Guójiā jīchǎng 5 gè, fēnbíe wèiyú déli, mèngmǎi, jiā'ěrgèdá, qīn nài hé tè lì fán tè láng. Guónèi jīchǎng 92 gè.

Tourism in India

(An article by Ipsita Yadav)

Geographically diverse, culturally diverse, and offering unique experiences, India is one of the leading countries in terms of international tourism spending. According to an IBEF report on tourism and hospitality growth, tourism is one of the two largest sectors in India, contributing a total of about \$178 billion to the country's GDP. The country's coastline is dotted with several stunning beaches. The Indian tourism market is expected to reach \$125 billion by FY2027. International tourist arrivals are expected to reach 30.5 million by 2028. Like several other industries, Indian businesses have been using technology as a key factor in driving growth in the sector for more than a decade. From search engines and global distribution system (GDS) services to online travel agencies, the tourism industry has witnessed major innovations and has room for more. The main drivers of technology-led growth in travel and hospitality companies are adopting cloud solutions and developing software-as-a-service (SaaS) technologies.

India is a huge tourism market. It offers a diversified portfolio of niche tourism products – cruises, adventures, medical, wellness, sports, MICE, ecotourism, cinema, rural and religious tourism. India is recognized as a spiritual tourism destination for both domestic and international tourists. India is ranked 34th in the Travel & Tourism Competitiveness Report 2019 released by the World Economic Forum.

According to Startup India, there are nearly 1,500 startups in the travel and tourism sector, which include companies that provide platforms that enable planning and booking of travel services or assist travel service providers with technology solutions. This includes companies that provide services that enable users to discover and book travel-related services such as transportation, accommodation, facility management, tours, ticketing and activities through an online portal.

The travel sector offers a plethora of opportunities for budding entrepreneurs. Some of them are listed below:

Virtual Technology – In India, the use of virtual technology in the travel and hospitality industry, though increasing, is still limited. The Ministry of Tourism through its “Dekho Apna Desh” webinars have already started offering virtual tours, virtual safaris, museum and gallery visits, and exhibitions. Hence, the next step for virtual tourism could be collaborations with international universities, especially history and architecture departments. India may also leverage live virtual religious tourism channels to cater to international pilgrims who are unable to travel due to travel bans. For example, Bodh Gaya in Bihar is an important Buddhist pilgrimage site that attracts a large number of tourists every year. Live streaming of daily rituals at these important pilgrimage destinations can be considered. Moreover, this will also lay the foundation for the opening of international tourism in the medium term, similar to Switzerland's ‘Dream now, travel later’.

Active Marketing – Advertising and spreading the message is essential. Active online and other marketing strategies can be adopted to promote India as a must-visit destination. Be it broadcasting events like ‘Incredible India’, hosting tourism seminars or offering filming locations in India to promote foreign films in India. Active marketing is essential to getting good attention and listening. Considering the concerns raised by the pandemic, India may consider offering tourists a ‘Clean India’ ranking of hygiene standards and taking its annual ‘Clean India Survey’ one step further.

Create Experiences – Most tourist destinations in the world are made up of curated experiences. Be it botanical gardens, architectural monuments, backwaters or the Himalayas, the potential of a place to attract tourists can be improvised rather

than relying on its natural beauty. Public and private players in the sector need to think of destinations as experiences, not just sightseeing spots. For example, measures can be taken to make tourism more enriching, including guided tours, activities for children, food tours, interaction between tourists and local culture, etc.

Special Tourism Areas - With so many points of differentiation, Indian tourism should focus on how to offer something for everyone across all categories and budgets, from selling customized experiences, luxury spa services, rare animal sanctuaries, and religious pilgrimages to extreme Himalayan tours. Poor India, luxurious India, royal India, urban India, common man's India, historic India, etc. can all be explored.

Sustainable Solutions - Tourism can be transformed by the availability of venues and policies to build eco-friendly hotels in coastal areas and wildlife parks. A sense of "conscious luxury" is reflected in the growing number of small, intimate hotels - palaces, plantation retreats and jungle lodges - whose ethos is defined by transformative travel that educates, enriches and encourages people to digitally detox when needed, but allows connection when needed. Driving the tourism industry to grow sustainably is key and all stakeholders must now take positive action in this direction.

However, the industry faces several challenges such as a lack of proper infrastructure like roads, power, water supply, sewerage and telecommunications, access and connectivity to new destinations and exploring niche markets. Other issues include lack of adequate marketing and promotion, regulatory issues related to visas and internal permits, human resources, service levels, taxation and security.

To address these challenges and realizing India's potential in tourism, the Indian government has taken several steps to make India a global tourism hub. Indian Prime Minister Narendra Modi, in his independence speech at the Red Fort, called on people to visit 15 domestic tourist destinations in India by 2022 to promote tourism. The draft National Tourism Policy 2022 also seeks to position tourism as a national priority, enhance the competitiveness of tourist destinations and create world-class infrastructure.

As of April 17, 2023, there are about 1497 DPIIT-approved startups in the tourism industry. These approved startups are spread across 262 districts across the country. They employ about 13,919 employees. The highest number of startups recognized in this space is from Delhi with around 222. Around 58% of startups in this space are from tier II and tier III cities.

Startups in the spotlight:

Param People Infotech Solutions Private Limited: Winner of the National Startup Award 2020 Param People Infotech has partnered with MakeMyTrip, Zoomcar, Honda, Bosch, Karnataka Tourism and Bharat Petroleum to develop a complete highway travel enablement platform for travellers. 'Highway Delite is a digitally connected highway roadside amenities platform that helps travelers plan their trips with precision.

Villotalle Technologies Private Limited: Winner of the National Startup Award 2021. Villotalle is a tech startup focused on rural destinations and experiential tourism that engages local communities. Villotalle, Leveraging technology, engages with rural homestays and rural service providers like homeowners, trekkers, farmers, artisans, guides, village chefs, etc. to help them improve their product sales, service quality, customer handling, customer communication and delivery standards and help them acquire business.

Upcurve Business Services Pvt Ltd: Winner of the National Startup Award 2021 udChalo provides travel services to defence personnel through the website www.udchalo.com, app platform and 70+ offline ticket offices, serving over 2.8 million defence personnel, veterans and their families. udChalo's ticket offices are run by veterans/Veer Naris/family members of the Indian Armed Forces community.

In addition to government schemes, stakeholders including incubators and accelerators also support startups in the tourism sector. For example, CII IIMA, NSCREL IIMB are incubators that support startups in the sector. In addition, there are PRASHAD, Swadesh Darshan, SAATHI, Dekho Apna Desh and NIDHI, all supported by the Government of India. etc.

In conclusion, tourism is a significant contributor to the Indian economy, providing employment to millions of people. With the right supporting ecosystem, India's food processing industry has the potential to become a major player in the global market.

https://www.startupindia.gov.in/chinese_simplified/content/sih/en/bloglist/blogs/TourismSector.html

India's tourism and service industries are also relatively developed, accounting for a considerable proportion of the national economy. Tourism is a key development industry of the Indian government and an important employment sector, providing more than 20 million jobs. The number of inbound tourists has increased year by year in recent years, and tourism revenue has continued to increase. The main tourist spots are Agra, Delhi, Jaipur, Chandigarh, Nalanda, Mysore, Goa, Hyderabad, Trivandrum and so on.

Transportation

Railway is India's largest state-run sector, and railway is India's largest state-run sector and is also the main means of transportation. Its total length ranks first in Asia and fourth in the world. In recent years, road transportation has developed rapidly, and it has undertaken 85% of the national passenger traffic and 70% of the freight traffic. The national average daily passenger traffic exceeds 60 million, making it one of the largest road networks in the world. In terms of water transportation, there are 12 major ports, including Mumbai, Calcutta, Chennai (formerly Madras), Cochin, and Goa, which undertake 3/4 of the cargo volume. Mumbai is the largest port, and 1/5 of the sea and 1/2 of the containers are transported through this port. 200 small and medium-sized ports. The total length of inland navigable

rivers is 14,000 kilometres, but less than 30% are actually used. There are 83 shipping companies, of which 19 undertake the ocean shipping business, 49 undertake the offshore shipping business, and the remaining two are concurrent. Shipping capacity ranks 18th in the world. In terms of air transport, 14 airlines are operating scheduled flights, including Air India International and Air India, with 334 aircraft. There are 65 airline companies specializing in non-scheduled flights with 201 aircraft. The routes reach major cities on all continents. There are 5 international airports, located in Delhi, Mumbai, Kolkata, Chennai and Trivandrum. 92 domestic airports. (2004 figures)

1.	旅游业	Lǚyóu yè	Tourism industry
2.	发达	fādá	Developed
3.	国民经济	guómín jīngjì	National economy
4.	占有	zhànyǒu	Possess
5.	相当	xiāngdāng	Quite, correspond
6.	比例	bǐlì	Proportion
7.	重点	zhòngdiǎn	Emphasis
8.	产业	chǎnyè	Industry
9.	就业部门	jiù yè bù mén	Employment dept
10.	岗位	gǎngwèi	Post
11.	入境旅游	rù jìng lǚ yóu	Enter a country
12.	人数	rénshù	Strength
13.	递增	dì zēng	Increase by degrees
14.	收入	shōurù	Income
15.	阿格拉	ā gélā	Agra
16.	德里	délǐ	Delhi
17.	斋浦尔	zhāi pǔ ěr	Jaipur
18.	昌迪加尔	chāng dí jiǎ'ěr	Chandigarh
19.	那烂陀	nà làn tuó	Nalanda
20.	迈索尔	mài suǒ ěr	Mysoor
21.	果阿	guǒ ā	Goa
22.	海德拉巴	hǎidé lā bā	Hyderabad
23.	特里凡特琅	tè lǐ fán tè láng	Tiruwanantpuram
24.	交通运输	jiāotōng yùnshū	Transportation
25.	铁路	tiělù	Railway
26.	国营部门	guó yíng bù mén	State Department
27.	亦为	yì wèi	Also as
28.	手段	shǒuduàn	Measures
29.	长度	chángdù	Length
30.	公路运输	gōnglù yùnshū	Road transportation
31.	客运量	kè yùn liàng	Passenger transport
32.	货运量	huò yùn liàng	Freight volume
33.	日平均	rì píngjūn	Daily average
34.	人次	rén cì	Person-time
35.	公路网	gōnglù wǎng	Highway network
36.	水运	shuǐ yùn	Water transport
37.	港口	gǎngkǒu	Port
38.	孟买	mèngmǎi	Bombay
39.	加尔各答	jiā'ěrgèdá	Calcutta
40.	钦奈	qīn nài	Chennai
41.	原名	yuánmíng	Old name
42.	马德拉斯	mǎ dé lā sī	Madras
43.	科钦	kēqīn	Cochin

44.	集装箱运输	jízhuāngxiāng yùnnshū	Container transport
45.	内陆	nèi lù	Inland
46.	可航行	kě hángxíng	Shipping
47.	河道	hédao	Riverway
48.	不足	bùzú	Deficiency
49.	海运公司	hǎiyùn gōngsī	Shipping company
50.	远洋运输	yuǎnyáng yùnnshū	Ocean transportation
51.	业务	yèwù	Affairs
52.	近海运输	jìnhǎiyùnnshū	Offing transportation
53.	其余	qíyú	Remaining
54.	两兼	liǎng jiān	Both
55.	海运	hǎi yùn	Sea transportation
56.	空运	kōngyùn	Air transportation
57.	经营	jīngyíng	Deal in, manage
58.	定期航班	dìngqī hángbān	Scheduled flights, an arial liner
59.	航空公司	hángkōng gōngsī	Aviation company
60.	印度国际航空公 司	yìndù guójì hángkōng gōngsī	Air India
61.	印度航空公司	yìn dù hángkōng gōngsī	Indian airlines
62.	专营非定期航班	zhuānyíng fēi dìngqī hángbān	Special non scheduled flights
63.	空运企业	kōngyùn qǐyè	Air parcel enterprise
64.	航线	hángxiàn	Flight course
65.	通达	tōngdá	Directly reach, understand
66.	大洲	dàzhōu	Continent
67.	国际机场	guójì jīchǎng	International. Airport
68.	国内机场	guónèi jīchǎng	Domestic airport

第十三课
Dì shí sān kè:
Cáizhèng jīnróng

财政与金融

财政结构: 印度实行中央与邦（州）两级财政体制，预算分为联邦和邦两级。财政年度自每年4月1日至次年3月31日。多年来，印度持续推行赤字预算以刺激经济发展。截至2023年，中央和邦政府的债务总额占GDP的81.59%，略高于之前的80%水平。（Trading Economics）

侨汇收入: 2024年，印度接收的侨汇总额达1290亿美元，连续多年位居全球第一。

对外贸易

出口商品: 2023-24财年，印度出口总额达到7782.1亿美元，创历史新高。主要出口商品包括：

制成品: 药品、珠宝、工程产品、纺织品和服装、石油产品等。**初级产品:** 农产品和矿产品。（Press Information Bureau）

进口商品: 主要进口商品包括：矿物燃料（包括石油产品）；电子产品；机械设备（包括计算机）；贵金属和宝石有机化学品。（eBay Export, Pangea Network）

主要贸易伙伴: 2024-25财年，美国仍为印度的最大贸易伙伴。中国位居第二，两国贸易总额达1277亿美元，其中印度对中国的贸易逆差创纪录地达到992亿美元。其他主要贸易伙伴包括阿联酋、沙特阿拉伯、德国、新加坡、英国、瑞士、法国、伊朗和日本等。（Reuters）

人民生活

贫困状况: 根据世界银行的定义，2024年，按照每日人均收入3.65美元的贫困线计算，印度约有40%的人口处于贫困状态。（Forbes India）

人口统计:

出生率: 2022年为16.27‰，呈逐年下降趋势。**死亡率:** 2022年为9.07‰，较前一年有所下降。**婴儿死亡率:**

2022年为每千名活产婴儿中有25.5人夭折。**人均预期寿命:** 2022年为67.74岁。（Macrotrends）

医疗资源:

医疗机构: 截至2023年3月31日，印度共有169,615个基层卫生中心、31,882个初级卫生中心、6,359个社区卫生中心、1,340个分区/区医院、714个区医院和362所医学院。**医生数量:** 截至2022年6月，印度共有1,308,009名注册的西医生，医生与人口的比例为1:834，优于世界卫生组织建议的1:1000标准。

（Press Information Bureau, The Economic Times）

通信普及率: 截至2024年12月，印度电话用户总数达到11.8992亿，其中城市用户为6.6337亿，农村用户为5.2656亿。

Fiscal and Financial

Fiscal Structure: India has a two-tier fiscal system of central and state governments, with budgets divided between the federal and state levels. The fiscal year runs from April 1 to March 31 of the following year. For many years, India has continued to implement deficit budgets to stimulate economic development. As of 2023, the total debt of the central and state governments accounted for 81.59% of GDP, slightly higher than the previous level of 80%.

Trading Economics

Remittances: In 2024, India received a total of US\$129 billion in remittances, ranking first in the world for many consecutive years.

Foreign Trade

Export Commodities: In the 2023-24 fiscal year, India's total exports reached US\$778.21 billion, a record high.

Main export commodities include:

Manufactured goods: pharmaceuticals, jewelry, engineering products, textiles and clothing, petroleum products, etc.

Primary products: agricultural products and mineral products. (Press Information Bureau)

Imported goods: Major imports include:

Mineral fuels (including petroleum products)

Electronic products

Machinery and equipment (including computers)

Precious metals and gemstones

Organic chemicals . (eBay Export, Pangea Network)

Major trading partners: The United States will remain India's largest trading partner in fiscal year 2024-25. China ranks second, with a total trade volume of \$127.7 billion, of which India's trade deficit with China hit a record high of \$99.2 billion. Other major trading partners include the United Arab Emirates, Saudi Arabia, Germany, Singapore, the United Kingdom, Switzerland, France, Iran and Japan. (Reuters)

People's lives

Poverty status: According to the World Bank's definition, in 2024, based on the poverty line of \$3.65 per capita per day, about 40% of India's population will be in poverty. (Forbes India)

Demographics:

Birth rate: In 2022, it was 16.27%, showing a downward trend year by year .

Mortality rate: 9.07% in 2022, down from the previous year.

Infant mortality rate: 25.5 deaths per 1,000 live births in 2022.

Life expectancy: 67.74 years in 2022. (Macrotrends)

Medical resources:

Medical institutions: As of March 31, 2023, India has a total of 169,615 primary health centers, 31,882 primary health centers, 6,359 community health centers, 1,340 sub-district/district hospitals, 714 district hospitals and 362 medical colleges.

Number of doctors: As of June 2022, India has a total of 1,308,009 registered Western medicine doctors, with a doctor-to-population ratio of 1:834, which is better than the 1:1000 standard recommended by the World Health Organization. (Press Information Bureau, The Economic Times)

Communication penetration rate: As of December 2024, the total number of telephone users in India reached 1,189.92 million, of which 663.37 million were urban users and 526.56 million were rural users.

1.	财政金融	Cáizhèng jīnróng	Finance
2.	地方财政	dìfāng cáizhèng	Local finance
3.	分立	fēnli	Schism
4.	预算	yùsuàn	Budget
5.	联邦	liánbāng	Federal
6.	邦	bāng	State
7.	财政年度	cáizhèng niándù	Fiscal year
8.	推行	tuīxíng	Push
9.	赤字	chìzì	Deficit
10.	刺激	cìjī	Stimulate
11.	债务	zhàiwù	Debt
12.	累积	lěijī	Cumulate
13.	侨汇收入	qiáohuì shōurù	Overseas collective income
14.	对外贸易	duìwài mào yì	External trade
15.	出口商品	chūkǒu shāngpǐn	Export commodity
16.	制成品	zhì chéngpǐn	Finished products
17.	珠宝	zhūbǎo	Jewelry
18.	机械	jīxiè	Machinery
19.	皮革	pígé	Leather
20.	手工艺品	shǒu gōngyìpǐn	Handicraft products
21.	初级产品	chūjí chǎnpǐn	Primary product
22.	石油类产品	shíyóu lèi chǎnpǐn	Petroleum products
23.	成品油	chéng pǐn yóu	Finished product
24.	原油	yuányóu	Crude oil
25.	电子	diànzǐ	Electron
26.	金银	jīn yín	Gold, silver
27.	机械	jīxiè	Machinery
28.	贸易伙伴	mào yì huǒbàn	Trade partner
29.	阿联酋	āliánqióu	United Arab Emirates
30.	人民生活	rénmín shēnghuó	People's life
31.	国家计划委员会	guójiā jìhuà wěiyuánhui	National planning commission
32.	公布	gōngbù	Come out with
33.	统计	tǒngjì	Statistics
34.	贫困	pínkùn	Poverty
35.	居民	jūmín	Poors
36.	月收入	yuè shōurù	Monthly income
37.	低于	dī yú	Lower than
38.	美元	měiyuán	Dollars
39.	出生率	chūshēnglǜ	Birth rate
40.	死亡率	sǐwáng lǜ	Death rate
41.	新生婴儿	xīnshēng yīng'ér	Newly born infant
42.	寿命	shòumìng	Life span
43.	诊所	zhěnsuǒ	Clinique
44.	郊区	jiāoqū	Outskirts
45.	基础	jīchǔ	Base

46.	社区卫生中心	shèqū wèishēng zhōngxīn	Community health centre
47.	护士	hùshì	Nurse
48.	截至	jiézhì	Upto
49.	电话	diànhuà	Telephone
50.	移动电话	yídòng diànhuà	Mobile phone
51.	普及率	pǔjí lǜ	Popularization rate

第十四课

外交

印度共和国是世界人口最大国，也是世界增长最快的经济实体之一。印度被普遍看作是一个大国和一个潜在超级大国。印度外交政策的实用主义特征明显，避免与任何大国集团结盟，随着其在全球事务中的影响力日益增强，印度正在成为国际舞台上的规则制定者和负责任的利益攸关方。

冷战时期，印度通过一项“不结盟”的外交政策。但是，印度发展同苏联的密切关系，并得到了广泛的军事支持。冷战的结束大大影响了印度的外交政策。印度目前执行“西联”和“东向”政策，旨在加强与美国，欧盟，日本，以色列，拉丁美洲国家和东南亚国家联盟成员国的外交和经贸关系。同时印度同非洲联盟，英联邦国家以及海湾阿拉伯国家也有着紧密的联系。印度仍然延续了与俄罗斯的密切政治和军事联系。

印度积极参与各项联合国维和任务。目前，印度是联合国第三大的部队派遣国，并且正在努力争取成为联合国安理会的常任理事国。

外交政策

纳伦德拉·莫迪出席环孟加拉湾多领域经济技术合作倡议视讯峰会2014年5月，纳伦德拉·莫迪就任总理。莫迪政府致力于推进“邻国优先”政策，积极扩展与“直接邻国”，即与印度共享陆地或海上边界的南盟国家（除巴基斯坦）以及印度洋沿岸和岛屿国家的合作，包括毛里求斯、尼泊尔、马尔代夫、斯里兰卡、孟加拉国和缅甸等国。

21世纪初，印度继续谋求成为联合国安全理事会常任理事国，还要求加入核供应国集团。印度人民党执政下部分延续了印度国大党时代“战略自主”的外交传统，但采用“议题结盟”的方式扩大其在国际影响力，积极与美、俄等开展大国外交。2017年6月，印度正式成为上海合作组织成员。同时印度还推动参与“印太战略”，在由美、日、印、澳组成的四方安全对话中起重要作用。

虽然莫迪在担任古吉拉特邦首席部长期间数次赴华访问，并促进中印企业间合作；但在中印边界冲突再次爆发后，两国关系完全恶化。莫迪政府或为应对中国的所谓“一带一路”。相继提出香料之路计划（Spice Route Heritage Project）、季风计划（Project Mausam: Maritime Routes and Cultural Landscapes）、棉花之路等倡议，还与日本共建“亚非增长走廊”。

2023年2月，印度外交部长苏杰生接受亚洲国际新闻（ANI）采访时说，除了中国以外，新德里与全球主要大国关系良好，尽管全球政治因乌克兰的战争出现动荡，但印度与俄罗斯的关系一直非常稳定。

历史外交政策

历史上印度曾经是不结盟运动的创始国，然而近年来奉行以结果为导向的“多向结盟”政策，均衡发展同俄罗斯、美国等在内的密切联系，参加上海合作组织及四边安全对话。而中华人民共和国与巴基斯坦始终是印度最大的安全威胁。

Dì shí sì kè Wàijiāo

Yìndù gònghéguó shì shìjiè rénǒu zuì dàguó, yě shì shìjiè zēngzhǎng zuì kuài de jīngjì shí tí zhī yī. Yìndù bèi pǔbiàn kàn zuò shì yī gè dàguó hé yī gè qiánzài chāojí dàguó. Yìndù wàijiāo zhèngcè de shíyòng zhùyì tèzhēng míngxian, bímǐǎn yǔ rèn hé dàguó jítuán jiéméng, suǐzhe qí zài quánqiú shìwù zhōng de yǐngxiàng lì rì yì zēngqiáng, yìndù zhèngzài chéngwéi guójì wùtái shàng de guǐzé zhìdìng zhě hé fù zérèn de lì yǒu guān fāng.[1]

Lěngzhàn shíqí, yìndù tōngguò yī xiàng “bù jiéméng” de wàijiāo zhèngcè. Dànshì, yìndù fāzhǎn tóng sūlián de mǐqiè guānxì, bìng dédào le guāngfàn de jūnshì zhīchí. Lěngzhàn de jiéshù dàdà yǐngxiàng le yìndù de wàijiāo zhèngcè. Yìndù mùqián zhíxíng “xīlián” hé “dōng xiàng” zhèngcè, zhǐ zài jiāqiáng yǔ měiguó, ōuméng, rìběn, yǐsèliè, lǎdīng měizhōu guójiā hé dōngnányà guójiā liánméng chéngyuán guó de wàijiāo hé jīngmào guānxì. Tóngshí yìndù tóng fēizhōu liánméng, yīng liánbāng guójiā yǐjǐ hǎiwān ālābó guójiā yěyǒuzhe jīnmì de liánxì. Yìndù réngrán yánxù le yǔ èluósī de mǐqiè zhèngzhì hé jūnshì liánxì.

Yìndù jījī cānyù gè xiàng liánhéguó wéihé rènwù. Mùqián, yìndù shì liánhéguó dì sān dà de bùduì pàiqiǎn guó, bìngqiě zhèngzài nùlì zhēngqǔ chéngwéi liánhéguó ānlǐhuì de chángren lǐshì guó.

Wàijiāo zhèngcè

Nà lún dé lā-mò dí chūxí huán mèngjiālāwān duō lǐngyù jīngjì jìshù hézuò chángyì shìxùn fēnghuì 2014 nián 5 yuè, nà lún dé lā-mò dí jiùrèn zǒnglǐ. Mò dí zhèngfǔ zhīlì yú tuījìn “lín guó yōuxiān” zhèngcè, jījī kuòzhǎn yǔ “zhíjiē lín guó”, jí yǔ yìndù gòngxiǎng lùdì huò hǎishàng biān jiè de nán méng guójiā (chú bājīsītǎn) yǐjǐ yìndù yáng yán'àn hé dàoyǒu guójiā de hézuò, bāokuò máolǐqíusī, nǐbó'ěr, mǎ'ěrdàifǔ, sīlǐlánkǎ, mèngjiālā guó hé miǎndiàn děng guó.

21 Shìjì chū, yìndù jìxù móuqiú chéngwéi liánhéguó ānquán lǐshì huì chángren lǐshì guó, hái yāoqiú jiārù hé gōngyìng guó jítuán. Yīn duó rénmin dǎng zhízhèng xià bùfēn yánxùlè yìndù guó dà dǎng shídài “zhànlüè zìzhǔ” de wàijiāo chuántǒng, dàn cǎiyòng “yìtí jiéméng” de fāngshì kuòdà qí zài guójì yǐngxiǎng lì, jījī yǔ měi, é dēng kāizhǎn dàguó wàijiāo. 2017 Nián 6 yuè, yìndù zhèngshì chéngwéi shànghǎi hézuò zǔzhī chéngyuán. Tóngshí yìndù hái tuīdòng cānyù “yìn tài zhànlüè”, zài yóuměi, rì, yìn, ào zǔchéng de sīfāng ānquán duìhuà zhōng qǐ zhòngyào zuòyòng.

Suīrán mò dí zài dānrèn gǔjīlātèbāng shǒuxí bù cháng qíjiān shù cì fù huá fǎngwèn, bīng cùjìn zhōng yìn qǐyè jiān hézuò; dàn zài zhōng yìn biānjiè chōngtú zàicì bàofā hòu, liǎng guó guānxì wánquán èhuà. Mò dí zhèngfǔ huò wèi yìngduì zhōngguó de suǒwèi “yìdài yīlù”. Xiāngjì tíchū xiāngliào zhī lù jìhuà (Spice Route Heritage Project), jìfēng jìhuà (Project Mausam: Maritime Routes and Cultural Landscapes), miánhuà zhī lù dēng chāngyì, hái yǔ riběn gòng jiàn “yà fēi zēngzhǎng zōuláng”.

2023 Nián 2 yuè, yìndù wàijiāo bùzhǎng sūjiéshēng jiēshòu yàzhōu guójì xīnwén (ANI) cǎifǎng shí shuō, chūle zhōngguó yǐwài, xīndélí yǔ quánqiú zhǔyào dà guó guānxì liánghǎo, jīnguǎn quánqiú zhèngzhì yīn wūkelán de zhànzhēng chūxiàn dòngdàng, dàn yìndù yǔ èluósī de guānxì yīzhí fēicháng wěndìng.

Lìshǐ wàijiāo zhèngcè

lìshǐ shàng yìndù céngjīng shì bù jiéméng yùndòng de chuàngshǐ guó, rán’ér jìnnián lái fēngxíng yǐ jiéguǒ wéi dǎoxiàng de “duō xiàng jiéméng” zhèngcè, jūnhéng fāzhǎn tóng èluósī, měiguó dēng zài nèi de mìqiè liánxi, cānjiā shànghǎi hézuò zǔzhī jí sībiān ānquán duìhuà. Èr zhōnghuá rénmin gònghéguó yǔ bājisītān shǐzhōng shì yìndù zuìdà de ānquán wēixié.

Lesson 14

Diplomacy

The Republic of India is the world's most populous country and one of the world's fastest growing economies. India is widely viewed as a great power and a potential superpower. India's foreign policy is characterized by pragmatism, avoiding alliances with any great power bloc, and as its influence in global affairs grows, India is becoming a rule maker and responsible stakeholder on the international stage.

During the Cold War, India adopted a "non-aligned" foreign policy. However, India developed close ties with the Soviet Union and received extensive military support. The end of the Cold War has greatly influenced India's foreign policy. India currently implements a "link west" and "look east" policy aimed at strengthening diplomatic and economic relations with the United States, the European Union, Japan, Israel, Latin American countries and members of the Association of Southeast Asian Nations. India also has close ties with the African Union, Commonwealth countries and Gulf Arab countries. India still maintains close political and military ties with Russia.

India actively participates in various UN peacekeeping missions. Currently, India is the third largest troop contributor to the United Nations and is striving to become a permanent member of the UN Security Council.

Foreign policy

Narendra Modi attends the Bay of Bengal Multi-Sectoral Economic and Technical Cooperation Initiative video summit. In May 2014, Narendra Modi took office as Prime Minister. The Modi government is committed to promoting the "neighborhood first" policy and actively expanding cooperation with "direct neighbors", namely the SAARC countries (except Pakistan) that share land or maritime borders with India and the coastal and island countries of the Indian Ocean, including Mauritius, Nepal, Maldives, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh and Myanmar.

In the early 21st century, India continued to seek to become a permanent member of the UN Security Council and also requested to join the Nuclear Suppliers Group. Under the rule of the BJP, the diplomatic tradition of "strategic autonomy" of the Indian National Congress Party was partially continued, but the "issue based alliance" method was adopted to expand its international influence and actively carry out major power diplomacy with the United States, Russia and other countries. In June 2017, India officially became a member of the Shanghai Cooperation Organization. At the same time, India also promoted participation in the "Indo-Pacific Strategy" and played an important role in the Quadrilateral Security Dialogue composed of the United States, Japan, India and Australia.

Although Modi visited China several times during his tenure as Chief Minister of Gujarat and promoted cooperation between Chinese and Indian companies, relations between the two countries completely deteriorated after the Sino-Indian border conflict broke out again. The Modi government may have proposed the Spice Route Heritage Project, Project Mausam: Maritime Routes and Cultural Landscapes, Cotton Road and other initiatives in response to China's so-called "Belt and Road Initiative". It also jointly built the "Africa-Asia Growth Corridor" with Japan.

In February 2023, Indian Foreign Minister Subrahmanyam Jaishankar said in an interview with Asia News International (ANI) that, apart from China, New Delhi has good relations with major global powers. Although global politics has been turbulent due to the war in Ukraine, India's relations with Russia have always been very stable.

Historical foreign policy

Historically, India was a founding member of the Non-Aligned Movement. However, in recent years, it has pursued a results-

oriented "multi-directional alliance" policy, balanced the development of close ties with Russia, the United States and other countries, and participated in the Shanghai Cooperation Organization and the Quadrilateral Security Dialogue. The People's Republic of China and Pakistan have always been India's biggest security threats.

Source: <https://zh.wikipedia.org/zh-hans/%E5%8D%B0%E5%BA%A6%E5%A4%96%E4%BA%A4>

1.	外交	Wàijiāo	Diplomatic
2.	不结盟运动	bù jiéméng yùndòng	Non alignment movement
3.	发起	fāqǐ	Initiate, originate
4.	历届	lìjiè	All previous sessions
5.	外交政策	wàijiāo zhèngcè	Foreign policy
6.	力争	lìzhēng	Do one's best to
7.	国际事务	guójì shìwù	International affairs
8.	发挥....作用	fāhuī.... Zuòyòng	Play....role
9.	冷战	lěngzhàn	Cold war
10.	结束	jiéshù	Conclude
11.	过去	guòqù	Past
12.	奉行	fèngxíng	To pursue
13.	倾向	qīngxiàng	Incline
14.	苏联	sūlián	Soviet union
15.	大国平衡政策	dàguó pínghéng zhèngcè	Major country balance policy
16.	推行	tuīxíng	Push
17.	全方位务实外交	quán fāngwèi wùshí wàijiāo	All directional pragmatic diplomacy
18.	创造	chuàngzào	Create
19.	有利于	yǒu lìyú	Beneficial to
20.	自身发展	zìshēn fāzhǎn	Self development
21.	持久和平稳定	chíjiǔ héping wěndìng	Lasting peace and stability
22.	地区环境。	dìqū huánjìng.	Regional environment
23.	主张	Zhǔzhāng	Advocate
24.	和平共处	héping gòngchǔ	Peaceful coexistence
25.	原则	yuánzé	Principle
26.	联合国	liánhéguó	UNO
27.	宗旨	zōngzhǐ	Aim
28.	公正合理	gōngzhèng hélí	Fair and reasonable
29.	考虑	kǎolǜ	Consider
30.	秩序	zhìxù	Order
31.	要求	yāoqiú	Demand
32.	进一步	jìnyībù	Further
33.	南南合作	nán nán hézuò	South south cooperation
34.	对话	duìhuà	Dialogue
35.	呼吁	hūyù	Appeal
36.	共同创造	gòngtóng chuàngzào	Joint creation
37.	第三世界发展	dì sān shìjiè fāzhǎn	Third world development
38.	国际经济新秩序	guójì jīngjì xīn zhìxù	New international economic order

39.	积极参加	jījí cānjiā	Actively participate
40.	维和行动	wéihé xíngdòng	Peace keeping action
41.	联大期间	lián dà qíjiān	UN Gen assembly
42.	正式	zhèngshì	Formal
43.	大会	dàhuì	General assembly
44.	安理会	ānlǐhuì	Security council
45.	常任理事国	cháng rèn lǐshì guó	Permanent member countries
46.	要求	yāoqiú	Demand
47.	扩大	kuòdà	Expand
48.	决策	juécè	Decision making
49.	民主化	mínzhǔ huà	Democratization
50.	工作效率	gōngzuò xiàolǜ	Work efficiency
51.	四国集团	sìguó jítuán	Group of four countries
52.	框架决议	kuàngjià juéyì	Framework resolution
53.	草案	cǎo'àn	Draft
54.	同时	tóngshí	Simultaneously
55.	非	fēi	Not, non
56.	坚决	jiānjué	Be firm in
57.	否决权	fǒujué quán	Veto power
58.	人权	rénquán	Human right
59.	推进	tuījìn	Advance
60.	具体情况	jùtǐ qíngkuàng	Concrete state of affairs
61.	根本	gēnběn	At all, root, ultimate
62.	生存的权利	shēngcún de quánlì	Right of existence
63.	对...来说	duì...lái shuō	As for as ...is concerned
64.	优于	yōu yú	Excelled
65.	政治化	zhèngzhì huà	Politicization
66.	干涉	gānshè	Interfere
67.	他国	tāguó	Other country
68.	内政	nèizhèng	Internal politics
69.	从而	cóng'ér	Accordingly
70.	损害	sǔnhài	Damage
71.	别国	bié guó	Other country
72.	统一	tǒngyī	Unite
73.	重视	zhòngshì	Attach importance to
74.	全球环境保护	quánqiú huánjìng bǎohù	Global environment protection
75.	联系	liánxì	Relation, contact
76.	环保	huánbǎo	Environmental protection
77.	责任	zérèn	Responsibility
78.	发达国家	fādá guójiā	Developed countries
79.	承担	chéngdān	Undertake, take on
80.	发展中国家	fāzhǎn zhōng guójiā	Developing countries
81.	联合	liánhé	Ally, unite
82.	从事	cóngshì	Engage in

83.	研究和开发	yánjiū hé kāifā	Research and development
84.	随着	suízhe	Along with
85.	综合国力	zònghé guólì	Comprehensive national strength
86.	大国外交战略	dàguó wàijiāo zhànlüè	Major country diplomatic strategy
87.	经贸服务	jīngmào fúwù	Economic and trade services
88.	保持	bǎochí	Maintain
89.	俄罗斯	èluósī	Russia
90.	及	jí	And
91.	其他	qítā	Other
92.	独联体国家	dú lián tǐ guójiā	Independent allied countries
93.	大力	dàlì	Vigourously
94.	尤其是	yóuqí shì	Especially
95.	吸收	xīshōu	Absorb
96.	资金和技术	zījīn hé jìshù	Fund and tech
97.	亚太地区国家	yàtài dìqū guójiā	Asia pacific regional countries
98.	迅速	xùnsù	Rapid
99.	能源安全	néngyuán ānquán	
100.	逐步拓展	zhúbù tàzhǎn	Step by step expand
101.	海湾	hǎiwān	Bay, gulf
102.	能源供应国	néngyuán gōngyìng guó	Energy supplier country
103.	交往	jiāowǎng	Contact
104.	发表	fābiǎo	Deliver
105.	讲话	jiǎnghuà	Speech
106.	阐述	chǎnshù	Expound
107.	和平友好	héping yǒuhǎo	Peace and friendship
108.	保证	bǎozhèng	Guarantee
109.	安定和谐	āndìng héxié	Stability & harmony
110.	寻求	xúnqiú	Seek
111.	恢复	huīfù	Resume

第十五
中印关系的演变
Dì shíwǔ
Zhōng Yìn Guānxì de Yǎnbiàn

中国—印度关系（英语：China-India relations，印地语：भारत-चीन सम्बन्ध），是指中国和印度之间的双边关系。中国与印度都是文明古国，自古以来，尽管隔著喜马拉雅山脉，由于中印地理上的亲近，两大文明之间互有来往已有数千年之久。唐代的玄奘和义净都曾在比哈尔邦的那烂陀寺学习，印度高僧达摩曾到中国传教并创立禅宗。中国抗战期间，英属印度给予中华民国很多支持。1950年4月1日，印度共和国与中华人民共和国建交，是第一个同中华人民共和国建交的非社会主义阵营国家。

Zhōngguó —yìndù guānxì (yīngyǔ: China-India relations, yìn dì yǔ: Bhārata-cīna sambandha), shì zhī zhōngguó hé yìndù zhī jiān de shuāngbiān guānxì. Zhōngguó yǔ yìndù dōu shì wénmíng gǔguó, zìgǔ yǐlái, jīnguān gézhe xǐmǎlǎyǎ shānmài, yóuyóu zhōng yìn dìlǐ shàng de qīnjìn, liǎng dà wénmíng zhī jiān hù yǒu láiwǎng yǐ yǒushù qiānnián zhī jiǔ. Táng dài de xuán zàng hé yì jìng dōu céng zài bǐ hā ěr bāng dì nà làn tuó sì xuéxí, yìndù gāosēng dá mó céng dào zhōngguó chuánjiào bìng chuànglǐ chánzōng. Zhōngguó kàngzhàn qíjiān, yīng shǔ yìndù jǐyǔ zhōnghuá mínguó hěnduō zhīchí. 1950 Nián 4 yuè 1 rì, yìndù gònghéguó yǔ zhōnghuá rénmin gònghéguó jiànjiāo, shì dì yīgè tóng zhōnghuá rénmin gònghéguó jiànjiāo de fēi shèhuì zhǔyì zhènyíng guójiā.

China-India relations (English: China-India relations, Hindi: भारत-चीन सम्बन्ध) refers to the bilateral relations between China and India. China and India are both countries with ancient civilizations. Since ancient times, despite being separated by the Himalayas, the two civilizations have been in contact with each other for thousands of years due to their geographical proximity. Xuanzang and Yijing of the Tang Dynasty both studied at Nalanda in Bihar, and Bodhidharma, an eminent Indian monk, went to China to preach and establish Zen Buddhism. During China's Anti-Japanese War, British India gave a lot of support to the Republic of China. On April 1, 1950, the Republic of India established diplomatic relations with the People's Republic of China, becoming the first non-socialist country to establish diplomatic relations with the People's Republic of China.

中印两国都是发展中国家，人口数位列世界前二，建交七十年来，两国关系的发展伴随着冲突与合作，主要受三大因素不断干扰，即历史情结、地缘竞争及大国博弈。中国一度是印度第一大贸易伙伴，这一地位于2021年被美国取代，而印度是中国在南亚地区的最大贸易伙伴。由于中印两国有着近2000公里的漫长边界和总面积超过12万平方公里领土纠纷，1962年爆发了边境战争，两国关系严重倒退；接着就是中、苏对抗和印、苏结盟，两国关系持续冷淡。直到1976年，两国恢复互派大使。1993年起，两国签署多个协定以维护地区和平。2003年6月，阿塔爾·比哈里·瓦杰帕伊总理对中国进行正式访问，双方签署《中印关系原则和全面合作宣言》，确认发展长期建设性合作伙伴关系。然而随着印太地区的大国竞争日益激烈，两国仍不时爆发对峙、冲突。

Zhōng yìn liǎng guódū shì fāzhǎn zhōngguójiā, rénkǒu shù wèi liè shìjiè qián èr, jiànjiāo qīshí niánlái, liǎng guó guānxì de fā zhǎn bànsuǐzhe chōngtú yǔ hézuò, zhǔyào shòu sān dà yīnsù bùduàn gānrǎo, jí lìshǐ qíngjié, dìyuán jìng duó jí dàguó bóyì. Zhōngguó yīdù shì yìndù dì yī dà mào yì huǒbàn, zhè yī dì wèiyú 2021 nián bèi měiguó qǔdài, ér yìndù shì zhōngguó zài nányà dìqū de zuìdà mào yì huǒbàn. Yóuyóu zhōng yìn liǎng guóyóuzhe jìn 2000 gōnglǐ de màncháng biānjiè hé zǒng miànjī chāoguò 12 wàn píngfāng gōnglǐ língtǔ jiūfēn, 1962 nián bàofāle biānjìng zhànzhēng, liǎng guó guānxì yánzhòng dàotuì; jiēzhe jiùshì zhōng, sū duìkàng hé yìn, sū jiéméng, liǎng guó guānxì chíxù lěngdàn. Zhīdào 1976 nián, liǎng guó huīfù hù pài dàshǐ. 1993 Nián qǐ, liǎng guó qiānshù duō gè xiéding yì wéihù dìqū héping. 2003 Nián 6 yuè, ā tǎ ěr bǐ hā lǐ wǎ jié pà yī zǒnglǐ duì zhōngguójìnxíng zhèngshì fǎngwèn, shuāngfāng qiānshù “zhōng yìn guānxì yuánzé hé quánmiàn hézuò xuānyán”, quèrèn fāzhǎn chángqí jiànshè xìng hézuò huǒbàn guānxì. Rán'ér suǐzhe yìn tài dìqū de dàguójìngzhēng rìyì jīliè, liǎng guó réng bùshí bàofā duìzhì, chōngtú.

China and India are both developing countries with the largest population in the world. Over the past 70 years since the establishment of diplomatic relations, the development of relations between the two countries has been accompanied by conflicts and cooperation and has been continuously interfered by three major factors, namely, historical complexes, geographical competition and major powers' game. China was once India's largest trading partner, but this position was replaced by the United States in 2021, and India is China's largest trading partner in South Asia. As China and India have a long border of nearly 2,000 kilometers and territorial disputes with a total area of more than 120,000 square kilometers, a border war broke out in 1962, and relations between the two countries seriously regressed; then came the confrontation between China and the Soviet Union and the alliance between India and the Soviet Union. Relations continue to be cold. It was not until 1976 that the two countries resumed sending ambassadors to each other. Since 1993, the two countries have signed multiple agreements to maintain regional peace. In June 2003, Prime Minister Atal Bihari Vajpayee paid an official visit to China. The two sides signed the "Declaration on Principles of Relations and Comprehensive Cooperation between China and India", confirming the development of a long-term constructive cooperative partnership. However, as the great power competition in the Indo-Pacific region becomes increasingly fierce, confrontations and conflicts still break out between the two countries from time to time.

中华文明和印度河流域文明都是世界文明摇篮，中印两国人民之间的交往有几千年历史。孔雀帝国的首相，曾在塔克西拉大学担任过教授的考底利耶在他的作品《政事论》即用“cina”词头将中国丝绸称为“cinamsuka”（“cina”丝绸服装）和“cinapatta”（“cina”丝束）。在《史记》中，张骞和司马迁使用了“身毒”来称呼印度河流域地区（在现

在巴基斯坦的信德省)。这一词应是来源于梵文中的“Sindhu”。当云南在1世纪划入汉朝版图时，中国政府报告在那里存在一个“身毒”社区。

Zhōnghuá wénmíng hé yìndù hé liúyù wénmíng dōu shì shìjiè wénmíng yáolán, zhōng yìn liǎng guó rénmin zhī jiān de jiāowǎng yǒu jǐ qiān nián lìshǐ. Kǒngquè dìguó de shǒuxiàng, céng zài tā kè xī lǎ dàxué dānrènguò jiàoshòu de kǎo dǐ lì yé zài tā de zuòpǐn “zhèngshì lùn” jí yǒng “cína” cítóu jiàng zhōngguó sīchóu chēng wéi “cínamsuka”(“cína” sīchóu fūzhuāng) hé “cínápatta”(“cína” sī shù). Zài “shìjì” zhōng, zhāngqiān hé sīmǎqiān shìyòngle “juān dú” lái chēnghu yìndù hé liúyù dìqū (zài xiànzài bājīstān de xīndé shěng). Zhè yī cí yīng shì láiyuán yú fānwén zhōng de “Sindhu”. Dāng yúnnán zài 1 shìjì huà rù hàn cháo bāntú shí, zhōngguó zhèngfǔ bàogào zài nǎlǐ cúnzài yīgè “juān dú” shèqū.

The Chinese civilization and the Indus Valley civilization are both the cradle of world civilization, and the exchanges between the peoples of China and India have a history of thousands of years. Kautilya, the prime minister of the Mauryan Empire and a former professor at Taxila University, in his work "Arthaśāstra" used the prefix "cina" to refer to Chinese silk as "cínamsuka" ("cina" silk clothing) and "cínápatta" ("cina" tow). In "Historical Records", Zhang Qian and Sima Qian used "shendu" to refer to the Indus Valley area (in what is now Sindh Province in Pakistan). This word should be derived from "Sindhu" in Sanskrit. When Yunnan was included in the territory of the Han Dynasty in the 1st century, the Chinese government reported the existence of a "shendu" community there.

在公元一世纪佛教开始从印度向中国传输后，许多印度的学者和僧人都前往中国。401年，西域高僧鸠摩罗什到达中国，并将梵文佛经《修多罗》译成中文；少林寺的创始人佛陀跋陀罗（约464-495年）和5世纪南印度高僧菩提达摩成为禅宗的创办人少林寺第一位禅师。同时许多中国学者和僧侣也前往印度，如中国东晋高僧法显于402年，访问印度并居住10年，之后他将许多梵文佛经译成了中文，其《佛国记》成为中印友好交往史上一部极具历史价值著作。

Zài gōngyuán yī shìjì fójiào kāishǐ cóng yìndù xiàng zhōngguó chuánshū hòu, xǔduō yìndù de xuézhě hé sēngrén dōu qiánwǎng zhōngguó. 401 Nián, xīyù gāosēng jiū mó luó shén dàodá zhōngguó, bìng jiāng fānwén fójīng “xiū duō luó” yì chéng zhōngwén; shàolín de chuàngshǐ rén fótuó bá tuó luó (yuē 464-495 nián) hé 5 shìjì nán yìndù gāosēng pútí dá mó chéngwéi chánzōng de chuàngbǎn rén shàolín dì yī wèi chánshī. Tóngshí xǔduō zhōngguó xuézhě hé sēnglǚ yě qiánwǎng yìndù, rú zhōngguó dōngjìn gāosēng fǎ xiǎn yú 402 nián, fǎngwèn yìndù bìng jūzhù 10 nián, zhīhòu tā jiāng xǔduō fānwén fójīng yì chéng zhōngwén, qí “fó guójì” chéngwéi zhōng yìn yǒuhǎo jiāowǎng shǐshàng yī bù jù lìshǐ jiàzhí zhùzuò.

After Buddhism began to be transmitted from India to China in the first century AD, many Indian scholars and monks travelled to China. In 401, Kumarajiva, an eminent monk from the Western Regions, arrived in China and translated the Sanskrit Buddhist Sutra into Chinese; Buddhahadra (about 464-495), the founder of Shaolin Temple, and Bodhidharma, an eminent monk from South India in the 5th century, became the founder of Zen Buddhism and the first Zen master in Shaolin Temple. At the same time, many Chinese scholars and monks also went to India. For example, the eminent monk Faxian of the Eastern Jin Dynasty visited India and lived in India for 10 years in 402. After that, he translated many Sanskrit Buddhist scriptures into Chinese, and his "Buddha Kingdom" became the history of Sino-Indian friendly exchanges. A work of great historical value.

在公元7世纪，唐朝获得了中国的丝绸之路和中亚的大部分控制权。王玄策作为一个外交代表团的代表被派遣到了印度北部，卷入了戒日王（590-647）死亡后的内战之中。在使团的30名成员被篡位者杀害后，王玄策逃跑，并在盟国尼泊尔和吐蕃的部队陪同下返回。在他的军队帮助下，王玄策包围并占领了首都，而他的副手蒋师仁抓住了篡位者并把他作为囚犯押送回唐朝（599-649）首都长安。在8世纪，由印度天文学家和数学家阿耶波多（476-550）所编撰的天文正弦表，在唐朝被翻译进公元718年编辑的天文学和数学书籍《开元占经》。

《开元占经》由瞿昙悉达，一个祖上居于印度，在长安出生的天文学家和占星家编撰。他还因为将九曜概念翻译入中国历法而闻名。玄奘（602-664）和义净（635-713）。

Zài gōngyuán 7 shìjì, táng cháo huòdéle zhōngguó de sīchóu zhī lù hé zhōng yà de dà bùfèn kòngzhì quán. Wángxuáncè zuòwéi yīgè wàijiāo dàibiǎo tuán de dàibiǎo bèi pàiqiǎn dào le yìndù běibù, juàn rù le jiè rì wáng (590-647) sǐwáng hòu de nèizhàn zhī zhōng. Zài shǐ tuán de 30 míng chéngyuán bèi cuàn wèi zhě shāhài hòu, wángxuáncè táopǎo, bìng zài méngguó nǐbó'ěr hé tǔbō de bùduì péitóng xià fǎnhuí. Zài tā de jūnduì bāngzhù xià, wángxuáncè bāowéi bìng zhàn lǐng le shǒudū, ér tā de fùshǒu jiāngshīrén zhuā zhù le cuàn wèi zhě bìng bǎ tā zuòwéi qiúfàn yāsòng huí táng cháo (599-649) shǒudū cháng'ān. Zài 8 shìjì, yóu yìndù tiānwénxué jiā hé shùxué jiā ā yé bōduō (476-550) suǒ biānzhuàn de tiānwén zhèngxián biǎo, zài táng cháo bèi fānyì jìn gōngyuán 718 nián biānjí de tiānwénxué hé shùxué shūjī “kāiyuán zhàn jīng”. [7]“Kāiyuán zhàn jīng” yóu qú tán xī dá, yīgè zǔshàng jūyú yìndù, zài cháng'ān chūshēng de tiānwénxué jiā hé zhānxīng jiā biānzhuàn. Tā hái yīnwèi jiāng jiǔyào gàiniàn fānyì rù zhōngguó lìfǎ ér wénmíng. Xuán zàng (602-664) hé yì jìng (635-713).

In the 7th century AD, the Tang Dynasty gained control of China's Silk Road and much of Central Asia. Wang Xuance was sent to northern India as a representative of a diplomatic delegation and became involved in the civil war after the death of King Harsha (590-647). After 30 members of the mission were killed by usurpers, Wang Xuance fled and returned accompanied by troops from his allies Nepal and Tibet. With the help of his troops, Wang Xuance surrounded and captured the capital, while his deputy Jiang Shiren captured the usurper and escorted him as a prisoner back to Chang'an, the capital of the Tang Dynasty (599-649). In the 8th century, the astronomical sine table compiled by the Indian astronomer and mathematician Aryabhata (476-550) was translated into the Kaiyuan Zhan Jing, an astronomy and mathematics book compiled in 718 AD during the Tang Dynasty. "Kaiyuan Divination Sutra" was compiled by Qutan Siddha, an astronomer and astrologer whose ancestors lived in India and was born in Chang'an. He is also famous for translating the Jiu Yao concept into the Chinese calendar. Xuanzang (602-664) and Yijing (635-713). They all studied at Nalanda Temple in Bihar. In the 7th century, Xuanzang visited India during the reign of King Harsha and recorded his journey to India in his work "The Records of the Western Regions of the Tang Dynasty". This later inspired the Ming Dynasty novelist Wu Cheng'en to create

his masterpiece, which is known as the "Chinese Region". "Journey to the West", one of the four great classics 他们都曾在比哈尔邦的那烂陀寺学习。7世纪玄奘于戒日王时期访问印度，在他的作品《大唐西域记》中记录了他前往印度的旅程，这后来启发了明朝小说家吴承恩创作了他的代表作，被誉为中国四大名著之一的《西游记》郑和下西洋期间，访问了许多印度王国和港口。在18至19世纪，印度旁遮普地区的锡克教邦联开始向它邻近的土地扩张，它在1834年使拉达克成为了查谟邦的附属国。在1841年，锡克教徒入侵西藏，并占领了部分西藏西部地区。西藏军队在1841年12月击败了锡克教徒的部队，并迫使它们从西藏撤出军队而进入拉达克围困列城，在那里西藏军队转而被锡克军所打败。此时，双方都不希望将冲突延续，因为锡克教徒卷入了之后引发了第一次英国锡克战争的和英国的冲突，而中国则正在和英属东印度公司进行鸦片战争。西藏人和锡克教徒在1842年9月签署了条约，规定在对方国家的边界不得有越轨或干扰的行为。

Tāmen dōu céng zài bǐ hā ěr bāng dì nà làn tuó sì xuéxí. 7 Shìjì xuán zàng yú jiè rì wán shíqí fāngwèn yìndù, zài tā de zuópín “dà táng xīyù jì” zhōng jìlù le tā qiánwǎng yìndù de lǚchéng, zhè hòulái qǐfā le míng cháo xiǎoshuō jiā wúchéng’ēn chuàngzuò le tā de dàibiāozuò, bèi yù wéi zhōngguó sì dà míngzhù zhī yī de “xīyóu jì” zhèng hé xià xīyáng qíjiān, fāngwèn le xùduō yìndù wángguó hé gǎngkǒu. Zài 18 zhì 19 shìjì, yìndù pángzhēpǔ dìqū de xī kè jiào bānglián kāishǐ xiàng tā línjìn de tǔdì kuòzhāng, tā zài 1834 nián shǐ lā dá kè chéngwéi le chá mó bāng de fùshǔ guó. Zài 1841 nián, xī kè jiàotú rùqīn xīzàng, bìng zhàn lǐng le bùfèn xīzàng xībù dìqū. Xīzàng jūnduì zài 1841 nián 12 yuè jǐbāile xī kè jiàotú de bùduì, bìng pòshǐ tāmen cóng xīzàng ché chū jūnduì ér jìnrù lā dá kè wéikùn liè chéng, zài nǎlǐ xī cáng jūnduì zhuǎn ér bèi xī kè jūn suǒ dǎbài. Cǐ shí, shuāngfāng dōu bù xīwàng jiāng chōngtú yánxù, yīnwèi xī kè jiàotú juàn rù liǎo zhīhòu yǐnfā le dì yī cì yīngguó xī kè zhànzhēng de héyīngguó de chōngtú, ér zhōngguó zé zhèngzài hé yīng shǔ dōng yìndù gōngsī jìnxíng yāpiàn zhànzhēng. Xīzàng rén hé xī kè jiàotú zài 1842 nián 9 yuè qiānshǔ le tiáoyuē, guīdìng zài duìfāng guójiā de biānjiè bùdé yǒu yuèguǐ huò gānrǎo de xíngwéi.

During Zheng He's voyages to the West, he visited many Indian kingdoms and ports. In the 18th and 19th centuries, the Sikh confederacy in the Indian Punjab region began to expand into its neighbouring lands, making Ladakh a client state of Jammu in 1834. In 1841, the Sikhs invaded Tibet and occupied parts of western Tibet. The Tibetan army defeated the Sikh forces in December 1841 and forced them to withdraw their troops from Tibet and enter Ladakh to besiege Leh, where the Tibetan army was defeated by the Sikh army. At this time, neither side wished to prolong the conflict, as the Sikhs were involved in the conflict with the British that would later lead to the First Anglo-Sikh War, while the Chinese were engaged in the Opium Wars with the British East India Company. Tibetans and Sikhs signed a treaty in September 1842, stipulating that there should be no transgression or interference on the borders of the other country.

在中国抗日战争时期，印度给予中华民国很多支持，1938年印度国会派遣医疗队支援中国“抗战”，其中的队员柯棣华大夫病逝于中国；“抗战”时期战略物资运输线——滇缅公路被日军切断以后，随后开辟的“驼峰航线”其始发地就在印度的阿萨姆邦。1942年，蒋介石访问印度，并拜访了日后成为印度国父的甘地。同年，中国远征军在缅甸对日作战中战事失利，孙立人部退入印度成为中国驻印军，在重新组装、训练后成为经由缅甸反攻回国的先锋部队。

Zài zhōngguó kàng rì zhànzhēng shíqí, yìndù jǐyǔ zhōnghuá mínguó hēnduō zhīchí, 1938 nián yìndù guóhuì pàiqiǎn yīliáo duì zhīyuán fū guó “kàngzhàn”, qízhōng de duìyuán kēdìhuá dàfū bìngshì yú zhōngguó; “kàngzhàn” shíqí zhànlüè wùzī yùnsù xiàn——diān miǎn gōnglù bèi rìjūn qiēduàn yǐhòu, suǐhòu kāipi de “tuófēng hángxiàn” qí shǐ fā dì jiù zài yìndù de ā sà mǔ bāng. 1942 Nián, jiǎngjiēshí fāngwèn yìndù, bìng bàifāng le rìhòu chéngwéi yìndù guófù de gāndì. Tóngnián, zhōngguó yuǎnzhēng jūn zài miǎndiàn duì rì zuòzhàn zhōng zhànshì shīlì, sūnlìrén bù tuì rù yìndù chéngwéi zhōngguó zhù yìn jūn, zài chóngxīn zǔzhuāng, xùnliàn hòu chéngwéi jīngyóu miǎndiàn fāngōng huíguó de qiánfēng bùduì.

During China's Anti-Japanese War, India gave a lot of support to the Republic of China. In 1938, the Indian Congress sent a medical team to support China's "Anti-Japanese War". One of the team members, Dr. Kotnis, died of illness in China. During the "Anti-Japanese War", the strategic material transportation line-the Burma Highway was destroyed by the Japanese army. After being cut off, the starting point of the "Hump Route" that was subsequently opened was Assam, India. In 1942, Chiang Kai-shek visited India and visited Gandhi, who later became the father of India. In the same year, the Chinese Expeditionary Force suffered a defeat in the battle against Japan in Burma. Sun Liren's troops retreated to India and became the Chinese Army in India. After being reassembled and trained, they became the vanguard force that returned to China via Burma for counterattack.

1947年印度独立，1949年中华人民共和国成立，1950年4月1日印度同中华人民共和国建交。同为泛社会主义阵营及新近建政的亚洲大国，中国和印度经历了一段蜜月期，印度总理尼赫鲁推广了泰戈尔提出的“中印是亲兄弟”口号（“Hindi-Chini bhai-bhai”）。1954年两国总理实现互访，共同倡导了和平共处五项原则。

1947 Nián yìndù dúlì, 1949 nián zhōnghuá rénmin gònghéguó chénglì, 1950 nián 4 yuè 1 rì yìndù tóng zhōnghuá rénmin gònghéguó jiànjiāo. Tóng wèi fàn shèhuì zhǔyì zhènyíng jí xīnjìn jiàn zhèng de yàzhōu dàguó, zhōngguó hé yìndù jīnglì le yīduàn mìyuè qī, yìndù zǒnglǐ ní hē lǚ tuīguǎng le tài gē’ěr tíchū de “zhōng yìn shì qīn xiōngdì” kǒuhào (“Hindi-Chini bhai-bhai”). 1954 Nián liǎng guó zǒnglǐ shíxiàn hù fǎng, gòngtóng chàngdǎo le héping gòngchǔ wǔ xiàng yuánzé.

India became independent in 1947, the People's Republic of China was established in 1949, and India established diplomatic relations with the People's Republic of China on April 1, 1950. As both pan-socialist camps and newly established Asian powers, China and India have experienced a honeymoon period. Indian Prime Minister Nehru promoted Rabindranath Tagore's slogan "China and India are brothers" ("Hindi-Chini bhai-bhai"). In 1954, the two prime ministers exchanged visits and jointly advocated the Five Principles of Peaceful Coexistence.

1959年的拉萨事件后，中国中央政府实现了对西藏的直接且有效的管辖，达赖喇嘛流亡到印度，中印矛盾加剧，具体最剧烈的体现在了喜马拉雅山脉东段中印边界的纠纷，在1962年酿成边境战争。战争之后，中印外交关系发生较大转变，在冷战期间，印度一直坚定地站在苏联阵营，与中苏分裂之后的中国对立，而中国则与其宿敌巴基斯坦关系密切，并在冷战后期与美国合作站在苏联及其盟友的对立面。虽然冷战结束之后两国关系恢复友好，印

度军方内部仍将中国视作最大假想敌。直到1988年底，拉吉夫·甘地访华才打破两国关系坚冰。此后，在两国领导人的大力推进下，中印关系迈上了长达三十年的持续正常化、持续深度化的轨道。2003年6月印度总理瓦杰帕伊访华后，中国正式承认印度对锡金邦的主权，同时两国开始着手解决边界争端。2005年1月二国举行首次战略对话，中国总理温家宝访印并签署《中印联合声明》，宣布建立面向和平与繁荣的战略合作伙伴关系，达成了《解决中印边界问题政治指导原则的协定》。

1959 Nián de lāsà shìjiàn hòu, zhōngguó zhōngyāng zhèngfǔ shíxiànlè duì xīzàng de zhíjiē qiě yǒuxiào de guǎnxiá, dá lài lǎma liúwáng dào yìndù, zhōng yìn máodùn jiājù, jùtǐ zuì jùliè de tǐxiàn zàilè xīmǎlāyǎ shānmài dōng duàn zhōng yìn biānjiè de jiūfēn, zài 1962 nián niàng chéng biānjìng zhànzhēng. Zhànzhēng zhīhòu, zhōng yìn wàijiāo guānxì fāshēng jiào dà zhuǎnbàn, zài lěngzhàn qíjiān, yìndù yīzhí jiāndìng dì zhàn zài sūlián zhènyíng, yǔ zhōng sū fēnliè zhīhòu de zhōngguó duìlì, ér zhōngguó zé yǔqí sùdì bājisītān guānxì mǐqiè, bìng zài lěngzhàn hòuqí yǔ měiguó hézuò zhàn zài sūlián jí qí méngyǒu de duìlìmiàn. Suǐrán lěngzhàn jiěshù zhīhòu liǎng guó guānxì huīfù yǒuhǎo, yìndù jūn fāng nèibù réng jiàng zhōngguó shì zuò zuìdà jiǎxiāngdì. Zhídào 1988 niándǐ, lā jī fū·gāndī fǎng huá cái dǎpò liǎng guó guānxì jiān bīng. Cǐhòu, zài liǎng guó lǐngdǎo rén de dàlì tuījìn xià, zhōng yìn guānxì mài shàngle zhǎng dá sānshí nián de chíxù zhèngcháng huà, chíxù shēndù huà de guǐdào. 2003 Nián 6 yuè yìndù zǒnglǐ wǎ jié pà yī fǎng huá hòu, zhōngguó zhèngshì chénggrèn yìndù duì xījīn bāng de zhǔquán, tóngshí liǎng guó kāishǐ zhuóshǒu jiějué biānjiè zhēngduān. 2005 Nián 1 yuè èr guó jùxíng shǒucì zhànlüè duìhuà, zhōngguó zǒnglǐ wēnjiāobào fǎng yìn bìng qiānshǔ “zhōng yìn liánhé shēngmíng”, xuānbù jiànlì miànxiàng hépíng yǔ fánróng de zhànlüè hézuò huòbàn guānxì, dáchéngle “jiějué zhōng yìn biānjiè wèntí zhèngzhì zhǐdǎo yuánzé de xiédìng”.

After the Lhasa incident in 1959, the Chinese central government achieved direct and effective jurisdiction over Tibet. The Dalai Lama fled to India, and the conflicts between China and India intensified. The most severe manifestation was the dispute over the Sino-Indian border in the eastern Himalayas. It led to a border war in 1962. After the war, Sino-Indian diplomatic relations underwent major changes. During the Cold War, India had always stood firmly in the Soviet camp and opposed China after the Sino-Soviet split. China, on the other hand, had close relations with its old enemy Pakistan and cooperated with the United States in the late Cold War. Stand against the Soviet Union and its allies. Although relations between the two countries have returned to friendly relations after the end of the Cold War, the Indian military still regards China as its biggest imaginary enemy. It was not until the end of 1988 that Rajiv Gandhi visited China to break the ice in relations between the two countries. Since then, with the vigorous promotion of the leaders of the two countries, China-India relations have embarked on a thirty-year track of continuous normalization and deepening. After Indian Prime Minister Vajpayee visited China in June 2003, China officially recognized India's sovereignty over Sikkim, and the two countries began to resolve border disputes. In January 2005, the two countries held their first strategic dialogue. Chinese Prime Minister Wen Jiabao visited India and signed the "China-India Joint Statement", announcing the establishment of a strategic cooperative partnership for peace and prosperity and reaching the "Agreement on the Political Guiding Principles for the Resolution of the Sino-Indian Boundary Issues". 》.

2016年7月印度试图加入核供应国集团但遇中国阻挠，双方关系开始新一轮冰冻期，7月23日印度方面宣布停止续签新华社三名驻印度记者的签证，要求其限期离境。2017年夏，长达72天的洞朗对峙事件又将中印关系的发展进程打乱。此后，虽有两国高层不断努力纠偏定向，但双边关系波折不断，高频震荡。在新旧结构性矛盾的不断干扰下，中印关系迈入了长波动期。

2016 Nián 7 yuè yìndù shìtù jiārù hé gōngyìng guó jítuán dàn yù zhōngguó zǔnáo, shuāngfāng guānxì kāishǐ xīn yī lún bīngdòng qī, 7 yuè 23 rì yìndù fāngmiàn xuānbù tíngzhǐ xùqiān xīnhuá shè sān míng zhù yìndù jìzhě de qiānzhèng, yāoqiú qí xiànlì lí jìng. 2017 Nián xià, zhǎng dá 72 tiān de dòng lǎng duìzhì shìjiàn yòu jiàng zhōng yìn guānxì de fǎ zhǎn jìnchéng dǎ luàn. Cǐhòu, suī yǒu liǎng guó gāocéng bùduàn nǚlì jiūpiān dìngxiàng, dàn shuāngbiān guānxì bōzhé bùduàn, gāo pín zhèndàng. Zài xīnjiù jiégòu xìng máodùn de bùduàn gānrǎo xià, zhōng yìn guānxì mài rùle cháng bōdòng qī.

In July 2016, India tried to join the Nuclear Suppliers Group but was blocked by China. Relations between the two parties began a new round of freezing period. On July 23, India announced that it would stop renewing the visas of three Xinhua News Agency reporters stationed in India and required them to leave the country within a time limit. In the summer of 2017, the 72-day Doklam standoff disrupted the development of China-India relations again. Since then, despite the continuous efforts of high-level officials of the two countries to correct the deviation, bilateral relations have experienced constant twists and turns and high-frequency fluctuations. Under the constant interference of old and new structural contradictions, China-India relations have entered a period of long-term fluctuations.

2020年4月1日是中国同印度建交70周年纪念日。中共中央总书记、中国国家主席习近平同印度总统拉姆·纳特·科温德、中国总理李克强同印度总理纳伦德拉·莫迪互致贺电。

2020 Nián 4 yuè 1 rì shì zhōngguó tóngyìndù jiànjiāo 70 zhōunián jìnián rì. Zhōnggòng zhōngyāng zǒng shǔjī, zhōngguó guójiā zhǔxí xījìnpíng tóng yìndù zǒngtǒng lā mǔ·nà tè·kē wēn dé, zhōngguó zǒnglǐ lìkèqiáng tóng yìndù zǒnglǐ nà lún dé lā·mò dí hù zhì hèdiàn.

April 1, 2020 is the 70th anniversary of the establishment of diplomatic relations between China and India. General Secretary of the CPC Central Committee and Chinese President Xi Jinping exchanged congratulatory messages with Indian President Ram Nath Kovind, and Chinese Prime Minister Li Keqiang and Indian Prime Minister Narendra Modi exchanged congratulatory messages.

2020年中印边境冲突是中印45年以来首度出现的流血冲突，导致两国关系恶化。印度以数据安全为由，禁止几十款中国移动应用在印度使用。2021年印度新冠疫情恶化后，中国为印度提供抗疫物资，关系得到改善。

2020 Nián zhōng yìn biānjìng chōngtú shì zhōng yìn 45 nián yǐlái shǒu dù chūxiàn de liúxuè chōngtú, dǎozhì liǎng guó guānxì èhuà. Yìndù yǐ shùjù ānquán wèi yóu, jìnzhǐ jǐ shí kuǎn zhōngguó yídòng yìngyòng zài yìndù shǐyòng. 2021 Nián

yìndù xīnguān yìqíng èhuà hòu, zhōngguó wèi yìndù tíngōng kàng yì wùzī, guānxi dédào gǎishàn.

The border conflict between China and India in 2020 was the first bloody conflict between China and India in 45 years, leading to the deterioration of relations between the two countries. India has banned dozens of Chinese mobile apps from being used in India, citing data security concerns. After the COVID-19 epidemic in India worsened in 2021, China provided India with anti-epidemic supplies and relations improved.

2022年3月，中国外交部长王毅访问印度，并与印度国家安全顾问多瓦尔以及印度外长苏杰生先后进行会晤，被中国媒体认为是中印关系将走向正常化的信号。但苏杰生的态度有所保留，他指出高级军事指挥官级别的会谈自2020年以来已经举行了15次会议，其进展“比我们希望的要慢”，而且边境紧张局势继续影响两国的关系，他补充说“如果你问我，我们今天的关系是否正常，我说不正常”。

2022 Nián 3 yuè, zhōngguó wàijiāo bùzhǎng wáng yì fǎngwèn yìndù, bìng yǔ yìndù guójiā ānquán gùwèn duō wǎ'ěr yǐjī yìndù wàizhǎng sūjiéshēng xiānhòu jìn háng huìwù, bèi zhōngguó méití rènwéi shì zhōng yìn guānxi jiāng zǒuxiàng zhèngcháng huà de xìn hào. Dàn sūjiéshēng de tàidù yǒu suǒ bǎoliú, tā zhīchū gāojí jūnshì zhǐhuī guān jíbīe de huìtán zì 2020 nián yǐlái yǐjīng jǔxíng le 15 cì huìyì, qí jìnzhǎn “bǐ wǒmen xīwàng de yǎo màn”, érqiě biānjìng jǐnzhāng júshì jìxù yǐngxiǎng liǎng guó de guānxi, tā bǔchōng shuō “rúguǒ nǐ wèn wǒ, wǒmen jīntiān de guānxi shìfǒu zhèngcháng, wǒ shuō bu zhèngcháng”.

In March 2022, Chinese Foreign Minister Wang Yi visited India and met with Indian National Security Advisor Doval and Indian Foreign Minister Jaishankar. This was considered by the Chinese media as a signal that China-India relations will normalize. But Jaishankar expressed reservations, noting that talks at the level of senior military commanders, which have been held 15 times since 2020, are progressing "slower than we had hoped" and that border tensions continue to affect relations between the two countries. He added "If you ask me whether our relationship today is normal, I say not normal".

2022年9月，中印双方的军队开始从拉达克与阿克赛钦存在争议的对峙地区撤军，然而中印关系并未缓和，12月双方士兵在印度阿鲁纳恰尔邦管辖的实际控制线附近互殴，造成人员受伤，印度国防部长拉杰纳特·辛格称中国解放军妄图单方面改变实控线。

2022 Nián 9 yuè, zhōng yìn shuāngfāng de jūnduì kāishǐ cóng lā dá kè yǔ ā kè sài qīn cúnzài zhēngyì de duì chí dìqū chèjūn, rán'ér zhōng yìn guānxi bìng wèi huǎnhé, 12 yuè shuāngfāng shìbīng zài yìndù ā lǔ nà qià ěr bāng guǎnxiá de shíjì kòngzhì xiàn fùjìn hù ōu, zàochéng rényuán shòushāng, yìndù guófāng bùzhǎng lā jié nà tè-xīn gé chēng zhōngguó jiěfàngjūn wàngtú dān fāngmiàn gǎibiàn shí kòng xiàn.

In September 2022, Chinese and Indian armies began to withdraw their troops from the disputed areas of Ladakh and Aksai Chin. However, Sino-Indian relations have not eased. In December, soldiers from both sides gathered in Arunachal Pradesh, India. There were fights near the Line of Actual Control under the jurisdiction of Arunachal Pradesh, resulting in injuries. Indian Defense Minister Rajnath Singh claimed that the Chinese People's Liberation Army was trying to unilaterally change the Line of Actual Control.

2023年4月初，中国官方重新命名“藏南”（包括印度阿鲁纳恰尔邦大部分地区）11个地区的名字，印度政府表示拒绝接受。7月，美国民主党籍参议员杰夫·默克利提出的一项参议院决议案还提到，自1962年来美国的长期立场是承认“麦克马洪线”为中印国际边界，认定作为印度领土一部分的阿鲁纳恰尔邦“并非争议领土”。

2023 Nián 4 yuèchū, zhōngguó guānfāng chóngxīn míngmíng “cáng nán”(bāokuò yìndù ā lǔ nà qià ěr bāng dà bùfèn dìqū) 11 gè dìqū de míngzì, yìndù zhèngfǔ biǎoshì jùjué jiēshòu. 7 Yuè, měiguó mínzǔdǎng jí cān yìyuán jié fū-mò kèlǐ tíchū de yī xiàng cānyìyuán juéyì àn hái tí dào, zì 1962 niánlái měiguó de cháng qī lìchǎng shì chéngrèn “màikè mǎ hóng xiàn” wéi zhōng yìn guó jì biānjiè, rèndìng zuòwéi yìndù língtǔ yībùfèn de ā lǔ nà qià ěr bāng “bīngfēi zhēngyì língtǔ”.

In early April 2023, Chinese officials renamed the names of 11 regions in "Southern Tibet" (including most of Arunachal Pradesh in India), but the Indian government refused to accept it. In July, a Senate resolution proposed by US Democratic Senator Jeff Merkley also mentioned that the long-term position of the United States since 1962 is to recognize the "McMahon Line" as the international boundary between China and India and recognize it as Arunachal Pradesh, which is part of Indian territory, "is not a disputed territory".

2023年5月，在印度决定将克什米尔地区的斯利那加作为二十国集团旅游工作组会议举办地后，中国抵制该会议（土耳其、沙特阿拉伯和埃及作为伊斯兰会议组织成员也未出席）。中国外交部称，坚决反对在领土争议地区举办任何形式的G20会议。同月，印度拒绝为在该国的最后两名中国官方媒体（CGTN和新华社）记者续签签证，这使得印度境内没有中国官方媒体的记者，这是1980年代以来印度境内首次没有中国媒体。同时中国境内也基本没有印度记者。

2023 Nián 5 yuè, zài yìndù juéding jiāng kèshínmǐ'ěr dìqū de sī lì nàjiā zuòwéi èrshí guó jítuán lǚyóu gōngzuò zǔ huìyì jǔbàn de hòu, zhōngguó dǐzhì gāi huìyì (tǔ'ěrqí, shā'tē ālābō hé āijī zuòwéi yīslán huìyì zǔzhī chéngyuán yě wèi chūxí). Zhōngguó wàijiāo bù chēng, jiānjué fǎnduì zài língtǔ zhēngyì dìqū jǔbàn rènhe xíngshì de G20 huìyì. Tóngyuè, yìndù jùjué wèi zài gāi guó de zuìhòu liǎng míng zhōngguó guānfāng méití (CGTN hé xīnhuá shè) jìzhě xù fā qiǎnzhèng, zhè shǐdé yìndù jìngnèi méiyǒu zhòng guó guānfāng méití de jìzhě, zhè shì 1980 niándài yǐlái yìndù jìngnèi shǒucì méiyǒu zhòng guó méití. Tóngshí zhōngguó jìngnèi yě jīběn méiyǒu yìndù jìzhě.

In May 2023, China boycotted the G20 Tourism Working Group meeting after India decided to host it at Srinagar in Kashmir as the venue (Turkey, Saudi Arabia and Egypt, as members of the Organization of the Islamic Conference, also did not attend). China's Ministry of Foreign Affairs stated that it firmly opposes holding any form of G20 meeting in territorially disputed areas. In the same month, India refused to renew the visas of the last two Chinese state media (CGTN and Xinhua News Agency) reporters in the country, leaving India without Chinese state media reporters. This was the first time since the 1980s that there were no Chinese reporters in India. At the same time, there are basically no Indian journalists

in China.

2024年3月，印度总理莫迪前往阿鲁纳恰尔邦，参加号称全球最长的双线隧道“西勒隧道”（Sela Tunnel）落成典礼。印度方面称，这是一条从古瓦哈蒂通向边境重镇达旺的具有战略意义的全天候隧道。新德里重申该邦是印度“不可分割的”领土，并驳斥了中国的反对意见。2024 Nián 3 yuè, yìndù zǒnglǐ mò dí qiánwǎng ā lǚ nà qià ěr bāng, cānjiā hàochēng quánqiú zuì zhǎng de shuāng xiàn suìdào “xī lēi suìdào”(Sela Tunnel) luòchéng diǎnlǐ. Yìndù fāngmiàn chēng, zhè shì yītiáo cóng gǔ wǎ hā dì tōng xiàng biānjìng zhòngzhèn dá wǎng de jùyou zhànlüè yìyì de quán tiānhòu suìdào. Xīndélǐ chóngshēn gāi bāng shì yìndù “bùkě fēngē de” lǐngtǔ, bìng bóchìle zhōngguó de fǎnduì yìjiàn.

In March 2024, Indian Prime Minister Modi went to Arunachal Pradesh to attend the inauguration ceremony of the "Sela Tunnel", known as the world's longest double-track tunnel. India claims that this is a strategically important all-weather tunnel leading from Guwahati to the border town of Tawang. New Delhi reiterated that the state is India's "indivisible" territory and dismissed China's objections.

边界问题

边界问题是中印关系中的敏感议题。中印边界总长约2000~3440公里，有总面积超过12万平方公里区域存在领土纠纷，涉及西段、中段和东段三个部分。中印边界锡金段为已定边境，但附近的中不边界存在争议，因不丹的外交和国防被印度控制，中不边界争议也受印度关注。中印原则上都同意和平解决争议。

Biānjiè wèntí

biānjiè wèntí shì zhōng yìn guānxì zhōng de mǐngǎn yìtí. Zhōng yìn biānjiè zǒngzhǎng yuē 2000~3440 gōnglǐ, yǒu zǒng miànjī chāoguò 12 wàn píngfāng gōnglǐ qūyù cúnzài lǐngtǔ jiūfēn, shèjí xī duàn, zhōngduàn hé dōng duàn sān gè bùfèn. Zhōng yìn biānjiè xījīn duàn wéi yǐ dìng biānjìng, dàn fùjìn de zhōng bù biānjiè cúnzài zhēngyì, yīn bù dān de wàijiāo hé guófāng bèi yìndù kòngzhì, zhōng bù biānjiè zhēngyì yě shòu yìndù guānzhù. Zhōng yìn yuánzé shàng dū tóng yì héping jiějué zhēngyì.

Border issues

The boundary issue is sensitive in China-India relations. The total length of the Sino-Indian border is about 2,000 to 3,440 kilometers, and there are territorial disputes in the area with a total area of more than 120,000 square kilometers, involving the western section, the middle section and the eastern section. The Sikkim section of the China-India border is a defined border, but the nearby China-Bhutan border is controversial. Since Bhutan's diplomacy and national defense are controlled by India, the China-Bhutan border dispute is also of concern to India. In principle, China and India agree to resolve disputes peacefully.

1962年中印边境战争

2017年6~7月，中印军队在洞朗地区发生紧张对峙。

2020年6月，双方军队在加勒万河谷对峙，并发生肢体冲突。最终导致印方20死亡，中方4人死亡。

2022年中印东章冲突，中国解放军越线进入印度管辖的达旺地区，被击退。

1962 Nián zhōng yìn biānjìng zhànzhēng

2017 nián 6~7 yuè, zhōng yìn jūnduì zài dòng lǎng dìqū fāshēng jǐnzhāng duìzhì.

2020 Nián 6 yuè, shuāngfāng jūnduì zài jiā lè wàn hégǔ duìzhì, bìng fāshēng zhītǐ chōngtú. Zuìzhōng dǎozhì yìn fāng 20 sǐwáng, zhōngfāng 4 rén sǐwáng.

2022 Nián zhōng yìn dōng zhāng chōngtú, zhōngguó jiěfàngjūn yuè xiàn jìnrù yìndù guǎnxiá de dá wǎng dìqū, bèi jí tuì.

1962 Sino-Indian Border War

From June to July 2017, Chinese and Indian troops had a tense confrontation in the Doklam area.

In June 2020, armies from both sides faced off in the Galwan Valley and physical clashes occurred. In the end, 20 people from India died, and 4 people from China died.

In the conflict between China and India in the Eastern sector in 2022, the Chinese People's Liberation Army crossed the line into the Tawang area under Indian jurisdiction and was repulsed.

区域秩序

在中美战略竞争愈演愈烈的情况下，两国对区域秩序的定位截然不同；印度领导人与主要战略家支持“以规则为基础的国际秩序”——这是一句美国及其盟友之间广为流传的口号；但与此同时，尽管中国在口头上呼吁多极化，但其最终似乎力求实现一个由该国主导的单极化亚洲。在印度看来，中国针对南亚国家特别是与巴基斯坦的密切安全关系和为其提供的“全天候”战略支持，是其反对印度崛起的大战略中的重要一环。印度认为“多极世界”的前提是“多极亚洲”。

Qūyù zhìxù

zài zhōng měi zhànlüè jìngzhēng yùǎnyùliè de qíngkuàng xià, liǎng guó duì qūyù zhìxù de dìngwèi jié rán bùtóng; yìndù lǐngdǎo rén yǔ zhǔyào zhànlüè jiā zhīchí “yǐ guīzé wéi jīchǔ de guó jì zhìxù”——zhè shì yījù měiguó jí qí méngyǒu zhī jiān guǎng wéi liúchuán de kǒuhào; dàn yǔ cǐ tóngshí, jǐnguǎn zhōngguó zài kǒutóu shàng hūyù duō jí huà, dàn qí zuìzhōng sìhū liqíú shíxiàn yīgè yóu gāi guó zhǔdǎo de dān jí huà yǎ zhōu. Zài yìndù kàn lái, zhōngguó zhēnduì nányà guójiā tèbié shì yǔ bājīsītǎn de mìqiè ānquán guānxì hé wéi qí tígōng de “quántiānhòu” zhànlüè zhīchí, shì qí fǎnduì yìndù juéqǐ de dà zhànlüè zhōng de zhòngyào yī huán. Yìndù rènwéi “duō jí shìjiè” de qiántí shì “duō jí yàzhōu”.

Regional order

As the strategic competition between China and the United States intensifies, the two countries have completely different

positions on regional order; Indian leaders and major strategists support a "rules-based international order" - a phrase widely shared among the United States and its allies. But at the same time, while China advocates multipolarity, it ultimately appears to be striving for a unipolar Asia dominated by the country. From India's perspective, China's close security relations and "all-weather" strategic support for South Asian countries, especially Pakistan, are an important part of its grand strategy to oppose India's rise. India believes that the premise of a "multipolar world" is a "multipolar Asia."

而自印度人民党莫迪政府执政以来，印度的外交政策从“不结盟”到“多重结盟”转变，而中国在边境的强硬举措更额外刺激了印度外交政策的长期调整。然而，从北京的角度来看，中国不希望四方安全对话（Quad，即澳大利亚、日本、印度三国与美国）的成功，以及“印太”理念的推广，认为他们在共同对抗中国在亚洲的影响力。中国对“四方”和“印太倡议”的强烈反对表明，这样一个联盟如果成立，将严重破坏中国的战略目标。

Èr zì yìn duó rénmin dǎng mò dí zhèngfǔ zhízhèng yǐlái, yìndù de wàijiāo zhèngcè cóng “bù jiéméng” dào “duōchóng jiéméng” zhuǎnbiàn, ér zhōngguó zài biānjìng de qiángying jǔcuò gèng éwài cìjīle yìndù wàijiāo zhèngcè de cháng qī tiáozhèng. Rán'ér, cóng běijīng de jiāodù lái kàn, zhōngguó bù xīwàng sìfāng ānquán duìhuà (Quad, jí àodàliǎyǎ, rìběn, yìndù sānguó yǔ měiguó) de chénggōng, yǐjī “yìn tài” lǐniàn de tuīguǎng, rènwéi tāmen zài gòngtóng duìkàng zhōngguó zài yàzhōu de yǐngxiǎng lì. Zhōngguó duì “sìfāng” hé “yìn tài chàngyi” de qiángliè fǎnduì biǎomíng, zhèyàng yī gè liánméng rúguǒ chénglì, jiāng yánzhòng pòhuài zhōngguó de zhànlüè mùbiāo.

Since the Modi government of the Bharatiya Janata Party came to power, India's foreign policy has changed from "non-alignment" to "multiple alliances", and China's tough measures on the border have additionally stimulated the long-term adjustment of India's foreign policy. However, from Beijing's perspective, China does not want the success of the Quad (Australia, Japan, India and the United States) and the promotion of the "Indo-Pacific" concept, believing that they are jointly countering China's influence in Asia. China's strong opposition to the "Quad" and the "Indo-Pacific Initiative" shows that such an alliance, if established, will seriously undermine China's strategic goals.

合作平台

2009年金砖四国领导人在叶卡捷琳堡出席第一次峰会，由左至右分别为巴西总统卢拉·达·席尔瓦、俄罗斯总统德米特里·梅德韦杰夫、中国国家主席胡锦涛、印度总理曼莫汉·辛格。

参见：金砖国家和上海合作组织

中印在联合国、世界贸易组织、金砖国家、二十国集团、上海合作组织和中俄印[36]等机制中保持沟通与协调，在气候变化、能源和粮食安全、国际金融机构改革和全球治理等领域携手合作，维护中印两国和发展中国家的共同利益。

Hézuò píngtái

2009 niánjīn zhuān sīguó língdǎo rén zài yèkǎjiélínbǎo chūxí dì yī cì fēnghuì, yóu zuǒ zhì yòu fēnbié wéi bāxī zǒngtǒng lú lǎ·dā·xí ěr wǎ, èluósī zǒngtǒng dé mǐ tè lǐ·méi dé wéijíefū, zhōngguó guójiā zhǔxí hújìntāo, yìndù zǒnglǐ mǎn mò hàn·xīn gé.

Cānjiàn: Jīn zhuān guójiā hé shànghǎi hézuò zǔzhī

zhōng yìn zài liánhéguó, shìjiè mào yì zǔzhī, jīn zhuān guójiā, èrshí guó jítuán, shànghǎi hézuò zǔzhī hé zhōng é yìn [36] děng jīzhì zhōng bǎochí gōutōng yǔ xiétiao, zài qìhòu biànhuà, néngyuán hé liángshí ānquán, guó jì jīnróng jīgòu gǎigé hé quánqiú zhìlì děng lǐngyù xiéshǒu hézuò, wéihù zhōng yìn liǎng guó hé fāzhǎn zhōngguójiā de gòngtóng lìyì.

Cooperation platform

In 2009, the leaders of the BRIC countries attended the first summit in Yekaterinburg. From left to right, they were Brazilian President Lula da Silva, Russian President Dmitry Medvedev, Chinese President Hu Jintao, and Indian Prime Minister Manmohan Singh.

China and India maintain communication and coordination in mechanisms such as the United Nations, World Trade Organization, BRICS, G20, Shanghai Cooperation Organization, China, Russia and India, and work on climate change, energy and food security, reform of international financial institutions and work together in global governance and other fields to safeguard the common interests of China, India and developing countries.

金砖国家

2001年，美国高盛公司首次提出BRICs概念，用巴西、俄罗斯、印度、中国四国英文名称首字母组成缩写词。

2006年，金砖国家外长举行首次会晤，开启金砖国家合作序幕。金砖国家领导人迄今共进行了11次会晤和9次非正式会晤。作为金砖国家中经济体量最大的两个国家，中印的务实合作能够为“金砖”第二个十年奠定下坚实的发展基础。

Jīn zhuān guójiā

2001 nián, měiguó gāoshèng gōngsī shǒucì tíchū BRICs gàiniàn, yòng bāxī, èluósī, yìndù, zhōngguó sīguó yīngwén míngchēng shǒu zìmǔ zǔchéng suǒxiě cí. 2006 Nián, jīn zhuān guójiā wàizhǎng jùxíng shǒucì huìwù, kāiqǐ jīn zhuān guójiā hézuò xù mù. Jīn zhuān guójiā língdǎo rén qìjīn gòng jìn xíng le 11 cì huìwù hé 9 cì fēi zhèngshì huìwù. Zuòwéi jīn zhuān guójiā zhōng jīngjì tǐ liàng zuìdà de liǎng gè guójiā, zhōng yìn de wùshí hézuò nénggòu wéi “jīn zhuān” dì èr gè shí nián diàndìng xià jiānshí de fā zhǎn jīchǔ.

BRICS

In 2001, Goldman Sachs first proposed the concept of BRICs, using the initials of the English names of Brazil, Russia, India, and China to form an acronym. In 2006, the foreign ministers of the BRICS countries held their first meeting, kicking off BRICS cooperation. BRICS leaders have so far held 11 meetings and 9 informal meetings. As the two countries with the largest economies among the BRICS countries, pragmatic cooperation between China and India can lay a solid foundation for development in the second decade of the BRICS.

上海合作组织

2005年，印度成为上海合作组织观察员国（observer states）。2017年6月9日印度、巴基斯坦一同加入上合组织。组织的宗旨是加强各成员国之间的相互信任与睦邻友好，宣称以“上海精神”解决各成员国间的边境问题。因冷战时期中国与巴基斯坦是抗衡苏联与印度势力，现今两国对巴基斯坦关系也有歧异。印度认为中国和巴基斯坦建立的全天候战略合作伙伴关系专门针对印度。加入上合组织后，印度与中国和巴基斯坦两个存在结构性矛盾的周边邻国可以通过元首峰会、外长会议、总理会议、部长级会议以及各专业职能领域的定期会晤等机制进行对话交流。中印双方可以在该框架下加强双边或多边沟通合作，亦能增进双方互信，从而有利于双边关系的和谐发展和地区的稳定。

Shànghǎi hézuò zǔzhī

2005 nián, yìndù chéngwéi shànghǎi hézuò zǔzhī guānchá yuán guó (observer states). 2017 Nián 6 yuè 9 rì yìndù, bājīstān yītóng jiārù shàng hé zǔzhī. Zǔzhī de zōngzhī shì jiāqiáng gè chéngyuán guózhī jiān de xiānghù xìnren yǔ mùlín yǒuhào, xuānchéng yǐ “shànghǎi jīngshén” jiějué gè chéngyuán guó jiān de biānjīng wèntí. Yīn lěngzhàn shíqí zhōngguó yǔ bājīstān shì kànghéng sūlián yǔ yìn duó shìlì, xiànjīn liǎng guó duì bājīstān guānxì yěyǒu qíyì. Yìndù rènwéi zhōngguó hé bājīstān jiànli de quán tiānhòu zhàn lüè hézuò huòbàn guānxì zhuānmén zhēnduì yìndù. Jiārù shàng hé zǔzhī hòu, yìndù yǔ zhōngguó hé bājīstān liǎng gè cúnzài jiégòu xìng máodùn de zhōubiān lín guó kěyǐ tōngguò yuánshǒu fēnghuì wàizhǎng huìyì, zǒnglǐ huìyì, bùzhǎng jí huìyì yǐjí gè zhuānyè zhínéng lǐngyù de dīngqí huìwù děng jīzhì jìnxíng duìhuà jiāoliú. Zhōng yìn shuāngfāng kěyǐ zài gāi kuàngjià xià jiāqiáng shuāngbiān huò duōbiān gōutōng hézuò, yì néng zēngjìn shuāngfāng hùxìn, cóng’ér yǒu liú shuāngbiān guānxì de héxié fāzhǎn hé dìqū de wěndìng.

Shanghai Cooperation Organization

In 2005, India became an observer state of the Shanghai Cooperation Organization. India and Pakistan joined the SCO on June 9, 2017. The purpose of the organization is to strengthen mutual trust and good-neighborly friendship among member states, and declares that "The SCO aims to solve border issues among member states through the "Shanghai Spirit". During the Cold War, China and Pakistan were competing against the Soviet Union and India, and today, the two countries have differences in their relations with Pakistan. India believes that the all-weather strategic cooperative partnership established between China and Pakistan is specifically aimed at India. After joining the SCO, India and its two neighboring countries with structural contradictions, China and Pakistan, can conduct dialogue and exchanges through mechanisms such as summits of heads of state, foreign ministers' meetings, prime ministers' meetings, ministerial meetings, and regular meetings in various professional and functional fields. China and India can strengthen bilateral or multilateral communication and cooperation under this framework, and enhance mutual trust between the two sides, which is conducive to the harmonious development of bilateral relations and regional stability.

中俄印三边合作

2002年，中俄印启动三方外长对话。2007年，中俄印三边外长对话升格为年度正式会晤机制。已截至2019年2月中国、俄罗斯、印度三国外长已举行十六次会晤。中俄印三边合作启动以来发展整体顺利，已经构建起以三边领导人峰会为引领，以外长会晤为主要平台，以商业、文化等领域对话为辅助的重要三边合作机制。成为三国加强战略沟通，在重大问题上协调立场，寻求共识与合作的重要平台。整体看来，俄罗斯作为三边合作的倡议者，始终对该机制热情投入；中国出于密切中俄战略协作、联合俄印捍卫新兴经济体利益等因素考虑也积极参与其中；印度则在参与三边合作的同时另有打算，在一定程度上成为中俄印三边合作的制约，并对该机制未来发展前景产生重要影响。

Zhōng é yìn sān biān hézuò

2002 nián, zhōng é yìn qǐdòng sānfāng wàizhǎng duìhuà. 2007 Nián, zhōng é yìn sān biān wàizhǎng duìhuà shēnggé wéi niándù zhèngshì huìwù jīzhì. Yǐ jiézhì 2019 nián 2 yuè zhōngguó, èluósī, yìndù sānguó wàizhǎng yǐ jǔxíng shíliù cì huìwù. Zhōng é yìn sān biān hézuò qǐdòng yǐlái fāzhǎn zhèngtǐ shùnlì, yǐjīng gòujiàn qǐ yǐ sān biān lǐngdǎo rén fēnghuì wéi yǐnlǐng, yǐ wàizhǎng huìwù wéi zhǔyào píngtái, yǐ shāngyè, wénhuà děng lǐngyù duìhuà wéi fūzhù de zhòngyào sān biān hézuò jīzhì. Chéngwéi sānguójiāqiáng zhàn lüè gōutōng, zài zhòngdà wèntí shàng xiétiáo lìchǎng, xúnqiú gòngshì yǔ hézuò de zhòngyào píngtái. Zhèngtǐ kàn lái, èluósī zuòwéi sān biān hézuò de chàngyì zhě, shǐzhōng duì gāi jīzhì rèqíng tóurù; zhōngguó chū yú mìqiè zhōng é zhàn lüè xiézuò, liánhé é yìn hàn wéi xīnxīng jīngjì tǐ lìyì děng yīnsù kǎolǜ yě jījī cānyù qízhōng; yìndù zé zài cānyù sān biān hézuò de tóngshí líng yǒu dāsuan, zài yīdìng chéngdù shàng chéngwéi zhōng é yìn sān biān hézuò de zhìyuē, bìng duì gāi jīzhì wéilái fāzhǎn qiánjǐng chǎnshēng zhòngyào yǐngxiǎng.

China-Russia-India trilateral cooperation

In 2002, China, Russia and India launched the trilateral foreign ministers' dialogue. In 2007, the China-Russia-India trilateral foreign ministers' dialogue was upgraded to an annual formal meeting mechanism. As of February 2019, the foreign ministers of China, Russia and India have held 16 meetings. Since its launch, the China-Russia-India trilateral cooperation has developed smoothly overall. An important trilateral cooperation mechanism has been established, led by the trilateral leaders' summit, with foreign ministers' meetings as the main platform and dialogues in the fields of business and culture. It has become an important platform for the three countries to strengthen strategic communication, coordinate positions on major issues, and seek consensus and cooperation. Overall, Russia, as the initiator of trilateral cooperation, has always been enthusiastic about the mechanism; China has also actively participated in it for the sake of strengthening China-Russia strategic cooperation and jointly defending the interests of emerging economies with Russia and India; while India

54

By the end of 2006, India had invested US\$172 million in 256 projects in China, while China's investment in India (non-financial) was only US\$17 million. However, as China-India trade cooperation continues to deepen, China's investment in India has shown a sharp upward trend amidst drastic fluctuations, with an average annual growth rate of more than 125% . As of December 2019, about 1,000 Chinese companies have invested a total of US\$8 billion in India. Chinese investment has driven the development of India's mobile phone, white goods, infrastructure construction, automobile and other industries, creating a large number of jobs in India. Indian companies have also actively expanded the Chinese market, with a total investment of nearly US\$1 billion in China. In the 2021-22 fiscal year, China-India bilateral trade increased by 44% year-on-year to nearly US\$130 billion, of which India's imports from China reached US\$103.47 billion and China's imports from India reached US\$26.46 billion.

对话和摩擦

中印两国关于财经、经贸议题建立了对话机制:

中印财经对话机制: 2005年4月温家宝总理访印期间, 两国签署《中华人民共和国政府和印度共和国政府关于启动中印财经对话机制的谅解备忘录》。旨在通过沟通和对话, 推动双方在财政、金融部门的相互理解及实质性合作。对话每12-18个月举行一次, 在两国轮流举行。原则上, 对话级别定为副部级或双方共同认可的任何其他级别。

中印战略经济对话: 2010年12月, 中印两国总理同意建立中印战略经济对话机制。对话的宗旨是加强宏观经济政策协调, 促进交流互动, 共同应对经济发展中出现的问题和挑战, 加强经济合作。迄今六次对话分别于2011年、2012年、2014年、2016年、2018年和2019年在北京和新德里轮流举行。

然而, 随着两国关系恶化, 经贸领域的纠纷日益增多。印度积极参与美国等西方国家的友岸外包政策, 力图降低对华供应链依赖。印度还认为对华数额庞大的贸易逆差(2022年约千亿美元)不可接受, 且在边界冲突后封禁了一大批中国软件, 要求提升印度公民在印中资企业的比重。同时印度始终反对所谓的“一带一路”, 称其为“债务陷阱外交”, 并抨击中巴经济走廊侵犯了印度的主权。

Duihuà hé móca

zhōng yìn liǎng guó guānyú cái jīn, jīngmàoyìtí jiànlìle duihuà jīzhì:

Zhōng yìn cái jīn duihuà jīzhì: 2005 Nián 4 yuè wēnjiābǎo zǒnglǐ fǎng yìn qíjiān, liǎng guó qiānshǔ “zhōnghuá rénmín gònghéguó zhèngfǔ hé yìndù gònghéguó zhèngfǔ guānyú qǐdòng zhōng yìn cái jīn duihuà jīzhì de liàngjiě bèiwànglù”. Zhǐ zài tōngguò gōutōng hé duihuà, tuīdòng shuāngfāng zài cáizhèng, jīnróng bùmén de xiānghù lǐjiě jí shí zhí xíng hézuò. Duihuà měi 12-18 gè yuè jǔxíng yīcì, zài liǎng guó lúnliú jǔxíng. Yuánzé shàng, duihuà jíbié dìng wèi fù bù jí huò shuāngfāng gòngtóng rènkě de rènhe qítā jíbié.

Zhōng yìn zhànlüè jīngjì duihuà: 2010 Nián 12 yuè, zhōng yìn liǎng guó zǒnglǐ tóngyì jiànlì zhōng yìn zhànlüè jīngjì duihuà jīzhì. Duihuà de zōngzhǐ shì jiāqiáng hóngguān jīngjì zhèngcè xiétiao, cùjìn jiāoliú hùdòng, gòngtóng yìngduì jīngjì fāzhǎn zhòng chūxiàn de wèntí hé tiǎozhàn, jiāqiáng jīngjì hézuò. Qíjīn liù cì duihuà fēnbíe yú 2011 nián, 2012 nián, 2014 nián, 2016 nián, 2018 nián hé 2019 nián zài běijīng hé xīndélí lúnliú jǔxíng.

Rán'ér, suí zhào liǎng guó guānxì èhuà, jīngmào língyù de jiūfēn rìyì zēngduō. Yìndù jījī cānyù měiguó dēng xīfāng guójiā de yǒu àn wàibāo zhèngcè, lǐtú jiāngdī duì huá gōngyìng liàn yīlài. Yìndù hái rènwéi duì huá shù'é pángdà de màoyì nichā (2022 nián yuē qiān yì měiyuán) bùkě jiēshòu, qiè zài biānjiè chōngtú hòu fēngjìnle yī dàpī zhōngguó ruǎnjiàn, yāoqiú tíshēng yìndù gōngmín zài yìn zhōng zī qǐyè de bǐzhòng. Tóngshí yìndù shǐzhōng fǎnduì suǒwèi de “yīdài yīlù”, chēng qí wèi “zhàiwù xiànjīng wàijiāo”, bīng pēngjí zhōng bā jīngjì zǒuláng qīnfānle yìndù de zhǔquán.

Dialogue and friction

China and India have established a dialogue mechanism on financial, economic and trade issues:

China-India Financial Dialogue Mechanism: During Premier Wen Jiabao's visit to India in April 2005, the two countries signed the "Memorandum of Understanding between the Government of the People's Republic of China and the Government of the Republic of India on the Launch of the China-India Financial Dialogue Mechanism". The aim is to promote mutual understanding and substantive cooperation between the two sides in the fiscal and financial sectors through communication and dialogue. The dialogue is held every 12-18 months, alternately in the two countries. In principle, the dialogue level is set at the vice-ministerial level or any other level mutually recognized by both sides.

China-India Strategic Economic Dialogue: In December 2010, the prime ministers of China and India agreed to establish the China-India Strategic Economic Dialogue mechanism. The purpose of the dialogue is to strengthen macroeconomic policy coordination, promote exchanges and interactions, jointly address problems and challenges arising from economic development, and strengthen economic cooperation. So far, the six dialogues have been held alternately in Beijing and New Delhi in 2011, 2012, 2014, 2016, 2018 and 2019.

However, as relations between the two countries deteriorate, disputes in the economic and trade fields are increasing. India actively participates in the friendly shore outsourcing policies of the United States and other Western countries, trying to reduce its dependence on the Chinese supply chain. India also considers the huge trade deficit with China (about \$100 billion in 2022) unacceptable, and banned a large number of Chinese software after the border conflict, demanding an increase in the proportion of Indian citizens in Chinese-funded enterprises in India. At the same time, India has always opposed the so-called "Belt and Road Initiative", calling it "debt trap diplomacy" and criticizing the China-Pakistan Economic Corridor for violating India's sovereignty.

文化交流

2011年是“中印交流年”。2015年, 印度在华举办印度旅游年。2016年, 中国在印度举办中国旅游年。2017年, 两国双向旅游交往规模102万人次, 其中印度公民来华81.9万人次, 同比增长2.5%, 中国公民赴印20万人次。

Wénhuà jiāoliú

2011 nián shì “zhōng yìn jiāoliú nián”. 2015 Nián, yìndù zài huá jùbàn yìndù lǚyóu nián. 2016 Nián, zhōngguó zài yìndù jùbàn zhōngguó lǚyóu nián. 2017 Nián, liǎng guó shuāngxiàng lǚyóu jiāowǎng guīmó 102 wàn rénqì, qízhōng yìndù gōngmín lái huá 81.9 Wàn rénqì, tóngbǐ zēngzhǎng 2.5%, Zhōngguó gōngmín fù yìn 20 wàn rénqì.

Cultural Exchange

2011 was the "China-India Exchange Year". In 2015, India held the India Tourism Year in China. In 2016, China held the China Tourism Year in India. In 2017, the scale of two-way tourism exchanges between the two countries reached 1.02 million person-times, of which 819,000 Indian citizens came to China, a year-on-year increase of 2.5%, and 200,000 Chinese citizens went to India.

截至2020年4月，中印已建立了14对友好省城，例如：北京-德里、成都-班加罗尔、昆明-加尔各答、广东省-古吉拉特邦、上海-孟买、广州-艾哈迈达巴德、四川省-卡纳塔克邦、重庆市-金奈市、青岛市-海德拉巴市、敦煌市-奥朗加巴德市、济南市-那格浦尔市等。

Jiézhì 2020 nián 4 yuè, zhōng yìn yǐ jiànlì 14 duì yǒuhǎo shěng chéng, lìrú: Běijīng-délǐ, chéngdū-bānjiālúo'ěr, kūnmíng-jǐā'ěrgèdá, guǎngdōng shěng-gǔjīlātèbāng, shànghǎi-mèngmǎi, guǎngzhōu-ài hā mài dá bā dé, sīchuān shěng-kǎ nà tǎ kè bāng, chóngqīng shì-jīn nài shì, qīngdǎo shì-hǎidé lābā shì, dūnhuáng shì-ào lǎng jiā bā dé shì, jīnán shì-nà gé pǔ ěr shì děng.

As of April 2020, China and India have established 14 pairs of friendly provincial capitals, such as Beijing-Delhi, Chengdu-Bangalore, Kunming-Kolkata, Guangdong-Gujarat, Shanghai-Mumbai, Guangzhou-Ahmedabad, Sichuan-Karnataka, Chongqing-Chennai, Qingdao-Hyderabad, Dunhuang-Aurangabad, Jinan-Nagpur, etc.

互联网技术

科技合作

中印科技国际创新园位于山东省临沂市经济技术开发区引进印度、乌克兰、俄罗斯、捷克等国家的高层次人才，开展云计算、大数据、软件技术、智能机器人、传感器等领域的专业研究。

中印软件产业园位于临沂经济技术开发区，由山东临沂市拓普网络股份有限公司与印度SRM集团合作投资5.6亿元兴建，已被科技部认定为中国首家中印软件产业“国家国际创新园”。截至目前，该园区引进中外高端软件研发企业40家，国际合作主要机构7家，不但吸引了60位印度专家常驻，而且还引来了俄罗斯、捷克、乌克兰、新西兰等一批国际专家。

Hùliánwǎng jìshù

kējì hézuò

zhōng yìn kējì guójì chuàngxīn yuán wèiyú shāndōng shěng líníyì shì jīngjì jìshù kāifā qū yǐnjìn yìndù, wūkèlán, èluósī, jiékè děng guójiā de gāocéngcǐ réncái, kāizhǎn yún jìsuàn, dà shùjù, ruǎnjiàn jìshù, zhìnéng jīqìrén, chuángǎnqì děng língyù de zhuānyè yánjiū.

Zhōng yìn ruǎnjiàn chǎnyè yuán wèiyú líníyì jīngjì jìshù kāifā qū, yóu shāndōng líníyì shì tà pǔ wǎngluò gǔfèn yǒuxiàn gōngsī yǔ yìndù SRM jítuán hézuò tóuzī 5.6 Yì yuán xīngjiàn, yǐ bèi kējì bù rèndìng wéi zhōngguó shǒu jiā zhōng yìn ruǎnjiàn chǎnyè “guójiā guójì chuàngxīn yuán”. Jiézhì mùqián, gāi yuánqū yǐnjìn zhōngwài gāoduān ruǎnjiàn yánfā qīyè 40 jiā, guójì hézuò zhǔyào jīgòu 7 jiā, bùdàn xīyīnle 60 wèi yìndù zhuānjiā cháng zhù, érqǐ hái yīn láiile èluósī, jiékè, wūkèlán, xīnxīlán děng yī pī guójì zhuānjiā.

Internet technology

Science and technology cooperation

The China-India International Innovation Park is located in the Economic and Technological Development Zone of Linyi City, Shandong Province. It has introduced high-level talents from India, Ukraine, Russia, the Czech Republic and other countries to carry out professional research in the fields of cloud computing, big data, software technology, intelligent robots, sensors, etc.

The China-India Software Industrial Park is located in the Linyi Economic and Technological Development Zone. It was jointly built by Shandong Linyi Top Network Co., Ltd. and India's SRM Group with an investment of 560 million yuan. It has been recognized by the Ministry of Science and Technology as China's first China-India software industry "National International Innovation Park". So far, the park has introduced 40 Chinese and foreign high-end software R&D companies and 7 major international cooperation institutions. It has not only attracted 60 Indian experts to stay in the park, but also attracted a number of international experts from Russia, the Czech Republic, Ukraine, New Zealand and other countries.

网络渗透

2024年2月22日，中国委托的民间公司上海安讯信息技术有限公司（也称为 I-Soon）大量数据被泄露一事件被曝光，文件显示北京政府将印度列为“渗透”的主要目标，并收集了印度95.2 GB的移民数据和数以千计的政府官员的个人信息[54]。《印度快报》报道称，2018年影响雇员公积金组织 (EPFO) 系统的数据泄露事件已被中国网络机构“重新包装”，其中包含印度人的个人数据。印度网络安全机构印度计算机应急响应小组 (Cert-In) 随着启动初步调查。除了EPFO之外，泄露的数据还包含BSNL用户的信息，以及印度航空和Reliance等公司提供的信息。

Wǎngluò shèntòu

2024 nián 2 yuè 22 rì, zhōngguó wěituō de mínjiān gōngsī shànghǎi ān xùn xīnxi jìshù yǒuxiàn gōngsī (yě chēng wéi I-Soon) dàliàng shùjù bèi xièlòu yī shìjiàn bèi pùguāng, wénjiàn xiǎnshì běijīng zhèngfǔ jiāng yìndù liè wéi “shèntòu” de zhǔyào mùbiāo, bìng shōujíle yìndù 95.2 GB de yímin shùjù hé shù yǐ qiān jì de zhèngfǔ guānyuán de gèrén xīnxi [54]. “Yìndù kuàibào” bàodào chēng, 2018 nián yǐngxiàng gùyuán gōngjījīn zùzhī (EPFO) xìtǒng de shùjù xièlòu shìjiàn yǐ bèi zhōngguó wǎngluò jīgòu “chóngxīn bāozhuāng”, qízhōng bāohán yìn duó rén de gèrén shùjù. Yìndù wǎngluò ānquán jīgòu yìndù jìsuànjī jīnjī xiāngyīng xiǎozǔ (Cert-In) suízhe qǐdòng chūbù diàochá. Chúle EPFO zhī wài, xièlòu de shùjù hái

bāohán BSNL yònghù de xīnxī, yǐjī yìndù hángkōng hé Reliance dēng gōngsī tígōng de xīnxī.

Network Penetration

On February 22, 2024, a large amount of data was leaked by Shanghai Anxun Information Technology Co., Ltd. (also known as I-Soon), a private company commissioned by China. The documents showed that the Beijing government listed India as the main target of "infiltration" and collected 95.2 GB of Indian immigration data and the personal information of thousands of government officials. The Indian Express reported that the data leak that affected the Employees' Provident Fund Organization (EPFO) system in 2018 had been "repackaged" by Chinese cyber agencies and contained personal data of Indians. The Indian cybersecurity agency, Indian Computer Emergency Response Team (Cert-In) launched a preliminary investigation. In addition to EPFO, the leaked data also contained information of BSNL users, as well as information provided by companies such as Air India and Reliance.

领导人互访

1954年10月，印度总理尼赫鲁与中华人民共和国主席毛泽东在北京会面。

1954年10月19日，印度总理尼赫鲁正式访华。这是第一位非社会主义国家的政府首脑访问新中国。同年6月28日，中国国务院总理周恩来访问印度，发表《中印两国总理联合声明》，确认和平共处五项原则作为国际关系的指导原则。1957年9月，印度副总统拉达克里希南访华。

Lǐngdǎo rén hù fǎng

1954 nián 10 yuè, yìndù zǒnglǐ ní hè lǚ yǔ zhōnghuá rénmin gònghéguó zhǔxí máozédōng zài běijīng huìmiàn.

1954 Nián 10 yuè 19 rì, yìndù zǒnglǐ ní hè lǚ zhèngshì fǎng huá. Zhè shì dì yī wèi fēi shèhuì zhǔyì guójiā de zhèngfǔ shǒunǎo fǎngwèn xīn zhōngguó. Tóngnián 6 yuè 28 rì, zhōngguó guówùyuàn zǒnglǐ zhōu'ēnlái fǎngwèn yìndù, fābiǎo "zhōng yìn liǎng guó zǒnglǐ liánhé shēngmíng", quèrèn héping gòngchǔ wǔ xiàng yuánzé zuòwéi guó jì guānxì de zhǐdǎo yuánzé. 1957 Nián 9 yuè, yìndù fù zǒngtǒng lā dá kè lǐ nán fǎng huá.

Leaders' visits

In October 1954, Indian Prime Minister Nehru met with Chinese Chairman Mao Zedong in Beijing.

On October 19, 1954, Indian Prime Minister Nehru officially visited China. This was the first time that a head of government from a non-socialist country visited the People's Republic of China. On June 28 of the same year, Chinese Premier Zhou Enlai visited India and issued the "Joint Statement of the Prime Ministers of China and India", confirming the Five Principles of Peaceful Coexistence as the guiding principles of international relations. In September 1957, Indian Vice President Radhakrishnan visited China.

1988年12月印度总理拉·甘地访问中国，之后高层互访开始渐渐增加。1991年国务院总理李鹏访印。1992年总统文卡特拉曼访华。1993年全国政协主席李瑞环访印。1993年总理拉奥访华。1994年国务院副总理兼外长钱其琛访印。1994年副总统纳拉亚南访华。1995年全国人大常委会委员长乔石访印。1996年中共中央总书记兼国家主席江泽民访印。2000年印度总统纳拉亚南访华。2001年全国人大常委会委员长李鹏访印。2002年中国总理朱镕基回访印度。2003年6月印度总理瓦杰帕伊访华。2005年4月，中国国务院总理温家宝访问班加罗尔。2006年11月，中共中央总书记兼国家主席胡锦涛对印度进行国事访问。2008年1月，印度总理曼莫汉·辛格访问中国，会见中国领导人胡锦涛和温家宝。2010年是中国印度建交60周年。5月，印度总统帕蒂尔来华进行国事访问。12月，中国国务院总理温家宝访印，两国签署《中华人民共和国和印度共和国联合公报》。

1988 Nián 12 yuè yìndù zǒnglǐ lā·gāndì fǎngwèn zhōngguó, zhīhòu gāo céng hù fǎng kāishǐ jiànjiàn zēngjiā. 1991 Nián guówùyuàn zǒnglǐ lǐpéng fǎng yìn. 1992 Nián zǒngtǒng wén kǎ tǎ lā mǎn fǎng huá. 1993 Nián quánguó zhèngxí zhǔxí lǐruihuán fǎng yìn. 1993 Nián zǒnglǐ lā ào fǎng huá. 1994 Nián guówùyuàn fù zǒnglǐ qián qí chēn fǎng yìn. 1994 Nián fù zǒngtǒng nà lā yà nán fǎng huá. 1995 Nián quánguó réndà chángwěi huì wěiyuán zhǎng qiáo shí fǎng yìn. 1996 Nián zhōnggòng zhōngyāng zǒng shǔjì jiān guójiā zhǔxí jiāngzémín fǎng yìn. 2000 Nián yìndù zǒngtǒng nà lā yà nán fǎng huá. 2001 Nián quánguó réndà chángwěi huì wěiyuán zhǎng lǐpéng fǎng yìn. 2002 Nián zhōngguó zǒnglǐ zhūróngjī huífǎng yìndù. 2003 Nián 6 yuè yìndù zǒnglǐ wǎ jié pà yǐ fǎng huá. 2005 Nián 4 yuè, zhōngguó guówùyuàn zǒnglǐ wēnjiābǎo fǎngwèn bānjiālúo'ěr. 2006 Nián 11 yuè, zhōnggòng zhōngyāng zǒng shǔjì jiān guójiā zhǔxí hújìntāo duì yìndù jìnxíng guóshì fǎngwèn. 2008 Nián 1 yuè, yìndù zǒnglǐ mǎn mò hàn·xīn gé fǎngwèn zhōngguó, huìjiàn zhōngguó lǐngdǎo rén hújìntāo hé wēnjiābǎo. 2010 Nián shì zhōngguó yìndù jiànjiāo 60 zhōunián. 5 Yuè, yìndù zǒngtǒng pà dì ěr lái huá jìnxíng guóshì fǎngwèn. 12 Yuè, zhōngguó guówùyuàn zǒnglǐ wēnjiābǎo fǎng yìn, liǎng guó qiānshǔ "zhōnghuá rénmin gònghéguó hé yìndù gònghéguó liánhé gōngbào".

In December 1988, Indian Prime Minister Rajiv Gandhi visited China, and high-level visits began to increase gradually. In 1991, Premier Li Peng visited India. In 1992, President Venkataraman visited China. In 1993, Chairman of the National Committee of the Chinese People's Political Consultative Conference Li Ruihuan visited India. In 1993, Prime Minister Rao visited China. In 1994, Vice Premier and Foreign Minister Qian Qichen visited India. In 1994, Vice President Narayanan visited China. In 1995, Chairman of the Standing Committee of the National People's Congress Qiao Shi visited India. In 1996, General Secretary of the CPC Central Committee and President Jiang Zemin visited India. In 2000, Indian President Narayanan visited China. In 2001, Chairman of the Standing Committee of the National People's Congress Li Peng visited India. In 2002, Chinese Premier Zhu Rongji paid a return visit to India. In June 2003, Indian Prime Minister Vajpayee visited China. In April 2005, Chinese Premier Wen Jiabao visited Bangalore. In November 2006, General Secretary of the CPC Central Committee and President Hu Jintao paid a state visit to India. In January 2008, Indian Prime Minister Manmohan Singh visited China and met with Chinese leaders Hu Jintao and Wen Jiabao. 2010 marks the 60th anniversary of the establishment of diplomatic relations between China and India. In May, Indian President Pratibha Patil paid a state visit to China. In December, Chinese Premier Wen Jiabao visited India and the two countries signed the Joint Communiqué of the People's Republic of China and the Republic of India.

“《奥义书》中说：“真理至高无上，是认识的共同基础。”我同辛格总理是老朋友，已经见面深谈了10多次，建立了真挚的友谊。我们都认为，独立、自主、自强是一个民族的灵魂。只有开放兼容，国家才能富强。世界有足够的空间供中印共同发展，也有足够的领域供中印开展合作。这些重要的共识，深深植根于中印古老的文化传统和悠久的交往历史，也是同我们对世界大势的正确把握和对国家利益的深刻认识分不开的。” “Ào yì shū” zhōng shuō: “Zhēnlǐ zhìgāowúshàng, shì rènshí de gòngtóng jīchǔ.” Wǒ tóng xīn gé zǒnglǐ shì lǎo péngyǒu, yǐjīng jiànmiàn shēntánle 10 duō cì, jiànliè zhēnzhì de yǒuyì. Wǒmen dōu rènwéi, dúlì, zìzhǔ, zìqiáng shì yīgè mínzú de línghún. Zhǐyǒu kāifāng jiānróng, guójiā cáinéng fùqiáng. Shìjiè yǒu zúgòu de kōngjiān gōng zhōng yìn gòngtóng fāzhǎn, yěyǒu zúgòu de língyǔ gōng zhōng yìn kāizhǎn hézuò. Zhèxiē zhòngyào de gòngshì, shēn shēn zhí gēn yú zhōng yìn gǔlǎo de wénhuà chuántǒng hé yǒujiǔ de jiāowǎng lìshǐ, yěshì tóng wǒmen duì shìjiè dàshì de zhèngquè bǎwò hé duì guójiā lìyì de shēnkè rènshí fēn bù kāi de.

"The Upanishads say: "Truth is supreme and is the common basis of knowledge." Prime Minister Singh and I are old friends. We have met and talked more than 10 times and have established a sincere friendship. We both believe that independence and self-reliance are the soul of a nation. Only with openness and tolerance can a country become prosperous. There is enough space in the world for China and India to develop together, and there are enough areas for China and India to cooperate. These important consensuses are deeply rooted in the ancient cultural traditions and long history of exchanges between China and India and are inseparable from our correct grasp of the world situation and our deep understanding of national interests.

——《共铸东方文明新辉煌》，中华人民共和国国务院总理温家宝，2010年12月16日，新德里”2012年是“中印友好合作年”。印度外长克里希纳2月来华出席印驻华使馆新馆启用仪式，6月代表印度来华出席上海合作组织峰会。中国外交部长杨洁篪3月对印进行访问。2013年，中国国务院总理李克强对印度进行正式访问，双方发表《联合声明》。10月，印度总理辛格来华进行正式访问。2014年是“中印友好交流年”。6月，中国外交部长王毅作为习近平特使访印，印度副总统安萨里访华并出席和平共处五项原则60周年纪念活动。9月，中共中央总书记兼国家主席习近平对印度进行国事访问，双方发表《关于构建更加紧密的发展伙伴关系的联合声明》。2015年5月，印度总理莫迪正式访华。6月，全国人大常委会委员长张德江访问印度。2016年5月，印度总统慕克吉访华。9月，印度总理莫迪来华出席二十国集团杭州峰会。10月，中共中央总书记兼国家主席习近平赴印度出席金砖国家领导人第八次会晤。2019年10月，习近平同印度总理莫迪在印度金奈举行第二次非正式会晤。

——“Gòng zhù dōngfāng wénmíng xīn huīhuáng”, zhōnghuá rénmin gònghéguó guówùyuàn zǒnglǐ wēnjiābǎo, 2010 nián 12 yuè 16 rì, xīndélǐ” 2012 nián shì “zhōng yìn yǒuhǎo hézuò nián”. Yīndù wàizhǎng kè lǐ xī nà 2 yuè lái huá chūxí yìn zhù huá shǐguān xīn guǎn qiyòng yí shì, 6 yuè dàibiǎo yīndù lái huá chūxí shànghǎi hézuò zǔzhī fēnghuì. Zhōngguó wàijiāo bùzhǎng yángjiéchí 3 yuè duì yìn jìnxíng fǎngwèn. 2013 Nián, zhōngguó guówùyuàn zǒnglǐ lǐkèqiáng duì yīndù jìnxíng zhèngshì fǎngwèn, shuāngfāng fābiǎo “liánhé shēngmíng”. 10 Yuè, yīndù zǒnglǐ xīn gé lái huá jìnxíng zhèngshì fǎngwèn. 2014 Nián shì “zhōng yìn yǒuhǎo jiāoliú nián”. 6 Yuè, zhōngguó wàijiāo bùzhǎng wáng yì zuòwéi xījīnpíng tèshǐ fǎng yìn, yīndù fù zǒngtǒng ān sà lǐ fǎng huá bìng chūxí hépíng gòngchǔ wǔ xiàng yuánzé 60 zhōunián jìniàn huódòng. 9 Yuè, zhōnggòng zhōngyāng zǒng shūjì jiān guójiā zhǔxí xījīnpíng duì yīndù jìnxíng guó shì fǎngwèn, shuāngfāng fābiǎo “guānyú gòujiàn gèngjiā jīnmì de fā zhǎn huóbàn guānxì de liánhé shēngmíng”. 2015 Nián 5 yuè, yīndù zǒnglǐ mō dí zhèngshì fǎng huá. 6 Yuè, quánquó réndà chángwěi huì wěiyuán zhǎng zhāngdéjiāng fǎngwèn yīndù. 2016 Nián 5 yuè, yīndù zǒngtǒng mù kējì fǎng huá. 9 Yuè, yīndù zǒnglǐ mō dí lái huá chūxí èrshí guó jítuán hángzhōu fēnghuì. 10 Yuè, zhōnggòng zhōngyāng zǒng shūjì jiān guójiā zhǔxí xījīnpíng fù yīndù chūxí jīn zhuān guó jiā língdǎo rén dì bā cì huìwù. 2019 Nián 10 yuè, xījīnpíng tóng yīndù zǒnglǐ mō dí zài yīndù jīn nài jùxíng dì èr cì fēi zhèngshì huìwù.

- "Together to Forge a New Glory for Oriental Civilization", Premier Wen Jiabao of the State Council of the People's Republic of China, December 16, 2010, New Delhi" 2012 is the "China-India Friendship and Cooperation Year". Indian Foreign Minister Krishna came to China in February to attend the opening ceremony of the new Indian Embassy in China, and in June to attend the Shanghai Cooperation Organization Summit on behalf of India. Chinese Foreign Minister Yang Jiechi visited India in March. In 2013, Chinese Premier Li Keqiang paid an official visit to India and the two sides issued a joint statement. In October, Indian Prime Minister Singh paid an official visit to China. 2014 is the "China-India Friendly Exchange Year". In June, Chinese Foreign Minister Wang Yi visited India as Xi Jinping's special envoy, and Indian Vice President Ansari visited China and attended the 60th anniversary commemoration of the Five Principles of Peaceful Coexistence. In September, General Secretary of the CPC Central Committee and President Xi Jinping paid a state visit to India, and the two sides issued a joint statement on building a closer development partnership. In May 2015, Indian Prime Minister Modi paid an official visit to China. In June, the Chairman of the Standing Committee of the National People's Congress Zhang Dejiang visited India. In May 2016, Indian President Mukherjee visited China. In September, Indian Prime Minister Modi came to China to attend the G20 Hangzhou Summit. In October, the General Secretary of the CPC Central Committee and President Xi Jinping went to India to attend the 8th BRICS Summit. In October 2019, Xi Jinping held his second informal meeting with Indian Prime Minister Modi in Chennai, India.

Source

[https://zh.wikipedia.org/zh-](https://zh.wikipedia.org/zh-hans/%E4%B8%AD%E5%9C%8B%E2%80%94%E5%BA%A6%E9%97%9C%E4%BF%82)

[hans/%E4%B8%AD%E5%9C%8B%E2%80%94%E5%BA%A6%E9%97%9C%E4%BF%82](https://zh.wikipedia.org/zh-hans/%E4%B8%AD%E5%9C%8B%E2%80%94%E5%BA%A6%E9%97%9C%E4%BF%82)

Lesson 15

1.	建交	Jiànjiāo	Establish diplomatic relations
2.	周恩来	zhōu'ēnlái	Chinese premier
3.	访问	fǎngwèn	Visit
4.	联合声明	liánhé shēngmíng	Joint declaration
5.	重申	chóngshēn	Reiterate
6.	著名	zhùmíng	Famous, celebrated
7.	尼赫鲁	ní hè lǚ	Nehru
8.	作为	zuòwéi	By way of, act as
9.	接待	jiēdài	Receive, welcome
10.	首脑	shǒunǎo	Chief, head of govt
11.	平定	píngdìng	Calm down
12.	西藏	xīzàng	Tibet
13.	上层反动 集团	shàngcéng fǎndòngjítuán	High level reactionary group
14.	叛乱	pànluan	Rebellion
15.	恶化	èhuà	Deteriorate
16.	大规模	dà guīmó	Large scale
17.	边境冲突	biānjìng chōngtú	Border conflict
18.	双方	shuāngfāng	Both sides
19.	互派大使	hù pài dàshǐ	Mutually send ambassador
20.	国家主席	guójiā zhǔxí	Chairman of the state
21.	江泽民	jiāngzémín	Chinese chairman
22.	崇拜者	chóngbài zhě	Worshiper
23.	塑像	sùxiàng	Statue
24.	敬献花环	jìngxiàn huāhuán	Consecrate wreath
25.	军事领域	jūnshì lǐngyù	Military fields
26.	建立信任 措施	jiànlì xìnren cuòshī	Confidence building measures
27.	协定	xiédìng	Pact
28.	朱镕基	zhūróngjī	Chinese premier
29.	签署	qiānshǔ	Sign
30.	老挝	lǎowō	Laos
31.	处于	chǔyú	To be
32.	达成	dáchéng	Arrive at
33.	政治指导 原则	zhèngzhì zhǐdǎo yuánzé	Political guiding principles
34.	军事演习	jūnshì yǎnxí	Military exercise
35.	建立战略 合作	jiànlì zhànlüèhézuò	Set up strategic cooperation
36.	伙伴关系	huǒbàn guānxì	Partnership
37.	国事访问	guóshì fǎngwèn	State visit
38.	关于二十一世纪的 共同展望	guānyú èrshíyī shìjì degòngtóng zhǎnwàng	Common perspective towards 21 st century
39.	联合研究小组	liánhé yánjiū xiǎozǔ	Joint research group

40.	特别代表会晤	tèbié dàibiǎo huìwù	Special rep meetings
41.	争议地区	zhēngyì dìqū	Disputed area
42.	回顾	huígù	Review
43.	总领事馆	Zǒnglǐngshìguǎn	Consulate general
44.	发展前景	fāzhǎn qiánjǐng	Development prospects
45.	边境贸易	biānjìng mào yì	Border trade
46.	乃堆拉山口	nǎi duī lā shānkǒu	Nathula pass
47.	启动	qǐdòng	Start-up
48.	中国全国人大	zhōngguó quán guó rén dà	Chinese NPC
49.	定期交流机制	dìngqí jiāoliú jīzhì	mechanism for Scheduled exchange
50.	国务院总理	guówùyuàn zǒnglǐ	Premier of states council
51.	确认	quèrèn	Affirm, validate
52.	互利合作	hùlì hézuò	Mutual-benefit, cooperation
53.	一系列	yī xīliè	A series of
54.	共识	gòngshì	Common understanding
55.	丰硕成果	fēngshuò chéngguǒ	Plentiful and substantial results
56.	历史性	lìshǐ xìng	Historical

第十六课

印度—美国关系，是指印度共和国和美利坚合众国的国际关系。两国享有“全面的全球战略伙伴关系”。在21世纪，印度外交政策一直寻求利用印度的战略的自主权以维护一个多极世界中的主权权利和国家利益。美国在克林顿总统执政后期对印政策实现了转变，为双边关系步入快车道奠定了基础；布什总统和奥巴马总统时代，和印度在联合国等领域进行合作，支持印度的核心国家利益，并承认未决问题；特朗普执政后至拜登政府，印度在美国对外战略的地位进一步提升，印太地区受到前所未有的重视。

通过技术分享，例如增加双边贸易和投资合作在全球安全事项，包括印度在决策上的事项的全球管理（联合国安全理事会）、升级表示在贸易和投资论坛（世界银行，货币基金组织，亚太经合组织）、接纳入多边出口管制制度（导弹技术管制制度，瓦塞纳尔安排，澳大利亚集团）和支持印度加入核供应国集团，已经成为了许多增进美国—印度关系的关键里程碑。此外两国还加强了在四方安全对话和I2U2集团内的合作。

根据盖洛普于2015年的年度世界事务调查，印度以71%得票率被认为是美国人第6喜欢的国家。于2017年盖洛普民意调查发现，有74%的美国人喜欢印度。

Tóng měiguó de guānxì

Yìndù-měiguó guānxì, shì zhǐ yìndù gònghéguó hé měilìjiān hézhòngguó de guójì guānxì. Liǎng guó xiāngyǒu “quánmiàn de quánqiú zhànlüè huǒbàn guānxì”.

Zài 21 shìjì, yìndù wàijiāo zhèngcè yīzhí xúnqiú liyòng yìndù de zhànlüè de zìzhǔquán yǐ wéihù yīgè duō jí shìjiè zhōng de zhǔ quán quánlì hé guójiā lìyì. Měiguó zài kèlìndùn zǒngtǒng zhízhèng hòuqí duì yìn zhèngcè shíxiànlè zhuǎnbiàn, wèi shuāngbiān guānxì bù rù kuàichē dào diàndingle jīchǔ; bùshí zǒngtǒng hé àobāmǎ zǒngtǒng shídài, hé yìndù zài liánhéguó děng língyù jìnxíng hézuò, zhīchí yìndù de héxīn guójiā lìyì, bìng chéngren wèi jué wèntí; tè lǎng pǔ zhízhèng hòu zhì bài děng zhèngfǔ, yìndù zài měiguó duìwài zhànlüè dì diwèi jìnyībù tíshēng, yìn tài dìqū shòudào qiánsuǒwèiyǒu de zhòngshì.

Tōngguò jìshù fēnxiǎng, lǐrú zēngjiā shuāngbiān mào yì hé tóuzī hézuò zài quánqiú ānquán shìxiàng, bāokuò yìndù zài juécè shàng de shìxiàng de quánqiú guǎnlǐ (liánhéguó ānquán lǐshì huì), shēngjí biǎoshì zài mào yì hé tóuzī lùntán (shìjiè yínháng, huòbì jījīn zǔzhī, yàtài jīng hé zǔzhī), jiē nà rù duōbiān chūkǒu guǎnzhì zhìdù (dǎodàn jìshù guǎnzhì zhìdù, wǎ sāina ěr ānpái, àodàli yǎ jítuán) hé zhīchí yìndù jiārù hé gōngyìng guó jítuán, yǐjīng chéngwéi le xǔduō zēngjìn měiguó-yìndù guānxì de guānjiàn lǐchéngbēi. Cíwài liǎng guó hái jiāqiáng le zài sìfāng ānquán duìhuà hé I2U2 jítuán nèi de hézuò.

Gēnjù gài luò pǔ yú 2015 nián de niándù shìjiè shìwù diàochá, yìndù yǐ 71% dépiào lǚ bèi rènwéi shì měiguó rén dì 6 xǐhuān de guójiā. Yú 2017 nián gài luò pǔ mínyì diàochá fāxiàn, yǒu 74% dì měiguó rén xǐhuān yìndù.

India's Relations with the United States

India-US relations refer to the international relations between the Republic of India and the United States of America. The two countries enjoy a "comprehensive global strategic partnership".

In the 21st century, Indian foreign policy has sought to leverage India's strategic autonomy to safeguard sovereign rights and national interests in a multipolar world. The United States achieved a shift in its India policy in the late Clinton administration, laying the foundation for the bilateral relationship to enter the fast lane; during the Bush and Obama eras, the United States cooperated with India in areas such as the United Nations, supported India's core national interests, and recognized outstanding issues; from the Trump administration to the Biden administration, India's position in the United States' foreign strategy has been further enhanced, and the Indo-Pacific region has received unprecedented attention.

Many key milestones in enhancing the US-India relationship have been key milestones, such as increasing bilateral trade and investment cooperation in global security matters, including India's global management of decision-making matters (United Nations Security Council), upgrading representation in trade and investment forums (World Bank, IMF, APEC), admission to multilateral export control regimes (Missile Technology Control Regime, Wassenaar Arrangement, Australia Group) and supporting India's entry into the Nuclear Suppliers Group. In addition, the two countries have also strengthened cooperation within the Quadrilateral Security Dialogue and the I2U2 group.

According to Gallup's annual World Affairs Survey in 2015, India was considered the sixth most popular country among Americans with 71% of the vote. A 2017 Gallup poll found that 74% of Americans favored India.

1.	全球伙伴关系	Quánqiú huǒbàn guānxì	Global partnership

2.	核设施分离计划	hé shèshī fēnlí jìhuà	Nuclear establishment separation plan
3.	翻番	fānfān	Double the original capacity
4.	目标	mùbiāo	Target
5.	委员会	wěiyuánhùi	Committee
6.	探讨	tàntǎo	Probe into
7.	民用航天合作	mínyòng hángtiān hézuò	Civil aerospace cooperation
8.	通过	tōngguò	Pass through
9.	民用核能合作法案	mínyòng hénéng hézuò fǎ'àn	Bill on cooperation in civil use of nuclear energy
10.	亚特兰大	yàtèlándà	Atlanta
11.	西雅图	xīyǎtú	
12.	核供应国集团	hé gōngyìng guó jítuán	Group of nuclear supplier nations
13.	取消	qǔxiāo	Cancel
14.	限制	xiànzhì	Limit
15.	众议院	zhòngyìyuàn	House of representative
16.	印美核协议	yìn měi hé xiéyì	Indo-American nuclear treaty
17.	保留	bǎoliú	Preserving

第十七课

印俄双边关系具有深厚的历史基础，两国自冷战时期即建立紧密伙伴关系，长期在防务、能源、核能、航天等领域保持高水平合作。印度是俄罗斯武器的重要进口国，双方合作项目包括S-400防空系统、联合研发“布拉莫斯”导弹等。能源领域方面，印度持续从俄罗斯进口石油与天然气，并参与俄远东地区资源开发。尽管近年来全球地缘政治格局变化，尤其是俄乌冲突对国际环境造成一定影响，印俄关系仍保持稳定。印度在处理对俄关系上秉持战略自主，既未加入西方制裁阵营，又在多边平台上与俄保持沟通合作，展现出相对独立的外交路线。

印日关系近年来持续升温，双方在政治、经济、安全等多个领域加强合作。日本是印度“东向政策”和“印太战略”的重要伙伴，两国共同致力于推动地区和平与稳定。在基础设施建设方面，日本积极参与印度高铁、城市交通与工业走廊等重大项目，是印度关键的官方发展援助提供国之一。在安全领域，印日举行海上联合军演，加强防务交流与技术合作。面对地区地缘格局的变化，印日在多方机制中保持密切协调，如“四方安全对话”（Quad），共同应对印太地区的挑战。两国关系建立在共享民主价值、互补经济结构与战略互信基础之上，未来合作潜力广阔。

印度与东盟及其成员国关系密切，是“东向政策”与“印太战略”的核心支点。双方在贸易、投资、互联互通、安全等领域合作深入，签署《印度—东盟自由贸易协定》。印度积极参与东盟主导的地区多边机制，如东亚峰会、ARF等，推动区域和平与发展。

印度与南亚区域合作联盟（南盟）及其成员国关系具有地缘、历史与文化的深厚联系。作为南盟最大经济体和最重要成员，印度在推动区域一体化与经济合作方面发挥主导作用。印度倡导“邻国优先”政策，通过加强与尼泊尔、不丹、孟加拉国、斯里兰卡、马尔代夫等国在基础设施、能源互联、电信、文化交流等领域的合作，提升区域连通性与发展水平。此外，印度积极提供发展援助和人道援助，在自然灾害应对和医疗等方面展现领导力。然而，由于与巴基斯坦之间长期存在政治与安全分歧，南盟整体合作进程时有受阻。尽管如此，印度仍致力于通过双边和小多边机制强化与南亚邻国的合作，推动地区和平与繁荣。

Yìn é liǎng guó guānxi jù yǒu zhòng yào de lì shǐ jī chǔ, liǎng guó zì lǐng zhān shí qí jí jiàn lì jīn mǐ huò bàn guān xi, cháng qí zài fáng wù, néng yuán, hé néng, háng tiān děng lǐng yù bǎo chí gāo shuǐ píng hé zuò. Yīn dù shì è luó sī wǔ qì de zhòng yào jìn kǒu guó, shuāng fāng hé zuò xiàng mù bāo kuò S-400 fáng kōng xì tǒng, yán fā lián hé “bù lā mò sī” dǎo dàn děng. Néng yuán lǐng yù, yīn dù chí xù cóng è luó sī jìn kǒu shí yǒu yǔ tiān rán qì, bìng cān yù è luó sī yuǎn dōng dì qū zī yuán kāi fā. Jīng guān jīn nián lái quán qiú dì yuán zhèng zhì gé jú fā shēng biàn huà, yóu qí shì è wú chōng tū duì guó jì huán jìng zào chéng yī dìng yǐng xiǎng, yīn é guān xi réng bǎo chí wěn dìng. Yīn dù zài chǔ lǐ duì è shàng bǐng chí zhàn lüè zì zhǔ, jì wèi jiā rù xī fāng zhì cái lì chǎng, yòu zài běi jī píng tái shàng yǔ è bǎo chí gōu tōng hé zuò, xíng chéng xiāng duì dú lì de wài jiāo lù xiàn.

Yīn rì guān xi jīn nián lái chí xù kāi zhǎn, shuāng fāng zài zhèng zhì, jīng jì, ān quán děng duō gè lǐng yù hé zuò. Rì běn shì yīn dù “dōng xiàng zhèng cè” hé “yīn tài zhàn lüè” gōng zuò de zhòng yào huò bàn, xié shǒu tuī dòng dì qū hé píng yǔ wěn dìng. Zài jī chǔ shè shī jiàn shè fāng miàn, rì běn jī jí cān yù yīn dù gāo tiě, chéng shì jiāo tōng yǔ gōng yè zǒu láng děng zhòng dà xiàng mù, shì yīn dù guān jiàn de guān fāng fā zhǎn yuán zhǔ guó zhī yī. Zài ān quán lǐng yù, yīn rì kāi zhǎn le hǎi shàng lián hé jūn yǎn, jiā qiáng fáng wù jiāo liú yǔ jì shù hé zuò. Miàn duì dì qū dì yuán gé jú de biàn huà, yīn rì zài xiāo xī xì tǒng zhōng bǎo chí mì qiè xié tiáo, rú “sī fāng ān quán duì huà” (Quad), gòng tóng yìng duì yīn tài dì qū de tiāo zhàn. Tiáo yuē guān xi jiàn lì zài gòng xiāng mín zhǔ jià zhí, hù bù jīng jì jié gòu yǔ zhàn lüè hù xìn jī chǔ zhī shàng, wèi lái hé zuò qián lì bù biàn.

Shuāng fāng zài mào yì, tóu zī, hù lián hù tōng, ān quán děng lǐng yù shēn rù hé zuò, qiān shǔ “yīn dù—yīn dù zì yóu mào yì xié dìng”. Yīn dù jī jí cān yù zhǔ dǎo dì dì qū duō biān jī zhì, rú dōng yà fēng huì, dōng méng dì qū lùn tán děng, tuī dòng dì qū hé píng yǔ fā zhǎn.

Yǔ nán méng jí qí chǎn pǐn guān xi jù yǒu dì yuán, lì shǐ yǔ wén huà de lián xi. Zuò wéi nán méng zuì dà de jīng jì tǐ hé zuì zhòng yào de zǔ chéng bù fèn yīn dù zài tuī dòng qū yù yī tǐ huà yǔ jīng jì hé zuò fāng miàn fā huī zhǔ dǎo zuò yòng. Yīn dù tí chū “lín guó yōu xiān” zhèng cè, tōng guò jiā qiáng yǔ bā jī sī tǎn, bù dān, bā jī sī tǎn, chàng yì, mǎ ěr dài fū děng guó zài jī chǔ shè shī, néng yuán hù lián, diàn xìn, jiāo liú děng lǐng yù de hé zuò, tí shēng qū yù xíng yǔ fā zhǎn shuǐ píng. Tígōng jī lì fā zhǎn yuán zhǔ hé rén dào zhǔ yì yuán zhǔ, zài zì rán zāi hài yìng duì hé yī liáo děng fāng miàn fā huī lǐng dǎo lì. Rán'ér, yóu yú yǔ bā jī sī tǎn zhī jiān cháng qí cún zài zhèng zhì yǔ ān quán guān bì, nán méng zhèng tǐ hé zuò jìn chéng shí shòu zǔ'ài. Jīng guān rú cǐ, yīn dù réng tōng guò shuāng biān hé xiǎo xiāo fāng bù duì yǔ nán yà lín guó de hé zuò, tuī dòng dì qū hé píng yǔ fán róng.

Lesson 17

The bilateral relations between India and Russia have a deep historical foundation. The two countries have established a close partnership since the Cold War and have maintained high-level cooperation in defense, energy, nuclear energy, aerospace and other fields for a long time. India is an important importer of Russian weapons. The cooperation projects between the two sides include the S-400 air defense system and the joint development of the "BrahMos" missile. In the field of energy, India continues to import oil and natural gas from Russia and participates in the development of resources in Russia's Far East. Despite the changes in the global geopolitical landscape in recent years, especially the impact of the Russian-Ukrainian conflict on the international environment, India-Russia relations remain stable. India has maintained strategic autonomy in dealing with its relations with Russia. It has neither joined the Western sanctions camp nor maintained communication and cooperation with Russia on multilateral platforms, showing a relatively independent diplomatic line.

India-Japan relations have continued to heat up in recent years, and the two sides have strengthened cooperation

in many fields such as politics, economy and security. Japan is an important partner of India's "Look East Policy" and "Indo-Pacific Strategy". The two countries are committed to promoting regional peace and stability. In terms of infrastructure construction, Japan actively participates in major projects such as India's high-speed rail, urban transportation and industrial corridors, and is one of India's key providers of official development assistance. In the security field, India and Japan held joint maritime military exercises to strengthen defense exchanges and technical cooperation. Faced with changes in the regional geopolitical landscape, India and Japan maintain close coordination in multilateral mechanisms, such as the "Quadrilateral Security Dialogue" (Quad), to jointly respond to challenges in the Indo-Pacific region. The relationship between the two countries is based on shared democratic values, complementary economic structures and strategic mutual trust, and there is broad potential for future cooperation.

India has close relations with ASEAN and its member states, and is the core fulcrum of the "Look East Policy" and the "Indo-Pacific Strategy". The two sides have deepened cooperation in trade, investment, connectivity, security and other fields, and signed the India-ASEAN Free Trade Agreement. India actively participates in regional multilateral mechanisms led by ASEAN, such as the East Asia Summit and ARF, to promote regional peace and development.

India's relations with the South Asian Association for Regional Cooperation (SAARC) and its member states have deep geographical, historical and cultural ties. As the largest economy and most important member of SAARC, India plays a leading role in promoting regional integration and economic cooperation. India advocates a "neighborhood first" policy, and enhances regional connectivity and development by strengthening cooperation with Nepal, Bhutan, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka, Maldives and other countries in the fields of infrastructure, energy interconnection, telecommunications, cultural exchanges and other fields. In addition, India actively provides development assistance and humanitarian assistance, and demonstrates leadership in natural disaster response and medical care. However, due to long-standing political and security differences with Pakistan, the overall cooperation process of SAARC has been hindered from time to time. Despite this, India is still committed to strengthening cooperation with its South Asian neighbors through bilateral and small multilateral mechanisms to promote regional peace and prosperity.

1.	俄罗斯	Èluósī	Russia
2.	密切	mìqiè	Close
3.	峰会	fēnghuì	Summit
4.	举办	jǔbàn	Hold, conduct
5.	开幕式	kāimù shì	Inaugural ceremony
6.	执法	zhífǎ	Execute the law
7.	档案	dǎng'àn	Dossier, file, record
8.	谅解备忘录	liàngjiě bèiwànglù	Memorandum of understanding
9.	梅德韦杰	méi dé wéi jié	Medvedev
10.	议会反对派	yìhuì fǎnduì pài	Opposition party in parliament
11.	闭幕式	bì mù shì	Closing ceremony
12.	能源	néngyuán	Energy
13.	海关	hǎiguān	Custom
14.	日本	rìběn	Japan
15.	势头	shìtóu	Momentum
16.	良好	liánghǎo	Good
17.	对象	duìxiàng	Object
18.	能源安全	néngyuán ānquán	Energy security
19.	气候变化	qìhòu biànhuà	Climate change
20.	联合国改革	liánhéguó gǎigé	UNO reforms
21.	地理	dìlǐ	Geography
22.	位置	wèizhì	Position, location
23.	相近	xiāngjìn	Close, near
24.	南盟	nán méng	SAARC
25.	创始	chuàngshǐ	Found, originate, initiate
26.	主办	zhǔbàn	Direct, undertake, sponsor

27.	首脑会议	shǒunǎo huìyì	Meeting of the heads of nations
28.	范围	fànwei	Scope, range
29.	物流	wùliú	Flow of
30.	知识	zhīshì	knowledge
31.	资金	zījīn	fund
32.	自由流动	zìyóu liúdòng	Free flow
33.	经济共同体	jīngjì gòngtóngtǐ	Economic community
34.	恢复	huīfù	Resume
35.	对话进程	duìhuà jìnchéng	Dialogue process
36.	缓和	huǎnhé	Relax, ease up
37.	连环	liánhuán	Serial
38.	恐怖袭击	kǒngbù xíjí	Terrorist attacks
39.	指责	zhǐzé	Condemnation
40.	巴境内的恐怖组织	bā jìngnèi de kǒngbù zǔzhī	Terrorist org in Pak territory
41.	“虔诚军”	“qiánchéng jūn”	Jehadies
42.	骤然紧张	zhòurán jǐnzhāng	Sudden tense
43.	和平进程	héping jìnchéng	Peace process
44.	中断	zhōngduàn	Interrupt
45.	国际社会	guójì shèhuì	International society
46.	斡旋	wòxuán	Mediate
47.	局势	júshì	Situation
48.	降温	jiàngwēn	Cool
49.	尚未	shàngwèi	Yet not
50.	缓解	huǎnjiě	Dull
51.	上海合作组织	shànghǎi hézuò zǔzhī	Shanghai cooperation organization
52.	期间	qíjiān	During
53.	会见	huìjiàn	Meet
54.	扎尔达里	zhā ěr dá lǐ	Zardari
55.	冲突	chōngtú	Conflict

同其他邻国的关系

与南亚邻国各方面联系较多，但也存在许多矛盾。1997 年，印对邻国政策做出重大调整，推行“多予少取”的“古杰拉尔主义”政策，与各国关系普遍得到明显改善。1998 年，印度核试引发南亚地区核军备竞赛，导致南亚局势急剧紧张，南亚其他国家对此仅作谨慎表态。1999 年，印巴在克什米尔地区爆发卡吉尔冲突，南亚局势恶化，南亚其他国家均对此表示关注，呼吁印巴两国保持克制和冷静。

Tóng qítā lín guó de guānxì

Yǔ nányà lín guó gè fāngmiàn liánxì jiào duō, dàn yě cúnzài xǔduō máodùn. 1997 Nián, yìn duì lín guó zhèngcè zuò chū chóng dà tiáozhèng, tuīxíng “duō yǔ shǎo qǔ” de “gǔ jié lǎ ěr zhǔyì” zhèngcè, yǔ gèguó guānxì pǔbiàn dédào míngxian gǎishàn. 1998 Nián, yìndù hé shì yǐnfā nányà dìqū hé jūnbèi jìngsài, dǎozhì nányà júshì jíjù jǐnzhāng, nán yǎ qítā guójiā duì cǐ jǐn zuò jǐnshèn biǎotài. 1999 Nián, yìn bā zài kèshénmǐ'ěr dìqū bào fā qiǎ jí'ěr chōngtú, nányà júshì èhuà, nán yǎ qítā guójiā jūn duì cǐ biǎoshì guānzhù, hūyù yìn bā liǎng guó bǎochí kèzhì hé lěngjìng.

Relations with other neighbouring countries

There are many contacts with neighboring countries in South Asia, but there are also many contradictions. In 1997, India made a major adjustment to its neighboring countries' policy and implemented the "Gujral Doctrine" policy of "give more and take less", and relations with other countries generally improved significantly. In 1998, India's nuclear test triggered a nuclear arms race in South Asia, which led to sharp tensions in South Asia. Other countries in South Asia only expressed caution in this regard. In 1999, the Kargil conflict broke out between India and Pakistan in Kashmir, and the situation in South Asia deteriorated. Other countries in South Asia expressed concern about this and called on India and Pakistan to exercise restraint and calm.

1.	同其他邻国的关系	Tóng qítā lín guó de guānxì	Relations with other countries
2.	调整	tiáozhěng	Adjustment
3.	“多予少取”	“duō yǔ shǎo qǔ”	Give more take less
4.	“古杰拉尔主义	“gǔ jié lā ěr zhǔyì	
5.	普遍	pǔbiàn	At large
6.	明显	míngxiǎn	Evident
7.	谨慎	jǐnshèn	Be cautious to
8.	关注	guānzhù	Attention
9.	呼吁	hūyù	Appeal
10.	保持克制	bǎochí kèzhì	Maintain restraint
11.	冷静。	lěngjìng.	Calmness

第十八课

印度同巴基斯坦的关系

截至2025年初，印度与巴基斯坦的双边关系依旧紧张，呈现“非战非和”的僵局状态。自2019年印度撤销查谟-克什米尔的特殊地位以来，双方关系持续恶化，外交接触有限。尽管2024年10月，印度外交部长苏杰生出席了在伊斯兰堡举行的上海合作组织会议，成为近十年来首位访问巴基斯坦的印度外长，但此行并未促成实质性双边对话，显示出双方在核心问题上仍存在深刻分歧 [China News](#)。克什米尔问题仍是两国关系的主要障碍。印度指责巴基斯坦支持该地区的武装分子，而巴基斯坦则批评印度在该地区的人权记录。2024年，克什米尔地区的武装冲突有所增加，最近的一次交火导致一名印度军官死亡 [AP News](#)。此外，印度河水域条约也成为新的争议焦点，巴基斯坦担忧印度在水资源管理上的举措可能影响其水资源安全 [Al Jazeera](#)。尽管存在紧张局势，双方在宗教和人文交流方面仍保持一定的接触。2025年4月，超过6,500名印度锡克教徒前往巴基斯坦的南卡纳纳·萨希布，参加重要的丰收节庆祝活动，显示出在特定领域的合作仍有可能 [AP News](#)。总体而言，印度与巴基斯坦的关系在2025年初仍处于低谷，缺乏实质性的外交突破。双方在克什米尔问题、水资源管理以及反恐合作等关键领域的分歧依旧严重，短期内关系改善的前景不容乐观。

Tóng bājīstān de guānxì

2025 Niánchū, yìndù yǔ bājīstān de shuāngbiān guānxì yīrán jǐnzhāng, chéngxiàn “fēi zhàn fēi hé” de jiāngjú zhuàngtài. Zì 2019 nián yìndù zhōngzhǐ chá mó-kèshénmǐ'ěr de tèshū yǐlái, shuāngfāng guānxì chíxù èhuà, tuō'èrqí jiēchù yǒuxiàn. Jīnguān 2024 nián 10 yuè, yìndù wàijiāo bùzhǎng sūjiéshēng chūxíle yīslánbǎo jùxíng de shànghǎi hézuò zǔzhī huìyì, chéngwéi jìn shí niánlái shǒuci fǎngwèn de yìndù wàizhǎng, dàn cǐ xíng xiānbèi duìhuà, biǎomíng shuāngfāng zài héxīn wèntí shàng réng shēn yǒu liǎng guó guānxì xīnwén. Kèshénmǐ'ěr wèntí réng shì wàijiāo guānxì de zhǔyào zhàng'ài. Yìndù zhǐzé bājīstān zhīchí gāi dìqū de wǔzhuāng fēnzǐ, ér bājīstān zé pīpíng yìndù zài gāi dìqū de rénquán jìlù. 2024 Nián, kèshénmǐ'ěr dìqū de wǔzhuāng chōngtú yǒu suǒ zēngjiā, zuìjìn de yīcì jiāohuǒ dǎozhì yī míng yìndù jūnguān sǐwáng měi lián shè xīnwén. Cǐwài, yìndù hé xùliǎ tiáoyuē yě chéngwéi xīn de zhēngyì jiāodiǎn, bājīstān dǎnxīn yìndù zài shuǐ zīyuán guǎnlǐ shàng de jìnchéng kěnéng yǐngxiǎng qí rénli zīyuán ānquán bàndǎo diànshìtái. Cúnzài jǐnzhāng júshì, shuāngfāng zài zōngjiào hé rénwén jiāoliú fāngmiàn réng bǎochí yīdìng de jiēchù. 2025 Nián 4 yuè, chāoguò 6,500 míng yìndù xī kè lǚxíng zhě qiánwǎng bājīstān de nán kǎ nà nà·sà xī bù, cānjiā zhòngyào de fēngshōu jié qīngzhù huódòng, xiǎnshì zài tèdìng língyù de hézuò kěnéng yǒu měi lián shè zōngtǐ lái kàn, yìndù yǔ bājīstān de guānxì zài 2025 niánchū réng chǔyú dīgǔ, quēfá chūbù dì túpò. Shuāngfāng zài kèshénmǐ'ěr wèntí, shuǐ zīyuán guǎnlǐ yǐjī fēngsuǒ hézuò děng guānjiàn língyù de fēngbì yīrán yánzhòng, duǎnqī nèi guānxì gǎishàn de qiánjǐng bùróng lèguān.

Relations with Pakistan

As of early 2025, India-Pakistan bilateral relations remain tense, with a "neither war nor peace" stalemate. Since India revoked Jammu and Kashmir's special status in 2019, relations have continued to deteriorate, with limited diplomatic contacts. Although in October 2024, Indian Foreign Minister Subrahmanyam Jaishankar attended the Shanghai Cooperation Organization meeting in Islamabad, becoming the first Indian foreign minister to visit Pakistan in nearly a decade, the trip did not lead to substantive bilateral dialogue, showing that the two sides still have deep differences on core issues. China News.

The Kashmir issue remains a major obstacle to relations between the two countries. India accuses Pakistan of supporting militants in the region, while Pakistan criticizes India's human rights record in the region. In 2024, armed conflicts in Kashmir increased, and the most recent exchange of fire left an Indian officer dead.

AP News.

In addition, the Indus Waters Treaty has also become a new focus of controversy, with Pakistan concerned that India's actions on water management may affect its water security. Al Jazeera.

Despite the tensions, the two sides still maintain some contact in religious and cultural exchanges. In April 2025, more than 6,500 Indian Sikhs travelled to Nankana Sahib in Pakistan to participate in important harvest festival celebrations, showing that cooperation in certain areas is still possible. AP News.

Overall, India-Pakistan relations remain at a low point in early 2025, lacking substantive diplomatic breakthroughs. Differences between the two sides in key areas such as Kashmir, water resources management and counterterrorism cooperation remain serious, and the prospects for improving relations in the short term are not optimistic.

1.	巴基斯坦	Bājīstān	Pakistan
2.	不睦	bù mù	Not harmonious
3.	爆发全面战争	bàofā quánmiàn zhànzhēng	Break out full-fledged war
4.	断交	duànjiāo	Sever diplomatic relations

5.	复交	fùjiāo	Reestablish diplomatic relations
6.	缓和	huǎnhé	Ease up
7.	不时	bùshí	Often, now and then
8.	紧张局面	jǐnzhāng júmiàn	Tense situation
9.	边境交火	biānjìng jiāohuǒ	Cross firing in border areas
10.	阿约迪亚毁寺	ā yuē dí yà huǐ sì	Demolition of Mosque at Ayodhya
11.	引起强烈反响	yǐnqǐ qiángliè fǎnxiǎng	Arose strong resound
12.	导致	dǎozhì	Lead
13.	下降	xiàjiàng	Drop
14.	爆炸案	bàozhà àn	Explosion case
15.	哈兹拉特巴尔清真寺	hā zī lā tè bā'ěr qīngzhēnsì	
16.	指责	zhǐzé	Censure, rebuke
17.	驱逐	qūzhú	Drive out, banish
18.	印控克什米尔地区	yìn kòng kèshénmǐ'ěr dìqū	Indian occupied Kashmir As called by China
19.	沙拉尔谢立夫城	shālā ěr xiè lìfū chéng	Chirag sharif city
20.	圣陵	shèng líng	Sacred mausoleum
21.	更趋紧张	gèng qū jǐnzhāng	Even tend towards tense
22.	稍有缓和	shāo yǒu huǎnhé	A bit relaxed
23.	实质性	shí zhí xìng	Substantiality
24.	进展	jìnzhǎn	Progress
25.	恢复	huīfù	Resume, recover
26.	政治对话	zhèngzhì duìhuà	Political dialogue
27.	总理会晤	zǒnglǐ huìwù	Meeting between Prime ministerd
28.	缓和势头	huǎnhé shìtóu	Potential of ease up
29.	核试验	hé shìyàn	Nuclear test
30.	核军备竞赛	hé jūnbèi jìngsài	Nuclear Arms race
31.	急剧紧张	jíjù jǐnzhāng	Sudden tense
32.	拉合尔宣言	lā hé ěr xuānyán	Lahore declaration
33.	试射导弹	shì shè dǎodàn	Testfire missile
34.	趋向恶化	qūxiàng èhuà	Tend to deterioration
35.	印民航班	yìn mín hángbān	Indian flights
36.	劫持	jiéchí	Hijack
37.	牵连。	qiānlián.	Implication
38.	僵持状态	Jiāngchí zhuàngtài	Stalemate
39.	气氛	qìfēn	Atmosphere
40.	界线	jièxiàn	Borderline
41.	对峙	duìzhì	Confront each other

第十九课

军事

印军前身为英国殖民主义者的雇佣军。1947年印巴分治后始建分立的三军。1978年创建独立的海岸警卫队。

总统是名义上的武装力量统帅，内阁为最高军事决策机构。国防部负责部队的指挥、管理和协调。各军种司令部负责拟定、实施作战计划，指挥作战行动。

印度实行募兵制。武装力量由现役部队、准军事部队和后备力量组成。现役部队分陆、海、空三个军种。三军平时无统一的作战指挥机构，由内阁总理通过内阁秘书处协同国防部对三军实行统一领导；战时通常授权主要军种参谋长实施统一指挥。陆、海、空三军总兵力为127万，居世界第四位。其中陆军103.5万，分东、南、西、北和中央五大军区，拥有中程导弹，已具备核能力。海军7万，分为西、东两支舰队和南部科钦训练基地；孟买和维沙卡帕特南为最大的海军基地，分别是西、东舰队司令部所在地。空军17万，分成西、西南、东、南和中央五个军区，拥有米格29、幻影2000等先进作战飞机。海岸警卫队分西岸、东岸、安达曼和尼科巴三个大队，指挥部分设于孟买、马德拉斯和布莱尔港。另有50多万预备役军人和100多万准军事部队。

2005/2006财年国防预算为8900亿卢比（约合200.63亿美元），占GDP总量2.27%，比上财年增加7.2%。2009/2010财年，国防预算为1.41万亿卢比

（约合290亿美元），同比增长34%。2009年8月，印度工商联合会在向国防部递交的报告中说，印度陆海空三军在2012年前从国外采购武器费用将达300亿美元。

“大地”系列弹道导弹

“大地”系列弹道导弹是印度国产系列弹道导弹，有“大地-1”、“大地-2”和“大地-3”三种型号，其中，“大地-2”型导弹重4吨多，可运载重达1吨的弹头，包括常规弹头和核弹头。

Dì shíjiǔ kè

Jūnshì yìn jūn qiánshēn wèi yīngguó zhímín zhùyì zhě de gùyōng jūn. 1947 Nián yìn bā fēn zhì hòu shǐ jiàn fēnlì de sānjūn. 1978 Nián chuàngjiàn dúlì dì hǎi'àn jǐngwèi duì. Zǒngtǒng shì míngyì shàng de wǔzhuāng lìliàng tǒngshuài, nèigé wèi zuìgāo jūnshì juécè jīgòu. Guófáng bù fùzé bùduì de zhǐhuī, guǎnlǐ hé xiétáo. Gè jūnzhǒng sīlǐng bù fùzé nǐngdìng, shíshī zuòzhàn jìhuà, zhǐhuī zuòzhàn xíngdòng. Yìndù shíxíng mùbīngzhì. Wǔzhuāng lìliàng yóu xiànyì bùduì, zhǔn jūnshì bùduì hé hòubèi lì liáng zǔchéng. Xiànyì bùduì fēn lù, hǎi, kōng sān gè jūnzhǒng. Sānjūn píngshí wú tǒngyī de zuòzhàn zhǐhuī jīgòu, yóu nèigé zǒnglǐ tǒngguò nèigé mǐshù chù xiétóng guófáng bùduì sānjūn shíxíng tǒngyī língdǎo; zhàn shí tǒngcháng shòuquán zhǔyào jūnzhǒng cānmóu zhǎng shíshī tǒngyī zhǐhuī. Lù, hǎi, kōng sānjūn zǒng bīnglì wèi 127 wàn, jū shìjiè dì sì wèi. Qízhōng lùjūn 103.5 Wàn, fēn dōng, nán, xī, běi hé zhōngyāng wǔ dà jūnqū, yǒngyǒu zhòng chéng dàodàn, yǐ jùbèi hé nénglì. Hǎijūn 7 wàn, fēn wéi xī, dōng èr zhī jiànduì hé nánbù kēqīn xùnliàn jīdì; mèngmǎi hé wéi shā kǎ pà tè nán wèi zuìdà dì hǎijūn jīdì, fēnbié shì xī, dōng jiànduì sīlǐng bù suǒzàidì. Kōngjūn 17 wàn, fēnchéng xī, xīnán, dōng, nán hé zhōngyāng wǔ gè jūnqū, yǒngyǒu mǐ gé 29, huànyíng 2000 děng xiānjìn zuòzhàn fēijī. Hǎi'àn jǐngwèi duì fēn xī'àn, dōng àn, āndá màn hé ní kē bā sān gè dàduì, zhǐhuī bùfèn shè yú mèngmǎi, mǎ dé lā sī hé búlái'ěr gǎng. Líng yǒu 50 duō wàn yùbèiyì jūnrén hé 100 duō wàn zhǔn jūnshì bù duì. 2005/2006 Cái nián guófáng yùsuàn wèi 8900 yì lúibǐ (yuē hé 200.63 Yì měiyuán), zhàn GDP zǒng liàng 2.27%, Bǐ shàng cái nián zēngjiā 7.2%. 2009/2010 Cái nián, guófáng yùsuàn wèi 1.41 Wàn yì lúibǐ (yuē hé 290 yì měiyuán), tóngbǐ zēngzhǎng 34%. 2009 Nián 8 yuè, yìndù gōngshāng liánhé huì zài xiàng guófáng bù dìjiāo de bàogào zhōng shuō, yìndù lùhǎikōng sānjūn zài 2012 nián qián cóng guówài cǎigòu wǔqǐ fèiyòng jiāng dá 300 yì měiyuán. “Dàdì” xiliè dāndào dàodàn “dàdì” xiliè dāndào dàodàn shì yìndù guóchǎn xiliè dāndào dàodàn, yǒu “dàdì-1”, “dàdì-2” hé “dàdì-3” sān zhǒng xíng hào, qízhōng, “dà dì-2” xíng dàodàn zhòng 4 dūn duō, kě yùnzài zhòng dá 1 dūn de dàntóu, bāokuò chángguī dàntóu hé hédàntóu.

Lesson 19 Military

The Indian Army was formerly the mercenary army of the British colonialists. After the partition of India and Pakistan in 1947, the three separate armies were established. The independent Coast Guard was created in 1978.

The president is the nominal commander-in-chief of the armed forces, and the cabinet is the highest military decision-making body. The Department of Defense is responsible for the command, management and coordination of the force. The commands of the various service branches are responsible for formulating and implementing operational plans and directing operational activities.

India has a military recruitment system. The armed forces consist of active-duty forces, paramilitary forces and reserve forces. The active-duty troops are divided into three branches: land, sea and air. The three-armed forces do not have a unified operational command structure in peacetime. The Prime Minister of the Cabinet, through the Cabinet Secretariat, cooperates with the Ministry of National Defense to exercise unified leadership over the three armed forces; The total strength of the army, navy and air force is 1.27 million, ranking fourth in the world. Among them, the army is 1.035 million, divided into five military regions: east, south, west, north and central. It has medium-range missiles and has nuclear capabilities. The navy is 70,000, divided into the west and east fleets and the southern Cochin training base; Mumbai and Visakhapatnam are the largest naval bases, where the headquarters of the west and east fleets are located. Air Force 170,000, divided into the West, Southwest, East, South and Central five military regions, with MiG 29, Mirage 2000 and other advanced combat aircraft. The Coast Guard is divided into three brigades, West Bank, East Bank, Andaman and Nicobar, with command sections located in Mumbai, Madras and Port Blair.

There are also more than 500,000 reserve soldiers and more than 1 million paramilitary troops.

The defense budget for fiscal year 2005/2006 was 890 billion rupees (about 20.063 billion US dollars), accounting for 2.27% of the total GDP, an increase of 7.2% over the previous fiscal year. In fiscal year 2009/2010, the defense budget was 1.41 trillion rupees (about 29 billion U.S. dollars), a year- on-year increase of 34%. In August 2009, the Confederation of Indian Chambers of Commerce and Industry said in a report to the Ministry of Defense that the Indian Army, Navy, and Air Force will spend \$30 billion on purchasing weapons from abroad by 2012. "Prithvi" series of ballistic missiles

The "Prithvi" series of ballistic missiles is a series of ballistic missiles made in India, with three types: "Prithvi-1", "Prithvi-2" and "Prithvi-3". Carry warheads weighing up to 1 ton, including conventional and nuclear warheads.

1.	军事	Junshi	Military
2.	前身	Qianshen	Predecessor
3.	雇佣	Guyong	Engage
4.	分治	Fenzhi	Devide
5.	三军	Sanjun	Three sevicees
6.	创建	Chuangjian	Found
7.	独立	Duli	Independent
8.	海岸警卫队。	Haian jingweidui	Coast guards
9.	指挥	Zhihui	Command
10.	管理	Guanli	Manage
11.	协调	Xietiao	Harmonize
12.	军种	Junzhong	Services
13.	司令部	Silingbu	Headquarters
14.	拟定	Niding	Work out
15.	作战计划	Zuozhan jihua	Combat plan
16.	行动。	Xingdong	Action
17.	募兵制	Mubing zhi	Conscription system
18.	武装力量	Wuzhuang liliang	Armed forces strength
19.	现役部队	Xianyi junren	Troops in active service
20.	准军事部队	Zhunjunshi budui	Para military forces
21.	后备力量	Houbei liliang	Reserve strength
22.	由。。组成	You..zucheng	Composed of
23.	陆、海、空	Lu, hai, kong	Army, navy, air force
24.	平时	Pingshi	Peace time
25.	作战指挥机构	Zuozhan zhihui jigou	Combat command organization
26.	秘书处	Mishuchu	Secretriarte
27.	协同	Xietong	Cooperate with
28.	国防部	Guofangbu	Defence ministry
29.	战时	Zhanshi	Wartime
30.	通常	Tongchang	Usually, commonly
31.	授权	Shouquan	Authorization
32.	参谋长	Canmouzhang	Chief of staff
33.	统一指挥	Tongyi zhihui	Unfied command
34.	总兵力	Zonglibing	Total military strength
35.	分	Fen	Divide
36.	东、南、西、 北，中央	Dong, nan,xi, bei, zhongyang	East, south, west, north,Central
37.	五大军区	Wudajunqu	Five commands

38.	中程导弹	Zhongcheng daodan	Intermediate missile
39.	具备	Jubei	Have, possess
40.	核能力	Henengli	Nuclear power
41.	舰队	Jiandui	Fleet
42.	科钦训练基地	Keqin xunlianjidi	Cochin training base
43.	维沙卡帕特南	Weishakabaitenan	Vishakapatnam
44.	所在地	Suozaidi	Locus
45.	米格 2 9	Mige	Mig-29
46.	幻影 2 0 0 0	Huanying	Mirage 2000
47.	先进	Xianjin	Latest, advanced
48.	作战	Zuozhan	Combat
49.	海岸警卫队	Haian jingweidui	Coast guards
50.	安达曼和尼科巴	Andaman he nikeba	Adman & Nicobar
51.	大队	Dadui	A military unit
52.	布莱尔港	Bulaier gang	Port blair
53.	预备役军人	Yubei yijunren	Reservist
54.	国防预算	Guofang yusuan	Defence budget
55.	印度工商联合会	Yidu gongshang lianhedui	Indian industrial & commerce league
56.	递交	Dijiao	Handover
57.	采购武器费用。	Caigouwuqi feiyong	Expenditure on arms purchase
58.	“大地”系列	Dadi xilie	Prithvi series
59.	弹道导弹	Dandao daodan	Ballistic missile
60.	印度国产系列	Yindu guochan xilie	Indian indigenous series
61.	型号	Xinghao	Model, type
62.	重 4 吨	Zhong 4 dun	4 tons heavy
63.	可运载	Keyunzai	May carry
64.	弹头	Dantou	Warhead
65.	常规弹头	Changgui dantou	Conventional warhead
66.	核弹头	He dantou	Nuclear warhead

军事实力

印军前身为英国殖民主义者的雇佣军。1947 年印巴分治后始建分立的三军。1978 年创建独立的海岸警卫队。总统是名义上的武装力量统帅，内阁为最高军事决策机构。国防部负责部队的指挥、管理和协调。各军种司令部负责拟定、实施作战计划，指挥作战行动。实行募兵制。陆、海、空三军现役兵力为 144.4 万，其中陆军 123.7 万，海军 6.7 万，空军 14 万。另有 50 多万预备役军人和 100 多万准军事部队。2020/2021 财年国防预算 4.78 万亿卢比。

一直以来印度把扩充军事实力当竞争世界一流大国的重要标志。印度始终致力于称霸 南亚、直接控制印度洋，跻身世界军事强国行列是印度国家战略的终极目标。印度当局深信，军事实力是取得大国地位的必要基础，外交必须以军事为后盾，军事必须以外交为补充，军事力量不仅是构成综合国力的重要因素，也是国家外交最可靠的王牌。更为重要的是，这种战略思想，得到了印度智囊机构、军界、学术界和新闻界的广泛支持，印度导弹之父卡拉姆，就曾多次在公开场合直截了当地宣称：“弱小并不令人尊重，因此，印度在军事上必须强大”。

为实现“直接控制印度洋，争当世界一流强国”的国家战略目标，印度高度重视军事力量的现代化建设，制定了到 2015 年成为世界军事大国的战略规划，大力推进海、陆、空三军转型。陆军：向战略打击军种转变；海军：向远洋作战型军种转变；空军：向航空航天型军种转变。以此建立一支适应未来战争需要、与国家战略目标相适应的“未来军队”。为适应军队的现代化转型，军费支出结构也作了极大调整，被称为“首要花费项目”的武器采购费用达到了 3340 亿卢比，比上一财年 1690 亿卢比的实际采购费增加了近 1 倍。

在采购装备的资金分配上，印度空军、海军分别获得了 1478 亿及 756 亿卢比，而人数居多的陆军只得到 875 亿卢比，这从一个侧面显示了印度优先发展高技术军种的决心。印度军费和采购费用的大幅增长将有助于印军购入更多的先进装备。从俄罗斯购买价值 15 亿美元的“戈尔什科夫海军上将”号航母，从英国购买价值 17 亿美元 66 架“鹰”式高级教练机，以及从以色列购买 3 架 11 亿美元的“费尔康”空中预警机。凭借“戈尔什科夫海军上将”号航母舰载“米格-29K”战机，印度海军届时可在一天内控制数千万平方公里的印度洋海域。印度国防部目前的重要采办项目包括：空军计划从美国采购 126 架多用途中程战斗机、先进无人机和运输直升机，采购额高达 90 亿美元；陆军计划采购 155 毫米自行火炮、防空系统和网络中心战装备；海军计划购买先进潜艇、海上监视飞机、一颗人造卫星和 3 艘航空母舰。

印度财政部长普拉纳布·慕克吉宣布，到 2010 年 3 月的财政年度，印度军费预算将增加 2.4%，达 1.42 万亿卢比，约 500 亿美元。将为印度的 123 万军队的现代化计划提供资金。除了军费预算，慕克吉还批准了为准军事部门增加 1.43 亿美元。他还说，在本财政年度将为加强所谓的边境安全增加 4.56 亿美元。印度是新兴经济体当中购买武器最多的国家，自 2000 年以来，印度进口的军事装备价值 280 亿美元。未来几年，印度计划进一步签署价值估计达 300 亿美元的合同。

印度的军事战略目标是：以强大军事实力为后盾，直接控制弱小邻国，遏制东北部邻国，排挤其它大国对南亚和印度洋事务的干涉，巩固其在南亚及印度洋的既得利益，积极争当世界军事强国。为实现这一战略目标，印度制定“适当控制数量，重点加强质量，进一步提高战斗力”方针，积极迎接新军事革命的挑战，大力加强军队现代化建设，全面提高打赢未来战争的能力。

印度将与俄罗斯联合研发代号为 PAK-FA 的第 5 代先进战斗机。俄印联合研发第 5 代战斗机项目金额高达数十亿美元，将成为俄印两国政府在军事领域内数额最大的一个联合研发项目。目前印度从俄罗斯引进的最新战斗机为苏-30MKI 战斗机。印度空军主要将领已经证实印度空军目前已确定了印度第 5 代战斗机的技术性能指标。据称，印度空军希望用 5 年的时间研发第 5 代战斗机。据悉，第 5 代战斗机 PAK-FA 具备隐身性能，可在不使用加力燃烧室的情况下进行超音速巡航，机上将安装主动式电子扫描阵列(AESA)机载雷达以及可增强机动性的推力矢量喷管。

进入 21 世纪，印度陆军已经向俄罗斯购买了 310 辆 T-90 主战坦克。印度陆军高级军官则表示，陆军用 1781 辆主战坦克替换老旧的 T-55 和 T-72 坦克的需求，将通过引进 1657 辆俄制 T-90S 和订购的 124 辆阿琼坦克得到满足。俄印签署协议引进 310 辆俄制 T-90S 坦克，根据双方又达成协议，印度再进口 347 辆 T-90S 坦克，而且印度阿瓦迪重型车辆制造厂已经开始根据俄方许可证生产另外 1000 辆 T-90S 坦克。

目前，印度已宣布在未来十年里要建立一支航母舰队和核潜艇的计划。最近，印度还进行了可携带核弹头的导弹试射，其射程可覆盖中国的主要城市。而在临近中国的边境地区，它也正在重新开启空军基地。为鼓励印度制衡中国，俄罗斯逐步加强与印度军队紧密合作。

Jūnshì shílì

Yīn jūn qiánshēn wèi yīngguó zhīmín zhǔyì zhè de gùyōng jūn. 1947 Nián yīn bā fēn zhī hòu shǐ jiàn fēnlì de sānjūn. 1978 Nián chuàngjiàn dùlì dì hǎi'ān jīngwèi duì. Zǒngtǒng shì míngyì shàng de wǔzhuāng lìliàng tǒngshuài, nèigé wèi zuìgāo jūnshì juécè jīgòu. Guófáng bù fùzé bùduì de zhǐhuī, guǎnlǐ hé xiétáo. Gè jūnzhǒng sīlǐng bù fùzé nǐdìng, shíshí zuòzhà n jihuà, zhǐhuī zuòzhàn xíngdòng. Shíxíng mùbǐngzhì. Lù, hǎi, kōng sānjūn xiànyì bīnglì w èi 144.4 Wàn, qízhōng lùjūn 123.7 Wàn, hǎijūn 6.7 Wàn, kōngjūn 14 wàn. Líng yǒu 50 duō wàn yùbèiyì jūnrén hé 100 duō wàn zhǔn jūnshì bùduì. 2020/2021 Cǎi nián guófáng yùsuàn 4.78 Wàn yì lúbi.

Yīzhí yīlái yīndù bǎ kuòchōng jūnshì shílì dāngchéng zhēng dāng shìjiè yīliú dàguó de zhòngyào biāozhì. Yīndù shǐzhōng zhīlǐ yú chēngbà nányà, zhíjiē kòngzhì yīndù yáng, jīshē n shìjiè jūnshì qiángguó hángliè shì yīndù guójiā zhànlüè de zhōngjí mùbiāo. Yīndù dāngjù shēnxīn, jūnshì shílì shì qǔdè dàguó dìwèi de biyào jīchǔ, wàijiāo bixū yǐ jūnshì wèi hòudù n, jūnshì bixū yǐ wàijiāo wèi bǔchōng. Jūnshì lìliàng bùjīn shì gòuchéng zònghé guóli de zhòngyào yīnsù, yěshì guójiā wàijiāo zuì kèkào de wángpái. Gèng wéi zhòngyào de shì, zhè z hǒng zhànlüè sīxiāng, dédàole yīndù zhīnáng jīgòu, jūn jiè, xuésù jiè hé xīnwén jiè de guǎ ngfàn zhīchí, yīndù dǎodàn zhī fù kǎlā mǔ, jiù céng duō cì zài gōngkāi chǎnghé zhíjiélǎodā ng dì xuānchēng: “Ruòxiǎo bìng bù líng rén zūnzhòng, yīncǐ, yīndù zài jūnshì shàng bixū qī ángdà”. Wèi shíxiàn “zhíjiē kòngzhì yīndù yáng, zhēng dāng shìjiè yīliú qiángguó” de guóji ā zhànlüè mùbiāo, yīndù gāodù zhòngshì jūnshì lìliàng de xiàndàihuà jiànshè, zhìdingle dào 2015 nián cheng wèi shìjiè jūnshì dàguó de zhànlüè guīhuà, dàlì tuījìn hǎi, lù, kōng sānjūn zhuǎnxíng. Lùjūn: Xiàng zhànlüè dǎjī jūnzhōng zhuǎnbiàn; hǎijūn: Xiàng yuǎnyáng zuòzhà n xíng jūnzhōng zhuǎnbiàn; kōngjūn: Xiàng hángkōng hángtiān xíng jūnzhōng zhuǎnbiàn.

Yī cǐ jiànli yī zhī shìyìng wèilái zhànzhe xūyào, yǔ guójiā zhànlüè mùbiāo xiāng shìyìng de “wèilái jūnduì”. Wèi shìyìng jūnduì de xiàndàihuà zhuǎnxíng, jūnfèi zhīchū jiégòu yě zu òle jí dà tiáozhēng, bèi chēng wèi “shǒuyào huàfèi xiàngmù” de wǔqī cǎigòu fèiyòng dádào le 3340 yì lúbi, bǐ shàng yī cǎi nián 1690 yì lúbi de shíjī cǎigòu fèi zēngjiā liǎo jìn 1 bèi. Zài cǎigòu zhuāngbèi de zījīn fēnpèi shàng, yīndù kōngjūn, hǎijūn fēnbié huòdéle 1478 yì jí 75 6 yì lúbi, ér rénshù jūduō de lùjūn zhǐ dédào 875 yì lúbi, zhè cóng yīgè cèmiàn xiǎnshile yīn dù yōuxiān fāzhǎn gāo jìshù jūnzhōng de juéxīn. Yīndù jūnfèi hé cǎigòu fèiyòng de dàfú zē ngzhǎng jiāng yǒu zhù yú yīn jūn gòu rù gèng duō de

xiānjìn zhuāngbèi. Cóng èluósī gòumǎi jiàzhí 15 yì měiyuán de “gē ěr shé kē fū hǎijūn shàng jiàng” hào hángmǔ, cóng yīngguó gòumǎi jiàzhí 17 yì měiyuán 66 jiǎ “yīng” shì gāojí jiàoliàn jī, yǐjī cóng yīsèliè gòumǎi 3 jiǎ 11 yì měiyuán de “fèi ěr kāng” kōngzhōng yùjīngjī. Píngjiè “gē ěr shé kē fū hǎijūn shàng jiàng” hào hángmǔ jiàn zài “mǐ gé-29K” zhànjī, yīndù hǎijūn jièshí kē zài yītiān nèi kòngzhì sù hù qiān wàn píngfāng gōnglǐ de yīndù yáng hǎiyù. Yīndù guófāng bù mùqián de zhòngyào cǎibàn xiàngmù bāokuò: Kōngjūn jīhuà cóng měiguó cǎigòu 126 jiǎ duōyòng túzhōng chéng zhàndòujī, xiānjìn wú rén jī hé yùnshù zhíshēngjī, cǎigòu é gāodà 90 yì měiyuán; lùjūn jīhuà cǎigòu 155 háomǐ zìxíng huǒpào, fāngkōng xītǒng hé wǎngluò zhōngxīn zhàn zhuāngbèi; hǎijūn jīhuà gòumǎi xiānjìn qiántǐng, hǎishàng jiānshì fēijī, yī kē rénzào wèixīng hé 3 sǒu hǎi ángkōngmǔjiàn.

Yīndù cáizhèng bùzhǎng pǔ lǎ nà bù mù kèjì xuānbù, dào 2010 nián 3 yuè de cáizhèng niándù, yīndù jūnfèi yùsuàn jiāng zēngjiā 24%, dá 1.42 Wàn yì lǚbǐ, yuē 500 yì měiyuán. Jī āng wèi yīndù de 123 wàn jūnduì de xiàndàihuà jīhuà tígōng zījīn. Chūle jūnfèi yùsuàn, mù kèjì hái pīzhūnlè wéi zhǔn jūnshì bùmén zēngjiā 1.43 Yì měiyuán. Tā hái shuō, zài běn cái zhèng niándù jiāng wèi jiāqiáng suǒwèi de biānjīng ānquán zēng jiā 4.56 Yì měiyuán. Yīndù shì xīnxīng jīngjì tǐ dāngzhōng gòumǎi wǔqì zuìduō de guójiā, zì 2000 nián yǐlái, yīndù jì nkǒu de jūnshì zhuāngbèi jiàzhí 280 yì měiyuán. Wèilái jī nián, yīndù jīhuà jīnyībù qiǎnshù jiàzhí gūjī dá 300 yì měiyuán de hétóng. Yīndù de jūnshì zhànlüè mùbiāo shì: Yī qiángdà jūnshì shíli wèi hòudùn, zhíjiē kòngzhì ruòxiǎo lín guó, èzhì dōngběi bù lín guó, páijī qítā dà guó duì nányà hé yīndù yáng shìwù de gānshè, gōnggù qí zài nányà jí yīndù yáng de jìdè liyì, jījī zhēng dāng shìjiè jūnshì qiángguó. Wèi shíxiàn zhè yī zhànlüè mùbiāo, yīndù zhìdìng “shìdàng kòngzhì shùliàng, zhòngdiǎn jiāqiáng zhìliàng, jīnyībù tígāo zhàndòuli” fāngzhēn, jījī yíngjiē xīn jūnshì géming de tiǎozhàn, dàlì jiāqiáng jūnduì xiàndàihuà jiànshè, quánmiàn nà tígāo dà yíng wèilái zhànzhen de nénglì. Yīndù jiāng yǔ èluósī liánhé yánfā dàihào wèi PAK-FA de dì 5 dài xiānjìn zhàndòujī. È yīn liánhé yánfā dì 5 dài zhàndòujī xiàngmù jīn’é gāo dá shù shí yì měiyuán, jiāng chéngwéi è yīn liǎng guó zhèngfǔ zài jūnshì língyǔ nèi shù’é zài uida de yīgè liánhé yánfā xiàngmù.

Mùqián yīndù cóng èluósī yīnjīn de zuìxīn zhàndòujī wèi sū-30MKI zhàndòujī. Yīndù kōngjūn zhǔyào jiànglǐng yǐjīng zhèngshí yīndù kōngjūn mùqián yǐ quèdingle yīndù dì 5 dài zhàndòujī de jìshù xìngnéng zhǐbiāo. Jù chēng, yīndù kōngjūn xīwàng yòng 5 nián de shíjiān yánfā dì 5 dài zhàndòujī. Jùxī, dì 5 dài zhàndòujī PAK-FA jùbèi yīnshēn xìngnéng, kě zài bù shíyòng jiā lǐ ránshāo shì de qíngkuàng xià jìnxíng chāo yīnsù xúnháng, jīshàng jiàng ān zhuāng zhǔdòng shì diǎnzǐ sāomiáo zhènlìe (AESAs) jī zài léidà yǐjī kě zēngqiáng jīdòng xìng de tuǒlì shìliàng pēn guǎn. Jīnrù 21 shìjì, yīndù lùjūn yǐjīng xiàng èluósī gòumǎi 310 liàng g T-90 zhǔ zhàn tǎnkè. Yīndù lùjūn gāojí jūnguān zé biǎoshì, lùjūn yòng 1781 liàng zhǔ zhàn tǎnkè tīhuàn lǎo jiù de T-55 hé T-72 tǎnkè de xūqiú, jiāng tōngguó yīnjīn 1657 liàng è zhì T-90S hé dīnggòu de 124 liàng ā qióng tǎnkè dèdào mǎnzú. È yīn qiǎnshù xiéyì yīnjīn 310 liàng è zhì T-90S tǎnkè, gēnjù shuāngfāng yòu dāchéng xiéyì, yīn duò zài jīnkǒu 347 liàng T-90S tǎnkè, èrqiè yīndù ā wǎ dí zhòngxíng chēliàng zhìzào chǎng yǐjīng kāishǐ gēnjù è fān g xūkè zhèng shēngchǎn língwài 1000 liàng T-90S tǎnkè. Mùqián, yīndù yǐ xuānbù zài wèi

ái shí nián lǐ yào jiànli yī zhī hángmǔ jiànduì hé héqiántǐng de jīhuà. Zuìjīn, yīndù hái jīnxīn gē kē xī dài hédàntóu de dàodàn shì shè, qí shèchéng kě fùgài zhōngguó de zhǔyào chéngshì. Èr zài línjīn zhōngguó de biānjīng dìqū, tā yě zhèngzài chōngxīn kāiqī kōngjūn jīdì. Wèi gūlì yīndù zhìhéng zhōngguó, èluósī zhúbù jiāqiáng yǔ yīndù jūnduì jīnmì hézuò.

Military power

The Indian Army was formerly the mercenary army of the British colonialists. After the partition of India and Pakistan in 1947, the three separate armies were established. The independent Coast Guard was created in 1978. The president is the nominal commander-in-chief of the armed forces, and the cabinet is the highest military decision-making body. The Department of Defense is responsible for the command, management and coordination of the force. Commands of the various service branches are responsible for formulating and implementing operational plans and directing operational operations. Implement the recruitment system. The active force of the Army, Navy and Air Force is 1.444 million, including 1.237 million in the Army, 67,000 in the Navy and 140,000 in the Air Force. There are also more than 500,000 reservists and more than 1 million paramilitary troops. Defence budget for 2020/2021 is Rs 4.78 trillion.

India has always regarded the expansion of its military strength as an important symbol of its striving to become a world-class power. India has always been committed to dominating South Asia, directly controlling the Indian Ocean, and becoming a world military power is the ultimate goal of India's national strategy. The Indian authorities are convinced that military strength is a necessary basis for achieving great power status, and diplomacy must be backed by military affairs, and military must be supplemented by diplomacy. More importantly, this kind of strategic thinking has been widely supported by Indian think tanks, the military, academia and the press. Kalam, the father of Indian missiles, has repeatedly stated bluntly in public: "Weakness is not respected, therefore India must be strong militarily".

In order to achieve the national strategic goal of "directly controlling the Indian Ocean and striving to become a world-class power", India attaches great importance to the modernization of its military power, and has formulated a strategic plan to become a world military power by 2015, vigorously promoting the transformation of the naval, land and air forces. Army: transition to strategic strike services; Navy: transition to ocean-going combat services; Air Force: transition to aerospace services. In this way, a "future army" that meets the needs of future wars and the national strategic goals will be established. In order to adapt to the modernization and transformation of the military, the structure of military expenditure has also been greatly adjusted. The procurement cost of weapons, known as the "primary expenditure item", reached 334 billion rupees, an increase of nearly 169 billion rupees from the actual procurement cost of the previous fiscal year's double. In terms of the allocation of funds for purchasing

equipment, the Indian Air Force and Navy received 147.8 billion rupees and 75.6 billion rupees respectively, while the army with the largest number of people only received 87.5 billion rupees, which shows from one side India's determination to give priority to the development of high-tech military services. The substantial increase in Indian military expenditure and procurement costs will help the Indian army to purchase more advanced equipment. Purchase of the USS Admiral Gorshkov aircraft carrier worth US\$1.5 billion from Russia, 66 advanced Eagle-type trainers worth US\$1.7 billion from the UK, and 3 US\$1.1 billion "Fee" aircraft from Israel Erkan" airborne early warning aircraft. With the "Admiral Gorshkov" aircraft carrier "MiG-29K" fighter, the Indian Navy will be able to control tens of millions of square kilometers of Indian Ocean waters in one day. The current major acquisition projects of the Indian Ministry of Defense include: the Air Force plans to purchase 126 multi-role medium-range fighter jets, advanced UAVs and transport helicopters from the United States, with a purchase value of up to \$9 billion; the Army plans to purchase 155mm self-propelled artillery, air defense systems and network centers combat equipment; the Navy plans to purchase advanced submarines, maritime surveillance aircraft, a satellite and three aircraft carriers.

Indian Finance Minister Pranab Mukherjee announced that by the fiscal year ending March 2010, India's military budget will increase by 24% to 1.42 trillion rupees, or about \$50 billion. It will fund a modernisation programme for India's 1.23 million troops. In addition to the military budget, Mukherjee also approved an increase of \$143 million for the paramilitary sector. He also said an additional \$456 million would be added to so-called border security in the current fiscal year. India is the largest arms buyer among emerging economies, importing \$28 billion worth of military equipment since 2000. In the coming years, India plans to sign further contracts worth an estimated \$30 billion.

India's military strategic goals are: backed by strong military strength, directly control the weak and small neighbors, contain the neighbors in the northeast, squeeze out the interference of other major powers in South Asia and Indian Ocean affairs, consolidate its vested interests in South Asia and the Indian Ocean, and actively strive for the position world military power. In order to achieve this strategic goal, India has formulated the policy of "appropriately controlling quantity, focusing on strengthening quality, and further improving combat effectiveness", actively meeting the challenges of the new military revolution, vigorously strengthening the modernization of the army, and comprehensively improving the ability to win future wars.

India will jointly develop a fifth-generation advanced fighter jet codenamed PAK-FA with Russia. The Russian-Indian joint research and development project of the fifth-generation fighter jet is worth billions of dollars, and will become the largest joint research and development project in the military field between the Russian and Indian governments. At present, the latest fighter imported by India from Russia is the Su-30MKI fighter. The chief general of the Indian Air Force has confirmed that the Indian Air Force has now determined the technical performance indicators of India's fifth-generation fighter jets. Allegedly, the Indian Air Force hopes to use 5 years to develop the 5th generation fighter. It is reported that the fifth-generation fighter PAK-FA has stealth performance, can conduct supersonic cruise without the use of afterburners, and will be equipped with active electronically scanned array (AESA) airborne radar and thrust to enhance maneuverability.

Entering the 21st century, the Indian Army has purchased 310 T-90 main battle tanks from Russia. A senior Indian army officer said that the army's needs to replace the aging T-55 and T-72 tanks with 1,781 main battle tanks will be met by the introduction of 1,657 Russian-made T-90S and an order of 124 Arjun tanks. Russia and India signed an agreement to introduce 310 Russian-made T-90S tanks. According to the agreement between the two sides, India will import another 347 T-90S tanks, and the Indian Avadi Heavy Vehicle Factory has begun to produce another 1,000 vehicles under the Russian license. T-90S tank.

At present, India has announced plans to build an aircraft carrier fleet and nuclear submarines in the next decade. More recently, India has also tested nuclear-capable missiles with a range that can cover major Chinese cities. And it is also reopening air bases near the border with China. In order to encourage India to check and balance China, Russia has gradually strengthened its close cooperation with the Indian military.

1.	事实力	Junshi shili	Military strength
2.	前身	Qianshen	Predecessor
3.	分立	Fenli	Divided and established
4.	统帅	Tongshui	Commander in chief
5.	最高军事决策机构	Zugao junshi juece jigou	Highest military decision making body
6.	拟定	Niding	Work out
7.	作战计划	Zuozhan jihua	Combat plan
8.	指挥	Zhihui	Command
9.	作战行动	Zuozhan xingdong	War action
10.	陆军参谋长	Lujun canmozhan	Chief of the Army staff
11.	上将	Shangjiang	General

12.	空军参谋长	Kong jun canmozhan	Chief of the Air staff
13.	海军参谋长	Haijun canmozhan	Chief of the Naval staff
14.	募兵制	Mubingzhi	Conscription system
15.	总兵力	Zong bingli	Total military strength
16.	预备役军人	Yubeiyi junren	Reserve force
17.	准军事部队。	Zhunjunshi bud	Paramilitary force
18.	国防预算	Guofang yusuan	Defence budget
19.	一流大国	Yiliu daguo	First grade strong contry
20.	致力于	Zhiliyu	Devoted to
21.	直接控制	Zhijie kongzhi	Directly control
22.	印度洋	Yindu yang	Indian ocean
23.	跻身	Jishen	Ascend
24.	行列	Hanglie	Rank
25.	终极目标	Zhongji mubiao	Ultimate target
26.	当局	Dangju	Authorities
27.	深信	Shenxin	Believe firmly
28.	必要基础	Biyaojichu	Necessary base
29.	后盾	Houzhi	Supporter
30.	补充	Buchong	Supplement
31.	构成	Goucheng	Form
32.	综合国力	Zonghe guoli	Comprehensive national strength
33.	重要因素	Zhongyao yinsu	Important factor
34.	可靠	Kekao	Reliable
35.	王牌	Wangpai	Trupm card
36.	智囊机构	Zhinang jigou	Brain power framework
37.	军界	Junjie	Military circles
38.	学术界	Xueshujie	Academic circles
39.	新闻界	Xinwenjie	Press circles
40.	广泛支持	Guangfan zhichi	Broad support
41.	导弹之父	Daodan zhifu	Father of missile
42.	卡拉姆	Kalamu	Mr Kalam
43.	公开场合	Gongkai changhe	Open occasions
44.	直截了当地	Zhijieliao dangdi	Without preamble
45.	宣称	Xuancheng	Allege
46.	弱小	Ruoxiao	Puniness
47.	令人尊重	Linren zunzhong	Respected by the people
48.	强大	Qiangda	Mightiness
49.	争当	Zhengdang	Strive to be
50.	高度重视	Gaodu zhongshi	Paying high attention
51.	现代化建设	Xiandaihua jianshe	Modernization
52.	转型	Zhuanxing	Change shape
53.	战略打击军种	Zhanlue daji junzhong	Strategic striking force
54.	转变	Zhuanbian	Transformation

55.	远洋作战型	Yuanyang zuozhanxing	Far ocean campaign type
56.	航空航天型	Hangkong hangtian xing	Aviation and space flight type
57.	适应	Shiying	Adopt
58.	相适应	Xiangshiying	Be on speaking term
59.	军费支出	Junfei zhichu	Military expenditure
60.	结构	Jiegou	Framework
61.	首要花费项目	Shouyao huafei xiangmu	Main investment project
62.	采购费用	Caigou feiyong	Expense on stock
63.	居多	Juduo	Be in majority
64.	侧面	Cemian	Side
65.	显示	Xianshi	Show
66.	优先	Youxian	Priority
67.	高技术军种	Gaojishu junzhong	Hi tech force
68.	决心	Juexin	Determination
69.	大幅	Dafu	Great extent
70.	有助于	Youzhuyu	Conducive to
71.	购入	Gouru	Purchase in
72.	先进装备	Xianjin zhuanbei	Latest equipments
73.	价值	Jiazhi	Value
74.	“戈尔什科夫海军上将”号	Geershikefu haijun shangjiang	Admiral Gorskov
75.	航母	Hangmu	Mother ship
76.	“鹰”式	Ying shi	Hawk type
77.	高级教练机	Gaoji jiaolianji	High grade training plane
78.	以色列	Yiselie	Israel
79.	购买	Goumai	Purchase
80.	“费尔康”	feierkang	Falcan
81.	空中预警机	Kongzhong yujingji	Air borne early warning planes AWACS
82.	凭借	Pingjie	By right of
83.	载	Zai	Carry
84.	“米格-29K”	Mige-29K	Mig-29K
85.	战机	Zhanji	Fighter plane
86.	海域	Haiyu	Sea territory
87.	采办	Caiban	Purchase
88.	多用	Duoyong	Multi purpose
89.	中程战斗机	Zhongcheng zhandouji	Intermediate range fighter
90.	无人机	Wurenji	UAV
91.	运输直升机	Yunshu zhishengji	Transport hepter
92.	额高达	Ge gada	Amount upto
93.	毫米	Haomi	Mm
94.	自行火炮	Zixing huopao	Self propelled guns
95.	防空系统	Fangkong xitong	Air defence system

96.	网络中心战	Wangluo zhongxinzhan	Network centred war
97.	潜艇	Qianting	Submarine
98.	海上监视飞机	Haishang jianshi feiji	Sea surveillance plane
99.	一颗人造卫星	Yike renzao weixing	An artificial satellite
100.	航空母舰。	Hangkong mujian	Aircraft carrier
101.	财政年度	Caizheng niandu	Financial year
102.	军费预算	Junfei yusuan	Military expenditure budget
103.	批准	Pizhun	Approve, sanction
104.	所谓	Suowei	So called
105.	边境安全	Bianjing anquan	Border area security
106.	新兴经济体	Xinxing	New and developing
107.	估计	Guji	Estimate
108.	合同。	Hetong	Contract
109.	邻国	Lingguo	Neighbouring country
110.	遏制	E zhi	Keep within limits
111.	排挤	Paiqi	Push aside
112.	事务	Shiwu	Affair
113.	巩固	Gonggu	Consolidate
114.	既得利益	Jideliyi	Vested interests
115.	积极争当	Jijizhengdang	Actively striving to be
116.	适当	Shidang	Suitable
117.	重点	Zhongdian	Keystone
118.	质量	Zhiliang	Quality
119.	战斗力	Zhandouli	Combat capabilities
120.	方针	Fangzhen	Guiding Principle
121.	迎接	Yingjie	Receive
122.	挑战	Tiaozhan	Challenge
123.	打赢	Daying	Win
124.	研发	Yanfa	Develop
125.	代号	Daihao	Symbol
126.	引进	Yinjin	Introduce into
127.	将领	Jianglin	General
128.	证实	Zhengshi	Confirm
129.	性能指标	Xingneng zhibiao	Performance target
130.	据悉	Juxi	It is reported
131.	隐身性能	Yinshen xingneng	Stealth performance
132.	加力燃烧室	Jiali ranshaoshi	Intensified fire box
133.	超音速巡航	Chaoyin suxunhang	Supersonic cruise
134.	安装主动式电子扫描阵列(AESA)机载雷达	Anzhuang zhudongshi saomo zhenlie jizai leida	Install active electronically scanned array (AESA) airborne radar
135.	可增强	Ke zengqiang	Boost up
136.	机动性	Jidongxing	Maneuverable

137.	推力	Tuili	Thrust
138.	矢量喷管	Shiliang fenguan	Vector jet tube
139.	高级军官	Gaojijunguan	Senior military officer
140.	主战坦克	Zhuzhan tanke	Main battle tank
141.	替换	Tihuan	Replace
142.	老旧	Laojiu	Old
143.	俄制	Ezhi	Russian made
144.	订购	Dinggou	Place an order for
145.	阿琼坦克	Aqiong tanke	Arjun tank
146.	得到满足	Dedao manzu	Get satisfaction
147.	阿瓦迪	Awadi	Ayudh
148.	重型	Zhongxing	Heavy
149.	制造厂	Zhizaochang	Manufacturing factory
150.	俄方许可证	E fang xukezheng	Russian side licence
151.	生产另外	Shengchan lingwai	Produce additional
152.	航母舰队	Hangmu jiandui	Air craft carrier fleet
153.	核潜艇	Heqian ting	Nuclear submarine
154.	可携带核弹头	Kexiedai hedantou	Portable nuclear bomb
155.	导弹试射	Daodan shishe	Missile test
156.	射程	Shecheng	Range
157.	可覆盖	Ke fugai	May cover
158.	临近中国	Linjin zhongguo	Close to China
159.	边境地区	Bianjing diqu	Border areas
160.	重新开启	Chongxin kaiqi	Again turn on
161.	空军基地	Kongjun jidi	Air base
162.	鼓励	Guli	Encourage
163.	制衡	Zhiheng	Balance
164.	紧密合作。	Jinmi hezuo	Close cooperation

第二十课

文化

印度已知的历史可以追溯到公元前 2000 年，以雅利安人第一次在印度北部定居的移民浪潮为始。很可能在移民和当地居民之间发生了激烈冲突。在以后的一千年间雅利安人遍布整个印度，创造了大部分早期的古典梵语文献，如《梵经》、《吠陀经》、《奥义书》和两大史诗《罗摩衍那》和《摩诃婆罗多》。

印度到处是无数历史纪念碑。一些保存佛祖舍利的古老佛塔、刻有法令的阿育王柱、铜匾和石碑散布在整个次大陆。玛哈拉施特拉邦等地有雕刻精美的阿旃陀石窟、爱罗拉石窟、艾勒凡塔石窟，东西南北有保存完好的不同建筑风格的雄伟的庙宇，拉加斯坦的城堡和庄园、德里的壮丽红堡、历史纪念碑、壮观的法特普尔西克里王宫、宏伟美丽的泰姬陵等。

印度城镇还有穷人，还有贫民窟。但随着印度的科学和工业技术的发展，人民的生活水平有了一定的提高。印度新兴的信息技术工程人员和信息企业赢得了世界的尊敬。GDP 增长率仅次于中国。

印度有大约 2000 种语言，其中 55 种有自己的文字和文学。有各自文学宝库的 19 种完善语言被定为印度的官方语言。印度的每个宗教在次大陆都有它的信徒。信仰印度教的人占绝大多数，为 85%，其次为穆斯林、基督教、佛教、犹太教、拜火教、耆那教等，所有不同宗教和谐相处。整个印度次大陆遍布无数漂亮的庙宇、雄伟的教堂、宏大的清真寺、香火旺盛的佛教寺庙、犹太教堂和拜火教寺院。印度西部商业特大都市孟买可以说是印度宗教、种族、语言多样性的一个缩影。市内除了以上各教的庙、堂外，还有著名的亚美尼亚教堂、神道教庙和大同教庙等。

Wénhuà

Yìndù yǐ zhī de lìshǐ kěyǐ zhuīsù dào gōngyuán qián 2000 nián, yǐ yǎ lì'ān rén dì yī cì zài ài yìndù běibù dìngjū de yímín làngcháo wéi shǐ. Hěn kěnéng zài yímín hé dāngdì jūmín zhī jiān fāshēngle jīliè chōngtú. Zài yǐhòu de yīqiān nián jiān yǎ lì'ān rén biànbù zhēnggè yìndù, chuàngzào le dà bùfèn zǎoqī de gǔdiǎn fān yǔ wénxiàn, rú "fàn jīng", "fèi tuó jīng", "àoyì s hū" hé liǎng dà shǐshī "luō mó yǎn nà" hé "mó hē póluó duō". Yìndù dào chù shì wúshù lìshǐ jìniànbēi. Yīxiē bǎocún fózǔ shèlì de gǔlǎo fó tǎ, kè yǒu fǎlǐng de āyù wáng zhù, tóng biǎn hé shíbēi sànbù zài zhēnggè cìdàlù. Mǎ hā lā shī tè lā bāng děng dì yǒu diǎokè jīngměi de ā zhān tǎ shíkū, ài luōlā shíkū, ài lēi fán tǎ shíkū, dōngxī nánběi yǒu bǎocún wánhǎo de bùtóng jiànzhù fēnggé de xióngwěi de miào yǔ, lā jiā sītǎn de chéngbǎo hé zhuāngyuán, délì de z huànglǐ hóng bǎo, lìshǐ jìniànbēi, zhuàngguān de fǎ tè pǔ'ěr xī kè lǐ wánggōng, hóngwěi měi lì de tài jī líng děng. Yìndù chéngzhèn hái yǒu qióng rén, hái yǒu pín mǐn kù. Dàn suízhe yìndù de kēxué hé gōngyè jìshù de fā zhǎn, rén mín de shēnghuó shuǐpíng yǒu le yīdìng de tígāo.

Yìndù xīn xīng de xīn xī jìshù gōngchéng rényuán hé xīn xī qǐ yè yíng dé le shìjiè de zūnjìng. GDP zēngzhǎng lǜ jīn cì yú zhōngguó. Yìndù yǒu dà yuē 2000 zhǒng yǔ yán, qízhōng 55 zhǒng yǒu zìjǐ de wénzì hé wénxué. Yǒu gèzi wénxué bǎokù de 19 zhǒng wánshàn yǔ yán bèi dìng wéi yìndù de guānfāng yǔ yán. Yìndù de měi gè zōngjiào zài cìdàlù dōu yǒu tā de xìn fǎ. Xīnyǎng yìndùjiào de rén zhàn jué dà duōshù, wéi 85%, qíqí wéi mùsílín, jīdūjiào, fójiào, yóutàijiào, bàihuǒjiào, qí nà jiào děng, suǒyǒu bùtóng zōngjiào héxié xiāngchǔ. Zhēnggè yìndù cìdàlù biànbù wúshù piàoliang de miào yǔ, xióngwěi de jiàotáng, hóngdà de qīngzhēnsì, xiānghuǒ wàngshèng de fójiào sìmiào, yóutài jiàotáng hé bàihuǒjiào sìyuàn. Yìndù xībù s hāng yè tèdà dūshì mēngmǎi kěyǐ shuō shì yìndù zōngjiào, zhōngzú, yǔ yán duōyàng xìng de yīgè suǒyǐng. Shì nèi chúlè yǐshàng gè jiào de miào, táng wài, hái yǒu zhùmíng de yàměinǐ yǎ jiàotáng, shēn dào jiào miào hé dàtóng jiào miào děng.

Culture

The known history of India dates back to 2000 BC, beginning with the first wave of Aryan migrants who settled in northern India. It is likely that there was a violent conflict between the migrants and the local population. During the next thousand years, the Aryans spread throughout India and created most of the early classical Sanskrit texts, such as the Brahman Sutra, Vedas, Upanishads, and the two great epics, the Ramayana and the Mahabharata.

India is full of countless historical monuments. Some ancient stupas that preserve Buddha relics, Ashoka pillars with decrees, bronze plaques and steles are scattered throughout the subcontinent. Maharashtra and other places have beautifully carved Ajanta Grottoes, Alora Grottoes, Elephanta Grottoes, well-preserved majestic temples of different architectural styles in the east, west, north and south, castles and manors in Rajasthan, Derry's magnificent Red Fort, historical monuments, the magnificent Fatehpur Sikri Palace, the majestic and beautiful Taj Mahal and more.

There are still poor people in Indian towns and slums. But with the development of science and industrial technology in India, people's living standards have improved to a certain extent. India's emerging information technology engineers and information enterprises have won the respect of the world. GDP growth rate is second only to China.

India has about 2,000 languages, 55 of which have their own script and literature. Nineteen well-established languages with their respective literary treasures are designated as official languages of India. Every religion in India has its followers in the subcontinent. The majority of people believe in Hinduism, 85%, followed by Muslims, Christians, Buddhists, Jews, Zoroastrians, Jains, etc. All different religions live in harmony. There are countless beautiful temples, majestic churches, grand mosques, incense-filled Buddhist temples, synagogues and Zoroastrian monasteries throughout the Indian subcontinent. Mumbai, a commercial megacity in western India, can be said

to be a microcosm of India's religious, ethnic and linguistic diversity. In addition to the temples and churches of the above-mentioned religions, there are also famous Armenian churches, Shinto temples and Datong temples in the city.

1.	文化	Wenhua	culture
2.	已知	Yizhi	Already known
3.	追溯到	Zhuisudao	Trace back to
4.	公元前	Gongyuanqian	B.C.
5.	移民	Yimin	Immigrant
6.	浪潮	Langchao	Tidal wave
7.	很可能	Henkeneng	In all probability
8.	激烈冲突	Jilie chongtu	Fierce clash
9.	遍布	Bianbu	Spread all over
10.	古典	Gudian	Classicality
11.	梵语文献	Fanyu wenxian	Sanskrit literature
12.	《梵经》	Fanjing	Purana
13.	《吠陀经》	Weituojing	Vedas
14.	《奥义书》	Aoyishu	Upanishad
15.	两大史诗	Liangda shishi	Two epics
16.	《罗摩衍那》	Luomoyanna	Ramayana
17.	《摩诃婆罗多》。	Moha poluoduo	Mahabharat
18.	到处	Daochu	Everywhere
19.	无数	Wushu	Innumerable
20.	历史纪念碑	Lishi jinianbei	Historical monument
21.	保存	Baocun	Preserve
22.	古老佛塔	Gulao	Antiquity stupa
23.	刻有	Ke you	Engraved
24.	法令的阿育王柱	Faling de ayuwang zhu	Statuable ashoka pillar
25.	铜匾	Tongbian	Copper plaque
26.	石碑	Shibei	Monument
27.	散布	Sanbu	Spread, scatter
28.	次大陆	Cidalu	Sub-continent
29.	雕刻	Diaoke	Engrave
30.	精美	Jingmei	Fine
31.	阿旃陀石窟	Azhanta shiku	Ajanta rock cave
32.	爱罗拉	Ailuola	Alora
33.	艾勒凡塔石窟	Ailefanta shiku	Aurangabad caves
34.	建筑风格	Jianzhu fengge	Architectural style
35.	雄伟	Xiongwei	Majesty
36.	庙宇	Miaoyu	Temple
37.	城堡	Chengbao	Castle, fortress
38.	庄园	Zhuangyuan	Fazenda, manor
39.	壮丽红堡	Zhuangli hongbao	Spendore red fort
40.	壮观	Zhuangguan	Spectacularity
41.	法特普尔 西克里	Fatepuer sikeli	Fatehpur Sikri
42.	王宫	Wanggong	Palace

43.	宏伟美丽	Hongwei meili	Grandiosity, beauty
44.	泰姬陵	Taijiling	Taj Mahal
45.	城镇	Chengzhen	Town
46.	穷人	Qiongren	Poor people
47.	贫民窟	Pinminku	Slums
48.	信息技术	Xinxi jishu	Information technology
49.	工程人员	Gongcheng renyuan	Engineers
50.	信息企业	Xinxi Qiye	IT enterprises
51.	赢得	Yingde	Win
52.	尊敬	Zunjing	Respect
53.	增长率	Zengchanglu	Growth rate
54.	仅次于	Jinciyu	Just next to
55.	大约	Dayue	Approximately
56.	语言	Yuyan	Language
57.	文字和文学	Wenzi he wenxue	Character and literature
58.	各自	Gezi	Each
59.	宝库	Yuku	Treasure, mine
60.	完善语言	Wanshanyuyan	Perfect language
61.	官方语言	Guanfangyuayn	Official language
62.	信徒	Xintu	Believer
63.	信仰印度教的人	Xinyang yindu jiao de ren	Hindus
64.	绝大多数	Juedaduoshu	Absolute majority
65.	其次为	Qici wei	Next is
66.	穆斯林	Moselin	Muslim
67.	基督教	Jidujiao	Christian
68.	佛教	Pojiao	Buddhism
69.	犹太教	Youtaijiao	Judaism
70.	拜火教	Baihuo jiao	Parseeism
71.	耆那教	Qinajiao jiao	Jainism
72.	和谐相处	Hexie xiangchu	Harmonious coexistence
73.	漂亮	Piaoliang	Beautiful
74.	教堂	Jiaotang	Church
75.	宏大	Hongda	Magnificence
76.	清真寺	Qingzhenshe	Mosque
77.	香火旺盛	Xianghuo wangsheng	Burning incense, flower
78.	寺庙	Shemiao	Temple
79.	犹太教堂	Youtaijiaotang	Synagogue
80.	拜火教寺院	Baihuojiao Sheyuan	Parseeism fane
81.	商业特大都市	Shangye tedadushi	Commercial metropolis
82.	缩影	Suoying	Epitome
83.	道教庙	dao jiaomiao	Daoism temple
84.	大同教庙	Datongjiao miao	Bahaism temple
85.	教育	Jiaoyu	Education, teaching
86.	实行	Shixing	Implement

87.	一贯制	Yiguanzhi	Persistent system
88.	中小学教育	Zhongxiao xue jiaoyu	Lower middle school education
89.	高等教育	Gaodeng jiaoyu	Higher education
90.	学士课程	Xueshi kecheng	Bachelor course
91.	硕士课程	Suoshi kecheng	Post graduate course
92.	博士课程	Boshi kecheng	Doctorate course
93.	职业技术教育	Zhiyejishu jiaoyu	Vocational technical education
94.	成人教育	Chengrenjiaoyu	Adult education
95.	非正规教育	Feizhenggui jiaoyu	Non formal education
96.	综合性大学	Zonghexing jiaoyu	Universities
97.	德里大学	Delidaxue	Delhi University
98.	加尔各答大学。	Jiaergeda daxue	Kolkata University
99.	相关	Xiangguan	Mutuality
100.	数据	Shuju	Data
101.	显示	Xianshi	Show, reveal
102.	识字率	Shizilu	Literacy rate
103.	成人文盲	Chengren wenmang	Adult illiteracy
104.	行政区	Xingzhengqu	Administrative zone
105.	推广	Tuikuang	Popularize
106.	扫盲计划	Saomang jihua	Illiteracy elimination plan
107.	儿童入学率	Ertong ruxue lu	Rate of children joining school
108.	接近	Jiejin	Be close to
109.	辍学率	Chuoxuelu	Dropout rate

第二十一课 印度的风俗

印度教盛行“万物有灵”的自然崇拜。虔诚的印度教徒一生有三大夙愿：到圣城朝拜湿婆神，到恒河洗圣浴、饮圣水，死后葬于恒河。以黄牛为神，对它顶礼膜拜。

恒河沐浴

印度北方邦城市瓦拉纳西是印度最负盛名的印度教圣城之一。这座已有 3000 多年历史的古城寺庙林立，每天都吸引着成千上万的印度教徒前来朝拜。他们最大的愿望是到有“圣河”之称的恒河中浸泡沐浴，洗去“罪孽”，求神赐福；死后能在瓦拉纳西火化，并将骨灰撒入恒河。水中的祈祷

Yìndù de fēngsù

Yìndùjiào shèngxíng “wànwù yǒu líng” de zìrán chóngbài. Qiánchéng de yìndù jiàotú yīshēng yǒusān dà sùyuàn: Dào shèng chéng cháobài shī pó shén, dào héng hé xǐ shèng yù, yǐn shèngshuǐ, sǐ hòu zàng yú héng hé. Yǐ huángniú wéi shén, duì tā dǐnglǐ móbài. Héng hé mùyù yìndù běifāng bāng chéngshì wǎ lā nàxī shì yìndù zuì fù shèngmíng de yìndùjiào shèng chéng zhī yī. Zhè zuò yǐ yǒu 3000 duōnián lìshǐ de gǔchéng sìmiào línli, měitiān dū xīyīnzhe chéng qiān shàng wàn de yìndùjiào jiàotú qián lái cháobài. Tāmen zuìdà de yuànwàng shì dào yǒu “shèng hé” zhī chéng de héng hézhōng jìnpào mùyù, xǐ qù “zuìniè”, qiú shén cì fú; sǐ hòu néng zài wǎ lā nàxī huǒhuà, bìng jiāng gǔhuī sā rù héng hé. Shuǐzhōng de qídǎo

Indian customs

Hinduism prevails in the worship of "animistic" nature. Devout Hindus have three long-cherished wishes in their lives: to worship Lord Shiva in the holy city, to bathe and drink holy water in the Ganges River, and to be buried in the Ganges River after death. Take the cow as a god and worship it.

Ganges bathing

The city of Varanasi in the Indian state of Uttar Pradesh is one of the most prestigious Hindu holy cities in India. This ancient city with a history of more than 3,000 years is full of temples, attracting thousands of Hindus to worship every day. Their greatest wish is to bathe in the Ganges River, which is known as the "Holy River", wash away "sin", and ask God for blessings; after death, they can be cremated in Varanasi, and their ashes will be sprinkled into the Ganges River.

1.	风俗	Fengsu	Customs
2.	盛行	Shengxing	Prevail
3.	万物有灵	Wanwu youling	There is spirit in all the things of the world
4.	自然崇拜	Ziran zongbai	Nature worship
5.	虔诚	Qiancheng	Religiousity
6.	一生	Yisheng	Entire life
7.	三大夙愿	Sanda suyuan	Three long cherished wishes
8.	湿婆神	Shiposhen	Lord Shiva
9.	朝拜	Chaobai	Pilgrimage
10.	黄牛	Huangniu	Ox
11.	膜拜。	Mobai	Prostrate
12.	恒河沐浴	Henghe muyu	Ganga snan
13.	瓦拉纳西	Walanaxi	Varanasi
14.	最负盛名	Zuifu shengming	Most famous
15.	愿望	Yuanwang	Wish
16.	“圣河”	Shenghe	Holy river
17.	浸泡沐浴	Jinpao muyu	Dip in take bath
18.	洗去	Xiqu	Scour off
19.	“罪孽”	Zuonie	Sin
20.	求神赐福	Qiushen cifu	Request god for oblized and blessings
21.	火化	Huohua	Cremation
22.	骨灰	Guhui	Bone ash
23.	撒入	Saru	Sprinkle in
24.	祈祷	Qidao	Prayer

第二十二课 印度的节日

印度的“胡里节”（“洒红节”）

洒红节是印度最盛大的节日之一，源于古人期盼丰收的活动，在每年 2 月至 3 月间举行。按照传统习俗，人们会在自己的脸上和身上涂抹颜料，还向别人身上抛撒彩色颜料和粉末。“胡里节”又称“洒红节”，是印度教的春节，也是印度全国性节日。这一天，人们友好地互相往对方的脸上涂抹水彩和红颜料，以示庆贺。胡里节在印度是“色彩”的节日，标志着春天的开始。2008 年 3 月 21 日，在印度加尔各答北部的森蒂尼盖登，庆祝洒红节的人们手捧各色颜料。在印度伯尔萨纳，周身被洒上各种颜料的人们欢笑着庆祝“胡里节”。在印度北部小城阿嫩德布尔，一位即将参加胡里节庆祝游行的锡克族人正打算再痛饮一口美酒。胡里节是印度人庆祝春天开始的传统节日。

Festival in India

"Holi" in India

Holi is one of the grandest festivals in India. It originated from the activities of the ancients, looking forward to a good harvest. It is held between February and March every year. Traditionally, people apply colour (gulal) on their own faces and bodies, and throw colored powder (Gulal) on others. "Holi" is a Hindu's Spring Festival and a national festival in India. On this day, people friendly smear watercolor and red powder on each other's faces to celebrate. Holi is a festival of "colours" in India that marks the beginning of spring. On March 21, 2008, in Sentinegaden, north of Kolkata, India, people hold colorful powder to celebrate the Holi festival. In Barsana, India, people covered in various colours laugh and celebrate Holi. In the small town of Anandpur in northern India, a Sikh who is about to take part in the Holi festival parade is about to take another sip of wine. Holi is a traditional festival celebrated by Indians to celebrate the beginning of spring.

1.	印度的节日	Yindu de jieri	Indian festival
2.	“胡里节”“洒红节”	Huli jie, sahong jie	Holi festival
3.	盛大	Shengda	Grand, magnificent
4.	期盼	Qipan	Expect
5.	丰收	Fengshou	Bumper harvest
6.	传统习俗	Chuantong xiguan	Tradition, habits
7.	涂抹颜料	Tumo, yanliao	Lay on colour
8.	身上	Shenshang	On ones body
9.	抛撒 彩色颜料	Paosa caice yanliao	Throw/ sprinkle colour
10.	粉末	Fenmo	Powder
11.	春节	Chunjie	Spring festival
12.	全国性	Quanguoxing	National
13.	水彩	Shuicai	Water colour
14.	红颜料	Hong yanliao	Red
15.	以示庆贺	Yishi qinghe	So as to show felicitation
16.	“色彩”	Cecai	Colour
17.	手捧	Shoufeng	Hold in hand
18.	伯尔萨纳	Baiersana	Barsana
19.	周身	Zhoushen	Entire body
20.	欢笑	Huanxiao	Mirth
21.	游行	Youxing	Parade
22.	锡克族人	Xikezu ren	Sikh
23.	痛饮一口	Tongyin	Drink one mouth

24.	美酒	Meijiu	Good wine
25.	欢笑	Huanxiao	Heartily
26.	抹了彩粉	Mole caifen	Smear coloured powder
27.	残障儿童	Canzhang erong	Physically disabled children
28.	泼上	Poshang	Splash, sprinkle
29.	颜料水	Yanse shui	Coloured water

第二十三课

排灯节 (Diwali)

排灯节在公历 10 月、11 月间，是印度教徒最大的节日，全国庆祝 3 天。感受印度传统节日——排灯节
印度的沙漠节

2003 年 2 月 15 日，在印度西部拉贾斯坦邦的杰伊瑟尔梅尔举行的“沙漠节”活动中，一名身着传统服装的印度少女在表演舞蹈。此次为期 3 天的活动将通过各种文体形式向人们展示杰伊瑟尔梅尔光辉的历史和多彩的文化。

印度边境安全部队士兵在骆驼上表演杂技

印度独立日

2009 年 8 月 15 日，人们在印度阿姆利则一露天体育场跳舞庆祝独立日。当日，印度举行庆祝活动，纪念独立 62 周年。庆祝活动上，载歌载舞的人群。

2009 年 8 月 15 日，印度边境安全人员在印巴边境的瓦卡庆祝独立日。当日，印度举行庆祝活动，纪念独立 62 周年。

2003 年 8 月 15 日，在印度首都新德里红堡举行的独立日庆典上，印度总理瓦杰帕伊在冒雨检阅仪仗队。印度于 1947 年 8 月 15 日摆脱英国的殖民统治获得独立。在印度首都新德里红堡举行的独立日庆典结束后，一队印度礼兵列队准备撤回营房。新华社记者-安治平摄。

Dì èrshísān kè Dēngjié (Diwali):

Dēngjié zài gōnglì 10 yuè, 11 yuè jiān, shì yìndù jiàotóu zuì dà de jiérì, quánguó qìngzhù 3 tiān. Gǎnshòu yìndù chuántǒng jiérì——pái dēngjié.

Yìndù de shāmò jié 2003 nián 2 yuè 15 rì, zài yìndù xībù lā jiǎ sītǎn bāng de jié yī sè ěr méi ěr jǔxíng de “shāmò jié” huódòng zhōng, yī míng shēnzhe chuántǒng fúzhuāng de yìndù shàonǚ zài biǎoyǎn wǔdǎo. Cǐ cì wéiqí 3 tiān de huódòng jiāng tōngguò gè zhǒng wéntí xíngshì xiàng rénmen zhǎnshì jié yī sè ěr méi ěr guānghuī de lìshǐ hé duōcǎi de wénhuà. Yìndù biānjīng ānquán bùduì shìbīng zài luòtuó shàng biǎoyǎn zájì yìndù dúlì rì 2009 nián 8 yuè 15 rì, rénmen zài yìndù ā mǔ lì zé yī lùtiān tǐyùchǎng tiàowǔ qìngzhù dúlì rì. Dāngrì, yìndù jǔxíng qìngzhù huódòng, jìniàn dúlì 62 zhōunián. Qìngzhù huódòng shàng, zàigēzàiwù de rénqún. 2009 Nián 8 yuè 15 rì, yìndù biānjīng ānquán rényuán zài yīn bā biānjīng de wǎ kǎ qìngzhù dúlì rì. Dāngrì, yìndù jǔxíng qìngzhù huódòng, jìniàn dúlì 62 zhōunián. 2003 Nián 8 yuè 15 rì, zài yìndù shǒudū xīndélǐ hóng bǎo jǔxíng de dúlì rì qìngdiǎn shàng, yìndù zǒnglǐ wǎ jié pà yī zài mào yǔ jiǎnyuè yízhàngduì. Yìndù yú 1947 nián 8 yuè 15 rì bǎituō yīngguó de zhímín tǒngzhì huòdé dúlì. Zài yìndù shǒudū xīndélǐ hóng bǎo jǔxíng de dúlì rì qìngdiǎn jiéshù hòu, yī duì yìndù lǐ bīng lièduì zhǔnbèi chèhuí yíngfáng. Xīnhuà shè jìzhě ān zhìpíng shè

Lesson 23

Festival of Lights (Diwali):

The Festival of Lights is the largest festival of Hindus in October and November of the Gregorian calendar, and is celebrated for three days across the country. Experience the traditional festival of India – Diwali

Desert festival in India

An Indian girl in traditional clothes performs a dance during the "Desert Festival" event in Jaisalmer in the western Indian state of Rajasthan on February 15, 2003. The 3-day event will showcase Jaisalmer's glorious history and colorful culture through various stylistic forms. Indian Border Security Force soldiers perform acrobatics on camels.

Indian Independence Day

People dance to celebrate Independence Day at an open-air stadium in Amritsar, India, on August 15, 2009. On the same day, India held a celebration to commemorate the 62nd anniversary of independence. At the celebration, the crowd sang and danced.

Indian border security officers celebrate Independence Day in Wagha on the India-Pakistan border on August 15, 2009. On the same day, India held a celebration to commemorate the 62nd anniversary of independence.

On August 15, 2003, Indian Prime Minister Vajpayee reviewed the guard of honor in the rain at the Independence Day celebration held at the Red Fort in New Delhi, capital of India. India gained independence from British colonial rule on August 15, 1947. A team of Indian soldiers of the ceremony prepares to withdraw to their barracks after the Independence Day celebrations at the Red Fort in the Indian capital New Delhi. Photo by Xinhua News Agency reporter An Zhiping

1.	灯节	Dengjie	Diwali
2.	公历	Gongli	Solar calendar
3.	排灯节	Paidengjie	Dipawali
4.	感受	Ganshou	Recept,take
5.	集体婚礼	Jiti jiehun	Collective marriage
6.	订婚仪式	Dinghun yishi	Engagement ceremony
7.	沙漠节	Shamojie	Desert/carvan festival
8.	传统服装	Chuantong fuzhuang	Traditional dress
9.	少女	Shaoniu	Young girl
10.	表演舞蹈	Biaoyan wudao	Perform dance
11.	文体形式	Wenti xingshi	Style shape
12.	展示	Zhanshi	Bring forth, reveal
13.	多彩的文化	Duocai de wenhua	Diversified culture
14.	士兵	Shibing	Soldier
15.	骆驼	Luotuo	Camel
16.	表演杂技	Biao yan zaji	Performe acrobatics
17.	印度独立日	Yindu duli ri	Indian independence day
18.	周年	Zhounian	Anniversary
19.	载歌载舞	Zaigezaiwu	Festively singing & dancing
20.	人群	Renqun	Crowd, public
21.	瓦卡	Waka	Wagha
22.	庆典	Qingdian	Celebration
23.	冒雨检阅仪仗队	Maoyu jianyueyizhangdu i	Reviewing guard of honour facing rain
24.	摆脱	Baituo	Get rid of
25.	殖民统治	Zhimin tongzhi	Colonial rule
26.	获得独立	Huodeduli	Get independence
27.	红堡	Hongbao	Red fort
28.	独立日庆典	Duliri qingdian	Independence day celebrations

第二十四课

印度杜尔加女神节

2007年10月21日，在印度的加尔各答，女孩们互相往脸上涂抹一种红色颜料，庆祝印度教的杜尔加女神节。当日是杜尔加女神节的最后一天，印度妇女互相涂抹一种红色颜料，祝福对方吉祥幸福。新华社/路透印度宗教节日“昆梅拉节”印度香客在戈达瓦里河中进行“圣浴”。

“昆梅拉节”是印度最盛大的朝圣节日，每12年内分别在恒河之畔的“赫尔德瓦尔”、锡布拉河畔的乌贾因、戈达瓦里河畔的纳西克和恒河与亚穆纳河交汇的安拉阿巴德举行一次。“圣浴”是“昆梅拉节”重要组成部分，因此又称恒河圣水沐浴节。

相传，自古以来印度教徒一直视恒河水为圣水。他们认为，在圣水中沐浴，可以洁净身心。因此，在此节日期间，成千上万善男信女，扶老携幼来此拜佛、沐浴，以祈求神灵保佑。

据记载，由于信徒众多，在“昆梅拉节”期间，印度曾发生霍乱、谋杀与绑架案件，虽然最终被印度政府成功控制，但仍曾发生几起较大的因场面失控而导致多人死亡的惨剧。

2003年8月，印度西部马哈拉施特拉邦纳西克地区在欢庆传统宗教节日“昆梅拉节”时，由于参加宗教活动的群众在赶往戈达瓦里河进行“圣浴”途中发生拥挤，酿成至少有40名香客在混乱拥挤中被踩死，50人受伤的惨剧。

印度“排灯节”

每年10月底到11月初是印度传统的“排灯节”，它是印度最重大的节日之一。

2003年10月24日，在印度传统而隆重的“排灯节”前夜，一名男孩在印度北部城市昌迪加尔点燃盏盏油灯。

2006年10月21日，在印度新德里附近，一名女子合十行礼，庆祝印度教的传统节日排灯节。当天，世界各地信奉印度教的人们庆祝排灯节。新华社/法新

2009年10月14日，印度孟买街头挂着五颜六色的纸灯。印度民众将于10月17日迎来印度教重要的传统节日——排灯节。新华社/路透

Di èrshí kè

Yìndù dù ěr jiā nǚshén jié

2007 nián 10 yuè 21 rì, zài yìndù de jiā'ěrgèdá, nǚháimen hùxiāng wǎng liǎn shàng túmǒ yī zhǒng hóngsè yánliào, qīngzhù yìndùjiào de dù ěr jiā nǚshén jié. Dāngri shì dù ěr jiā nǚshén jié de zuìhòu yītiān, yìndù fùnnǚ hùxiāng túmǒ yī zhǒng hóngsè yánliào, zhùfù duìfāng jíxiáng xìngfú. Xīnhuá shè/lùtòu yìndù zōngjiào jiérì “kūn méi lǎ jié” yìndù xiāngkè zài gē dá wǎ lǐ hézhōng jìnxíng “shèng yù”. “Kūn méi lǎ jié” shì yìndù zuì shèngdà de cháoshèng jiérì, měi 12 niánnèi fēnbié zài héng hé zhī pàn de “hè ěr dé wǎ'ěr”, xībù lǎ hépàn de wǔ jiǎ yīn, gē dá wǎ lǐ hépàn de nàxī kè hé héng hé yǔ yà mù nà hé jiāohuì de ān lǎ ā bā dé jùxíng yīcì. “Shèng yù” shì “kūn méi lǎ jié” zhōngyào zǔchéng bùfèn, yīncǐ yòu chēng héng hé shèngshuǐ mùyù jié. Xiāngchuán, zìgǔ yǐlái yìndù jiàotú yīzhí shì héng héshuǐ wèi shèngshuǐ. Tāmen rènwéi, zài shèngshuǐ zhōng mùyù, kěyǐ jiéjìng shēnxīn. Yīncǐ, zài cǐ jiérì qíjiān, chéng qiān shàng wàn shànnánxìnnǚ, fù lǎo xié yòu lǎi cǐ bàifó, mùyù, yǐ qíqiú shēnlíng bǎoyòu. Jù jìzài, yóuyú xìntú zhòngduō, zài “kūn méi lǎ jié” qíjiān, yìndù céng fāshēng huòluàn, móushā yǔ bǎngjià ànjiàn, suǐrán zuìzhōng bèi yìndù zhèngfǔ chénggōng kòngzhì, dàn réng céng fāshēng jǐ qǐ jiào dà de yīn chǎngmiàn shíkòng ěr dǎozhì duō rén sǐwáng de cǎnjù.

2003 Nián 8 yuè, yìndù xī bù mǎ hā lǎ shī tè lǎ bāng nàxī kè dìqū zài huān qīng chuántǒng zōngjiào jiérì “kūn méi lǎ jié” shí, yóuyú cānjiā zōngjiào huódòng de qúnzhòng zài gǎn wǎng gē dá wǎ lǐ hé jìnxíng “shèng yù” túzhōng fāshēng yǒngjǐ, niàng chéng zhishǎo yǒu 40 míng xiāngkè zài hūnlùn yǒngjǐ zhōng bèi cǎi sǐ, 50 rén shòushāng de cǎnjù. Yìndù “pái dēngjié” měinián 10 yuèdì dào 11 yuèchū shì yìndù chuántǒng de “pái dēngjié”, tā shì yìndù zuì zhòngdà de jiérì zhī yī. 2003 Nián 10 yuè 24 rì, zài yìndù chuántǒng ér lóngzhòng de “pái dēngjié” qiányè, yī míng nánhái zài yìndù běibù chéngshì chāng dí jiā'ěr diǎnrán zhǎn zhǎn yóudēng. 2006 Nián 10 yuè 21 rì, zài yìndù xīndé lǐ fùjìn, yī míng nǚzǐ héshí háng lǐ, qīngzhù yìndùjiào de chuántǒng jiérì pái dēngjié. Dāngtiān, shìjiè gèdì xīnfēng yìndùjiào de rénmen qīngzhù pái dēngjié. Xīnhuá shè/fǎ xīn 2009 nián 10 yuè 14 rì, yìndù mèngmǎi jiētóu guàzhe wǔyánliùsè de zhǐ dēng. Yìndù mínzhòng jiāng yú 10 yuè 17 rì yíng lái yìndùjiào zhōngyào de chuántǒng jiérì——pái dēngjié. Xīnhuá shè/lùtòu

Lesson 24

Durga Puja Festival in India

Girls apply a red colour to each other's faces to celebrate the Hindu goddess Durga festival in Kolkata, India, on October 21, 2007. On the last day of the Durga Goddess Festival, Indian women smear each other with a red colour to wish each other good luck and happiness. Xinhua/Reuters

Indian religious festival "Kumbha": Indian pilgrims take a "holy bath" in the Godavari River. "Kumbha" is the largest pilgrimage festival in India. Every 12 years, it is held in Haridwar on the banks of the Ganges, Ujjain on the Sibra, Nashik and Heng on the Godavari. Allahabad, where the Yamuna River meets the Ganges, is held once. "Holy Bath" is an important part of the "Kumbha Festival", so it is also called the Ganges Holy Water Bathing Festival.

According to legend, Hindus have regarded the Ganges water as holy water since ancient times. They believe that bathing in holy water can purify the body and mind. Therefore, during this festival, thousands of men and women help the old and the young to come here to worship god and bathe in order to pray for the blessing of the gods.

According to records, due to the large number of believers, cases of cholera, murder and kidnapping occurred in India during the "Kumbha Festival". Although they were finally successfully controlled by the Indian government, there were still several cases that caused many people to lose control of the scene. The tragedy of death occurred. In August 2003, during the celebration of the traditional religious festival "Kumbha Festival" in the Nashik region of Maharashtra state in western India, the people who participated in the religious activities rushed to the Godavari River to take a "holy bath" Crowded on the way, causing at least 40 pilgrims to be trampled to death and 50 injured.

India's Diwali

Every year from the end of October to the beginning of November is the traditional Indian "Diwali", which is one of the most important festivals in India.

On October 24, 2003, on the eve of India's traditional and solemn "Diwali" festival, a boy lights oil lamps in the northern Indian city of Chandigarh.

On October 21, 2006, near New Delhi, India, a woman folds her hands to celebrate Diwali, a traditional Hindu festival. On this day, people of Hinduism around the world celebrate Diwali. Xinhua News Agency/Faxin

Colorful paper lanterns hang on the streets of Mumbai, India, on October 14, 2009. The Indian people will welcome the important traditional festival of Hinduism - Diwali on October 17. Xinhua/Reuters

1.	杜尔加女神节	Tuerjia nushen jie	Durga devi puja festival
2.	妇女	Funu	Women

3.	祝福对方吉祥幸福	Zhufu duifang ujixiang xingfu	On other side good luck & fortune
4.	印度宗教节日	Yindu zongjiao jieri	Hindu religion festival
5.	“昆梅拉节”	Kun meila jie	Kumbh mela festival
6.	香客	Xiangke	Pilgrims
7.	戈达瓦里河	Galawalihe	Godawari river
8.	“圣浴”。	Shengyu	Holy bath
9.	畔	Pan	Bank
10.	赫尔德瓦尔	Heerdewaer	Haridwar
11.	锡布拉河畔	Xibula heban	Kchhipra river bank
12.	乌贾因	Wujiayin	Ujjain
13.	戈达瓦里河畔	Gedawali heban	Godawari riverside
14.	纳西克	Naxike	Nasik
15.	恒河与亚穆纳河交汇	Henghe yu Yamuna he jiaohui	Meeting place of ganga and Yamuna river
16.	安拉阿巴德	Anlaabade	Allahabad
17.	圣水沐浴节。	Shengshui muyujie	Bathe in holy water
18.	相传	Xiangzhuan	Hand down
19.	洁净身心	Jiejing	Clean body and mind
20.	成千上万	Chengqian shangwan	Thousands upon thousands
21.	善男信女	Shannan xinnu	Male and female
22.	扶老携幼	Fulao xieyou	Bring along young and old
23.	沐浴	Muyu	Bath
24.	以祈求神灵保佑。	Yiqiqiu shenhun baoyou	By prayer asking jin blessing
25.	记载	Jizai	Record
26.	信徒众多	Xintu zhong duo	Many believers
27.	霍乱	Huoluan	Cholera
28.	谋杀	Mousha	Murder
29.	绑架案件	Bangjia anjian	Kidnapping cases
30.	失控	Shikong	Lose control of
31.	惨剧。	Canju	Tragic
32.	踩死	Tasi	Died of stepping on
33.	混乱	Hunluan	Confusion
34.	欢庆传统宗教节日	Huanqing chuan tong zongjiao jieri	Festivity traditional religious festivals
35.	拥挤	Yongji	Jam, crowd
36.	酿成	Niangcheng	Spawn
37.	隆重	Longzhong	Ceremoniously
38.	点燃盏盏油灯。	Dian ran zhanzhan youdeng	Light up calyx oil lamp
39.	合十行礼	Heshi xingli	(salute by Joining hands together)Namastey,
40.	街头挂着	Jietou guazhe	Hanging in the strrets
41.	五颜六色	Wuyan liuse	All the colour of rainbow
42.	纸灯	Zhideng	Paper lantern

第二十五课

印度共和国日

2004年1月26日，印度士兵驾驶T-72坦克参加在首都新德里举行的共和国日游行。当天，新德里举行了盛大的游行和表演，庆祝印度第55个共和国日。1950年1月26日，印度共和国成立。印度政府规定每年1月26日为共和国日。

在印度首都新德里举行的共和国日游行中，一些印度演员在表演舞蹈。2004年1月29日，在新德里举行的受阅部队回营仪式上，三名仪仗兵叠起降下的印度国旗。回营仪式的举行标志着2004年印度“共和国日”庆祝活动的结束。受阅部队回营仪式结束后，印度中央政府办公楼和总统府的装饰彩灯全部点亮。在新德里举行的受阅部队回营仪式上，总统卫队的马队在广场上列队。新华社记者 安治平 摄

Dì èrshíwǔ kè Yìndù gònghéguó rì

2004 nián 1 yuè 26 rì, yìndù shìbīng jiàshǐ T-72 tǎnkè cānjiā zài shǒudū xīndélǐ jǔxíng de gònghéguó rì yóuxíng. Dàngtiān, xīndélǐ jǔxíng shèngdà de yóuxíng hé biǎoyǎn, qīngzhù yìndù dì 55 gè gònghéguó rì. 1950 Nián 1 yuè 26 rì, yìndù gònghéguó chénglì. Yìndù zhèngfǔ guīdìng měinián 1 yuè 26 rì wéi gònghéguó rì. Zài yìndù shǒudū xīndélǐ jǔxíng de gònghéguó rì yóuxíng zhōng, yīxiē yìndù yǎnyuán zài biǎoyǎn wǔdǎo. 2004 Nián 1 yuè 29 rì, zài xīndélǐ jǔxíng de shòu yuè bùduì huí yíng yíshì shàng, sān míng yízhàng bīng dié qǐ jiàngxià de yìndù guóqí. Huí yíng yíshì de jǔxíng biāozhìzhe 2004 nián yìndù “gònghéguó rì” qīngzhù huódòng de jiéshù. Yìndù de xiàng bǐ shén dànsēng rì shòu yuè bùduì huí yíng yíshì jiéshù hòu, yìndù zhōng yāng zhèngfǔ bàngōng lóu hé zǒngtǒng fǔ de zhuāngshì cǎi dēng quánbù diǎn liàng. Zài xīndélǐ jǔxíng de shòu yuè bùduì huí yíng yíshì shàng, zǒngtǒng wèiduì de mǎduì zài guǎngchǎng shàng lièduì. Xīnhuá shè jìzhě ān zhìpíng shè Lesson 25

Republic day of India

Indian soldiers drive T-72 tanks during the Republic Day parade in the capital New Delhi on January 26, 2004. On the same day, New Delhi held a grand parade and performance to celebrate India's 55th Republic Day. On January 26, 1950, the Republic of India was established. The Indian government has designated January 26 as Republic Day every year.

Indian actors perform dances during the Republic Day parade in the Indian capital New Delhi. On January 29, 2004, three honor guards lowered the Indian flag during the return ceremony of the troops under review in New Delhi. The return to camp marked the end of India's "Republic Day" celebrations in 2004. After the ceremony of returning the troops to the camp, the decorative lanterns of the central government office building and the presidential palace of India were all lit up. Horses of the Presidential Guard line up in the square during the return ceremony of the troops under review in New Delhi. Photo by Xinhua News Agency reporter An Zhiping

1.	印度共和国日	Yindu gongheguori	Indian Republic Day
2.	驾驶	Shijia	Drive
3.	T-72 坦克	Tanke	T-52 Tanks
4.	游行	Youxing	Parade
5.	表演	Piaoyan	Perform
6.	舞蹈	Wudao	Dance
7.	受阅部队	Shouyue budui	Troops participating in parade
8.	回营仪式上	Huiying yishishang	Ceremony of returning in the camps
9.	仪仗兵	Yizhangbing	Guard of honour
10.	叠起降下	Dieqi jiangxia	Furl and lower
11.	象鼻神	Xiangbishen	Lord Ganesh
12.	誕生日	danshengri	Birthday
13.	总统府	Zongtongfu	Office of the President
14.	装饰彩灯	Zhuangshi caideng	Decorate with coloured lights
15.	点亮	Dianliang	Illumine
16.	马队	Madui	Horse team

17.	大神湿婆神	Dashen shiposhen	Lord Shiva
18.	财神	Caishen	God of wealth
19.	智慧神	Zhihui shen	God of wisdom
20.	欢乐神	Huanle shen	God of gladness
21.	最受欢迎	Zuishou huanying	Have the call
22.	知名度最高	Zhimingdu zuigao	Highest fame
23.	塑像	Suxiang	Statue
24.	走入水中	Zouru shizhong	Jal visharjan

第二十六课 印度象头神节

2009年9月3日，在印度首都新德里，印度教教徒将象头神伽内什的神像送入亚穆纳河中。象头神节是印度重要的宗教节日之一。在为期10天的节日中，印度教教徒将象头神的神像请回家中，寓意引入财富、智慧和吉祥。在节日的最后一天，人们还会举行盛大的仪式将象头神的神像送入河流和大海，让它随波而去，意味着除旧布新。新华社/法新

克利须那神诞辰日

2007年9月3日，在印度北部城市阿姆利则，一个男孩打扮成印度教中克利须那神的样子准备参加克利须那神诞辰日的庆祝活动。2007年的9月4日是克利须那神的诞辰日，届时印度将举办一系列庆祝活动。新华社发

印度教蛇节

在印度教习俗里，人们相信蛇能够带来好运。节庆期间，人们会在墙壁上画著蛇的图案，并且准备牛奶、鲜花奉献给蛇神享用。每年的蛇节都会吸引众多的耍蛇艺人蜂拥到寺庙中，趁机大赚一笔。耍蛇人握住蛇颈，印度教徒将牛奶倒在眼镜蛇头上，进行膜拜。2009年7月26日，印度北部城市阿拉哈巴德，印度妇女向眼镜蛇膜拜。

不过，有动物保护者称，蛇是食肉动物，以田鼠、鸟类、蜥蜴和青蛙为食，而并非靠人们提供的牛奶为生，每年的蛇节期间都会有数百条蛇死去，很多是因为食用了牛奶而导致严重脱水和过敏反应造成死亡的。2009年7月26日，印度北部城市阿姆利则一座印度教神庙内，耍蛇人将眼镜蛇浸入牛奶中。

Dì èrshíliù kè

Yìndù xiàng tóu shén jié

2009 nián 9 yuè 3 rì, zài yìndù shǒudū xīndélǐ, yìndùjiào jiàotóu jiāng xiàng tóu shén jiā nèi shén de shénxiàng sòng rù yà mù nà hézhōng. Xiàng tóu shén jié shì yìndù zhōngyào de zōngjiào jiérì zhī yī. Zài wéiqí 10 tiān de jiérì zhōng, yìndùjiào jiàotóu jiāng xiàng tóu shén de shénxiàng qǐng huí jiā zhōng, yùyì yǐnrù cáifù, zhìhuì hé jíxiáng. Zài jiérì de zuìhòu yītiān, rénmen hái huì jǔxíng shèngdà de yíshì jiāng xiàng tóu shén de shénxiàng sòng rù héliú hé dàhǎi, ràng tā suí bō ér qù, yìwèizhe chújiùbùxīn. Xīnhuá shè/fā xīn kèlì xū nà shén dàncén rì 2007 nián 9 yuè 3 rì, zài yìndù běibù chéngshì ā mǔ lì zé, yīgè nánhái dǎbàn chéng yìndùjiào zhōng kèlì xū nà shén de yàngzi zhǔnbèi cānjiā kèlì xū nà shén dàncén rì de qīngzhù huódòng.

2007 Nián de 9 yuè 4 rì shì kèlì xū nà shén de dàncén rì, jièshí yìndù jiāng jǔbàn yī xiliè qīngzhù huódòng. Xīnhuá shè fā yìndùjiào shé jié zài yìndùjiào xísù lǐ, rénmen xiāngxìn shé nénggòu dài lái hǎo yùn. Jiéqīng qíjiān, rénmen huì zài qiángbì shàng huàzhe shé de tú'àn, bìngqiě zhǔnbèi niú'nǎi, xiānhuā fèngxian gěi shé shén xiāngyòng. Měinián de shé jié dūhuì xīyīn zhōngduō de shuǎ shé yìrén fēngyōng dào simiào zhōng, chènjī dà zhuàn yī bǐ. Shuǎ shé rén wò zhù shé jīng, yìndù jiàotóu jiāng niú'nǎi dào zài yǎnjīngshé tóu shàng, jìnxíng móbài 2009 nián 7 yuè 26 rì, yìndù běibù chéngshì ā lā hābā dé, yìndù fù'nǚ xiàng yǎnjīngshé móbài. Bùguò, yǒu dòngwù bǎohù zhě chēng, shé shì shíróu dòngwù, yī tiānshù, niǎo lèi, xīyì hé qīngwā wèi shí, ér bìngfēi kào rénmen tígōng de niú'nǎi wéi shēng, měinián de shé jié qíjiān dūhuì yǒu shù bǎi tiáo shé sǐqù, hěnduō shì yīnwèi shíyòngle niú'nǎi ér dǎozhì yánzhòng tuōshuǐ hé guòmǐn fǎnyìng zàochéng siwáng de. 2009 Nián 7 yuè 26 rì, yìndù běibù chéngshì ā mǔ lì zé yīzuò yìndùjiào shén miào nèi, shuǎ shé rén jiāng yǎnjīngshé jìnrù niú'nǎi zhōng.

Lesson 26

Ganesh Chaturthi in India

On September 3, 2009, in New Delhi, the capital of India, Hindus put the idol of Ganesha into the Yamuna River. Ganesh Chaturthi is one of the important religious festivals in India. During the 10-day festival, Hindus invite the statue of Ganesha to their homes, implying the introduction of wealth, wisdom and auspiciousness. On the last day of the festival, people will also hold a grand ceremony to send the statue of Ganesha into the river and the sea, and let it go with the waves, which means getting rid of the old and welcoming the new. Xinhua News Agency/Faxin

Janmastami (Lord Krishna's birthday)

On September 3, 2007, in the northern Indian city of Amritsar, a boy dressed as the Hindu god Krishna prepares to participate in the celebration of Krishna's birthday. On September 4, 2007, the birthday of Lord Krishna,

India will hold a series of celebrations. Xinhua News Agency

Nag Panchami (Hindu Snake Festival)

In Hinduism, people believe that snakes bring good luck. During the festival, people will draw snake patterns on the walls and prepare milk and flowers for the snake god to enjoy. The annual snake festival attracts many snake charmers to flock to the temple, taking the opportunity to make a fortune. A snake charmer holds the snake's neck, and Hindus pour milk on the cobra's head for worship on July 26, 2009, in the northern city of Allahabad, India. Indian women worship the cobra.

However, some animal protectionists say that snakes are carnivores, feeding on voles, birds, lizards and frogs, not on the milk provided by people. Hundreds of snakes die during the annual snake festival, many of which die due to severe dehydration and allergic reactions due to the consumption of milk. A snake charmer dips a cobra into milk at a Hindu temple in the northern Indian city of Amritsar on July 26, 2009.

1.	印度象头神节	Yindu xiangtoushenjie	Ganesh Mahotsava in India
2.	伽内什	Ganeishi	Ganesh
3.	神像	Shenxiang	Idol
4.	送入	Songru	Deliver in
5.	亚穆纳河中	Yamuna hezhong	In Yamuna river
6.	寓意	Yuyi	Moral
7.	引入	Yinru	Introduce, induct
8.	财富	Caifu	Wealth
9.	吉祥	Jixiang	Luck, auspicious
10.	仪式	Yishi	Ceremony
11.	随波而去	Suipo erqu	Go along with wave
12.	意味着	Yiweizhe	Presume
13.	克利须那神	Kelixuna shen	Lord Krishna
14.	打扮	Daban	Dress up
15.	习俗	Xiyu	Habit
16.	好运	Haoyun	Fortune, luck
17.	墙壁	qiangbi	Wall
18.	画著	Huazhu	Paint
19.	蛇	She	Snake
20.	图案	Tiaoan	Design, pattern
21.	牛奶	Niunai	Milk
22.	鲜花	Xianhua	Fresh flowers
23.	奉献	Fengxian	Offer
24.	蛇神	Sheshen	Nag devata
25.	享用	Xiangyong	Regale on
26.	耍蛇艺人 蜂拥	Shuashe yiren fengyong	Sapere stampede
27.	寺庙	Simiao	Temple
28.	趁机	Chenji	Taking advantage of opportunity
29.	大赚一笔	Dazhuanyibi	Earn a lot of money
30.	握住	Wozhu	Handhold
31.	蛇颈	Shejing	Neck of snake
32.	牛奶	Niunai	Milk
33.	眼镜蛇	Yanjingshe	Kobra
34.	进行	Jinxing	Carry out
35.	膜拜	Mobai	Worship
36.	动物	Dongwu	Animal
37.	保护者	Baohuzhe	Protector

38.	食肉动物	Shiroudongwu	Carnivore
39.	田鼠	Tianshu	Rat
40.	鸟类	Niaolei	Avifauna
41.	蜥蜴	Qiyi	Lizard
42.	青蛙	Qingwa	Frog
43.	非靠	Feikao	Not rely on
44.	脱水	Tuoshui	Dehydration
45.	过敏反应	guomei	Very sensitive to
46.	造成死亡	Zaocheng siwang	Cause death
47.	浸入	jinru	Immerse in

第二十七课

印度崛起

由于拥有庞大的人口数量以及其快速增长的经济和军事领域，使印度通常被认为是一个新兴的力量，是潜在超级大国。随着印度军事实力的成长，印度已经拥有核武器、洲际弹道导弹、两艘航空母舰，而且还成为全球第四个成功开发弹道导弹防御系统（印度弹道导弹防御系统计划）的国家。

在太空领域上印度也有著不少成就，例如它的月船1号和火星轨道探测器两个太空探测器项目，都显示印度正一步一步努力迈向世界大国之列。根据一些学者、媒体和经济史学家安格斯·麦迪森（Angus Maddison）在他所著的《世界经济千年史》中所说，从公元一至一千年印度曾经构成了的世界最大经济体。此外，当中国占有世界经济主导地位时，印度将会是世界第二大经济体。印度的经济总量在1700年曾经占有世界的27%（相比欧洲当时占有23%），但直至1950年只占有3%。也因此许多现代经济史学家指责殖民地统治者令印度的经济地位下降。在17世纪时，印度和中国的国内生产总值占有世界的60%至70%。

影响因素

虽然印度已经被确定为一个潜在超级大国，也常被称为南亚地区的大国（例如其在南亚地区拥有的压倒性优势，包括政治、经济、军事、文化和人口数量），但印度国内存在著深层次的矛盾，极大的贫富差距和基础建设的落后等，若果印度不克服这些问题将会大大阻碍其发展。

Dì èrshíqī kè

Yìndù juéqǐ

Yóuyóu yǒngyǒu pángdà de rénǒu shùliàng yǐjī qí kuàisù zēngzhǎng de jīngjì hé jūnshì língyù, shǐ yìndù tōngcháng bèi rènwéi shì yīgè xīnxīng de lìliàng, shì qiánzài chāojí dàguó. Suízhe yìndù jūnshì shíli de chéngzhǎng, yìndù yǐjīng yǒngyǒu héwǔqì, zhōujì dàndào dàodàn, liǎng sōu hángkōngmǔjiàn, érqǐ hái chéngwéi quánqiú dì sì gè chénggōng kāifā dàndào dàodàn fāngyù xìtǒng (yìndù dàndào dàodàn fāngyù xìtǒng jìhuà) de guójiā.

Zài tàiōng língyù shàng yìndù yěyǒuzhe bù shǎo chéngjiù, lǐrú tā de yuè chuán 1 hào hé huǒxīng guǐdào tàncè qì liǎng gè tàiōng tàncè qì xiàngmù, dōu xiǎnshì yìndù zhèng yībù yībù nǔlì mài xiàng shìjiè dàguó zhī liè. Gēnjù yīxiē xuézhě, méitǐ hé jīngjì shǐxué jiā ān gé sī-màidí sēn (Angus Maddison) zài tāsuǒzhe de “shìjiè jīngjì qiānnián shǐ” zhōng suǒ shuō, cóng gōngyuán yīzhī yīqiān nián yìndù céngjīng gòuchéng le shìjiè zuìdà jīngjì tǐ. Cíwài, dāng zhōngguó zhànyǒu shìjiè jīngjì zhǔdǎo dìwèi shí, yìndù jiāng huì shì shìjiè dì èr dà jīngjì tǐ. Yìndù de jīngjì zǒng liàng zài 1700 nián céngjīng zhànyǒu shìjiè de 27%(xiāng bǐ ōuzhōu dāngshí zhànyǒu 23%), dàn zhízhì 1950 nián zhǐ zhànyǒu 3%. Yě yīncǐ xǔduō xiàndài jīngjì shǐxué jiā zhīzé zhímíndì tǒngzhì zhě líng yìndù de jīngjì dìwèi xiàjiàng. Zài 17 shìjì shí, yìndù hé zhōngguó de guónèi shēngchǎn zǒng zhí zhànyǒu shìjiè de 60%zhì 70%.

Yǐngxiǎng yīnsù

suīrán yìndù yǐjīng bèi quèdìng wéi yīgè qiánzài chāojí dàguó, yě cháng bèi chēng wéi nányà dìqū de daguo (lǐrú qí zài nányà dìqū yǒngyǒu de yādào xìng yǒushi, bāokuò zhèngzhì, jīngjì, jūnshì, wénhuà hé rénǒu shùliàng), dàn yìndù guónèi cúnzàizhe shēn céngcǐ de máodùn, jí dà de pín fù chājù hé jīchǔ jiànshè de luòhòu děng, ruò guǒ yìndù bù kěfú zhèxiē wèntí jiāng huì dàdà zǔ'ài qí fāzhǎn.

Lesson 27

Rise of India

India is often considered an emerging power and a potential superpower due to its large population and its rapidly growing economy and military. With the growth of India's military strength, India already possesses nuclear weapons, intercontinental ballistic missiles, two aircraft carriers, and has also become the fourth country in the world to successfully develop a ballistic missile defense system (Indian Ballistic Missile Defense System Plan).

India has also made many achievements in the space field. For example, its two space probe projects, Chandrayaan-1 and Mars Orbiter, both show that India is working hard to become a world power step by step. According to some scholars, media and economic historian Angus Maddison, in his book A Millennium History of the World Economy, India constituted the world's largest economy from 1 to 1000 AD. Furthermore, when China takes over the dominant position in the world economy, India will be the second-largest economy in the world. India's economic aggregate once accounted for 27% of the world's total in 1700 (compared to Europe's 23% at that time), but by 1950 it only accounted for 3%. This is why many modern economic historians blame colonial rulers for India's decline in economic status. In the 17th century, India and China accounted for 60% to 70% of the world's GDP.

Influencing factors

Although India has been identified as a potential superpower and is often referred to as the Major Power in South Asia (such as its overwhelming advantages in South Asia, including political, economic, military, cultural and population numbers), There are deep-seated contradictions in the country, a huge gap between rich and poor, and backward infrastructure. If India does not overcome these problems, it will greatly hinder its development.

1.	印度崛起:	Yindu jueqi	Rise of India
2.	神话	Shenhua	Myth
3.	现实	Xianshi	Reality
4.	疲倦	Pijuan	Weariness
5.	炒作	Chaozuo	Stir fry
6.	法制	Fazhi	Legal system
7.	西方式	Xifangshi	Western type
8.	教育	Jiaoyu	Education
9.	人脉	Renmai	Human pulse
10.	保证	Baozheng	Ensure
11.	可持续性	Kechixuxing	Sustainability
12.	不得不	Budebu	Have to
13.	未知数	Weizhishu	Unknown
14.	民主	Minzhu	Democracy
15.	大同	Datong	Great harmony
16.	事实	Shishi	Fact
17.	评估	Pinggu	Evaluate
18.	下权		
19.	力所能及	Lisuonengji	In one's power
20.	管中窥豹	Guanzhong kuibao	Have a limited view
21.	恰好	Qiahao	Fit like a glove
22.	眼下	Yanxiayou	At this stage
23.	窥视	Kuishi	Look into
24.	豹	Bao	Panther
25.	一斑	Yiban	Speckle
26.	夸张	Kua zhang	Exaggeration
27.	光鲜	Guangxian	Bright
28.	“大街”	Dajie	Avenue
29.	拉屎 撒尿	Lashi saniao	Shit, urinate
30.	男女老少	Nannv laoshao	Male female old and young
31.	或许	Huoxu	Perhaps
32.	做算	Zuosuan	Make calculations
33.	标准	Biaozhun	Standard
34.	化工厂	Hua gongchang	Laboratory, chemical plant

第二十八课 教育

印度的教育已经有数千年的历史，该国拥有一批世界知名的大学（如 印度理工学院），还要面对初等教育的挑战，为识字率达到100%而努力。全面实行初等义务教育，由于不容易将穷人子女留在学校，以及保持农村地区的教育质量，实现将有很大难度，（喀拉拉邦是目前唯一完成目标的邦）自从第一个五年计划，印度政府在教育方面的开支大大增加。印度政府大幅补贴高等教育。中央政府对基础教育经费的97%用于发放教师工资。现代印度教育经常被批评为基于机械学习（rote learning），重点强调考试的通过率，很少有学校重视学生人格与创造性的发展。此外，印度也存在十分严重的学历造假和买卖文凭的情况。

Jiàoyù

Yìndù de jiàoyù yǐjīng yǒushù qiānnián de lìshǐ, gāi guó yǒngyǒu yī pī shìjiè zhīmíng de dàxué (rú yìn duó lǐgōng xuéyuàn,), hái yào miàn duì chūděng jiàoyù de tiǎozhàn, wèi shìzì lǚ dá dào 100%ér nǚlì. Quánmiàn shíxíng chūděng yìwù jiàoyù, yóuyóu bù róngyì jiāng qióng rén zǐnǚ liú zài xuéxiào, yǐjī bǎochí nóngcūn dìqū de jiàoyù zhìliàng, shíxiàn jiāng yǒu hěn dà nán dù, (kā lā lā bāng shì mùqián wéiyī wánchéng mùbiāo dì bāng)

zìcóng dì yī gè wǔ nián jìhuà, yìndù zhèngfǔ zài jiàoyù fāngmiàn de kāizhī dà dà zēngjiā. Yìndù zhèngfǔ dàfú bǔtiē gāoděng jiàoyù. Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ duì jīchǔ jiàoyù jīngfèi de 97% yòng yú fāfàng jiàoshī gōngzī. Xiàndài yìndù jiàoyù jīngcháng bèi pīpíng wéi jīyú jīxiè xuéxí (rote learning), zhòngdiǎn qiángdiào kǎoshì de tōngguò lǜ, hěn shǎo yǒu xuéxiào zhòngshì xuéshēng réngé yǔ chuàngzàoxíng de fā zhǎn. Cǐwài, yìndù yě cúnzài shífēn yánzhòng de xuéli zàojiǎ hé mǎimài wénpíng de qíngkuàng.

Education

Education in India has a history of thousands of years. The country has a number of world-renowned universities (such as the Indian Institute of Technology), but also faces the challenge of primary education and strives to achieve a 100% literacy rate. The full implementation of compulsory primary education will be very difficult to achieve due to the difficulty of keeping poor children in school and maintaining the quality of education in rural areas (Kerala is the only state that has achieved the goal so far).

Since the first five-year plan, the Indian government has greatly increased its spending on education. The Indian government has significantly subsidized higher education. 97% of the central government's funding for basic education is used to pay teachers' salaries. Modern Indian education is often criticized as being based on rote learning, with an emphasis on test pass rates, and few schools pay attention to the development of students' personality and creativity. In addition, India also has a very serious situation of academic fraud and diploma trading.

1.	教育	Jiaoyu	Education
2.	高等教育	Gaodeng jiaoyu	Higher education
3.	学士课程	Xueshi kecheng	Bachelors course
4.	硕士	Suoshi	Master
5.	博士	Boshi	Doctor
6.	职业技术教育	Zhiye jishu jiaoyu	Professional and technical education
7.	成人教育	Chengren jiaoyu	Adult education
8.	非正规教育。	Feizhenggui jiaoyu	Non formal education
9.	综合性大学	zonghexing daxue	Integrated universities
10.	人口识字率	Renkou shizilu	Population literacy rate
11.	成人文盲	Chengren wenmang	Adult illiteracy
12.	行政区	Xingzhengqu	Administrative zone
13.	推广扫盲计划	Tuikuang saomang jihua	Popularize illiteracy eradication plan
14.	力争	Lizheng	Shoot at
15.	识字率	Shizilu	Literacy rate
16.	儿童入学率	Er tong ruxuelu	Child's age of starting study
17.	辍学率	Chuoxuelu	Rate of discontinuing study

第二十九课

印报新闻出版

报刊出版与发行

截至2022年3月31日，印度共有注册出版物146,045种，其中报纸20,821种，期刊125,767种。在2023财年，印地文报纸的发行量超过1.99亿份，占总发行量的近50%；英语和马拉地文报纸分别占9%以上。主要报纸的发行量如下：

《印度时报》（英文）：约187万份

《马拉雅拉娱乐报》（马拉雅拉姆文）：约192万份

《今日印度》（印地文）：约127万份

主要印地文报纸包括《旁遮普之狮报》、《今天日报》、《印度斯坦报》等；主要英文报纸有《印度斯坦时报》、《政治家报》、《印度教徒报》、《印度快报》等。

新闻机构与通讯社

新闻发布署（Press Information Bureau, PIB）：作为政府的中央通讯社，继续向全国各地的新闻单位提供官方信息。

印度报业托拉斯（Press Trust of India, PTI）：印度最大的通讯社，拥有超过400名记者和500名特约通讯员，覆盖全国几乎所有地区。

印度联合新闻社（United News of India, UNI）：印度第二大通讯社，继续为国内外媒体提供新闻服务。

印度斯坦新闻社（Hindusthan Samachar）：私营通讯社，主要提供印地文、马拉地文、古吉拉特文和尼泊尔文的新闻内容。

广播与电视

全印广播电台（All India Radio, AIR）：拥有420个广播站，覆盖印度约92%的地理面积和99.19%的人口，使用23种语言和179种方言进行广播。

全印电视台（Doordarshan, DD）：运营35个卫星频道，包括7个全国性频道和28个地区频道，覆盖全国大部分地区。

总体而言，尽管数字媒体的兴起对传统媒体构成挑战，印度的报刊、广播和电视仍在信息传播中发挥着重要作用。

Bàokān chūbǎn yǔ fāxíng

2022 nián 3 yuè 31 rì, yìndù gòngyǒu zhùcè túshū 146,045 zhǒng, qízhōng bàozhǐ 20,821 zhǒng, qīkān 125,767 zhǒng. Zài 2023 cái nián, yìn dì wén bàozhǐ de fā xíng liàng chāoguò 1.99 Yì fēn, zhàn zǒng fāxíng liàng de jìn 50%; yīngyǔ hé mǎ lǎ dì wén bàozhǐ fēnbié zhàn 9% yǐshàng. Zhǔyào bàozhǐ de fā xíng liàng rúxià:

“Yìndù shíbào”(zhōngwén): Yuē 187 wàn fēn

“mǎ lǎ yǎ lǎ yúlè bào”(mǎ lǎ yǎ lǎ mǔ wén): Yuē 192 wàn fēn

“jīnrì yìndù”(yìn dì wén): Yuē 127 wàn fēn

zhǔyào yìn dì wén bàozhǐ bāokuò “pángzhēpǔ zhī shī bào”, “jīntiān rìbào”, “yìndù sītǎn bào” děng; zhǔyào yīngwén bàozhǐ yǒu “yìndù sītǎn shíbào”, “zhèngzhì jiā bào”, “yìndù sēng bào”, “yìndù kuàibào” děng.

Xīnwén jīgòu yǔ tōngxùnshè

xīnwén fābù shǔ (xīnwén xīnxī jú, PIB): Zuòwéi zhèngfǔ de zhōngyāng tōngxùnshè, jìxù xiàng quánguó gèdì de xīnwén dānwèi tígōng guānfāng xīnxī.

Yìndù tuōlāsī bào yè (Press Trust of India, PTI): Yìndù zuìdà de tōngxùnshè, yǒngyǒu chāoguò 400 míng jìzhě hé 500 míng tèyuē tōngxùnyuán, fùgài quánguó jīhū suǒyǒu dìqū.

Liánhé xīnwén yìndù shè (United News of India, UNI): Yìndù dì èr dà tōngxùnshè, jìxù wèi dì yī méitǐ tígōng xīnwén fúwù.

Sītǎn xīnwén yìndù shè (Hindusthan Samachar): Ruìdiǎn tōngxùnshè, zhǔyào tígōng yìn dì wén, mǎ lǎ dì wén, gǔ jí lǎ tè wén hé níbó'ěr wén de xīnwén nèiróng.

Guǎngbò yǔ diànshì

quán yìn guǎngbò diàntái (All India Radio, AIR): Yǒngyǒu 420 gè guǎngbò zhàn, fùgài yìndù yuē 92% dì dìlǐ hé fùgài 99.19% de rénǒu, shǐyòng 23 zhǒng hé 179 zhǒng fāngyán yǔyán jìnxíng guǎngbò.

Quán yìn diànshìtái (Doordarshan, DD): Yùnyíng 35 gè wèixīng píndào, bāokuò 7 gè quánguó xìng píndào hé 28 gè dìqū píndào, fùgài quánguó dà bùfèn dìqū.

Zǒngtǐ lái kàn, jīngguǎn shùzì méitǐ de xīngqǐ duì chuántǒng méitǐ gòuchéng tiǎozhàn, yìndù de bàokān, guǎngbò hé diànshì děng xīnxī chuánbò zhōng fā huī zhuó zhōngyào zuòyòng.

Newspaper Publishing and Distribution

As of March 31, 2022, there are 146,045 registered publications in India, including 20,821 newspapers and 125,767 periodicals. In fiscal year 2023, the circulation of Hindi newspapers exceeded 199 million copies, accounting for nearly 50% of the total circulation; English and Marathi newspapers accounted for more than 9% each. The circulation of major newspapers is as follows:

The Times of India (English): about 1.87 million copies

Malayalam Entertainment (Malayalam): about 1.92 million copies

Dainik Jagran (Hindi): about 1.27 million copies

Major Hindi newspapers include Punjab Kesari, Aaj आज, Hindustan, etc.; major English newspapers include Hindustan Times, The Statesman, The Hindu, The Indian Express, etc.

News Agencies and Media Outlets

Press Information Bureau (PIB): As the central news agency of the government, it continues to provide official information to news units across the country.

Press Trust of India (PTI): India's largest news agency, with more than 400 journalists and 500 special correspondents, covering almost all parts of the country.

United News of India (UNI): India's second-largest news agency, continuing to provide news services to domestic and foreign media.

Hindusthan Samachar: Private news agency, mainly providing news content in Hindi, Marathi, Gujarati and Nepali.

Radio and Television

All India Radio (AIR): It has 420 radio stations, covering about 92% of India's geographical area and 99.19% of the population, broadcasting in 23 languages and 179 dialects.

Doordarshan (DD): Operates 35 satellite channels, including 7 national channels and 28 regional channels, covering most parts of the country.

Overall, despite the challenges posed by the rise of digital media to traditional media, newspapers, radio and television in India still play an important role in the dissemination of information.

1.	新闻 出版	Xinwen chuban	News Publish
2.	报刊	Baokan	News paper and periodicals
3.	私人	Siren	Private
4.	财团所有	Caituan suoyou	Financial group ownership
5.	截至	Jiezhi	Upto
6.	文字的报刊	Wenzide	Literal
7.	发行量	Faxingliang	Circulation
8.	印地文	Yindiwen	Hindi
9.	印度时报	Yindushibao	Hindustan times
10.	马拉雅拉娱乐报	Malayala yulebao	Malayalam entertainment
11.	古吉拉特新闻	Gujilate xinwen	Gujrat news
12.	旁遮普之狮报	Pángzhēpǔ zhī shī bào	Punjab Kesai
13.	今天日报	Jintian ribao	Aaj
14.	印度斯坦报	Yindusitan bao	Hindustan
15.	报纸	Baozhi	Newspaper
16.	《政治家报》	Zhengzhi jiabao	Statesman
17.	《印度教徒报》	Yindu jiaotu bao	The Hindu
18.	《印度快报》	Yindu kuaibao	Indian express
19.	通讯社	Tongxunshe	News agency
20.	新闻	xinwen	Xinwen news
21.	发布署	Fabu shu	Issue office
22.	相当于	Xiangdangyu	Equivalent to
23.	电传网	Dianchuanwang	Teliprinter network
24.	覆盖	fugai	Coverage
25.	供稿	Gonggao	Supply manuscript
26.	总分社	Zongfenshe	General office
27.	分社。	Fenshe	Branch office
28.	印度报业托拉斯	Yindu baoye tuolasi	Press trust of India
29.	半官方性质	Banguanfang xingzhi	Semi official nature
30.	兼并	Jianbing	Amalgamate
31.	印联合通讯社	Yin lianhe tongxunshe	Indian associate press
32.	路透社	Lutoushe	Reuter

33.	印度支社	Yindu zhishe	Branch office in India
34.	元旦开业	Yuandan kaiye	New year's day set up
35.	现设	Xianshe	Now having
36.	员工	Yuangong	Employee,staff
37.	海外记者	Haiwai jizhe	Overseas reporter
38.	超过	Chaoguo	Exceed
39.	系报业	Xi baoye	Series of news papers
40.	合股企业	Hefu qiye	Joint enterprise
41.	登记成立	Dengji chengli	Registered and set up
42.	海湾国家	Haiwan guojia	Gulf countries
43.	新加坡	Xinjiabo	Singapore
44.	华盛顿	Hua shengdun	Washington
45.	派驻	Paizhu	Reside
46.	私营	Saying	Privately owned
47.	编发	Bianfa	Edit and release
48.	马拉地文	Maladi wen	Marathi
49.	古吉拉特文	Gujilate wen	Gujrati
50.	尼泊尔文	Niboer wen	Nepali
51.	印度广播电台	Guangbo diantai	All India radio
52.	隶属	Lishu	Be subordinate to
53.	广播网	Guangbo wang	Network
54.	方言	Fangyan	Dialect
55.	播音	Boyin	Broadcast, transmit
56.	试播	Shibo	Trial broadcast
57.	脱离	Tuoli	Break away
58.	卫星频道	Weixing pindao	Satellite channel
59.	陆地面积	Ludi mianji	Land area

第三十课 平凡体育

瞄准金牌：印度体育的奋进与挑战

在当今全球化的体育竞技舞台上，每个国家都怀揣着对金牌的渴望和追求。印度，这个拥有悠久历史和丰富文化的国度，也在体育领域不断努力，朝着金牌的目标迈进。

从文章中我们可以看到印度体育的一些现状和发展趋势。印度在某些体育项目上已经展现出了一定的实力和潜力。例如，在板球运动方面，印度拥有广泛的群众基础和高水平的运动员。板球不仅仅是一项运动，更是印度文化的一部分，它凝聚了无数印度人的热情和关注。这种深厚的群众基础为印度在板球项目上取得优异成绩提供了坚实的保障。

然而，要想在国际体育赛事中全面开花，仅仅依靠板球是远远不够的。印度在其他体育项目上也在积极探索和发展。近年来，印度在田径、射击、摔跤等项目上也培养出了一些优秀的运动员。这些运动员在国际赛场上为印度赢得了荣誉，也让印度看到了在更多项目上取得突破的希望。

印度体育的发展离不开政府的支持和投入。政府在体育基础设施建设、运动员培养等方面都发挥着重要的作用。例如，政府加大了对体育场馆的建设力度，为运动员提供了更好的训练条件。同时，政府还设立了各种体育奖项和激励机制，鼓励更多的人参与到体育事业中来。

但是，印度体育在发展过程中也面临着一些挑战和问题。首先，体育基础设施的分布不均衡。在一些大城市，体育设施相对完善，而在一些偏远地区，体育设施则非常匮乏。这导致了有很多有体育天赋的孩子无法得到良好的训练条件。其次，运动员的培养体系还不够完善。虽然印度在一些项目上培养出了优秀的运动员，但是整体的培养

体系还存在很多漏洞和不足。例如，在运动员的选材、训练方法、营养保障等方面都需要进一步改进和提高。

此外，社会对体育的认知和重视程度也有待提高。在印度，很多家长仍然认为体育只是一种娱乐活动，而不是一种职业选择。他们更希望自己的孩子能够选择医生、工程师等传统的职业。这种观念的存在导致了有很多有体育天赋的孩子无法得到家庭的支持和鼓励。

为了实现瞄准金牌的目标，印度需要采取一系列的措施来解决这些问题。首先，要加大对体育基础设施的投入，特别是要加强对偏远地区体育设施的建设。只有让更多的孩子能够接触到体育设施，才能发现更多的体育人才。其次，要完善运动员的培养体系。要建立科学的选材标准，采用先进的训练方法，提供全面的营养保障。同时，要加强对运动员的心理辅导，提高他们的心理素质和抗压能力。

此外，要提高社会对体育的认知和重视程度。要通过各种宣传渠道，让更多的人了解体育的重要性和价值。要让家长们认识到体育也是一种可以选择的职业，并且能够为孩子带来光明的未来。

印度体育在朝着金牌的目标迈进的过程中，既有机遇也有挑战。印度拥有庞大的人口基数和丰富的文化资源，这为体育的发展提供了良好的基础。同时，印度政府也在不断加大对体育的支持和投入，这为体育的发展提供了有力的保障。但是，印度体育在发展过程中也面临着基础设施不均衡、培养体系不完善、社会认知度不高等问题。只有解决这些问题，印度才能在国际体育赛事中取得更好的成绩，实现瞄准金牌的目标。

在未来的发展中，印度体育可以借鉴其他国家的成功经验。例如，中国在体育领域取得了巨大的成就。中国通过完善的体育基础设施建设、科学的运动员培养体系和全社会对体育的高度重视，培养出了一大批优秀的运动员，在奥运会等国际体育赛事中取得了优异的成绩。印度可以学习中国的经验，结合自身的实际情况，制定出适合自己的体育发展战略。

同时，印度体育也可以加强与其他国家的体育交流与合作。通过与其他国家的运动员进行交流和比赛，可以学习到其他国家的先进技术和经验，提高自己的竞技水平。例如，印度可以与美国、俄罗斯、日本等体育强国开展合作，共同举办体育赛事，互派运动员进行交流和學習。

印度体育要想实现瞄准金牌的目标，需要全社会的共同努力。政府、社会、学校、家庭都要承担起自己的责任，为体育的发展提供支持和保障。只有这样，印度才能在国际体育赛事中展现出自己的实力和风采，为国家赢得更多的荣誉。

总之，印度体育的发展是一个长期而艰巨的任务。在这个过程中，印度需要不断地探索和创新，解决面临的各种问题，抓住机遇，迎接挑战。相信在全社会的共同努力下，印度一定能够实现瞄准金牌的目标，在国际体育舞台上绽放出更加耀眼的光芒。

Source: <https://qp6kkktqa2.feishu.cn/wiki/Qinmw6thXi2Vq0kCAEOc94mdnqf>

Miáozhǔn jīnpái: Yìndù tǐyù de fènjìn yǔ tiǎozhàn

zài dāngjīn quánqiú huà de tǐyù jìngjì wútái shàng, měi gè guójiā dōu huáichuāizhe duì jīnpái de kěwàng hé zhuīqiú. Yìndù, zhège yǒngyǒu yōujiù lìshǐ hé fēngfù wénhuà de guódù, yě zài tǐyù lǐngyù bùduàn nǔlì, cháoze jīnpái de mùbiāo màijìn.

Cóng wénzhāng zhōng wǒmen kěyǐ kàn dào yìndù tǐyù de yīxiē xiànzhuàng hé fāzhǎn qūshì. Yìndù zài mǒu xiē tǐyù xiàngmù shàng yǐjīng zhǎnxiàn chūle yīdìng de shíli hé qiánli. Lìrú, zài bǎn qiú yùndòng fāngmiàn, yìndù yǒngyǒu guāngfàn de qúnzhòng jīchǔ hé gāo shuǐpíng de yùndòngyuán. Bǎn qiú bùjǐnjīn shì yī xiàng yùndòng, gèng shì yìndù wénhuà de yībùfèn, tā níng jù liǎo wúshù yìn duó rén de rèqíng hé guānzhù. Zhè zhǒng shēnhòu de qúnzhòng jīchǔ wèi yìndù zài bǎn qiú xiàngmù shàng qǔdé yōuyì chéngjì tígōnglè jiǎnshí de bǎozhàng.

Rán'ér, yào xiǎng zài guójì tǐyù sàishì zhōng quánmiàn kāihuā, jǐn jīn yīkào bǎn qiú shì yuǎn yuǎn bùgòu de. Yìndù zài qítā tǐyù xiàngmù shàng yě zài jījī tàn suǒ hé fāzhǎn. Jīnnián lái, yìndù zài tiánjìng, shèjǐ, shuāijīāo děng xiàngmù shàng yě péiyǎng chūle yīxiē yōuxiù de yùndòngyuán. Zhèxiē yùndòngyuán zài guójì sàichǎng shàng wèi yìndù yíngdéle róngyù, yě ràng yìndù kàn dào le zài gèng duō xiàngmù shàng qǔdé túpò dì xīwàng.

Yìndù tǐyù de fā zhǎn lì bù kāi zhèngfǔ de zhīchí hé tóurù. Zhèngfǔ zài tǐyù jīchǔ shèshī jiànshè, yùndòngyuán péiyǎng děng fāngmiàn dōu fā huī zhuó zhòngyào de zuòyòng. Lìrú, zhèngfǔ jiā dàle duì tǐyù chǎngguān de jiànshè lìdù, wèi yùndòngyuán tígōnglè gèng hǎo de xùnliàn tiáojiàn. Tóngshí, zhèngfǔ hái shèlìle gè zhǒng tǐyù jiāngxiàng hé jīlì jīzhì, gǔlì gèng duō de rén shēn yǔ dào tǐyù shìyè zhōng lái.

Dànshì, yìndù tǐyù zài fāzhǎn guòchéng zhōng yě miànlínzhe yīxiē tiǎozhàn hé wéntí. Shǒuxiān, tǐyù jīchǔ shèshī de fēnbù bù jūnhéng. Zài yīxiē dà chéngshì, tǐyù shèshī xiāngduì wánshàn, ér zài yīxiē piānyuǎn dìqū, tǐyù shèshī zé fēicháng kuīfā.

Zhè dàozhīle hěnduō yǒu tiyù tiānfù de hái'zǐ wúfǎ dédào liánghǎo de xùnliàn tiáojiàn. Qíci, yùndòngyuán de péiyǎng tǐxì hái bùgòu wánshàn. Suǐrán yīndù zài yīxiē xiàngmù shàng péiyǎng chūle yōuxiù de yùndòngyuán, dànshì zhèngtǐ de péiyǎng tǐxì hái cúnzài hěnduō lòudòng hé bùzú. Lǐrú, zài yùndòngyuán de xuǎncái, xùnliàn fāngfǎ, yíngyǎng bǎozhàng děng fāngmiàn dōu xūyào jīnyībù gǎijìn hé tígāo.

Cíwài, shèhuì duì tiyù de rèn zhī hé zhòngshì chéngdù yěyǒudài tígāo. Zài yīndù, hěnduō jiāzhǎng réngrán rènwéi tiyù zhǐshì yī zhǒng yúlè huódòng, ér bùshì yī zhǒng zhíyè xuǎnzé. Tāmen gèng xīwàng zìjǐ de hái'zǐ nénggòu xuǎnzé yīshēng, gōngchéngshī děng chuántǒng de zhíyè. Zhè zhǒng guānniàn de cúnzài dàozhīle hěnduō yǒu tiyù tiānfù de hái'zǐ wúfǎ dédào jiāting de zhīchí hé gǔlì.

Wèile shíxiàn miáozhǔn jīnpái de mùbiāo, yīndù xūyào cǎiqǔ yī xiliè de cuòshī lái jiějué zhèxiē wèntí. Shǒuxiān, yào jiā dà duì tiyù jīchǔ shèshī de tóurù, tèbié shì yào jiāqiáng duì piānyuǎn dìqū tiyù shèshī de jiànshè. Zhǐyǒu ràng gèng duō de hái'zǐ nénggòu jiēchù dào tiyù shèshī, cáinéng fāxiàn gèng duō de tiyù réncái. Qíci, yào wánshàn yùndòngyuán de péiyǎng tǐxì. Yào jiànlì kēxué de xuǎncái biāozhǔn, cǎiyòng xiānjìn de xùnliàn fāngfǎ, tígōng quánmiàn de yíngyǎng bǎozhàng. Tóngshí, yào jiāqiáng duì yùndòngyuán de xīnlǐ fǔdǎo, tígāo tāmen de xīnlǐ sùzhì hé kàng yā nénglì.

Cíwài, yào tígāo shèhuì duì tiyù de rèn zhī hé zhòngshì chéngdù. Yào tōngguò gè zhǒng xuānchuán qúdào, ràng gèng duō de rén liǎojiě tiyù de zhòngyào xìng hé jiàzhí. Yào ràng jiāzhǎngmen rènshí dào tiyù yěshì yī zhǒng kěyǐ xuǎnzé de zhíyè, bìngqǐ nénggòu wèi hái'zǐ dài lái guāngmíng de wèilái.

Yīndù tiyù zài cháozhe jīnpái de mùbiāo màijìn de guòchéng zhōng, jì yǒu jīyù yě yǒu tiǎozhàn. Yīndù yǒngyǒu pángdà de rénkǒu jīshù hé fēngfù de wénhuà zīyuán, zhè wèi tiyù de fā zhǎn tígōngle liánghǎo de jīchǔ. Tóngshí, yīndù zhèngfǔ yě zài bùduàn jiā dà duì tiyù de zhīchí hé tóurù, zhè wèi tiyù de fā zhǎn tígōngle yǒulì de bǎozhàng. Dànshì, yīndù tiyù zài fāzhǎn guòchéng zhōng yě miànlínzhe jīchǔ shèshī bù jūnhéng, péiyǎng tǐxì bù wánshàn, shèhuì rèn zhī dù bù gāoděng wèntí. Zhǐyǒu jiějué zhèxiē wèntí, yīndù cáinéng zài guójì tiyù sàishì zhōng qǔdé gèng hǎo de chéngjì, shíxiàn miáozhǔn jīnpái de mùbiāo.

Zài wèilái de fā zhǎn zhōng, yīndù tiyù kěyǐ jièjiàn qítā guójiā de chénggōng jīngyàn. Lǐrú, zhōngguó zài tiyù lǐngyù qǔdéle jùdà de chéngjì. Zhōngguó tōngguò wánshàn de tiyù jīchǔ shèshī jiànshè, kēxué de yùndòngyuán péiyǎng tǐxì hé quán shèhuì duì tiyù de gāodù zhòngshì, péiyǎng chūle yī dàpī yōuxiù de yùndòngyuán, zài àoyùnhuì děng guójì tiyù sàishì zhōng qǔdéle yōuyì de chéngjì. Yīndù kěyǐ xuéxí zhōngguó de jīngyàn, jiéhé zìshēn de shíjì qíngkuàng, zhìdìng chū shìhé zìjǐ de tiyù fāzhǎn zhànlüè.

Tóngshí, yīndù tiyù yě kěyǐ jiāqiáng yǔ qítā guójiā de tiyù jiāoliú yǔ hézuò. Tōngguò yǔ qítā guójiā de yùndòngyuán jìnxíng jiāoliú hé bǐsài, kěyǐ xuéxí dào qítā guójiā de xiānjìn jīshù hé jīngyàn, tígāo zìjǐ de jìngjì shuǐpíng. Lǐrú, yīndù kěyǐ yǔ měiguó, èluósī, riběn děng tiyù qiángguó kāizhǎn hézuò, gòngtóng jǔbàn tiyù sàishì, hù pài yùndòngyuán jìnxíng jiāoliú hé xuéxí.

Yīndù tiyù yào xiǎng shíxiàn miáozhǔn jīnpái de mùbiāo, xūyào quán shèhuì de gòngtóng nǔlì. Zhèngfǔ, shèhuì, xuéxiào, jiāting dōu yào chéngdān qǐ zìjǐ de zérèn, wèi tiyù de fā zhǎn tígōng zhīchí hé bǎozhàng. Zhǐyǒu zhèyàng, yīndù cáinéng zài guójì tiyù sàishì zhōng zhǎnxiàn chū zìjǐ de shílì hé fēngcǎi, wèi guójiā yíngdé gèng duō de róngyù.

Zǒngzhī, yīndù tiyù de fā zhǎn shì yīgè chángqí ér jiānjù de rènwù. Zài zhège guòchéng zhōng, yīndù xūyào bùduàn de tànsuǒ hé chuàngxīn, jiějué miànlín de gè zhǒng wèntí, zhuā zhù jīyù, yíngjiē tiǎozhàn. Xiāngxìn zài quán shèhuì de gòngtóng nǔlì xià, yīndù yīdìng nénggòu shíxiàn miáozhǔn jīnpái de mùbiāo, zài guójì tiyù wǔtái shàng zhànfāng chū gèngjiā yàoyǎn de guāngmáng.

Common sports

Aiming at the gold medal: the endeavor and challenge of Indian sports

In today's global sports arena, every country has a desire and pursuit for the gold medal. India, a country with a long history and rich culture, is also working hard in the field of sports and moving towards the goal of the gold medal.

From the article, we can see some current situations and development trends of Indian sports. India has shown certain strength and potential in some sports. For example, in cricket, India has a broad mass base and high-level athletes. Cricket is not just a sport, but also a part of Indian culture, which gathers the enthusiasm and attention of countless Indians. This deep mass base provides a solid guarantee for India to achieve excellent results in cricket.

However, in order to fully blossom in international sports events, it is far from enough to rely solely on cricket. India is also actively exploring and developing in other sports. In recent years, India has also cultivated some outstanding athletes in track and field, shooting, wrestling and other sports. These athletes have won honors for India in international competitions, and also let India see the hope of breakthroughs in more projects.

The development of Indian sports is inseparable from the support and investment of the government. The government plays an important role in the construction of sports infrastructure and the training of athletes. For example, the government has increased its efforts in the construction of sports venues to provide better training conditions for athletes. At the same time, the government has also established various sports awards and incentive mechanisms to encourage more people to participate in sports.

However, Indian sports also face some challenges and problems in the process of development. First, the distribution of

sports infrastructure is uneven. In some large cities, sports facilities are relatively complete, while in some remote areas, sports facilities are very scarce. This has led to many children with sports talents not being able to get good training conditions. Secondly, the athlete training system is not perfect enough. Although India has trained excellent athletes in some projects, there are still many loopholes and deficiencies in the overall training system. For example, the selection of athletes, training methods, and nutritional guarantees need to be further improved and improved.

In addition, the society's awareness and attention to sports also need to be improved. In India, many parents still think that sports are just a recreational activity, not a career choice. They prefer their children to choose traditional professions such as doctors and engineers. The existence of this concept has led to many children with sports talents not being able to get support and encouragement from their families.

In order to achieve the goal of aiming for the gold medal, India needs to take a series of measures to solve these problems. First, it is necessary to increase investment in sports infrastructure, especially to strengthen the construction of sports facilities in remote areas. Only by allowing more children to have access to sports facilities can more sports talents be discovered. Secondly, it is necessary to improve the training system for athletes. It is necessary to establish scientific selection standards, adopt advanced training methods, and provide comprehensive nutritional guarantees. At the same time, it is necessary to strengthen psychological counseling for athletes and improve their psychological quality and ability to withstand pressure.

In addition, it is necessary to improve society's awareness and attention to sports. Through various publicity channels, more people should understand the importance and value of sports. Parents should be made aware that sports is also a career that can be chosen and can bring a bright future to their children.

In the process of moving towards the goal of the gold medal, Indian sports have both opportunities and challenges. India has a large population base and rich cultural resources, which provide a good foundation for the development of sports. At the same time, the Indian government is also constantly increasing its support and investment in sports, which provides a strong guarantee for the development of sports. However, Indian sports also face problems such as uneven infrastructure, an imperfect training system, and low social awareness in the process of development. Only by solving these problems can India achieve better results in international sports events and realize the goal of aiming for the gold medal.

In future development, Indian sports can learn from the successful experiences of other countries. For example, China has made great achievements in the field of sports. Through the construction of perfect sports infrastructure, a scientific athlete training system and the whole society's high attention to sports, China has cultivated a large number of outstanding athletes and achieved excellent results in international sports events such as the Olympics. India can learn from China's experience and formulate a sports development strategy suitable for itself in combination with its actual situation.

At the same time, Indian sports can also strengthen sports exchanges and cooperation with other countries. By exchanging and competing with athletes from other countries, we can learn advanced technology and experience from other countries and improve our competitive level. For example, India can cooperate with sports powers such as the United States, Russia, and Japan, jointly host sports events, and send athletes to exchange and learn.

If Indian sports want to achieve the goal of aiming for the gold medal, it requires the joint efforts of the whole society. The government, society, schools, and families must assume their responsibilities and provide support and guarantees for the development of sports. Only in this way can India show its strength and style in international sports events and win more honors for the country.

In short, the development of Indian sports is a long and arduous task. In this process, India needs to continue to explore and innovate, solve various problems it faces, seize opportunities and meet challenges. I believe that with the joint efforts of the whole society, India will be able to achieve its goal of aiming for the gold medal and shine more brightly on the international sports stage.

1.	平凡体育	Pinpan	Common sports
2.	宾德拉 北京奥运会	Bindela Beijing ouyunhui	Bindra Beijing Olympics
3.	男子	Manzi	Men's
4.	10 米气步枪(60 发)	Miqibuqiang (60fa)	10m gas rifle (60 rounds)
5.	金牌	Jinpai	Gold medal
6.	个人金牌	Geren jinpai	Individual gold medal
7.	分析	Fenxi	Analysis
8.	人士	Renshi	Personnel
9.	夺冠	Duoguan	Seize championship
10.	真切	Zhenqie	Distinct, clear
11.	品尝	Pinching	Taste
12.	滋味	Ziwei	Taste, flavour
13.	体会	Tihui	Experience, taste
14.	快乐所在	Kuaile suozai	Happiness whereabouts

15.	普遍性	Pubianxing	Universality
16.	心理	Xinli	Psychology
17.	参与	Canyu	Participate
18.	体育事业	Tiyu shiye	Sports field
19.	迈上一个新台阶	Maishang yi ge xin taijie	Stride on a new step
20.	赶超	Ganchao	Overtake
21.	金砖	Jinzhuan	Golden brick

第三十一课

计划生育

截至2025年，印度在计划生育和人口控制方面取得了一定进展，但仍面临诸多挑战。国家人口政策与实施进展
印度于2000年制定了《国家人口政策》，目标是在2010年前将总生育率（TFR）降至更替水平（2.1），并在
2045年前实现人口稳定。根据国家家庭健康调查（NFHS-5，2019-21），印度已实现总生育率降至2.0的目标。
然而，人口增长仍在持续，2023年印度人口达到14.29亿，超过中国，成为世界第一人口大国。

生育率与避孕措施使用情况

2022年，印度的总生育率为2.01，较前一年略有下降。尽管生育率有所下降，但避孕措施的使用仍存在差距。
2024年，现代避孕方法的使用率为43.0%，显示出一定的增长。然而，避孕方法的选择仍以女性绝育为主，占据
主导地位。

社会文化因素与挑战

尽管政府推行了多项计划生育政策，但社会文化因素仍对政策的实施产生影响。例如，男性在避孕责任方面的
参与度较低，男性绝育仅占总避孕方法的0.3%。此外，部分地区对避孕方法的认知和接受度仍有限，影响了计
划生育政策的效果。

未来展望

根据2024年世界人口展望，预计印度人口将在2060年达到17亿的峰值，随后开始下降。为应对人口老龄化和劳
动力结构变化，印度需要继续加强计划生育政策的实施，提升避孕措施的可及性和多样性，并加强公众教育，
改变传统观念，促进性别平等和生育责任的共担。

综上所述，印度在计划生育和人口控制方面取得了一定成果，但仍需持续努力，特别是在提高避孕措施的使用
率、改变社会文化观念以及应对未来人口结构变化方面。

Dì sānshíyī kè

Jì huà shēng yù

2025 Nián, yìndù zài jì huà shēng yù hé rén kǒu kòng zhì fāng miàn qǔ dé le yí dìng jìn zhǎn, dàn réng miàn lín tú fā tiǎo zhàn.
Guó jiā rén kǒu zhèng cè yǔ shí shī jìn zhǎn yìndù yú 2000 nián zhì dìng le “guó jiā rén kǒu zhèng cè”, mù biāo shì zài 2010 nián
qián jiāng zǒng shēng yù lǜ (TFR) jiàng zhì gēng tì shuǐ píng (2.1), Bìng zài 2045 nián qián shí xiàn rén kǒu wěn dìng. Gēn jù
guó jiā jiā tíng jiàn kāng diào chá (NFHS-5, 2019-21), yìndù yǐ shí xiàn zǒng shēng yù lǜ jiàng dī 2.0 De mù biāo rán'ér, rén kǒu
zēng zhǎng yī rán chí xù, 2023 nián yìn duó rén kǒu dá dào 14.29 Yì, chāo guò zhōng guó, chéng wéi shì jiè dì yī rén kǒu dà guó.
Shēng yù lǜ yǔ juǎn rào shè bèi shī yòng qíng kuàng
2022 nián, yìndù de zǒng shēng yù lǜ dá 2.01, Jiào qián yī nián jí jiāng xià jiàng. Jǐng guǎn shēng yù lǜ yǒu suǒ xià jiàng, dàn
jízhuāng xiāng fāng fǎ de shī yòng réng cún zài chā jù. 2024 Nián, xiàndài jízhuāng xiāng fāng fǎ de shī yòng lǜ dá 43.0%, Chū
yí dìng de zēng cháng cún zài. Rán'ér, jízhuāng xiāng fāng fǎ de xuǎn zé réng yǐ nǚ xìng jué yù zhǔ dǎo, zhǔ dǎo zhǔ dǎo dì wèi.
Shè huì wén huà yīn sù yǔ tiǎo zhàn
jǐng guǎn zhèng fǔ dī zhì le róng qì jì huà shēng yù zhèng cè, dàn shè huì wén huà yīn sù réng duì zhèng cè de shí shī chǎn shēng
yǐng xiǎng. Lǐ rú, nán xìng zài róng qì zé rèn fāng miàn de cān yù chéng dù jiào dī, nán xìng jué yù zhàn róng qì zǒng fāng fǎ de
0.3%. Cí wài, bù fèn dì qū duì róng qì fāng fǎ de rèn zhī hé jiē shòu dù réng yǒu xiàn, yǐng xiǎng le jì huà shēng yù zhèng cè de
xiào guǒ.
Wèi lái zhǎn wàng
gēn jù 2024 nián shì jiè rén kǒu zhǎn wàng, yù jì yìn duó rén kǒu jiàng zài 2060 nián dá dào 17 yì de gāo fēng, cóng'ér kāi shǐ

xiàjiàng. Zhēnduì rénkǒu lǎolíng huà hé láodònglǐ jiégòu biànhuà, yìndù xūyào jìxù jiāqiáng jìhuà shēngyù zhèngcè de shíshī, tīshēng bǎozhuāng cuòshī de kě jí xíng hé duōyàng xíng, bìng jiāqiáng gōngzhòng jiàoyù, gǎibiàn chuántǒng guānniàn, cùjìn xìngbié píngděng hé shēngyù zérèn de gòng dān.

Zòng shàng suǒ shù, yìndù zài jìhuà shēngyù hé rénkǒu kòngzhì fāngmiàn qǔdéle yīdìng chéngguǒ, dàn réng xū chíxù nǔlì, tèbié shì zài tígāo róngqì de shǐyòng lǚ, gǎibiàn shèhuì wénhuà guānniàn yǐjí yìngduì wèilái rénkǒu jiégòu biànhuà fāngmiàn.

Lesson 31

Family planning

As of 2025, India has made some progress in family planning and population control, but still faces many challenges. National Population Policy and Implementation Progress:

India formulated the National Population Policy in 2000, with the goal of reducing the total fertility rate (TFR) to replacement level (2.1) by 2010 and achieving population stability by 2045. According to the National Family Health Survey (NFHS-5, 2019–21), India has achieved the goal of reducing the total fertility rate to 2.0. However, population growth continues, and in 2023, India's population reached 1.429 billion, surpassing China to become the world's most populous country.

Fertility Rate and Contraceptive Use

In 2022, India's total fertility rate was 2.01, a slight decrease from the previous year. Despite the decline in fertility, there are still gaps in the use of contraceptives. In 2024, the use of modern contraceptive methods was 43.0%, showing some growth. However, the choice of contraceptive method is still dominated by female sterilization.

Sociocultural factors and challenges

Although the government has implemented a number of family planning policies, sociocultural factors still have an impact on the implementation of policies. For example, men's participation in contraceptive responsibilities is low, and male sterilization accounts for only 0.3% of total contraceptive methods. In addition, the awareness and acceptance of contraceptive methods in some regions are still limited, which affects the effectiveness of family planning policies.

Future Outlook

According to the World Population Prospects 2024, India's population is expected to peak at 1.7 billion in 2060 and then begin to decline. In order to cope with the aging population and changes in the labor force structure, India needs to continue to strengthen the implementation of family planning policies, improve the accessibility and diversity of contraceptive measures, and strengthen public education to change traditional concepts and promote gender equality and sharing of reproductive responsibilities.

In summary, India has achieved certain results in family planning and population control, but it still needs to continue to work hard, especially in increasing the use of contraceptive measures, changing social and cultural concepts, and coping with future changes in the population structure.

1.	计划生育	Jihua shengyu	Family planning
2.	人口增长率	Renkou zengzhang lu	Population growth rate
3.	居高不下	Jugao buxia	Remain high not decrease
4.	基数	Jishu	Base figure
5.	育龄人口	Yuling renkou	Population in child bearing age
6.	早婚早育	Zaohunzaoyu	Early marriage and early child birth
7.	新生儿死亡率	Xinsheng er siwanglu	New birth and death rate
8.	过高	Guogao	Quite higher
9.	夫妇	Funu	Female,women
10.	避孕服务	Biyun fuwu	Contraception services
11.	远远达不到	Yuanyuan hai bu dao	Far sort of
12.	实际需求	Shiji xuqiu	Actual demand
13.	诸多原因	Zhuduo yuanyin	Many reasons
14.	制订	Zhiding	Formulate
15.	纲领性	Ganglingxing	Guiding principle
16.	文件	Wenjian	Document
17.	挂帅	Guashuai	Assume leadership
18.	监督	Jiandu	Monitor

19.	家庭福利	Jiatingfuyu	Family welfare
20.	生育健康计划	Shengyu jiankang jihu	Bearing health plan
21.	首席部长	Shouxu buzhang	Chief minister
22.	类似机构	Leisi jigou	Similar organs
23.	推广计划生育	Tuikuang jihu shengyu	Popularizing family planning
24.	医疗	Yiliao	Medical treatment
25.	基础设施	Jichusheshi	Infrastructure
26.	培训计划生育	Fexun jihuashengyu	Training in family planning
27.	卫生专业人员	Weisheng zhuan renyuan	Health professional
28.	贫困	Pinkun	Poverty
29.	低收入阶层	Dishouru jieceng	Low income level
30.	提倡	Tichang	Advocate
31.	观念	Guannian	Concept
32.	“妇女	Funu	Woman
33.	小型家庭	Xiaoxing jiating	Small family
34.	奖励措施	Jiangli cuoshi	Encouragement measures
35.	尽管	Jinguan	Despite
36.	总体而言	Zongti eryan	Generally speaking
37.	大幅增长	Dafu zengchang	Grow to a great extent
38.	接近于失败。	Jiejin yu shibai	Close to failure
39.	防止	Fangzhi	Prevent
40.	雄心勃勃	Xiongxin	Great ambition thriving
41.	落空	Luokong	Go by the board
42.	非常现实	Feichang xianshi	Extremely realistic
43.	前景	Qianjiang	Prospects
44.	联合国人口基金 会	Lianhe renkou jijin hui guo	UN population fund
45.	受教育程度高	Shoujiaoyu Chengdu gao	High level of receiving education
46.	贫困家庭	Pinkun jiating	Empowerished families
47.	令人诧异	Lingren chayi	Surprising
48.	议员	Yiyuan	Parliament
49.	生养	Shengyang	Give birth and rear
50.	子女	Zinu	Children
51.	无序	Wuxu	Disorder
52.	缺乏人口控制	Quefa renkou kongzhi	Lack population control
53.	典型	Dianxing	Model
54.	避免多生孩子	Bimian duoshenghaizi	Avoid child birth
55.	哺乳期	Buruqi	Lactation period
56.	怀孕	Huaiyun	Pregnant
57.	到目前。。为止	Weizhi	Till now
58.	有效方法	Youxiao fangfa	Effective method
59.	绝育手术	Jueyu shoushu	Sterilizationon operation

第三十二课

风土人情

四大传统仪式走遍全世界，入境随俗是不变的真理。印度人有 4 大传统仪式，分别是出生、葬礼、婚姻和普迦仪式。除此之外，在印度旅行，你一定要知道印度的 10 项特殊习惯和 6 大禁忌，保你玩得开心、一路平安。

出生

在印度的传统上十分重男轻女，因为女儿结婚时，父母必须准备一笔丰富的嫁妆，如果没有嫁妆，女儿是嫁不出去的。印度人庆祝小孩出生与平安成长的方式，就是到寺庙进行“普迦仪式”、唱颂祈祷文，然后和亲朋好友举行餐宴。

印度小孩出生后，父母都会找人为他们占卜，小孩的名字多半取自英雄或神祇。小孩的生辰八字尤其受到重视，因为这可以决定小孩未来的婚姻对象。

葬礼

印度教徒死亡时，都会在河坛举行火葬仪式。印度教徒去世后，家人会以黄色或白色绢布包裹尸体，然后放在两根竹制担架上，以游行方式抬到河坛火葬地点。

传统上，将死者抬送到火葬场的任务，应该由家属担任，但是现在大部份的人都交给专人处理。在印度，专门处理丧葬事宜的人，都是被视为种姓地位最低的贱民。

一般送葬的仪式都非常简单，但是比较富有的人家，可能会请乐师在前面演奏，浩浩荡荡地游行。火葬前，死者的长子必须手持油灯绕行遗体 3 次，当火葬柴堆被点燃时，死者长子必须将头发剃光，只在后脑勺留一小撮，然后到河里沐浴净身。火葬结束后，死者骨灰会被扫到河里，代表灵魂已经脱离躯壳、得到解脱。

婚礼

印度人的婚礼是社会地位的代表，也是一生中重大的仪式。印度青年到了适婚年龄，都会由父母代替为寻找社会阶级、语言相同，以及星相可以配合的对象。

印度婚礼仪式相当繁琐，结婚之前，双方家长会透过充当媒人的祭司讨论嫁妆事宜，女方必须答应男女提出的嫁妆数量后，双方才选定黄道吉日、开始筹备婚礼。婚礼前一天，新娘必须根据传统化妆方式，开始抹油、沐浴、更衣、梳头、画眼线、抹唇砂、并且在脚上涂以红色、在额头点红色蒂卡、在下巴点黑痣，接着还要用植物染料在手脚上绘饰汉那图案，然后洒香水、配戴首饰和发饰，最后是把牙齿染黑、嚼槟榔、擦口红，才算大功告成。

婚礼当天，新郎官骑着一匹白马浩浩荡荡地来到新娘家。这时女方家里已经架起火坛，双方亲友在祭司念诵的吉祥真言中，绕行火坛祝祷。之后、新娘在女伴的簇拥下走到火坛前面，由祭司将新娘的纱丽和新郎的围巾系在一起，代表婚姻长长久久。

印度婚礼的晚宴是在新娘家里进行，一对新人坐在婚宴中接受亲友的祝福。婚礼当天晚上新郎是在新娘家过夜，翌日才将新娘迎娶回家。

普迦仪式 (Puja)

普迦是印度教中向神祇膜拜的仪式，普迦仪式必须由祭司担任。仪式中信徒会将神像装饰后抬出寺庙游行庆祝，并且奉献鲜花、椰子、蒂卡粉……等供品。最后再由祭司手持油灯，在神像前面进行“阿拉提 (arati)”。

“阿拉提”的过程中，信徒用手轻轻覆盖祭司手中的灯火，然后在自己的眼睛上碰触一下，代表接受神祇赐予的力量。

通常在普迦仪式结束后，信徒可以分到一些祭祀过的鲜花、蒂卡粉或水，称为“波拉沙达 (Prasada)”。所以在印度，只要看到印度人从寺庙膜拜出来，额头上几乎都涂有红色或白色的粉末。

Dì sānshí'èr kè

Fēngtǔ rénqíng

Sì dà chuántǒng yíshì zǒu biàn quán shìjiè, rùjìng suísú shì bù biàn de zhēnlǐ. Yīn duó rén yǒu 4 dà chuántǒng yíshì, fēnbéi shì chūshēng, zànglǐ, hūnyīn hé pǔ jiā yíshì. Chū cǐ zhī wài, zài yīndù lǚxíng, nǐ yīdìng yào zhīdào yīndù de 10 xiàng tèshū xíguān hé 6 dà jìnjì, bǎo nǐ wán dé kāixīn, yīlù píng'ān.

Chūshēng

Zài yīndù de chuántǒng shàng shí fèn zhòngnán qīng nǚ, yīnwèi nǚ'ér jiéhūn shí, fùmǔ bīxū zhǔnbèi yī bǐ fēngfù de jiàzhuāng, rúguǒ méiyǒu jiàzhuāng, nǚ'ér shì jià bù chūqù de. Yīn duó rén qīngzhù xiǎohái chūshēng yǔ píng'ān chéngzhǎng de fāngshì, jiùshì dào sìmiào jìn xīng “pǔ jiā yíshì”, chàng sòng qídǎo wén, ránhòu hé qīnpéng hǎoyǒu jùxíng cān yàn. Yīndù xiǎohái chūshēng hòu, fùmǔ dūhuì zhǎo rénwéi tāmen zhānbǔ, xiǎohái de míngzì duōbàn qǔ zì yīngxióng huò shénqí. Xiǎohái de shēngchén bāzǐ yóuqí shòudào zhòngshì, yīnwèi zhè kěyǐ juéding xiǎohái wèilái de hūnyīn duìxiàng.

Zànglǐ

yìndù jiàotú sǐwáng shí, dūhuì zài hé tán jǔxíng huǒzàng yíshì. Yìndù jiàotú qùshì hòu, jiār én huì yǐ huángsè huò báisè juàn bù bāoguǒ shītǐ, ránhòu fàng zài liǎng gēn zhú zhì dānjià s hǎng, yǐ yóuxíng fāngshì tái dào hé tán huǒzàng dìdiǎn. Chuántǒng shàng, jiàng sǐzhě tái sò ng dào huǒzàng chǎng de rènwù, yīnggāi yóu jiāshǔ dānrèn, dànshì xiànzài dà bù fēn de rén dōu jiāo gěi zhuānrén chǔlǐ. Zài yìndù, zhuānmén chǔlǐ sāngzàng shìyí de rén, dōu shì bèi s hì wéi zhōngxíng dìwèi zuìdī de jiànmín. Yībān sòngzàng de yíshì dōu fēicháng jiǎndān, dà nshì bǐjiào fùyǒu de rénjiā, kěnéng huì qǐng yuèshī zài qiánmiàn yǎnzòu, hào hàodàng dàng de yóuxíng. Huǒzàng qián, sǐzhě de cháng zi bīxū shǒuchí yóudēng rào xíng yí 3 cì, dāng huǒzàng chái duǐ bèi diǎnrán shí, sǐzhě zhǎngzǐ bīxū jiāng tóufǎ tì guāng, zhī zài hòunǎoshá o liú yī xiǎo cuō, ránhòu dào hé lǐ mùyù jìng shēn. Huǒzàng jiéshù hòu, sǐzhě gǔhuī huì bèi sǎo dào hé lǐ, dàibiǎo línghún yǐjīng tuōlǐ qūkè, dédào jiètuō.

Hūnlǐ

Yìn duó rén de hūnlǐ shì shèhuì dìwèi de dàibiǎo, yěshì yīshēng zhōng zhòngdà de yíshì. Yì ndù qīngnián dào le shì hūn niánlíng, dūhuì yóu fùmǔ dàitì wèi xúnzhǎo shèhuì jiējī, yǔyán xiāngtóng, yǐjī xīngxiàng kěyǐ pèihé de duìxiàng.

Yìndù hūnlǐ yíshì xiāngdāng fānsuǒ, jiéhūn zhīqián, shuāngfāng jiāzhǎng huì tòuguò chōng dāng méirén de jìsī tāolùn jiāzhuāngshìyí, nǚfāng bīxū dāyìng nánǚ tíchū de jiāzhuāng shù liàng hòu, shuāngfāng cái xuǎn dìng huángdào jírì, kāishǐ chóubèi hūnlǐ. Hūnlǐ qián yītiān, xīnniáng bīxū gēnjù zhuàn tǒng huàzhuāng fāngshì, kāishǐ mǒ yóu, mùyù, gēngyī, shūtóu, h uà yǎnxiàn, mǒ chún shā, bìngqiě zài jiǎo shàng tú yǐ hóngsè, zài étóu diǎn hóngsè dì kǎ, zà i xiàbā diǎn hēi zhì, jiēzhe hái yào yòng zhīwù rǎnliào zài shǒujiǎo shàng huì shì hàn nà tú'à n, ránhòu sǎ xiāngshuǐ, pèi dài shǒushì hé fǎ shì, zuìhòu shì bǎ yáchǐ rǎn hēi, jué bīnláng, cǎ kǒuhóng, cái suàn dàgōnggàochéng. Hūnlǐ dàngtiān, xīnláng guān qízhe yī pǐ báimǎ hào hà odàng dàng de lái dào xīnniáng jiā. Zhè shí nǚfāng jiǎlǐ yǐjīng jià qǐhuǒ tán, shuāngfāng qīn yǒu zài jìsī niàn sòng de jíxiáng zhēnyán zhōng, rào xíng huǒ tán zhùdǎo. Zhīhòu, xīnniáng zài nǚ bàn de cùyōng xià zǒu dào huǒ tán qiánmiàn, yóu jìsī jiāng xīnniáng de shā lǐ hé xīnl áng de wéijīn xī zài yīqǐ, dàibiǎo hūnyīn zhǎng cháng jiǔjiǔ. Yìndù hūnlǐ de wǎnyàn shì zài xīnniáng jiǎlǐ jìnxíng, yī duì xīnrén zuò zài hūnyàn zhōng jiēshòu qīnyǒu de zhùfú. Hūnlǐ dà ngtiān wǎnshàng xīnláng shì zài xīnniáng jiā guòyè, yìrì cái jiāng xīnniáng yíngqǔ huí jiā.

Pǔ jiā yíshì (Puja)

pǔ jiā shì yìndù jiào zhōng xiàng shénqí móbài de yíshì, pǔ jiā yíshì bīxū yóu jì sī dānrèn. Y íshì zhōng xìntú huì jiāng shénxiàng zhuāng shì hòu tái chū simiào yóuxíng qīngzhū, bìngqǐ ǐ fèngxiàn xiānhuā, yēzi, dì kǎ fěn.....děng gòngpǐn. Zuìhòu zài yóu jìsī shǒuchí yóudēng, zài shénxiàng qiánmiàn jìnxíng “ālā tí (arati)”. “Ālā tí” de guòchéng zhōng, xìntú yòng shǒu qīng qīng fūgài jìsī shǒuzhōng de dēnghuǒ, ránhòu zài zìjǐ de yǎnjīng shàng pèng chù yīxi à, dàibiǎo jiēshòu shénqí cìyǔ de lìliàng. Tōngcháng zài pǔ jiā yíshì jiéshù hòu, xìntú kěyǐ f ēn dào yīxiē jìsìguò de xiānhuā, dì kǎ fěn huǒ shuǐ, chéng wèi “bō lǎ shā dá (Prasada)”. Suǒ yǐ zài yìndù, zhīyào kàn dào yìn duó rén cóng simiào móbài chūlái, étóu shàng jīhū dōu tú y ǒu hóngsè huò báisè de fēnmò.

Lesson 32

Customs

The four traditional ceremonies have spread all over the world, and it is an unchanging truth to follow the customs when entering the country. Indians have 4 major traditional ceremonies which are birth, funeral, marriage and puja. In addition, when traveling in India, you must know 10 special habits and 6 taboos in India to ensure you have a good time and a safe journey.

Birth

In India, the tradition is very patriarchal, because when a daughter gets married, her parents must prepare a good dowry. If there is no dowry, the daughter will not be able to marry. The way Indians celebrate the birth and safe growth of children is to go to temples to perform "puja rituals", sing prayers, and then organize meals with relatives and friends.

After Indian children are born, their parents will find someone to do divination for them. Most of the children's names are taken from heroes or gods. The birth date and time of the child are especially important because they can determine the child's future marriage partner.

Funeral

When Hindus die, cremation is held at the Ghat. After the death of a Hindu, the family will wrap the body in yellow or white silk cloth, then put it on two bamboo stretchers and carry it in a procession to the cremation site of the Ghat.

Traditionally, the task of carrying the deceased to the crematorium should be done by the family members, but now most of them are handed over to special personnel. In India, those who specialize in funeral matters are considered untouchables with the lowest caste status.

Generally, the funeral ceremonies are very simple, but richer families may invite musicians to play in front of them and march in a mighty procession. Before the cremation, the eldest son of the deceased must walk around the body three times with fire stick in hand. When the cremation pyre is lit, the eldest son of the deceased must shave his hair, leaving only a small amount of hair on the back of his head, and then bathe in the river. After the cremation, the ashes of the deceased will be swept into the river, which means that the soul has been freed from the body.

Wedding

Indian weddings are a symbol of social status and an important ceremony in one's life. When young Indians reach the marriageable age, their parents will be replaced by their parents to find objects with the same social class, the same language, and compatible horoscopes.

Indian wedding ceremonies are quite cumbersome. In some cases, before marriage, parents of both parties will discuss dowry matters through priests who act as matchmakers. After the woman agrees to the amount of dowry proposed by the man and woman, the two parties will choose the auspicious day and start preparing for the wedding. The day before the wedding, the bride must start applying oil, bathing, dressing, combing her hair, applying eyeliner, lipstick, and applying red mahawar on her feet, red tika on her forehead, and black mole on her chin according to traditional makeup methods. They also use vegetable dyes to paint mehndi patterns on their hands and feet, sprinkle perfume, wear jewellery and hair accessories, and finally dye their teeth black, chew betel nut, and wipe lipstick.

On the wedding day, the groom rode a white horse to the bride's house. At this time, a fire altar had been set up at the woman's house, and relatives and friends of both parties circled around the fire altar to pray in the auspicious mantra recited by the priest. Afterwards, the bride walked to the fire altar, surrounded by female companions, and the priest tied the bride's sari and the groom's scarf together, representing a long and happy marriage.

The Indian wedding dinner is held at the bride's home, and the couple sits at the wedding banquet to receive blessings from relatives and friends. On the night of the wedding, the groom spends the night at the bride's house and takes the bride home the next day.

Puja ceremony

Puja is the ritual of worshipping the gods in Hinduism. Puja ceremony must be performed by sacrifices.

Secretary in charge. During the ceremony, believers will decorate the statue and carry it out of the temple to celebrate, and offer offerings such as flowers, coconuts, tika powder, etc. Finally, the priest holds an oil lamp and performs "arati" in front of the idol.

During the process of "Arati", believers lightly cover the lights in the hands of priests with their hands, and then touch their eyes to represent receiving the power bestowed by the gods.

Usually after the Puja ceremony, devotees can get some sacrificed flowers, tika powder or water, called "Prasada". So in India, as long as you see Indians coming out of the temple to worship, almost all of them have red or white powder tilak on their foreheads.

1.	风土人情	Fengtu	Natural conditions and social customs, human feelings
2.	入境随俗	Rujingsuisu	On entering a place following its customs
3.	传统仪式	Chuantong yishi	Traditional ceremony
4.	出生	Chusheng	Take birth
5.	葬礼	Zangli	Funeral
6.	婚姻	Hunyin	Marriage
7.	普迦仪式	Pujiayishi	Puja rituals
8.	除此之外	Chucizhiwai	Besides this
9.	特殊习惯	Teshu xiguan	Special habits
10.	大禁忌	Dajinji	Major tabu
11.	玩得开心	Wande kaixin	Have fun
12.	一路平安	Yilu pingan	Bon voyage
13.	重男轻女	Zhong nan qingnu	Give imp to male and ignore female
14.	嫁妆	Jiazhuang	Dowry
15.	寺庙	Simiao	Temple
16.	唱颂 祈祷文	Changsong qidaowen	Sing prayer
17.	举行餐宴	Juxing canyan	Hold feast
18.	占卜	Zhanbu	Devination
19.	取自 英雄或神祇	Quiz yingxiong huo shenzhi	Adopted from heroes or god
20.	生辰八字	Sheng Chen bazi	Birthday Kundali
21.	婚姻对象。	Hunyin duixiang	Match for marriage

22.	葬礼	Zangli	Cremation
23.	河坛	Hetan	River
24.	绢布包裹尸体	Juanbu baoguo shiti	Thin silk cloth to wrap the dead body
25.	两根竹制担架上	Ligang genzhuzhi danjia	Tikati made of bamboo
26.	家属担任	Jiashu danren	Carried by family members
27.	专人处理	Zhuanren chuli	Specialist manage
28.	丧葬事宜	Sang zang shiyi	Funeral affairs
29.	种姓	Zhongxing	Caste
30.	贱民	Jianmin	Untouchable
31.	乐师	Yueshi	Musician
32.	演奏	Yanzou	Performance
33.	浩浩荡荡地游行	Haohaodangdang de youxing	Vast and mighty procession
34.	长子	Changzi	Eldest son
35.	手持油灯绕行遗体	Shouchi youdeng raoxing yiti	Holding fire take circle of remains of the dead
36.	火葬柴堆燃	Huozang chaidui ran	Light the chita
37.	头发剃光	Toufa diguang	Shave the head
38.	后脑勺留一小撮	Hounao shaoliu yi xiao zuo	Leave a choti on back of head
39.	沐浴净身	Muyu jingshen	Bath and clean body
40.	死者骨灰	Sizhe guhui	Bone ash of deceased
41.	扫到河里	Saodao hali	Clear away in river
42.	灵魂	Linghun	Soul,ghost
43.	脱离躯壳	Tuoli quqiao	Break away from outer body
44.	得到解脱	Dadao jietuo	Get disengagement , moksha
45.	代替	Daiti	Substitute
46.	星相	Xingxiang	Star appearance
47.	繁琐	Fansuo	Loaded down with trivial details
48.	家长	Jiazhang	Head of the family
49.	透过充当媒人的祭司讨论嫁妆事宜	Touguo chongdang meiren de jisi taolun jia zhuang shiyi	Through priest (pandit) who act as mediator, discuss dowary matters
50.	选定黄道吉日	Xuanding huangdao jiri	Choose propitious date
51.	筹备婚礼	Choubei hunli	Prepare for marriage
52.	新娘	Xinniangu	Bride
53.	化妆方式	Huazhuang fangshi	Make up pattern
54.	抹油、沐浴、更衣、梳头、	Moyou, muyu, gengyi songtou	Apply oil, bath, change cloth, do up hair

55.	画眼线、抹唇砂	Hua yanxian, mo chunsha	Apply kajal, lip guard
56.	涂以红色	Tuyi hongse	Apply Mahawar
57.	额头点红色蒂卡	Getou dian hongse dika	Apply ret tika on forehead
58.	下巴点黑痣	Xiabadian heizhi	Chin put black dot
59.	植物染料	Zhiwu ranliao	Plant menhadi dye
60.	绘饰汉那图案	Huishi hanna tuan	Paint hina designs
61.	洒香水	Shaxiangshui	Sprinkle perfume
62.	配戴首饰	Feidai shoishi	Wear matching jewelry
63.	发饰	Fashi	Hair decoration
64.	牙齿染黑	Yachi ranhei	Put mascara in teeth
65.	嚼槟榔	Jiao binlang	Bit betelnut (Pan)
66.	擦口红	Ca kou hong	Rub lipstick
67.	大功告成	Dagong gaocheng	Success
68.	新郎	Xinlang	Bride groom
69.	骑着一匹白马	Qizhe yipi baima	Ride on a white horse
70.	架起火坛	Jiaqi huotan	Set up agni
71.	祭司念诵的吉祥真言中	Jisi niansong de jixiang zhenyanzhong	Priest read aloud auspicious in cantation mantras
72.	绕行火坛祝祷	Raoxing huotan zhoudao	Encircle around the fire and pray
73.	女伴的簇拥下走到火坛前面	Nuban de cuyong xia zoudao huotan qianmian	Walk infront of fire cluster round by female parteners
74.	纱丽	Shali	Sari
75.	围巾系在一起	Weijin xizai yiqi	Scarf tie together
76.	长长久久。	Changchang jiujiu	For quite long time
77.	晚宴	Wamyan	Evening banquet
78.	祝福	Zhufu	Bleshing
79.	婚礼	Hunli	Marriage ceremony
80.	新娘家过夜	Xinniang jia guoye	Spend night at bride's home
81.	翌日	Yiri	Next day
82.	迎娶	Yingqu	Escort the bride to groom's house
83.	普迦仪式	Pujia yishi	Puja ceremony
84.	神祇膜拜	Shenqi mobai	Worship god
85.	神像装饰	Shenxiang zhuangshi	Decoration of the idols of god
86.	抬出寺庙游行	Taichu simiao youxing	Carry out the temple for procession
87.	奉献鲜花	Fengxian xian hua	Offer fresh flowers
88.	椰子、蒂卡粉	Yezi, dika fen	Coconut, sindur
89.	祭司手持油灯	Jisi shouchi youdeng	Priest holds oil lamp in the hands
90.	阿拉提	Alati	Arati
91.	灯火	Denghuo	Lamplight
92.	碰触一下	Pengchu yixia	Touch a bit

93.	赐予的力量	Ciyu de liliang	The strength bestowed
94.	祭祀过的鲜花	Jisi guo de xianhua	Sacrificed fresh flowers
95.	波拉沙达	Polashada	Prasada
96.	粉末	Fenmo	Powder

第三十三课

传统服饰

在印度，可以由不同的服饰和装扮，看出当地人的宗教信仰、种族、阶级、区域等。男性包头巾：

印度男性多半包有头巾，这种头巾称为 Turban。头巾有各式各样的包裹方法，其中锡克教男性头巾，具有特定样式。

根据传统，锡克人从小到大都必须蓄头发、留胡须，并且包着头巾。小孩头巾样式比较简单，只用黑布绑成发髻形状。成年人的头巾样式比较复杂，首先必须用黑色松紧带将长发束成发髻，然后再以一条长约 3 公尺的布，裹成头巾，样式为两边对衬成规则状。锡克人头巾色彩繁多，有的人甚至搭配衣服颜色。

印度男性多半穿著一袭宽松的立领长衫（Kurta），搭配窄脚的长裤（Payjama，拉贾斯坦地区男性，裤子是以一条白色布块裹成的，头上的布巾，花样变化极多，色泽鲜明。

女性穿纱丽：

印度妇女传统服饰是纱丽（Sari），纱丽是指一块长达 5 码以上的布料，穿著时以披裹的方式缠绕在身上。印度妇女擅长利用扎、围、绑、裹、缠、披……等技巧，使得纱丽在身上产生不同的变化。

拉贾斯坦妇女的纱丽较短，只有披覆在头上，但是彩色缤纷、镶有金银绣边。拉贾斯坦妇女的上衣，有点像似没有领子的中国凤仙装，下身是一条滚边的及地长裙。

纱丽穿著方式：

印度妇女传统服饰，是用一块长达 5 公尺的布包裹出来的，这块布称为纱丽（Sari）。印度纱丽的穿著方式变化繁多，不同的种族、区域、信仰，会有许多不同的色彩、质感和穿裹方式。印度妇女穿著纱丽时，上衣是一件短袖、露出肚脐的紧身衣（Choli），下身是一条及地的直筒衬裙（Ghagra）。

纱丽最基本的穿著方式，可以分为以下几个步骤：

1. 首先拉住纱丽布左边一端，塞进右侧的衬裙裙头。
2. 将纱丽布由右至左环绕下围，约三、四圈。
3. 接着用纱丽布在右前方折成四折，并且塞入裙头。
4. 然后将剩余布块，由左后方绕过右边腋下，披向左边肩膀上。
5. 最后直接将纱丽布披在肩上、或披覆在头上。

Dì sānshísān kè Chuántǒng fúshì

Zài yìndù, kěyǐ yóu bù tóng de fúshì hé zhuāngbàn, kàn chū dāngdì rén de zōngjiào xìn'ǎng, zhǒngzú, jiējī, qūyù děng.

Nánxìng bāo tóujīn:

Yìndù nánxìng duōbàn bāo yǒu tóujīn, zhè zhǒng tóujīn chēng wéi Turban. Tóujīn yǒu gè shì gè yàng de bāoguǒ fāngfǎ, qízhōng xī kè jiào nánxìng tóujīn, jù yǒu tèdìng yàngshì.

Gēnjù zhuān tǒng, xī kè rén cóngxiǎo dào dàdū bīxū xù tóufǎ, liú húxū, bìngqiě bāozhe tóujīn. Xiǎohái tóujīn yàngshì bǐjiào jiǎndān, zhǐ yòng hēi bù bǎng chéng fǎ jì xíngzhuàng. Chéngnián rén de tóujīn yàngshì bǐjiào fùzá, shǒuxiān bīxū yòng hēisè sōngjīndài jiāng zhǎng fā shù chéng fǎ jì, rán hòu zài yǐ yītiáo zhǎng yuē 3 gōngchǐ de bù, guǒ chéng tóujīn, yàn gōngshì wéi liǎngbiān duì chèn chéng guīzé zhuàng. Xī kè rén tóujīn sècǎi fánduō, yǒu de rén s hènzhì dāpèi yīfù yánsè.

Yìndù nánxìng duōbàn chuānzhuó yī xī kuānsōng de lìlǐng chángshān (Kurta), dāpèi zhǐ ài jiǎo de cháng kù (Payjama), lǎ jiǎ sītǎn dìqū nánxìng, kùzi shì yǐ yītiáo báisè bù kuài guǒ chéng de, tóu shàng de bùjīn, huāyàng biànhuà jí duō, sèzé xiānmíng.

Nǚxìng chuān shā lì: Yìndù fù nǚ chuántǒng fúshì shì shā lì (Sari), shā lì shì zhǐ yīkuài cháng dá 5 mǎ yǐshàng de bùliào, chuānzhuó shí yǐ pī guǒ de fāngshì chánrào zài shēnshàng. Yìndù fù nǚ shàncháng liyòng zhā, wéi, bǎng, guǒ, chán, pī……děng jìqiǎo, shǐdé shā lì zài shēnshàng chǎnshēng bùtóng de biànhuà. Lǎ jiǎ sītǎn fù nǚ de shā lì jiào duǎn, zhǐyǒu pī fù zài tóu shàng, dànshì cǎisè bīnfēn, xiāng yǒu jīn yín xiù biān.

Lǎ jiǎ sītǎn fù nǚ de shàngyī, yǒudiǎn xiàng shì méiyǒu língzi de zhōngguó fèng xiān zhī uāng, xiàshēn shì yītiáo gǔnbǎn de jí dì cháng qún. Shā lì chuānzhuó fāngshì: Yìndù fù nǚ chuántǒng fúshì, shì yòng yīkuài cháng dá 3 gōngchǐ de bù bāoguǒ chūlái de, zhè kuài bù chéng wéi shā lì (Sari).

Yìndù shā lì de chuānzhuó fāngshì biànhuà fánduō, bùtóng de zhǒngzú, qūyù, xìnyǎng, huì yǒu xǔduō bùtóng de sècǎi, zhīgǎn hé chuān guǒ fāngshì. Yìndù fù nǚ chuānzhuó shā lì shí, shàngyī shì yǐ jiǎn duǎn xiù, lùchū dùqí de jīnshēn yī (Choli), xiàshēn shì yītiáo jí dì de zhítǒng chènqún (Ghagra).

Shā lì zuì jībēn de chuānzhuó fāngshì, kěyǐ fēn wéi yīxià jǐ gè bùzhòu:

1. Shǒuxiān lǎ zhù shā lì bù zuǒbiān yīduān, sāi jìn yòu cè de chènqún qún tóu.
2. Jiāng shā lì bù yóu yòu zhì zuǒ huánrào xià wéi, yuē sān, sì quān.
3. Jiēzhe yòng shā lì bù zài yòu qiánfāng zhé chéng sì zhé, bìngqiě sāi rù qún tóu.
4. Rán hòu jiāng shèngyú bù kuài, yóu zuǒ hòufāng ràoguò yòubiān yè xià, pī xiàng zuǒ biān jiānbǎng shàng.
5. Zuìhòu zhíjiē jiāng shā lì bù pī zài jiān shàng, huò pī fù zài tóu shàng.

Traditional clothing

In India, the religious beliefs, races, classes, regions, etc. of the local people can be seen from different costumes and attire.

Men's turban:

Most Indian men wear a turban. There are various ways of wrapping the turban, among which the turban for Sikh men has a specific style.

According to tradition, Sikhs must grow their hair, beards, and wear turbans from childhood to adulthood. The style of children's headscarf is relatively simple, only black cloth is used to tie it into a bun shape. The turban style for adults is more complicated. First, the long hair must be tied into a bun with a black elastic band, and then wrapped into a turban with a piece of cloth about 3 meters long. Sikh headscarves come in many colors, and some even match the color of their clothes.

Most Indian men wear a loose stand-collar kurta (tunic) with narrow-leg trousers (Payjama). For men in Rajasthan, the trousers are made of a piece of white cloth (dhoti), with a turban on the head, and the patterns vary greatly.

Women Wearing Sarees:

The traditional dress of Indian women is sari, which refers to a piece of fabric more than 5 yards long, which is wrapped around the body in a wrapping way when worn. Indian women are good at using techniques such as tying, encircling, tying, wrapping, draping, etc., to make saris have different changes on the body.

Rajasthani women's sarees (dupatta) are shorter, draped only over the head, but are colorful and trimmed with gold and silver embroidery. The tops of Rajasthani women are a bit like the Chinese bridal gown without a collar, and the lower body is a floor-length skirt with a piping..

How to wear a saree:

The traditional dress of Indian women is wrapped in a piece of cloth that is 5 meters long. This cloth is called Sari. There are many variations in how Indian sarees are worn, with many different colors, textures and ways of wrapping for different races, regions, and beliefs. When Indian women wear sarees, the top is a short-sleeved, navel-exposed corset (choli), and the lower body is a floor-length petticoat (Ghagra).

The most basic way of wearing a sari can be divided into the following steps:

1. First pull the left end of the sari cloth and tuck it into the top of the petticoat on the right.
2. Wrap the sari cloth around the lower circumference from right to left, about three or four times
3. Then fold the sari cloth into four folds at the front right and tuck it into the blouse.
4. Then wrap the remaining cloth from the left back around the right armpit and drape it over the left shoulder.
5. Finally, drape the sari directly over the shoulders or over the head.

1	传统服饰	Chuantong fushi	Traditional dress and personal adornment
2.	装扮	Zhuangban	Disguise
3.	宗教信仰	Zongjiao xinyang	Religious belief
.4	种族	Zhongzu	Race, tribe
5	阶级	Jieji	Class
6	区域	Quyu	Region
7	男性	Nanxing	Male
8	包头巾	Baotoujin	Turban
9	各式各样	Geshigeyang	Each and every tupe
10	锡克教	Xikejiao	Sikh religion
11	特定样式	Teding Yangzi	Special manners
12	蓄头发	Xu toufa	Store up hairs
13	留胡须	Liu huxu	Keep beard and moustachage
14	包着头巾	Baozhe tou jin	Turban
15	绑成	Bangcheng	Tie into
16	发髻	Fajin	Bob
17	形状	Xingzhuang	Shape
18	松紧带	Songjindai	Elastic
19	长发	Changfa	Long hair
20	束成	Sucheng	bind into

21	裹成头巾	Guocheng toujin	Wrap into turban
22	色彩繁多	Sesai fanduo	Multi colour
23	甚至搭配	Shenzhi dapei	Even arrange in pairs
24	袭宽松	Xi kuansong	Follow the pattern of loose
25	立领长衫	Liling changshan	Tunic
26	搭配窄脚		
27	长裤	Changku	Dhoti
28	裤子	Kuzi	Trouser
29	花样	Huayang	Design
30	色泽鲜明	Seze xianming	Colour and lusture brilliant
31	布料	Buliao	Cloth,material
32	披裹	Piguo	Wraro around
33	缠绕	Chanrao	Inwind
34	身上	Shenshang	On the body
35	擅长	Shanchang liyong	Be adept in
36	扎	Zha	Plunge into
37	围	Wei	surround
38	绑	Bang	Bind, tie
39	裹	Guo	wrap
40	缠	Chan	Tangle,twine
41	披	Pi	Wrap around
42	技巧	Jiqiao	Skill
43	缤纷	binfen	In roitus profusion
44	镶有	Xiangyou	Inlay, border,set, mount
45	金银	Jinyin	bullion
46	绣边	Xiubian	Embroider the border
47	上衣	Shangyi	Frock, jacketing
48	像似	Xiangsi	Image , like
49	领子	Lingzi	Collar, collarband, neckwear
50	凤仙装	Fengshenzhuang	Foenix,immortal,dress up
51	下身	Xiashen	Lower part of body, genitals
52	滚边	Gunbian	Roll border
53	及地长裙	Jidi Changqun	A long skirt
54	包裹	Baoguo	wrap
55	穿著方式	Chuanzhu fangshi	Wearing pattern
56	质感	Zhigan	Sense of reality (in art)
57	短袖	Duanxiu	Short sleeve
58	露出肚脐	Luchu duqi	Expose bellybutton
59	紧身衣	Jinshenyi	Choli
60	直筒衬裙	Zhitong chenqun	(Ghagra)
61	步骤:	Buzhou	Steps
62	拉住	Lazhu	Pull
63	一端	Yiduan	One end
64	塞进	Saijin	Foist into
65	右侧	Youce	Rightside

66	衬裙裙头	Chenqun	Underskirt, petticoat
67	环绕	Huanrao	Encircle
68	圈	Quan	circle
69	折成四折	Zhecheng sizhe	Make four folds
70	塞入裙头。	Sairu quntou	Insert in to petticoat
71	剩余	Shengyu	Remaining
72	腋下	Yexia	Below armpit
73	肩膀	Jianbang	Shoulder
74	披在肩上	Pozai jianshang	Wrap on the shoulder
75	披覆	Pofu	Wrap and cover

第三十四课

饮食习惯

印度人的日常饮食，南北方有很大差别。北方人以小麦、玉米、豆类等为主食，尤其喜欢吃一种叫做“恰巴提”的薄面饼。南方和东部沿海地区的人们以大米为主食，爱吃炒饭。而中部德干高原则以小米和杂粮为主。印度人喜欢吃带有辣味的、伴有咖喱的食物。在饮水和饮料方面，印度人和西方人一样，没有喝热水的习惯，一般喜欢喝凉水或者饮用红茶、牛奶和咖啡。

签证材料

- 1、4 张 2 寸彩色蓝底照片（照片背面签名、4 张照片必须一样（包括大小、颜色等），否则拒签）；
- 2、中文个人资料表（提供真实完整的个人资料、尤其注意单位名称、电话与住宅电话的真实，个人需在上面亲笔签名）；
- 3、护照首页及尾页复印件
- 4、银行 1 万元以上冻结 4 个月存款证明原件；
- 5、英文行程单
- 6、个人身份证复印件（正面反面 2 页都需要）
- 7、机票订单（北京公司自行办理）
- 8、3 张加盖公章空白抬头纸（无需在公章上签字）
- 9、护照尾页必须有人签名且清楚

Dì sānshí sì kè Yǐnshí xíguàn

Yìn du rén de rìcháng yǐnshí, nánběifāng yǒu hěn dà chābié. Běi fāng rén yǐ xiǎomài, yùmǐ, dòu lèi děng wéi zhǔshí, yóuqí xīhuān chī yī zhǒng jiàozuò “qià bā tí” de bómìan bǐng. Nán fāng hé dōngbù yánhǎi dìqū de rénmen yǐ dànmǐ wéi zhǔshí, ài chī chǎofàn. Ér zhōngbù dé gān yuánzé yǐ xiǎomǐ hé záliáng wéi zhǔ. Yìn duó rén xīhuān chī dài yǒu là wèi de, bàn yǒu gāilì de shíwù. Zài yǐnshuǐ hé yǐnliào fāngmiàn, yìn duó rén hé xīfāng rén yīyàng, méiyǒu hē rè shuǐ de xíguàn, yībān xīhuān hē liángshuǐ huòzhě yǐnyòng hóngchá, niúǎi hé kāfēi.

Qiānzhèng cáiliào

1,4 zhāng 2 cùn cǎisè lán dǐ zhàopiàn (zhàopiàn bèimiàn qiānmíng, 4 zhāng zhàopiàn bīxū yī yàng (bāokuò dàxiǎo, yánsè děng), fǒuzé jùqiān); 2, zhōngwén gèrén zīliào biǎo (tígōng zhēnshí wánzhěng de gèrén zīliào, yóuqí zhùyì dānwèi míngchēng, diànhuà yǔ zhùzhái diànhuà de zhēnshí, gèrén xū zài shàngmiàn qīnbǐ qiānmíng); 3, hùzhào shǒuyè jí wěi yè fùyin jì àn 4, yínháng 1 wàn yuán yǐshàng dòngjié 4 gè yuè cúnkuǎn zhèngmíng yuánjiàn; 5, yīngwén xíngchéng dān 6, gèrén shēnfèn zhèng fùyin jiàn (zhèngmiàn fǎnmiàn 2 yè dōu xūyào) 7, jīpiào dìngdān (běijīng gōngsī zìxíng bànlǐ) 8, 3 zhāng jiā gài gōngzhāng kòngbái táitóu zhǐ (wúxū zài gōngzhāng shàng qiānzi) 9, hùzhào wéi yè bīxū yǒurén qiānmíng qiě qīngchǔ

Lesson 34

Eating habits

The daily diet of Indians is very different from north to south. Northerners mainly eat wheat, corn, beans, etc., and especially like to eat a kind of pancake called "Chapati". People in the southern and eastern coastal regions eat rice as their staple food and love fried rice. The central Deccan plateau is based on millet and miscellaneous grains. Indians like to eat spicy food accompanied by curry. In terms of drinking water and beverages, Indians, like Westerners, do not have the habit of drinking hot water, and generally prefer to drink cold water or drink black tea, milk and coffee.

Visa materials

1 to 4 2-inch color photos with blue background (the signature on the back of the photo, the 4 photos must be the same (including size, color, etc.), otherwise the visa will be rejected);

2. Personal information form in Chinese (provide true and complete personal information, especially pay attention to the authenticity of the unit name, telephone number and residential telephone number, and individuals need to sign it by hand);

3. A copy of the first page and last page of the passport

4. The original copy of the bank's deposit certificate of more than 10,000 yuan fixed for 4 months

5. English itinerary

6. Copy of personal ID card (both front and back pages are required)

7. Air ticket order (Beijing company handles it by itself)

8. 3 blank letterheads with official seal (no need to sign on the official seal)

9. The last page of the passport must be signed and clear

1.	饮食习惯	Yinshi xiguan	Diatary habits
2.	饮食	Yinshi	Food and drink, diet
3.	差别	Chabie	differnece
4.	小麦	Xiaomai	Wheat
5.	玉米	Yumi	Maize
6.	豆类	Doulei	Pulse
7.	主食	Zhushi	Staple food, principal food
8.	“恰巴提”	Qiabati	Chapati
9.	薄面饼	Baomianbing	Roti
10.	炒饭	Chaofan	Fried food/rice
11.	德干高原	Degan gaoyuan	Deccan plateau
12.	小米和杂粮	Xiaomi he zaliang	Millet & coarse cereals
13.	辣味	Lawei	Piquant
14.	伴有咖喱	Banyou gali	Have curry
15.	食物	Shiwu	Food
16.	饮料	Yinliao	Bewerage
17.	凉水	Liangshui	Cold water, unboiled water
18.	红茶	Hongcha	Black tea
19.	牛奶	Niunai	Milk
20.	咖啡	Kafei	coffee
21.	签证材料	Qianzheng cailiao	Visa material
22.	彩色蓝底照片	Caise landi zhaopian	Coloured photo in blue background
23.	背面签名	Beimian qianming	Sign on back side
24.	否则拒签	Pouze juqian	Otherwise denied for endorsement
25.	资料表	Ziliaobiao	Table for material
26.	真实完整	Zhenshi wanzheng	True & complete
27.	单位名称	Danwei ming cheng	Name of the unit
28.	住宅	Zhuzhai	Residence
29.	亲笔签名	Qinbi qianming	Sign manually
30.	护照	Huzhao	Passport
31.	首页	Shouye	First page
32.	尾页	Weiye	Last page
33.	复印件	Fuyinjian	Xerox copy
34.	冻结 4 个月存款 证明	Dongjie ..cunkuan	4months FDR
35.	存款	Cunkuan	Deposit, saving, fund
36.	原件	Yuanjian	Original document
37.	行程	Xingcheng	journey
38.	身份证	Shenfenzheng	Identity card
39.	正面	Zhengmian	Front
40.	反面	Fanmian	Backside

41.	机票订单	Jipiao dingdan	Air ticket order form
42.	自行办理	Zixing banli	Self transaction
43.	加盖公章	Jiagai gongzhang	Put seal
44.	空白	Kongbai	Blank
45.	清楚	Qingchu	clarity

第三十五课

印度瑜伽

印度瑜伽 天人合一

瑜伽最早出现在 5000 年前的古印度。瑜伽一词原意是结合、和谐，古印度人修练瑜伽术是追求天人合一的修行最高境界。公元 2 世纪，钵颠闍利 (Patanjali) 撰写《瑜伽经》，将瑜伽定义为：niyama 纯洁的操守；Asana 身体姿态；Pranayama 呼吸的控制；dharana 集中意念；dhyana 冥想；Samadhi 至善境界等分支，意在传播瑜伽的智慧精髓。

位于印度北部 Uttarakhand 邦的瑞诗凯诗 Rishikesh 堪称世界瑜伽之都，全球有资质的瑜伽教练 60% 以上都到瑞诗凯诗修行过。1' 在这个人口不到 7 万的小城里，有 100 多家瑜伽学校，成千上万名不同肤色的瑜伽爱好者每年不辞辛苦地赶到这里，为的就是得到当地瑜伽大师的指点，寻找心灵中的至纯之地。

世界的瑜伽首都 Rishikesh

修习瑜伽

位于喜马拉雅山脚下的宁静小城镇瑞诗凯诗，被印度的圣河恒河分为两半，一条总长约 1 公里的“瑜伽一条街”沿河而建。瑞诗凯诗之所以成为瑜伽之都和其独特的地理位置不无关系。在印度人的心目中，喜马拉雅山是大神湿婆居住和修炼的地方，几千年来，期望通过修炼而摆脱生死轮回的人们聚集在这里，冥想世间哲理并反思对生活的态度，瑜伽文化由此诞生。

修习瑜伽的场所

印度瑜伽 天人合一瑜伽与印度宗教密不可分。瑞诗凯诗几所知名的瑜伽学校都设在印度教庙宇的静修院当中。传授瑜伽课程只是大师生活中的一部分，基本的入门课程则大多由其弟子来进行指导。在这里学习瑜伽没有严格的要求，人们可以从最基本的体式训练学起，也可以直接进行打坐冥想。一般每节课时间一个半小时，收费 50 到 100 卢比（1 美元约合 43 卢比），附属的学员宿舍设施比较简单，80 卢比基本上解决了一天所有的食宿开支。来自世界各地的瑜伽爱好者在这里进行着各自的修习。他们中的许多人最初只是想到瑞诗凯诗来看一看，结果却因迷恋上瑜伽课程而一直留了下来。

Dì sānshíwǔ kè

Yìndù yújiā

Yìndù yújiā tiān rén hé yī yújiā zuizǎo chūxiàn zài 5000 nián qián de gǔ yìndù. Yújiā yī cí yuányì shì jié hé, héxié, gǔ yin duó rén xiūliàn yújiā shù shì zhuīqiú tiān rén hé yī de xiūxíng zuìgāo jìngjiè. Gōngyuán 2 shìjì, bō diān dū lì (Patanjali) zhuànxiě “yújiā jīng”, jiāng yújiā dìngyì wèi: Niyama chúnjié de cāoshǒu; Asana shēntǐ zītài; Pranayama hūxī de kòngzhì; dharana jí zhòng yìniàn; dhyana míngxǐǎng; Samadhi zhì shàn jìngjiè děng fēnzhī, yì zài chuánbò yújiā de zhìhuì jīngsuǐ.

Wèiyú yìndù běibù Uttarakhand bāng de ruì shī kǎi shī Rishikesh kān chēng shìjiè yújiā zhī dū, quánqiú yǒu zīzhì de yújiā jiàoliàn 60% yǐshàng dū dào ruì shī kǎi shī xiūxíngguò. Zài zhège rénkǒu bù dào 7 wàn de xiǎochéng lǐ, yǒu 100 duō jiā yújiā xuéxiào, chéng qiān shàng wàn míng bùtóng fùsè de yújiā àihào zhě měinián bùcì xīnkǒu de gǎn dào zhèlǐ, wèi de jiùshì dédào dāngdì yújiā dàshī de zhǐdiǎn, xúnzhào xīnlíng zhōng de zhì chún zhī dì.

Shìjiè de yújiā shǒudū Rishikesh xiū

xí yújiā

wèiyú xīmǎlāyǎ shān jiǎoxià dì níngjìng xiǎo chéngzhèn ruì shī kǎi shī, bèi yìndù de shèng hé héng hé fēn wéi liǎng bàn, yītiáo zǒngzhǎng yuē 1 gōnglǐ de “yújiā yītiáo jiē” yán hé ér jiàn. Ruì shī kǎi shī zhī suǒyǐ chéngwéi yújiā zhī dū hé qí dūtè dì dìlǐ wèizhì bù wú guānxì. Zài yin duó rén de xīnmù zhōng, xīmǎlāyǎ shān shì dàshén shī pó jūzhù hé xiūliàn

dì dìfāng, jǐ qiān nián lái, qīwàng tōngguò xiū liàn ér bǎituō shēngsǐ lúnhuí de rénmen jùjí zài zhèlǐ, míngxǐǎng shìjiān zhé lì bìng fǎnsī duì shēnghuó de tàidù, yújiā wénhuà yóu cǐ dànnshēng.

Xiū xí yújiā de chǎngsuǒ

yìndù yújiā tiān rén hé yī yújiā yǔ yìndù zōngjiào mì bùkěfēn. Ruì shī kǎi shī jǐ suǒ zhīmíng de yújiā xuéxiào dōu shè zài yìndù jiào miàoyǔ de jìng xiū yuàn dāngzhōng. Chuánshòu yújiā kèchéng zhīshì dàshī shēnghuó zhōng de yībùfēn, jībēn de rùmén kèchéng zé dàduō yóu qí dìzì lái jìnxíng zhīdǎo. Zài zhèlǐ xuéxí yújiā méiyǒu yángé de yāoqiú, rénmen kěyǐ cóng zì jībēn de tīshì xūnliàn xué qǐ, yě kěyǐ zhíjiē jìn háng dǎzuò míngxǐǎng. Yībān měi jié kè shíjiān yīgē bàn xiǎoshí, shōufèi 50 dào 100 lú bǐ (1 měiyuán yuē hé 43 lú bǐ), fùshǔ de xuéyuán sùshè shèshì bǐjiào jiǎndān, 80 lú bǐ jībēn shàng jiějuéle yītián suǒyǒu de shí sù kāizhī. Láizi shìjiè gèdì de yújiā àihào zhě zài zhèlǐ jìnxíng zhe gèzì de xiū xí. Tāmen zhōng de xǔduō rén zuìchū zhīshì xiāngdào ruì shī kǎi shī lái kàn yī kàn, jiéguǒ què yīn míliàn shàng yújiā kèchéng ér yīzhí liúle xiàlái.

Lesson 35

Indian Yoga

Yoga first appeared in ancient India 5,000 years ago. The original meaning of yoga is combination and harmony. The ancient Indians practiced yoga to pursue the highest state of harmony between man and nature. The practice of yoga by ancient Indians is the highest state of practice in pursuit of the unity of man and nature. In the 2nd century AD, Patanjali wrote the Yoga Sutra, which defined yoga as: niyama pure conduct; Asana body posture; Pranayama breathing control; dharana concentration; dhyana meditation; Intended to spread the wisdom essence of yoga.

Rishikesh, located in Uttarnchal state in northern India, is known as the yoga capital of the world. More than 60% of the world's qualified yoga instructors have practiced in Rishikesh. In this small city with a population of less than 70,000, there are more than 100 yoga schools, and thousands of yoga enthusiasts of different nationalities come here every year to get the guidance of local yoga masters and find spiritual the purest place.

Rishikesh, the yoga capital of the world

Practice yoga

Rishikesh, a small and quiet town at the foot of the Himalayas, is divided into two halves by the holy river Ganges in India. A "Yoga Street" with a total length of about 1 km is built along the river. Rishikesh has become the capital of yoga because of its unique location. In the minds of Indians, the Himalayas are the place where the great god Shiva lived and practiced. For thousands of years, people who hope to get rid of the cycle of life and death through practice have gathered here to meditate on the philosophy of the world and reflect on their attitude towards life. Yoga culture born due to this.

A place to practice yoga

Indian Yoga

The unity of nature and man is inseparable from the Indian religion. Several well-known yoga schools in Rishikesh are located in ashrams of Hindu temples. Teaching yoga classes is only part of the master's life, and the basic introductory classes are mostly taught by his disciples. There are no strict requirements for learning yoga here. People can learn from the most basic asana training, or they can directly meditate. Generally, each class lasts one and a half hours, and costs 50 to 100 rupees (about 43 rupees for 1 US dollar). The attached student dormitory facilities are relatively simple, and 80 rupees solves all the room and board expenses for a day. Yoga lovers from all over the world conduct their own practice here. Many of them initially thought of Rishikesh for a visit, only to stick around because they were obsessed with taking yoga classes.

1.	印度瑜伽	Yindu yujia	Indian yoga
2.	天人合一	Tianren heyi	Combines heaven and men
3.	原意	Yuanyi	Original meaning
4.	结合	Jiehe	Combine, integrate
5.	和谐	Hexie	harmonious
6.	修练瑜伽术	Xiulian yujiashu	Practice yoga art
7.	追求	Zhuiqiu	Pursue
8.	修行	Xiuxing	Cultivate oneself according to religious doctrine
9.	境界	Jingjie	Realm
10.	钵颠 闍利	Bodanduli	Patanjali
11.	撰写	Zhuanxie	Compose, write
12.	《瑜伽经》	Yujiajing	Yoga classic
13.	定义为	Dingyi wei	Definition being
14.	纯洁的操守	Dunjie de caoshou	Chastity and personal integrity (niyama)
15.	身体姿态	Shenti zitai	Body pose (Asana)
16.	呼吸的控制	Huxi de kongzhi	Control of respiration Pranayama
17.	集中 意念	Zhizhong yinian	Concentrate thoughts, dharana
18.	冥想	Mingxiang	Meditation, dhyana
19.	至善境界	Zhishan jingjie	Perfect realm, Samadhi
20.	分支	Fenzhi	Branches
21.	意在	Yizai	suggest
22.	传播	chuanbo	Propagate
23.	智慧精髓。	Zhihui jingshui	Wisdom, soul
24.	瑞诗凯诗	Ruishikaishi	Rishikesh
25.	堪称	Kancheng	Called as

26.	资质	Zizhi	aptitude
27.	教练	Jiaolian	Coach, drillmaster
28.	成千上万	Chengqian shangwan	Thousands upon thousands
29.	肤色	Fuce	Complexion
30.	爱好者	Aihaozhe	Fan, lover
31.	不辞辛苦	Bucixinku	Put oneself out of the way
32.	为的	Weide	Reason
33.	大师	Dashi	master
34.	指点	Zhidian	Give direction
35.	寻找	Xunzhao	Seek
36.	心灵	Xinhun	Soul, spirit
37.	至纯之地。	Zhichun zhidi	purity
38.	修习	Xiuxi	Practice
39.	山脚下	Shanjiaoxia	Foothill
40.	宁静小城镇	Ningjing xiao chengzhen	Peaceful small town
41.	圣河恒河	Shenghe henghe	Holy river Ganga
42.	总长	Zongchang	Total length
43.	“瑜伽一条街”	Yujia yi tiao jie	Yoge street
44.	沿河而建	Yanhe er jian	Built along the riverside
45.	之所以	Zhisuoyi	The reason why
46.	独特	Dute	Unique
47.	地理位置	Diliweizhi	Geographical location
48.	不无关系	Buwuguanxi	Have a definite relation
49.	心目中	Xinmu zhong	In the mind, memory
50.	大神湿婆	Dashen shifo	Great lord Shiva
51.	居住	Juzhu	Dwell
52.	期望	Qiwang	Look forward to
53.	摆脱	Baituo	Get ride of
54.	生死轮回	Shengsilunhui	Recycle of birth & death

PART II : BRIEF DETAILS ABOUT THE FAMOUS TOURIST PLACES IN INDIA

I. 德里 Delhi



德里是一座充满活力的大都市，千百年来深深吸引着来自世界各地的人们。这座城市的周边有许多历史悠久的名胜古迹，而城墙见证了无数的兴衰更替。1947 年 8 月 15 日，印度首任总理贾瓦哈拉尔·尼赫鲁（Jawaharlal Nehru）在红堡宣布英国殖民统治的结束，并升起印度国旗，从此开启了印度现代史的重要篇章。如今，德里不仅是印度的首都，更是国家的立法和行政中心，是接待各国首脑、外交官和国际使节团的地方。此外，德里还是举办体育赛事、文化节和国际会议的重要场所。作为印度大部分海外游客的入境门户，这里完善的旅游设施让人印象深刻——从豪华轿车到舒适列车，从琳琅满目的商店到丰富多彩的娱乐活动，再到便捷的铁路和航空网络，德里为游客提供了世界一流水准的服务与便利。可以说，在德里几乎没有找不到的东西。游览德里将成为您最难忘的记忆之一。

德里和新德里拥有长达 3000 年的历史，而如今，这座城市已发展为一个与时俱进的现代化大都市。特别是新德里，以惊人的速度发生着变化，成为引领时代潮流的城市。然而，德里的历史和文化遗产也同样值得骄傲。在这座城市中，旧德里是不可错过的部分，它拥有 3000 年的历史，是莫卧儿皇帝沙贾汗（Shah Jahan）凭借非凡的建筑热情而打造的一座城堡都市。旧德里的街道充满了浓厚的历史氛围，市集商品丰富多彩，人群熙熙攘攘，展现了一幅忙碌而又生机勃勃的画面。无论您是探索现代的都市气息，还是感受古老的文化遗产，德里都将为您提供独特的体验。在这里，每个角落都讲述着一段历史，每个景点都蕴藏着丰富的故事。德里注定会成为您的印度之旅中最难忘的一站。

Délǐ shì yīzuò chōngmǎn huó lì de dà dū shì, qiān bǎi nián lái shēn shēn xī yǐn zhe lái zì shì jiè gè dì de rén men. Zhè zuò chéng shì de zhōu biān yǒu xǔ duō lì shǐ yǒu jiù de míng shèng gǔ jì, ér chéng qiáng jiàn zhèng liǎo wú shǔ de xīng shuāi gēng tì. 1947 Nián 8 yuè 15 rì, yīndù shǒu rèn zǒng lǐ jī ā wǎ hā lǎ ēr ní hē lǔ (Jawaharlal Nehru) zài hóng bǎo xuānbù yīngguó zhī mǐn tǒngzhì de jiéshù, bìng shēng qǐ yīndù guóqí, cóng cǐ kāiqǐ le yīndù xiàndài shǐ de zhōng yào piān zhāng. Rú jīn, dé lǐ bù jīn shì yīndù de shǒu dū, gèng shì guójiā de lǐ fǎ hé xíngzhèng zhōng xīn, shì jiē dài gè guó shǒu nǎ o, wài jiāo guān hé guó jì shì jié tuán dì dì fāng. Cǐ wài, dé lǐ hái shì jǔ bàn tǐ yù sài shì, wén huà jié hé guó jì huì yì de zhōng yào chǎng suǒ. Zuò wéi yīndù dà bù fèn hǎi wài yóu kè de rù jìng mén hù, zhè lǐ wǎn shàn de lǚ yóu shè shì rǎng rén yīn xiàng shēn kè——cóng háo huá jiā o chē dào shū shì lì chē, cóng lín lín mǎn mǎn de shāng diàn dào fēng fù duō cǎi de yú lè huó dòng, zài dào biàn jié de tiē lù hé háng kōng wǎng luò, dé lǐ wéi yóu kè tí gōng le shì jiè yī liú shuǐ zhǔn dì fú wù yǔ biàn lì. Kě yǐ shuō, zài dé lǐ jī hū méi yǒu zhǎo bù dào de dōng xī. Yóu lǎn dé lǐ jiāng chéng wéi nín zuì nán wàng de jì yì zhī yī.

Délǐ hé xīn dé lǐ yǒng yǒu zhǎng dá 3000 nián de lì shǐ, ér rú jīn, zhè zuò chéng shì yǐ fā zhǎn wéi yī gè yǔ shí jù jìn de xiàndài huà dà dū shì. Tè bié shì xīn dé lǐ, yǐ jīng rén de sù dù fā shēng zhe bì àn huà, chéng wéi yǐn lǐng shí dài cháo liú de chéng shì. Rán'ér, dé lǐ de lì shǐ hé wén huà yī chǎn yě tāo ng yàng zhí dé jiāo'ào. Zài zhè zuò chéng shì zhōng, jiù dé lǐ shì bù kě cuò guò de bù fèn, tā yǒng yǒu 3000 nián de lì shǐ, shì mò wò ér huáng dì shā jiǎ hàn (Shah Jahan) píng jiē fēi fán de jiàn zhù rè qíng ér dǎ zào de yī zuò chéng bǎo dū shì. Jiù dé lǐ de jiē dào chōng mǎn le nóng hòu de lì shǐ fēn wéi, shì jí shí āng pǐn fēng fù duō cǎi, rén qún xī xī rǎng rǎng, zhǎn xiǎn le yī fú máng lǜ ér yòu shēng jī bó bó de huà mǐ àn. Wú lùn nín shì tàn suǒ xiàndài de dū shì qí xī, hái shì gǎn shòu gǔ lǎo de wén huà chuán chéng, dé lǐ dōu jiāng wéi nín tí gōng dú tè de tǐ yàn. Zài zhè lǐ, měi gè jiāo luò dōu jiǎng shù zhe yī duàn lì shǐ, měi gè jǐng diǎn dōu yùn cáng zhe fēng fù de gù shì. Dé lǐ zhù dìng huì chéng wéi nín de yīndù zhī lǚ zhōng zuì nán wàng de yí zhàn.

I. Delhi

Delhi is a vibrant metropolis that has captivated people from around the world for centuries. Surrounding the city are numerous historical landmarks, and its ancient walls have witnessed countless rises and falls of empires. On August 15, 1947, India's first Prime Minister, Jawaharlal Nehru, declared the end of British colonial rule at the Red

Fort, raising the Indian flag and marking the beginning of modern Indian history.

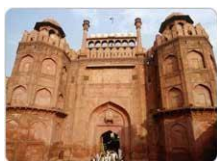
Today, Delhi is not only the capital of India but also the legislative and administrative center of the nation. It serves as a hub for welcoming global leaders, diplomats, and international delegations, and it frequently hosts sporting events, cultural festivals, and international conferences. As the primary gateway for most international travellers entering India, Delhi boasts impressive infrastructure. From luxurious cars and comfortable trains to vibrant shopping venues, diverse entertainment options, and a world-class rail and aviation network, the city offers an exceptional level of convenience for visitors. It can truly be said that there's nothing you can't find in Delhi. Visiting Delhi is sure to be one of your most unforgettable experiences.

Delhi, along with New Delhi, has a history spanning over 3,000 years. Today, the city has evolved into a rapidly transforming modern metropolis. New Delhi, in particular, is changing at an astonishing pace and has become a city at the forefront of modernity. At the same time, Delhi's rich history and cultural heritage remain its pride.

One must not miss Old Delhi, a part of the city steeped in 3,000 years of history. It was created by the visionary Mughal emperor Shah Jahan, who built it as a fortified city fueled by his passion for grand architecture. The streets of Old Delhi are filled with a profound historical atmosphere, its markets overflowing with diverse goods, and its bustling crowds exude an energy that is both chaotic and lively.

Whether you're exploring the modern urban landscape or immersing yourself in the ancient cultural traditions, Delhi offers a truly unique experience. Every corner tells a story of the past, and every site is a testament to its rich history. Delhi is destined to be one of the most memorable stops on your journey through India.

1. 红堡 (Red Fort)



红堡是一座由红色砂岩建造的宏伟城堡，建于 17 世纪中叶，由莫卧儿王朝第五代君主沙贾汗

(Shah Jahan) 所修建。红堡的拉合尔门 (Lahore Gate) 正对着老德里著名的商业街——月光集市 (Chandni Chowk)，它是这座古老城市最具代表性的建筑之一。红堡是印度古老伊斯兰文化的瑰宝，坐落在德里旧城的东北部，毗邻亚穆纳河的西岸。据传，沙贾汗因丧妻而在阿格拉伤感不已，决定迁都至德里，并仿照阿格拉堡设计修建了红堡。工程始于 1638 年，历时近十

年，于 1647 年完工，总耗资约九千万卢比，是印度规模最大的王宫之一。

红堡的城墙长 915 米，宽 518 米，主门拉合尔门至今仍显雄伟壮观。尽管经历了几次战乱，红堡失去了往昔的辉煌，但巍峨的红色城墙和部分保存完好的建筑依然让人能够窥见昔日的辉煌景象。

在红堡巨大的城墙内，有许多令人叹为观止的宫殿和建筑，其中包括皇室会客厅——用无价之宝装饰的“私人会客厅” (Diwan-i-Khas)。这里曾是莫卧儿皇帝接见贵宾的场所，充满皇家气派。此外，红堡整体呈不规则的八边形结构，南北长 915 米，东西宽 548 米，城墙高 33.5 米，是一座结合了美学与防御功能的杰作。红堡的恢宏与历史意义，使其成为德里乃至印度的象征。

Hóng bǎo shì yī zuò yóu hóng sè shā yán jiàn zào de hóng wěi chéng bǎo, jiàn yú 17 shì jì zhōng yè, yóu mò wò èr wáng cháo dì wǔ dài jūn zhǔ shā jiǎ hàn (Shah Jahan) suǒ xī jiàn. Hóng bǎo de lā hé ěr mén (Lahore Gate) zhèng duì zhe lǎo dé lǐ zhù míng de shāng yè jī — yuè guāng jí shì (Chandni Chowk), tā shì zhè zuò gǔ lǎo chéng shì zūi jù dài biǎo xìng de jiàn zhù zhī yī. Hóng bǎo shì yī dòng gǔ lǎo yī sī lán wén huà de guī bǎo, zuò luò zài dé lǐ jiù chéng de dōng běi bù, pílín yà mù nà hé de xī àn. Jù zhuān, shā jiǎ hàn yīn sǎng qī ér zài ā gé lā shāng gǎn bù yǐ, jué dìng qiān dū zhì dé lǐ, bìng fǎng zhào ā gé lā bǎo shè jì xī jiàn le hóng bǎo. Gōng chéng shǐ yú 1638 nián, lì shí jìn shí nián, yú 1647 nián wáng ōng, zǒng hào zī yuē jǐ qiān wàn lú bǐ, shì yī dòng gǔ mó zū dà de wáng gōng zhī yī.

Hóng bǎo de chéng qiáng zhǎng 915 mǐ, kuān 518 mǐ, zhǔ mén lā hé ěr mén zhī jīn réng xiǎn xióng wǔ zhuàng guān. Jīng guān jīng lì le jǐ cì zhàn luàn, hóng bǎo shì qù le wǎng xī de huī huáng, dàn wéi'è de hóng sè chéng qiáng hé bù fēn bǎo cún

wánhǎo de jiànzhùyīrán ràng rén nénggòu kuījiàn xīrì de huīhuáng jǐngxiàng. Zài hóng bǎo jù dà de chéngqíáng nèi, yǒu xǔduō líng rén tàn wéiguānzhǐ de gōngdiàn hé jiànzhú, qí zhōng bāokuò huángshì huì kètīng——yòng wújiàzhībǎo zhuāngshì de “sīrén huì kètīng” (Diwan-i-Khas). Zhèlǐ céng shì mò wò ér huángdì jiējiàn guībīn de chǎngsuǒ, chōngmǎn huángjiā qì pài. Cǐwài, hóng bǎo zhěngtǐ chéng bù guīzé de bā biān xíng jiégòu, nánběi zhǎng 915 mǐ, dōngxī kuān 548 mǐ, chéngqíáng gāo 33.5 mǐ, shì yīzuò jiéhéle měixué yǔ fángyù gōngnéng de jiézuò. Hóng bǎo de huīhóng yǔ lǐshíyìyì, shǐqíchéngwéi dé lǐ nǎizhì yìndù de xiàngzhēng.

1. Red Fort

The Red Fort is an impressive fortress made of red sandstone, built in the mid-17th century by Shah Jahan, the fifth emperor of the Mughal Empire. The Lahore Gate of the fort faces the famous marketplace of Old Delhi, Chandni Chowk, making it one of the most iconic landmarks of this ancient city.

The Red Fort represents the architectural brilliance of India's Islamic heritage and is located in the northeastern part of Old Delhi, on the western bank of the Yamuna River. Legend has it that Shah Jahan, grieving over the loss of his wife Mumtaz Mahal, found Agra too melancholic and decided to move the capital to Delhi. He commissioned the construction of the Red Fort, modeled after the famous Agra Fort. The construction began in 1638 and was completed in 1647, taking nearly ten years and costing approximately 90 million rupees. It stands as one of the largest royal palaces in India.

The Red Fort stretches 915 meters in length and 518 meters in width, with its majestic Lahore Gate still exuding an aura of grandeur. Although the fort has endured several wars and lost much of its former splendor, the towering red walls and partially intact palaces provide a glimpse into its glorious past.

Within the massive walls of the Red Fort lie numerous palaces and structures that seem almost like scenes from an animated film. Among them is the "Hall of Private Audience" (Diwan-i-Khas), a stunning royal reception hall where the emperor once received important dignitaries, seated on a throne adorned with priceless jewels. The fort, with its irregular octagonal shape, measures 915 meters from north to south, 548 meters from east to west, and has walls 33.5 meters high. Its grandeur and historical significance make it a symbol of Delhi and an enduring treasure of India.

2. 贾马清真寺 (Jama Masjid)



贾玛清真寺 (Jama Masjid) 是印度德里最宏伟、最优雅清真寺之一，也是印度最大的清真寺。这座标志性建筑坐落于红堡对面的山丘上，其雄伟壮丽的外观与湛蓝的天空相映成趣，吸引了无数游客和信徒。寺修建于 1644 年至 1658 年间，由莫卧儿皇帝沙贾汗主持建造，他也是著名的泰姬陵的建造者。据说，在贾玛清真寺的原址上，曾经有一座佛教寺庙。然而，在穆斯林占领后，这座佛寺被改建为清真寺，成为当时伊斯兰建筑的巅峰之作。这座清真寺以其巨大的规模和精致的建筑而闻名。整个建筑的墙壁、屋顶和地面均采用白色石材精工雕刻而成，没有使用一块木料。为了增强结构的坚固性，建筑的接缝部分使用了铅灌注。清真寺内设有十三个石制壁龛，每一个都展现了精湛的工艺，讲经台也完全由石头打造。贾玛清真寺的四周围绕着四个宽敞的庭院。其中，北侧的庭院内矗立着一座由红砂岩建成的高塔，塔顶采用雪白的大理石装饰，顶端的苹果形装饰是用纯金锤炼而成。塔内的螺旋楼梯宽敞得足以让大象攀登。据说在清真寺的建设过程中，大象曾被用来将巨石运送至塔顶。未完成的宣礼塔：在清真寺的四座宣礼塔中，有一座只完成了三分之一，被称为“仪式塔”。这座塔的体积十分庞大，内部的环形楼梯宽阔到可以容纳大象同时攀爬。在当时，这种规模和设计被誉为“世界奇迹”，展现了莫卧儿帝国高超的建筑技术和艺术成就。

贾玛清真寺不仅是一座宗教建筑，也是莫卧儿时期辉煌建筑艺术的象征。它的雄伟规模和细致工艺，反映了当时的社会经济实力和文化高度。今天，这座清真寺不仅是穆斯林信徒的重要礼拜场所，也是德里旅游的热门景点之一，吸引着来自世界各地的游客。

贾玛清真寺作为历史与文化的见证，其建筑之美和历史价值让人叹为观止。这座清真寺不仅是一座宗教圣地，更是莫卧儿建筑艺术的瑰宝，象征着印度多元文化的交融与辉煌历史的传承。

Jiǎ mǎ qīngzhēnsì (Jama Masjid) shì yìn duó déli zuì hóngwěi, zuì yōuyǎ de qīngzhēnsì zhī yī, yěshì yìndù zuì dà de qīngzhēnsì. Zhè zuò biāozhì xìng jiànzhù zuòluò yú hóng bǎo duìmiàn de shān qiū shàng, qí xióngwěi zhuànglì de wàiguān yǔ zhànlán de tiānkōng xiāngyìng chéngqù, xī yīn liǎo wúshù yóukè hé xīntú. Sì xiūjiàn yú 1644 nián zhì 1658 niánjiān, yóu mò wò'ér huángdì shì jiǎ hàn zhǔchí jiànzhào, tā yěshì zhùmíng de tài jī líng de jiànzhào zhě. Jùshuō, zài jiǎ mǎ qīngzhēnsì de yuánzhǐ shàng, céngjīng yǒu yī zuò fójiào sìmiào. Rán'ér, zài mùsīlín zhānlǐng hòu, zhè zuò fósi bèi gǎijiàn wéi qīngzhēnsì, chéngwéi dāngshí yīsīlán jiànzhù de diǎnfēng zhī zuò. Zhè zuò qīngzhēnsì yǐ qí jù dà de guīmó hé jīngzhì de jiànzhù ér wénmíng. Zhènggè jiànzhù de qiángbì, wūdǐng hé diànmiàn jūn cǎiyòng báisè shícai jīnggōng diāokè ér chéng, méiyǒu shǐyòng yīkuài mùliào. Wèile zēngqiáng jiégòu de jiāngù xìng, jiànzhù de jiē fēng bùfēn shǐyòng le qiān guānzhù. Qīngzhēnsì nèi shè yǒu shí sān gè shí zhī bì kān, měi yīgè dōu zhǎnxiǎn le jīngzhàn de gōngyì, jiǎng jīng tāi yě wánquán yóu shítou dǎzào. Jiǎ mǎ qīngzhēnsì de sìzhōu wéirào zhe sì gè kuānchǎng de tíngyù àn. Qízhōng, běi cè de tíngyuàn nèi chùlì zhe yī zuò yóu hóng shāyán jiànchéng de gāo tǎ, tǎ dǐng cǎiyòng xuēbái de dàlìshí zhuāngshì, dǐngduān dì píngguǒ xíng zhuāngshì shì yòng chún jīn chuī liàn ér chéng. Tǎ nèi de luó xuán lóutī kuānchǎng dé zú yǐ ràng dà xiàng pāndēng. Jùshuō zài qīngzhēnsì de jiànshè guòchéng zhōng, dà xiàng céng bèi yòng lái jiāng jùshí yùnsòng zhì tǎ dǐng. Wèi wánchéng de xuān lǐ tǎ: Zài qīngzhēnsì de sìzuò xuān lǐ tǎ zhōng, yǒu yī zuò zhǐ wánchéng le sān fēn zhī yī, bèi chēng wéi "yíshìtǎ". Zhè zuò tǎ de tǐjī shí fēn páng dà, nèi bù de huán xíng lóutī kuān kuò dào kě yǐ róng nà dà xiàng tóng shí pān pá. Zài dāngshí, zhè zhǒng guīmó hé shèjì bèi yù wéi "shìjiè qíjì", zhǎnxiǎn le mò wò'ér dì guó gāo cháo de jiànzhù jìshù hé yìshù chéngjiù.

Mǎ qīngzhēnsì bùjīn shì yī zuò zōngjiào jiànzhù, yěshì mò wò'ér shíqí huīhuáng jiànzhù yìshù de xiàngzhēng. Tā de xióngwěi guīmó hé xìzhì gōngyì, fǎn yìng liǎo dàng shí de shèhuì jīngjì lìshǐ hé wénhuà gāodù. Jīntiān, zhè zuò qīngzhēnsì bùjīn shì mùsīlín xīntú de zhōngyào lǐbài chǎngsuǒ, yěshì délì lǚyóu de rè mén jǐngdiǎn zhī yī, xīyīn zhe lái zhī shì jiè gè dì de yóukè.

Jiǎ mǎ qīngzhēnsì zuò wéi lìshǐ yǔ wénhuà de jiànzhèng, qí jiànzhù zhī měi hé lìshǐ jiàzhí ràng rén tàn wéi guānzhī. Zhè zuò qīngzhēnsì bùjīn shì yī zuò zōngjiào shèngdì, gèng shì mò wò'ér jiànzhù yìshù de guībǎo, xiàngzhēng zhe yìndù duōyuán wénhuà de jiāoróng yǔ huīhuáng lìshǐ de chuánchéng.

2. Jama Masjid

Jama Masjid, located in Delhi, is one of the most magnificent and elegant mosques in India and also the largest. This iconic structure is perched on a hillock opposite the Red Fort, its grandeur set against the backdrop of a vivid blue sky, drawing countless visitors and worshippers alike.

Jama Masjid was constructed between 1644 and 1658 under the reign of Mughal Emperor Shah Jahan, who is also renowned for building the Taj Mahal. It is said that a Buddhist temple originally stood on the site, but after the Muslim conquest, the temple was transformed into a mosque, becoming a masterpiece of Islamic architecture.

The mosque is famous for its immense size and exquisite craftsmanship. Its walls, roof, and floor are all meticulously crafted from white stone, and not a single piece of wood was used in its construction. To ensure durability, lead was poured into the seams of the structure. Inside the mosque, there are thirteen stone niches, each showcasing exceptional artistry, and the pulpit is also entirely made of stone. Surrounding the mosque are four spacious courtyards. The northern courtyard features a towering minaret made of red sandstone, crowned with white marble decorations. Atop the minaret is an apple-shaped ornament crafted from pure gold. The spiral staircase inside the tower is so wide that even an elephant could climb it. It is said that during the mosque's construction, elephants were used to transport large stones to the top.

The Unfinished Minaret

Among the mosque's four minarets, one remains only one-third complete. Known as the "Ceremonial Tower," it is remarkable for its massive size, with a wide spiral staircase capable of accommodating an elephant climbing with

ease. At the time of its construction, this architectural feat was hailed as a "wonder of the world," showcasing the advanced engineering and artistic capabilities of the Mughal Empire.

Jama Masjid is not only a religious structure but also a testament to the grandeur of Mughal-era architecture. Its majestic scale and intricate craftsmanship reflect the socio-economic strength and cultural sophistication of the period. Today, it remains an important place of worship for Muslims and a prominent tourist attraction in Delhi, drawing visitors from around the globe.

Jama Masjid stands as a witness to history and culture, its architectural beauty and historical significance leaving visitors in awe. More than just a place of worship, this mosque is a treasure of Mughal architectural heritage, symbolizing the fusion of India's diverse cultures and the legacy of its glorious past.

3. 康诺特广场 (Connaught Place)

该广场是新德里的中心点，是商业，参观与交通中心。它是一个圆形大谷广场，各式商店，参观据点，航空公司几个邦政府经营的物产经销处都设在这里，热闹非凡，广场中央有一个小公园，很多人都在这里休息，广场西南的国会街上，有银行，广播电台及政府机构。

Kāng nuòtèguǎngchǎng (Connaught Place)

gāi guǎngchǎng shì xīndélí de zhōngxīn diǎn, shì shāngyè, cānguān yú jiāotōng zhōngxīn. Tā shì yīgè yuán xíng dàgǔ guǎngchǎng, gè shì shāngdiàn, cānguān jùdiǎn, hángkōng gōngsī jǐ gè bāng zhèngfǔ jīngyíng de wùchǎn jīngxiāo chù dōu shè zài zhèlǐ, rènao fēifán, guǎngchǎng zhōngyǎng yǒu yīgè xiǎo gōngyuán, hěnduō rén dōu zài zhèlǐ xiūxi, guǎngchǎng xīnán de guóhuì jiē shàng, yǒu yínháng, guǎngbò diàntái jí zhèngfǔ jīgòu.

Connaught Place

This square is the central point of New Delhi, it is also the centre of trade, visit, and communication. It is a round and big valley shaped square. Here you may find various types of shops, places of visit, aviation company offices, and shopping outlets of the various state governments, atmosphere remains lively. There is a small park in the centre, where people take rest after tiresome shopping. In the parliament street, at southwest of the square, there are banks, radio station and government offices.

4. 拉杰巴特(Raj Path)



与这一中世纪城市并排的就是巨大的新都市新德里，英国统治印度是(Edwin Lutyens) 国务考虑到未来，是按照英式设计的城市。象征着新德里的中心道路拉杰巴特(Raj Path) 是连接山丘上总统府 (Rastrapati Bhawan) 和战争纪念碑印度门 (India Gate) 的笔直的道路。位于总统府左右的淡黄色雄壮的建筑物是引导印度发展的政府行政官厅。以放射线方式通向四面八方的周边有整齐的草坪，白色孟加拉式建筑物群是政府管理人员使用的官舍。顺着印象深刻的圆形建筑物国会议事堂向斜线方向往里走去到最里边可以看到的就是圆形商业街康诺特广场，康诺特广场 (Connaught Place) 其中心是由花树和喷泉组成的公园。

Yǔ zhè yī zhōngshìjì chéngshì bīngpái de jiùshì jùdà de xīn dūshì xīndélí, yīngguó tǒngzhì yīndù shì (Edwin Lutyens) guówù kǎolù dào wèilái, shì ànzhào yīng shì shèjì de chéngshì. Xiàngzhēngzhe xīndélí de zhōngxīn dàolù lā jié bāte (Raj Path) shì liánjiē shān qiū shàng zǒngtǒng fǔ (Rastrapati Bhawan) hé zhànzhēng jiniàn wù yīndù mén (India Gate) de bízhi de dàolù. Wèiyú zǒngtǒng fǔ zuǒyòu de dàn huángsè xióngzhuàng de jiànzhú wù shì yīndǎo yīndù fāzhǎn de zhèngfǔ xíngzhèng guāntīng. Yí fāngshèxiàn fāngshì tǒng xiàng simiànbāfāng de zhōubiān yǒu zhěngqí de cǎopíng, báisè mèngjiālā shì jiànzhú wù qún shì zhèngfǔ guǎnlǐ rényuán shīyòng de guān shě. Shùnzhe yīnxiàng shēnkè de yuán xíng jiànzhú wù guóhuì yìshì táng xiàng xié xiàn fāngxiàng wǎng lǐ zǒu qù dào zuì libian kěyǐ kàn dào de jiùshì yuán xíng shāngyè jiē kāng nuò tè guǎngchǎng, kāng nuò tè guǎngchǎng (Connaught Place) qí zhōngxīn shì yóu huā shù hé pēnquán zǔchéng de gōngyuán.

Raj Path

Side by side this middle century cold city, there is a huge new metropolitan city New Delhi. While Britain ruled over India, Edwin Lutyens thought of designing a city in the future as per the British pattern. Symbolizes the

Central path ,Rajpath of New Delhi. Rajpath is a straight path which links Rastrapati Bhawan build on a hillock and War memorial named India Gate.

Straw yellow coloured magnificent structures located on both left and right side of the Rastrapati Bhawan are the government administrative offices leading the development of India. All around there are beautiful lawns, white coloured Bangla style structures are the residences of government officials. Round shaped building attracting our attention is the Parliament House. If we walk further we can see a round shaped market Connaught Place, its centre is a park with flowers trees and showers.

5. 印度门 (India Gate)



在拉杰巴特,我们远处可以看到一个大门,这是纪念第一次世界大战时印度战士的牺牲的碑叫 印度门。印度门高四十八点七米,宽二十一点三米,拱门高四十二米。顶端有一个圆石盆是一个油灯,现在已经不用了,现在印度政府已经把油灯改为瓦斯灯放在拱门下边,二十四小时燃烧。印度门是为了纪念第一次世界大战死亡的印度军人而建,印度门的墙上刻着印度军人的名字,差不多有一万三千六百。每年的一月二十六号印度过共和庆日,印度阅兵在印度门举行。印度门在一九二一年由英国政府建造的。第一次世界大战里九万将士战死了,第一次世界大战差不多进行了五年。一九二一年开始修建,一九三一年建完了,一共有十多年的工夫。

Zài lā jié bā tè wǒ men yuǎn chù kě yǐ kàn dào yī gè dà mén, zhè shì jì niàn dì yī cì shì jiè dà zhàn shí yī ndù zhàn shì dì xī shēng de bēi jiào yī ndù mén. Yī ndù mén gāo sì shí bā diǎn qī mǐ, kuān èr shí yī diǎn sān mǐ, gǒng mén gāo sì shí èr mǐ. Dīng duān yǒu yī gè yuán shí pén shì yī gè yóu dēng, xiàn zài yǐ jīng bù yòng le, xiàn zài yī ndù zhèng fǔ yǐ jīng bǎ yóu dēng gǎi wéi wǎ sī dēng fàng zài gǒng mén xià bian, èr shí sì xiǎo shí rán shāo, yī ndù mén shì wéi le jì niàn dì yī cì shì jiè dà zhàn sǐ wáng de yī ndù jūn rén ér jiàn, yī ndù mén de qiáng shàng kè zhe yī ndù jūn rén de míng zì, chà bù duō yǒu yī wàn sān qiān liù bǎi. Měi nián de yī yuè èr shí liù hào yī ndù guó gòng hé qīng rì, yī ndù yuè bīng zài yī ndù mén jǔ xíng. Yī ndù mén zài yī jiǔ èr yī nián yóu yīng guó zhèng fǔ jiàn zào de, dì yī cì shì jiè dà zhàn lǐ jiǔ wàn jiāng shì zhàn sǐ le, dì yī cì shì jiè dà zhàn chà bù duō jìn xíng le wǔ nián. Yī jiǔ èr yī nián kāi shǐ xiū jiàn, yī jiǔ sān yī nián jiàn wán liǎo, yī gòng yǒu le shí duō nián de gōng fū.

India Gate

At the Rajpath, we can see a huge gate in a far-off place. This is the Monument commemorating the sacrifice of Indian soldiers during the First World War, known as India Gate. India Gate is 48.7 meters high, 21.3 meters broad. The Height of the arched door is 42 meters. On top, there is a round stone plate, which was an oil lamp; presently, it has already been out of use. Now Indian government has already replaced the oil lamp with a gas lamp, which is placed under the arched door, and it is continuously burned for 24 hours. India Gate was constructed to commemorate the Indian soldiers killed in the First World War, their names are engraved on the walls of the India Gate. There are almost 13600 names on it. On 26th January of every year, India celebrates Republic Day. A grand parade is organized at India Gate. India Gate was constructed by the British government in 1921. 90000 soldiers died in the First World War, and it was carried out for almost 5 years. Its construction began in 1921 and was completed in 1931, taking a total of 10 years.

6. 印度总统府 Rashtrapati Bhavan



总统府内有一处十分有名的花园，是仿照莫卧儿王朝时代的花园格调而建，故名“莫卧儿花园”。花园分为形态各异的方园、长园和圆园，种有成千上万种名花异草，每年开放期间，来此观赏的人络绎不绝。走出总统府正门，映入眼帘的是一条宽阔而笔直的“国家大道”，直通印度门。虽然大道只有几十米宽，但分布着许多政府机构，如外交部、国防部等。另外还有几十座富丽堂皇的王宫。这里绿树葱茏，碧草如茵，清静幽雅。总统府建于1929年，原名维多利亚宫，印度独立后，改为总统府。总统府是一座气势雄宏的宫殿式建筑，有觐见厅、宴会厅、图书馆等华丽的厅堂，还有无数喷泉水池、亭榭长廊。小山东北的议会大厦和王子公园里的印度门，也都是壮丽的建筑。

Zǒngtǒng fǔnèi yǒuyī chù shífēn yǒumíng de huāyuán, shì fǎngzhào mò wò er wángcháo shídài de huāyuán gédiào ér jiàn, gù míng “mò wò er huāyuán”. Huāyuán fēn wéi xíngtài gè yì de fāng yuán, zhǎng yuán hé yuán yuán, zhǒng yǒu chéng qiān shàng wàn zhǒng míng huā yì cǎo, měinián kāifàng qíjiān, lái cǐ guānshǎng de rén luòyì bù jué. Zǒuchū zǒngtǒng fǔ zhèngmén, yìng rù yǎnlián de shì yītiáo kuānkuò ér bǐzhí de “guójiā dàdào”, zhítōng yìndù mén. Suīrán dàdào zhǐyǒu jǐ shí mǐ kuān, dàn fēnbùzhe xǔduō zhèngfǔ jīgòu, rú wàijiāo bù, guófāng bù děng. Língwài hái yǒu jǐ shí zuò fùlì tánghuáng de wánggōng. Zhèlǐ lǜ shù cōnglóng, bì cǎo rú yīn, qīngjìng yōuyǎ. Zǒngtǒng fǔ jiàn yú 1929 nián, yuánmíng wéiduōlìyǎ gōng, yìndù dúlì hòu, gǎi wéi zǒngtǒng fǔ. Zǒngtǒng fǔ shì yīzuò qìshì xióng hóng de gōngdiàn shì jiànzhù, yǒu jìn jìng jiàn tīng, yànhuì tīng, túshū guǎn děng huá lì de tīngtáng, hái yǒu wúshù pēnquán shuǐchí, tíng xiè cháng láng. Xiǎoshān dōngběi de yìhuì dàshà hé wángzǐ gōngyuán lǐ de yìndù mén, yě dū shì zhuànglì de jiànzhù.

Rashtrapati Bhavan

There is a famous garden inside Rashtrapati Bhavan, which is built in the style of the parks of the Mughal dynasty era. In ancient times, it was known as the “Mughal Garden”. The garden is divided into different-shaped parks like the square park, long park and a round park. There are thousands of varieties of flowers and grass. During the opening period for visitors, the people coming here for a visit is numerous. As we come out of the Rashtrapati Bhavan’s main entrance, we may see a wide and straight “Raj Path” which straightaway leads to India Gate. Although the path is only a few decameter broad, but distributed among many government organizations, like the foreign ministry, defence ministry, etc. There are also a few magnificent palaces. Here you will find luxuriantly green trees, a carpet of green grass, and a quiet and tastefully laid out place.

Rashtrapati Bhavan was built in 1929, originally named Victoria Palace. After Indian independence, it was renamed as Rashtrapati Bhavan. Rashtrapati Bhavan is a grand palatial structure, having a court hall, a banquet hall, a Library, etc, beautiful halls, also, there are many showers and ponds, a pavilion corridor. Parliament House in the northeast of the hill and India Gate in the Prince Park are magnificent structures.

7. 库杜布塔 (Kutub Minar)



建于一一九三 年 高达 72.5 米 的 库杜布塔 (Kutub Minar) 是印度著名的伊斯兰建筑, 坐落在新德里南部。该塔号称, 印度七大奇迹之一, 是印度最高的塔。这座他是用红沙石砌成, 全塔一共有五层, 每层外形都不相同, 第一层是二十四 个交叠的三角 形柱子, 第二层是半圆形, 第三层是三角形, 第四层主要是用白色大理石建造的, 第四, 第五是十四, 十五世纪重建的塔身刻著古老阿拉伯文大古兰经, 经文, 在塔底层的大门上刻有一句名言。谁在地上为真主修建清真寺真主就在天国为他建造同样的寓所。关于这个塔德来历, 历史学家众说纷纭。从塔的石壁上的刻文来看, 这座塔是德里最后一个印度教统治者乔汉为他的王后建造的。这位王后希望每天都能登高望远, 看到神圣的亚穆纳河, 一八九九年穆斯林将军, 印度第一位穆斯林皇帝库杜布丁伊巴克为纪念伊斯兰教打败印度教, 所以 把它改建成伊斯兰风格。到了十四世纪中叶才完工, 并以当时著名素菲派圣徒库杜布丁, 巴赫提亚尔的名字命名。

Jiàn yú yīyījiǔsān nián gāodá 72.5 Mǐ de kù dù bù tǎ (Kutub Minar) shì yìndù zhùmíng de yīslán jiànzhú, zuòluò zài xīndélǐ nánbù. Gāi tǎ hàochēng, yìndù qī dà qíjī zhī yī, shì yìndù zuìgāo de tǎ. Zhè zuò tǎ shì yòng hóng shā shí qì chéng, quán tǎ yīgòng yǒu wǔ céng, měi céng wàixíng dōu bù xiāngtóng, dì yī céng shí'èrshísi gè jiāo dié de sānjiǎoxíng zhùzi, dì èr céng shì bàn yuán xíng, dì sān céng shì sānjiǎoxíng, dì sì céng zhǔyào shì yòng báisè dàlǐshí jiànzhào de, dì sì, dì wǔ shì shísi, shíwǔ shìjì chóngjiàn de tǎ shēn kèzhe gǔlǎo ālābó wéndà gǔlánjīng, jīng wén, zài tǎ dǐcéng de dàmén shàng kè yǒu yījù míngyán. Shéi zài dìshàng wéi zhēnzhǔ xiūjiàn qīngzhēnsī zhēnzhǔ jiù zài dàguó wèi tā jiànzhào tóngyàng de yùsuǒ, guānyú zhège tǎ dé láilì, lìshǐ xué jiā zhòngshuōfēnyún, cóng tǎ de shíbì shàng de kè wén lái kàn, zhè zuò tǎ shì déli zuìhòu yīgè yìndùjiào tǒngzhì zhě qiáo hàn wèi tā de wáng hòu jiànzhào de, zhè wèi wáng hòu xīwàng měitiān dū néng dēnggāo wàng yuǎn, kàn dào shénshèng de yà mù nà hé, yīyījiǔjiǔ nián mùsīlín jiāngjūn, yìndù dì yī wèi mùsīlín huángdì kù dù bùdīng yī bākè wèi jìniàn yīslán jiào dǎbài yìndùjiào, suǒyǐ bǎ tā gǎijiàn chéng yīslán fēnggé, dàole shísi shìjì zhōngyè cái wángōng, bìng yǐ dāngshí zhùmíng sù fēi pài shèng tú kù dù bùdīng, bāhè tí yà ěr de míngzì míngmíng.

Kutub Minar

Built in 1193, 72.5m high Kutub Minar is one of the famous Islamic architectures. It is located in the southern part of New Delhi. This tower is called one of the seven wonders of India, and it is the highest tower in India. This was constructed with red stone, the whole tower has a total of five stories, external shape of each story is different, the first story comprise of overlapping triangular columns of 12,14 corners, the second story is semi-circular, the third story is triangular, the fourth story is mainly built with white marble, fourth, fifth stories of the Minar were reconstructed during 14th and 15th century. On the tower, there are some famous ancient Arabic Koran and scriptures. On the main gate of the bottom story, a well-known saying is engraved. Whosoever constructs a mosque on the earth for Allah, Allah constructs the same type of dwelling for him in heaven. Regarding the moral history of this tower, Historians have divergent views. If we see, taking the inscriptions on the stone walls, the tower was constructed by the last Hindu ruler of Delhi, Chauhan, for his Queen. The Queen was fond of seeing the sacred river Yamuna every day from this far-off place by climbing on it. A Muslim general in 1199, India's first Muslim emperor, Kudubuddin Aibak, constructed it to commemorate the defeat of Hinduism by Islam, so it was turned into the Islamic style. It was completed by the middle of the fourteenth century, and it was named after the name of a well-known Sufi Saints Kudubuddin Pahetiyar, at the time

8. 莲花庙 Bahai Temple



莲花庙是巴哈伊教所建，巴哈伊教在世界上一共有七座灵曦堂，（分别为：美国的威尔梅特、乌干达的坎帕拉、澳大利亚的悉尼、德国的法兰克福、巴拿马城、西萨摩亚的阿皮亚和印度的新德里）它们提供灵曦堂给所有不同宗教和种族背景人，去崇拜宇宙的创造者。德里的莲花庙是最新的一座灵曦堂，它设计的形状就像一朵莲花所以他的形状就像一朵莲花，莲花生产在水中，所以莲花庙有九个大水池环绕着，这个水池就像是天然的令气，因此莲花庙里不需要令气设备就觉得很凉爽。

黄昏时的莲花庙最为美妙，可观赏喷泉。莲花庙周围有美丽的花园，可以在花园中静默祈祷或者漫步。莲花庙的外貌酷似一朵盛开的莲花，故称“莲花庙”。莲花代表着印度教、佛教、耆那教和伊斯兰教的同一，不论是哪个宗教的信徒都可以来这里祈祷，沉思。在莲花庙，每种宗教都是平等的。

莲花庙高 34.27 米，底坐直径 74 米，由三层的一共二十七花瓣组成，全部采用白色大理石建造。中央大厅座位可容纳一千三百人。底座边上有 9 个连环的清水池，拱托着这巨大的“莲花”。莲花庙的内部设置十分简单，只是一个高大开阔的圣殿。既无神像，也无雕刻、壁画等装饰性物件。惟有光滑的地板上安放着一排排白色大理石长椅。白色是该庙最主要的色调。进庙的教徒以及参观的人也不需进行什么特殊的仪式，要脱鞋进殿，走到大理石椅上就座，然后沉思默祷就行。特别是日落时分的景色堪称一绝。

Liánhuā miào shì bā hā yī jiào suǒ jiàn, bā hā yī jiào zài shìjiè shàng yīgòng yǒu qī zuò líng xī táng, (Fēnbié wèi: Měiguó de wēi ěr méi tè, wūgāndá de kǎn pà lā, àodàliǎ de xīnì, déguó de fǎlánkèfú, bānámǎ chéng, xī sànmó yǎ de ā pí yǎ hé yìndù de xīndélì) tāmen tígōng líng xī táng gěi suǒyǒu bùtóng zōngjiào hé zhōngzú bèijīng rén, qù chóngbài yǔzhòu de chuàngzào zhě. Déli de liánhuā miào shì zuìxīn de yīzuò líng xī táng, tā shèjì de xíngzhuàng jiù xiàng yī duǒ liánhuā suǒyǐ tā de xíngzhuàng jiù xiàng yī duǒ liánhuā, liánhuā shēngchǎn zài shuǐzhōng, suǒyǐ liánhuā miào yǒu jiǔ gè dà shuǐchí huánràozhe, zhè jiù gè shuǐchí jiù xiàng shì tiānrán de líng qì, yīncǐ liánhuā miào lǐ bù xūyào líng qì shèbèi jiù juédé hěn liángshuǎng. Huánghūn shí de liánhuā miào zuìwéi měimiào, kě guānshǎng pēnquán. Liánhuā miào zhōuwéiyǒu měilì de huāyuán, kěyǐ zài huāyuán zhōng jìngmò qídǎo huòzhě mǎnbù. Liánhuā miào de wàimào kùisī yī duǒ shèngkāi de liánhuā, gù chēng “liánhuā miào”. Liánhuā dàibiǎozhuó yìndùjiào, fójiào, qí nà jiào hé yīslán jiào de tóngyī, bùlùn shì nǎge zōngjiào de xìntú dōu kěyǐ lái zhèlǐ qídǎo, chénsī. Zài liánhuā miào, měi zhǒng zōngjiào dōu shì píngděng de. Liánhuā miào gāo 34.27 Mǐ, dīzuò zhíjīng 74 mǐ, yǒu sān céng de yīgòng èrshíqī gè huābàn zǔchéng, quánbù cǎiyòng báisè dàlǐshí jiànzào. Zhōngyāng dàtīng zuòwèi kě róngnà yīqiān sānbǎi rén. Dǐ zuò biān shàng yǒu 9 gè liánhuán de qīngshuǐ chí, gǒng tuōzhe zhè jùdà de “liánhuā”. Liánhuā miào de nèibù shèzhì shífēn jiǎndān, zhǐshì yīgè gāo dàkōng kuò de shèng diàn. Jì wú shénxiàng, yě wú diǎokè, bīhuà děng zhuāngshì xìng wùjiàn. Wéi yǒu de shì

guānghuá dì dìbǎn shàng ānfāngzhe yī pái pái báisè dàlǐshí cháng yǐ. Báisè shì gāi miào zuì zhǔyào de sèdiào. Jìn miào de jiào xǐ yǐjī cānguān de rén yě bù xū jìnxíng shénme tèshū de yíshì, yào tuō xié jìn diàn, zǒu dào dàlǐshí yǐ shàng jiù zuò, ránhòu chénsī mòdǎo jiùxíng. Tèbié shì riluò shífēn de jǐngsè kǎn chēng yī jué.

Lotus Temple

The Lotus temple was built by the Bahai religion, which has 7 temples altogether in the world. (Separately, they are: They are Wilmette in the United States, Kampala in Uganda, Sydney in Australia, Frankfurt in Germany, Panama City, Apia in West Samoa and New Delhi, India). They provide temples to the people of different religions and races to worship the creator of this universe. Delhi's Bahai temple is the latest temple. The inspiration of design came from the lotus, therefore its shape is like a lotus, lotus grows in the water, so the lotus is surrounded by nine big pools. These nine pools are like a natural air conditioner, so although there is no air conditioner inside, you feel the coolness of an air conditioner.

In the evening, the Lotus Temple looks most wonderful; we may also see its beautiful fountains. The Lotus Temple is surrounded by a decorated garden, where you may silently pray in the garden or take a stroll. The Lotus Temple resembles the appearance of a lotus flower in full bloom; it is referred to as the "Lotus Temple." Lotus represents the unity of Hinduism, Buddhism, Jainism and Islam. Regardless of which religion one belongs to, everyone may come here, offer prayer and practice meditation. In the Lotus Temple, all the religions are equal. The Lotus Temple is 34.27 meters high, base diameter is 74 meters; the Lotus is composed of three layers total of 27 petals. 1300 people can sit inside the temple. All of the construction is done using white marble. The edge of the base has a series of nine clean water pools. This arch holds the huge "Lotus". The inner arrangements of the Lotus Temple are very simple, just a vast and tall sacred Hall. There are neither statues, nor any sculpture, nor other decorative objects like wall paintings. The only thing we see are the benches of white marble placed in rows on the smooth and shining floor. White is the prominent color of this temple. Followers and the participants entering the temple also need not exercise any special ceremony, they only have to take off their shoes outside and enter the hall, walk up to the marble benches and sit there, pray and meditate for some time and then move out. Especially, the view of the sunset is an unavoidable thing to see here.

9. 甘地陵 Gandhi Samadhi Sthal



位于新德里东郊朱木拿河畔，是印度国父“圣雄”甘地的陵墓。莫汉达斯 卡拉姆昌德 甘 地 是印度近代史上一位杰出的政治家，是印度民族独立运动的著名领袖，为印度的独立牺牲了一生，一九四八年一月三十号被一个印度教徒枪杀，这座陵园就是为了纪念甘地而修建的。陵园呈凹形，在陵园正中，静卧着一座黑色大理石陵墓，它是一个普通的正方形平台的样子，高约 1 米，长宽约 3 米。墓后是盏长明灯，昼夜不熄，这是印度争取民族独立精神的象征。陵墓正面刻有印度文：“嗨！罗摩！”这是甘地遇难倒地时喊出的最后两个字，罗摩是印度史诗《罗摩衍那》里的英雄，被认为是印度教中保护之神毗湿奴的化身。陵墓没有任何装饰，极其普通、简朴。然而，每逢节假日，便吸引无数身着白色民族装的人们从四面八方赶来，深切地悼念陵园的主人。

Wèiyú xīndélǐ dōng jiāo zhūmù ná hépàn, shì yìndù guófù “shèng xióng” gāndì de língmù. Mò hàn dá sī. Kǎlā mǔ chāng dé gāndì shì yìndù jìndài shǐshàng yī wèi jiéchū de zhèngzhì jiā, shì yìndù mínzú dúlì yùndòng de zhù míng língxiù, wèi yìndù de dúlì xīshēngle yīshēng, yījiūsibā nián yī yuè sānshí hào bèi yīgè yìndù jiàotú qiāngshā, zhè zuò língyuán jiùshì wèile jìniàn gāndì ér xiūjiàn de. Língyuán chéng āo xíng, zài língyuán zhèngzhōng, jìng wòzhe yīzuò hēisè dàlǐshí língmù, tā shì yīgè pǔtōng de zhèngfāngxíng píngtái de yàngzi, gāo yuē 1 mǐ, zhǎng kuān yuē 3 mǐ. Mù hòu shì zhǎn chángmíngdēng, zhòuyè bù xī, zhè shì yìndù zhēngqǔ mínzú dúlì jīngshén de xiàngzhēng. Língmù zhèngmiàn kè yǒu yìndù wén: “Hāi! Luō mó!” Zhè shì gāndì yùnnàn dǎo dì shí hǎn chū de zuìhòu liǎng gè zì, luō mó shì yìndù shǐshī “luō mó yǎn nà” lǐ de yīngxióng, bèi rènwéi shì yìndùjiào zhōng bǎohù zhī shén pí shī nǚ de huàshēn. Língmù méiyǒu rènhe zhuāngshì, jíqí pǔtōng, jiǎnpǔ. Rán’ér, měi féng jiéjiàrì, biàn xīyǐn wúshù shēnzhe báisè mínzú zhuāng de rénmen cóng sìmiànbāfāng gǎn lái, shēnqiè de dào niàn língyuán de zhǔrén.

Gandhi Samadhi Sthal

The mausoleum of the Father of the Indian Nation, “Mahatma” Gandhi, is located in the eastern outskirts of New Delhi, by the side of the bank of the Yamuna River. Mohan Das Karam Chand Gandhi is an outstanding statesman in the Modern History of India. He was a famous leader of India’s National Freedom Movement, sacrificed his entire life for the great cause of India’s independence. On 30 January 1948, he was shot dead by a Hindu activist. This Samadhi is constructed to commemorate the Father of the Indian Nation, Mahatma Gandhi. The cemetery is of concave shape, in just middle of the cemetery, silently lies a black marble structure, it is a square-shaped common flat platform-like structure, about 1 meter long, 3 m wide. In the rear part of the structure, there is a lamp day and night does not put out, which symbolizes India's spirit of striving for national independence. In front of the structure, there are engraved two words in Hindi: "Hey! Ram!" These are the last two words uttered by Mahatma Gandhi when he fell to the ground and died. "Ram" is the hero of the Indian epic Ramayana; he is considered the Avatar of Vishnu, Hindu god of protection. There is no decoration inside the Samadhi, very ordinary and simple. However, during the holidays, numerous white clothed people come from all directions, deeply mourn for the father of the Nation.

10. 国会大厦 Parliament House



国会大厦位于总统府的东北面，外观采用圆盘形状，主体四周为白色大理石圆柱，其建筑风格融合了印度传统风格与维多利亚时期的特点。内部墙上是一幅幅记载印度历史的壁画，充满了庄严神圣的气氛。国会大厦是一座现代化的建筑，环绕着水池，周围宽阔的草坪上圆形的列柱成排，格调十分高雅，是新德里最美的地方。

注意：需要特殊许可才能进入国会大厦。国会大厦里有一个图书馆，如果要进入这个图书馆，需要到 Raisina Road 上的游客接待处办理手续。办理手续时需要出示国会议员的介绍信。图书馆从早上十点到晚上六点开放。如果想进入国会大厦，外籍游客需要经过本国大使馆办理手续。

Guóhuì dàshà wèiyú zǒngtǒng fǔ de dōngběi miàn, wàiguān cǎiyòng yuán pán xíngzhuàng, zhǔtǐ sìzhōu wéi báisè dàlǐshí yuánzhù, qí jiànzhù fēnggé rónghéle yìndù chuántǒng fēnggé yǔ wéiduōliǎ shíqí de tèdiǎn. Nèibù qiáng shàng shì yī fú fú jìzǎi yìndù lìshǐ de bīhuà, chōngmǎnle zhuāngyán shénshèng de qìfēn. Guóhuì dàshà shì yīzuò xiàndàihuà de jiànzhù, huánràozhe shuǐchí, zhōuwéi kuānguò de cǎopíng shàng yuán xíng dì liè zhù chéng pái, gédiào shí fēn gāoyǎ, shì xīndélǐ zuìměi dì dìfāng. Zhùyì: Xūyào tèshū xǔkě cáinéng jìnrù guóhuì dàshà. Guóhuì dàshà lǐ yǒu yīgè túshū guǎn, rúguǒ yào jìnrù zhège túshū guǎn, xūyào dào Raisina Road shàng de yóukè jiēdài chù bànlǐ shǒuxù. Bànlǐ shǒuxù shì xūyào chūshì guóhuì yìyuán de jièshào xìn. Túshū guǎn cóng zǎoshang shí diǎn dào wǎnshàng liù diǎn kāifāng. Rúguǒ xiǎng jìnrù guóhuì dàshà, wàijí yóukè xūyào jīngguò běngúo dàshǐ guǎn bànlǐ shǒuxù.

Parliament House

Parliament House is located in the northeast of the Rastrapati Bhavan. Its outward appearance is a disc shape, all around the main structure, there are the white marble round pillars. Its architectural style combines the traditional Indian style and the characteristics of the Victorian era. The internal wall has wall paintings depicting the records of history of India. Filled with a solemn and sacred atmosphere. Parliament House is a modern building, surrounded by a pool, surrounded by a wide circle of lawn with rows of columns of very elegant style. It is the most beautiful place in New Delhi.

Note: You need special permission to enter the Parliament House. Parliament House has a library. If you want to enter the library, you need to go to the Raisina Road office for the reception of tourists to complete the formalities. While completing the formalities, you need to show a letter of introduction from a member of Parliament. The library opens from 10:00 am to 6:00 pm. If you want to enter the Parliament House, foreign tourists need to go through their embassy to complete the formalities.

11. 古城堡 Purana Quila



古城堡耸立在野外的一片绿色之中，在德里历史悠久的地方。古城堡是长方形的建筑，方圆两公里之内都

是古城堡的范围。一条宽阔的护城河围绕着古城堡，与古城堡西面的亚穆纳河相连。

古城堡是胡玛雍于 1534 年建立的，不论是佛教，印度教或伊斯兰教徒，或者任何宗教的教徒都可以来这座寺庙祈祷，沉思。建筑风格属于印度—伊斯兰风格。

Gǔ chéngbǎo sǒnglì zài yěwài de yīpiàn lǜsè zhī zhōng, zài déli lìshǐ yōujiǔ dì dìfāng. Gǔ chéngbǎo shì chángfāngxíng de jiànzhù, fāngyuán liǎng gōnglǐ zhī nèi dōu shì gǔ chéngbǎo de fānwéi. Yītiáo kuānguò de hùchéng hé wéirào zhe gǔ chéngbǎo, yǔ gǔ chéngbǎo xī miàn de yà mù nà hé xiānglián. Gǔ chéngbǎo shì hú mǎ yōng yú 1534 nián jiànlì de, bùlùn shì fójiào, yìndùjiào huò yīslán jiàotú, huòzhě rènhe zōngjiào de jiàotú dōu kěyǐ lái zhè zuò sìmiào qídǎo, chénsī. Jiànzhù fēnggé shǔyú yìndù-yīslán fēnggé.

Purana Quila stands in the green fields at a place in the long history of Delhi. Purana Quila is a rectangular building, within a radius of two kilometres, which is the area of the Purana Quila. A wide moat is there surrounds the Purana Quila, it is connected to the Yamuna River to the west of the Quila. Purana Quila was built by Humayun in 1534. Whether people are Buddhist, Hindu, Muslim, or followers of any religion, they can come to this place to pray or meditate. Architectural style belongs to the Indian Islamic style.

12. 比尔拉曼迪尔 Birla Mandir



比尔拉曼迪尔 位于康诺特广场西侧，1938 年由工业家 G.D. Birla 建立。寺庙供奉着财富女神 Laxmi 和保护神 Narayana。寺庙由甘地（Mahatma Gandhi）发起，不同种姓的人都可以进入寺庙。寺庙采用 Orissan 建筑风格，庙中最高塔高 165 英尺，寺庙中有反映印度神话的精美图画。对于外籍游客来说，最重要的是来这个寺庙看到“swastikas”。这是古代印度雅立安人（Aryan）的符号，象征着完美。

Bǐ'ěr lā màn dí'ěr wèiyú kāng nuò tè guǎngchǎng xī cè, 1938 nián yóu gōngyè jiā G.D. Birla jiànlì. Sìmiào gòngfèngzhe cáifù nǚshén Laxmi hé bǎohù shén Narayana. Sìmiào yóu gāndì (Mahatma Gandhi) fāqǐ, bùtóng zhǒngxìng de rén dōu kěyǐ jìnrù sìmiào. Sìmiào cǎiyòng Orissan jiànzhù fēnggé, miào zhōng zuìgāo de tǎ gāo 165 yīngchǐ, sìmiào zhōng yǒu fǎnyìng yìndù shénhuà de jīngměi túhuà. Duìyú wàijí yóukè lái shuō, zuì zhòngyào de shì lái zhège sìmiào kàn dào "swastikas". Zhè shì gǔdài yìndù yǎ lì ān rén (Aryan) de fúhào, xiàngzhēngzhe wánměi.

Birla Temple is located on the west side of Connaught Place. It was built in 1938 by the industrialist GD Birla. Temple worships Laxmi, the goddess of wealth and Narayana, the God of protection. The Temple was inaugurated by Mahatma Gandhi. People of different sexes and castes can enter the temple. Temple adopted the Orissan architectural style, the highest temple tower is 165 feet high, temple has beautiful pictures reflecting the mythical stories of India. For foreign visitors, the most important thing is to see the temple's "swastikas". This is the symbol of ancient Indian Aryan, a symbol of perfection.

II. 阿格拉 AGRA

泰姬陵的奇罕壮观，绝非笔墨言语所能形容，必须亲身体会。邻近有位于 Sikandara 的阿克巴大帝陵，阿格拉城堡，伊特玛瓦德拉寺及由阿克巴兴建的法德坡锡克里的遗迹。法德坡锡克里完全以印度风格建成，并未受后期的波期风格所影响。

1. 泰姬陵 Taj Mahal



泰姬陵：爱与艺术的永恒象征

泰姬陵（Taj Mahal）位于印度北方邦的阿格拉市，是世界著名的建筑奇迹之一，也被誉为“世界七大奇迹”之一。它不仅是一座陵墓，更是一段真挚爱情的象征。作为莫卧儿帝国第五代皇帝沙贾汗为纪念爱妻慕塔芝·玛哈尔所建，泰姬陵融合了伊斯兰、波斯、印度和中亚的建筑风格，展现了17世纪印度建筑与艺术的巅峰水平。

泰姬陵的修建始于1631年，历时22年，于1653年完工。参与建造的工匠超过两万人，来自印度各地乃至中亚、波斯等地。整座陵墓建筑以白色大理石为主要材料，这些大理石来自拉贾斯坦邦的马克拉纳，每块石材都经过精雕细琢，表面还镶嵌了各种彩色宝石与精美图案。整个陵园以几何对称为核心，布局严谨，结构和谐，展现出伊斯兰建筑中对秩序与美感的极致追求。

泰姬陵的主建筑是一座宏伟的穹顶式陵墓，中央为慕塔芝的棺室。她在生下第十四个孩子后因难产去世，年仅39岁。沙贾汗痛失爱妻，决定为她修建一座永恒的纪念碑。后来，沙贾汗被儿子奥朗则布软禁在红堡，直到去世。他死后也被安葬于慕塔芝的棺墓旁，成为陵墓中唯独打破对称结构的存在。

除了主墓，泰姬陵园内还有清真寺、迎宾馆、花园和水池，设计均极其精致。陵园内的花园仿照伊斯兰“天堂花园”的设计理念，象征着神圣与和平。水池中的倒影与主建筑形成对称之美，使整座陵园如诗如画。

泰姬陵不只是建筑上的奇迹，更是文化与精神的象征。它代表着爱情的忠贞，也体现了莫卧儿时期工艺与艺术的辉煌成就。泰姬陵在1983年被联合国教科文组织列为世界文化遗产，是印度最受欢迎的旅游胜地之一，每年吸引上千万游客前来参观。

泰姬陵也是东西方文化交流的见证。其建筑风格对后世影响深远，在印度乃至世界多个国家的宫殿和清真寺设计中都可以看到类似的元素。它让世界人民认识并欣赏印度文化的独特魅力。

今天的泰姬陵虽然经历了数百年的风雨侵蚀，但依旧屹立在亚穆纳河畔，静静诉说着那段跨越生死、超越时空的爱情故事。无论岁月如何更替，泰姬陵依旧以它的庄严与浪漫，感动着每一位到访者的心。

Tàijīlíng: ài yǔ yìshù de yǒnghéng xiàngzhēng

Tàijīlíng (Taj Mahal) wèiyú Yìndù Běifāng Bāng de Āgēlā shì, shì shìjiè zhùmíng de jiànzhù qíjī zhī yī, yě bèi yùwéi “shìjiè qī dà qíjī” zhī yī. Tā bù jǐn shì yī zuò língmù, gèng shì yīduàn zhēnzhì àiqíng de xiàngzhēng. Zuòwéi Mòwò'ěr dìguó dì wǔ dài huángdì Shājiāhàn wèi jìnián àiqī Mùtāzhī·Māhā'ěr suǒ jiàn, Tàijīlíng rónghéle Yīsilán, Bōsī, Yìndù hé Zhōngyà de jiànzhù fēnggé, zhǎnxiǎnle 17 shìjì Yìndù jiànzhù yǔ yìshù de diǎnfēng shuǐpíng.

Tàijīlíng de xiūjiàn shǐyú 1631 nián, lìshí 22 nián, yú 1653 nián wángōng. Cānyù jiànzhào de gōngjiàng chāoguò liǎng wàn rén, láizi Yìndù gèdì nǎizhì Zhōngyà, Bōsī děng dì. Zhěngzuò língmù jiànzhù yǐ báisè dàlìshí wéi zhǔyào cáiliào, zhèxiē dàlìshí láizi Lājāsītān Bāng de Mākēlānnà, měi kuài shícai dōu jīngguò jīngdiào xìzhuó, biǎomiàn hái xiāngqiǎnle gèzhǒng cǎisè bǎoshí yǔ jīngmǐ tú'àn. Zhěnggè língyuán yǐ jīhé duìchèn wéi héxīn, bùjú yánjīn, jiégòu héxié, zhǎnxiǎn chū Yīsilán jiànzhù zhōng duì zhìxù yǔ měigǎn de jízhì zhuīqiú.

Tàijīlíng de zhǔ jiànzhù shì yī zuò hóngwéi de qióngdǐng shì língmù, zhōngyāng wèi Mùtāzhī de guānmù. Tā zài shēngxià dì shí sì gè háizi hòu yīn nánchǎn qùshì, niánjīn 39 suì. Shājiāhàn tòngshī àiqī, juédìng wèi tā xiūjiàn yīzuò yǒnghéng de jìniānbēi. Hòulái, Shājiāhàn bèi érzǐ Àolǎngzébù ruǎnjìn zài Hóngbǎo, zhídào qùshì. Tā sǐhòu yě bèi ānzàng yú Mùtāzhī de guānmù páng, chéngwéi língmù zhōng wéiyī dǎpò duìchèn jiégòu de cúnzài.

Chúle zhǔmù, Tàijīlíngyuán nèi hái yǒu Qīngzhēnsì, yíngbīnguǎn, huāyuán hé shuǐchí, shèjì jūn jíqí jīngzhì. Língyuán nèi de huāyuán fāngzhào Yīsilán “tiāntáng huāyuán” de shèjì lǐniàn, xiàngzhēngzhe shèngshèng yǔ hépíng. Shuǐchí zhōng de dàoyǐng yǔ zhǔ jiànzhù xíngchéng duìchèn zhī měi, shì zhěngzuò língyuán rúshì rúhuà.

Tàijīlíng bù zhǐ shì jiànzhù shàng de qíjī, gèng shì wénhuà yǔ jīngshén de xiàngzhēng. Tā dàibiǎozhe àiqíng de zhōngzhēn, yě tíxiǎnle Mòwò'ěr shíqī gōngyì yǔ yìshù de huīhuáng chéngjiù. Tàijīlíng zài 1983 nián bèi Liánhéguó Jiàokēwén Zúzhī liè wéi shìjiè wénhuà yíchǎn, shì Yīndù zuì shòu huānyíng de lǚyóu shèngdì zhī yī, měinián xīyǐn shàng qiān wàn yóukè qiánlái cānguān.

Tàijīlíng yěshì dōngxīfāng wénhuà jiāoliú de jiànzhèng. Qí jiànzhù fēnggé duì hòushì yǐngxiǎng shēnyuǎn, zài Yīndù nǎizhī shìjiè duō gè guójiā de gōngdiàn hé Qīngzhēnsì shèjì zhōng dōu kěyǐ kàndào lèisì de yuánsù. Tā ràng shìjiè rénmin rènshí bìng xīnshǎng Yīndù wénhuà de dútè mèilì.

Jīntiān de Tàijīlíng suīrán jīnglì le shù bǎinián de fēngyǔ qīnsī, dàn yījiù yīlì zài Yàmùna Hé pàn, jìngjìng sùshuōzhe nàduàn kuàyuè shēngsǐ, chāoyuè shíkōng de àiqíng gùshì. Wúlùn suìyuè rúhé gēngtì, Tàijīlíng yījiù yǐ tā de zhuāngyán yǔ làngmàn, gǎndòngzhe měi yī wèi dào fāng zhě de xīn.

Taj Mahal: An Eternal Symbol of Love and Art

The Taj Mahal is located in Agra, a city in the northern Indian state of Uttar Pradesh. It is one of the world's most renowned architectural wonders and is considered one of the "Seven Wonders of the World." More than just a mausoleum, the Taj Mahal stands as a lasting symbol of true love. Built by Mughal Emperor Shah Jahan in memory of his beloved wife Mumtaz Mahal, the Taj Mahal is a masterpiece that combines Islamic, Persian, Indian, and Central Asian architectural styles, showcasing the pinnacle of 17th-century Indian art and architecture.

Construction of the Taj Mahal began in 1631 and took 22 years to complete, officially finishing in 1653. Over 20,000 craftsmen and workers from across India, Central Asia, and Persia participated in the building of this majestic structure. The entire mausoleum is made primarily of white marble sourced from Makrana in Rajasthan. Each piece of marble is meticulously carved, and the surface is inlaid with various colored gemstones arranged into delicate floral and geometric patterns. The whole complex is laid out in a strict symmetrical pattern centered on the tomb, reflecting the Islamic aesthetic of harmony and order.

The main structure is a grand domed tomb housing the cenotaph of Mumtaz Mahal. After giving birth to her 14th child, she died tragically at the age of 39. Heartbroken, Shah Jahan resolved to build her a monument that would immortalize their love. Afterward, Shah Jahan was overthrown by his son Aurangzeb and imprisoned in the nearby Red Fort until his death. His remains were later buried next to Mumtaz, creating the only asymmetrical feature in the otherwise perfectly balanced design.

Apart from the central tomb, the complex includes a mosque, a guest house, beautiful gardens, and reflecting pools. The gardens are designed in accordance with the Islamic concept of paradise and symbolize serenity and divine beauty. The reflection of the Taj in the pools adds to the visual harmony, making the whole site appear like a dreamlike vision.

The Taj Mahal is not only a marvel of architecture but also a profound cultural and spiritual symbol. It represents eternal love and stands as a testimony to the artistic brilliance of the Mughal era. In 1983, it was designated a UNESCO World Heritage Site and remains one of India's most visited landmarks, attracting tens of millions of visitors annually from around the world.

Moreover, the Taj Mahal serves as a symbol of East-West cultural exchange. Its architectural influence can be seen in many palaces and mosques around the world, making it a globally recognized model of beauty. It invites people from all nations to admire and appreciate the unique charm of Indian culture.

Even after centuries of weathering and time, the Taj Mahal still stands quietly on the banks of the Yamuna River, whispering the timeless love story that transcends life and death. Regardless of how time passes, the Taj Mahal continues to move every visitor with its solemnity, romance, and enduring beauty.

2. 阿格拉堡 Agra Fort



阿格拉堡位于亚穆纳河畔的小山丘上，距泰姬陵约 15 分钟车程，全部采用红砂岩建造而成，故又称红堡，与首都德里的红堡齐名。这座方圆 1.5 平方公里的宫堡外形非常雄伟壮观，城内的宫殿虽经历漫长的岁月多已失修，但画梁和墙壁上精巧的雕刻与设计，仍隐约保存着昔日富丽堂皇的风貌。

16 世纪，阿克巴大帝选中了阿格拉堡的城址建立首都，并在 1573 年建成了这座古堡。它具有宫殿和城堡的双重功能，城墙高 20 米，在阳光照耀之下发出耀眼的红色。堡内有著名的“谒见之厅”，是莫卧儿王朝帝王接见大臣、使节的地方。

阿格拉堡建筑是印度伊斯兰艺术顶峰时期的代表作，1983 年被列入世界遗产名录。古堡内的建筑物曾多达

500 多座，但保留至今者已经很少。阿格拉堡有一座八角形的石塔小楼，登临塔顶，可以看到举世闻名的泰姬陵。据说当年沙贾汗被其子幽禁在这座古堡时，就经常默默地坐在小楼中，怀着无限的思念之情眺望泰姬陵。

Ā gélā bǎo wèiyú yà mù nà hépàn de xiǎoshān qiū shàng, jù tài jī líng yuē 15 fēnzhōng chēchéng, quánbù cǎiyòng hóng shāyán jiànào ér chéng, gù yòu chēng hóng bǎo, yǔ shǒudū déli de hóng bǎo qíming. Zhè zuò fāngyuán 1.5 píngfāng gōnglǐ de gōng bǎo wàixíng fēicháng xióngwěi zhuàngguān, chéngnèi de gōngdiàn suī jīnglì màncháng de suìyuè duō yǐ shíxiū, dàn huà liáng hé qiángbì shàng jīngqiǎo de diǎokè yǔ shèjì, réng yīnyuē bǎocúnzhe xīrì fùlì tánghuáng de fēngmào. 16 Shìjì, ā kè bā dàdì xuǎnzhōngle ā gélā bǎo de chéngzhǐ jiànli shǒudū, bìng zài 1573 nián jiànchéngle zhè zuò gǔ bǎo. Tā jùyǒu gōngdiàn hé chéngbǎo de shuāngchóng gōngnéng, chéngqiáng gāo 20 mǐ, zài yángguāng zhàoyào zhī xià fāchū yàoyǎn de hóngsè. Bǎo nèi yǒu zhùmíng de “yèjiàn zhī tīng”, shì mò wò er wángcháo diwáng jiējiàn dàchén, shǐjié dì difāng. Ā gélā bǎo jiànzhú shì yìndù yīsīlán yìshù dǐngfēng shíqí de dàibiǎozuò, 1983 nián bèi liè rù shìjiè yíchǎn mínglù. Gǔ bǎo nèi de jiànzhú wù céng duō dá 500 duō zuò, dàn bǎoliú zhījīn zhě yǐjīng hěn shǎo. Ā gélā bǎo yǒu yīzuò bā jiǎoxíng de shítǎ xiǎo lóu, dēnglín tǎ dǐng, kěyǐ kàn dào jùshì wénmíng de tài jī líng. Jùshuō dāngnián shā jiǎ hàn bèi qí zǐ yōujìn zài zhè zuò gǔ bǎo shí, jiù jīngcháng mò mò de zuò zài xiǎo lóu zhōng, huáizhe wúxiàn de sīniàn zhī qíng tiàowàng tài jī líng.

Agra Fort

Agra Fort is located on a hill by the Yamuna River, about 15 minutes' drive from the Taj Mahal. It is built entirely of red sandstone, so it is also called the Red Fort, which is as famous as the Red Fort in the capital, Delhi. This palace fort, with an area of 1.5 square kilometers is very majestic in appearance. Although the palaces in the city have been in disrepair for a long time, the exquisite carvings and designs on the painted beams and walls still vaguely preserve the magnificent style of the past.

In the 16th century, Emperor Akbar chose the site of Agra Fort to establish his capital and built this ancient fort in 1573. It has the dual functions of a palace and a castle. The city wall is 20 meters high and emits a dazzling red color under the sun. There is a famous "audience hall" in the fort, which is where the emperors of the Mughal Dynasty met with ministers and envoys.

The architecture of Agra Fort is a representative work of the peak period of Indian Islamic art and was listed as a World Heritage Site in 1983. There were more than 500 buildings in the fort, but only a few have survived to this day. There is an octagonal stone tower in Agra Fort. From the top of the tower, you can see the world-famous Taj Mahal. It is said that when Shah Jahan was imprisoned in this fort by his son, he often sat in the tower quietly, gazing at the Taj Mahal with infinite longing.

3. 法地布尔·西格里古城 Fatehpur Sikri



法地布尔·西格里的意思是“胜利”，位于阿格拉市西面而 40 公里，是莫卧儿帝国的皇宫所在地。

1569 年阿克巴大帝下令建造，但因水源问题，建成 14 年后便废弃了。这是一座被誉为足以与泰姬陵媲美的古堡，除了外形壮观、面积宽广之外，宫殿构图之优美、内部设计之精巧，与泰姬陵不相上下。城市三面为总长 6 公里的城墙环绕，城墙上设有塔楼和 7 座城门，其中保存得最好的是阿格拉门。绝大部分古迹都建在连接达尔瓦萨和阿格拉的道路北侧。古城将许多风格不同的纪念碑和寺庙荟萃一地，但由于全部为红砂岩建筑，仍具有同一性，形成建筑群体的典范。

城中最著名的是达加清真寺（Dar-gah Mosque），建于 1571-1572 年间，可容纳 1 万名信徒作祈祷，寺院中央有沙基·沙林·契斯提的墓，墓上的雕刻装饰精美绝伦。特别值得一提的还有阿姆院，即谒见院，四周门廊间有御用凉廊直通皇宫。皇宫北侧是卡斯庭院，即私人会客庭院，通称“珠宝殿”。其它著名古迹有阿努·塔拉欧宫、比尔巴尔宫、风宫以及班杰默哈尔。

Fatehpur Sikri fǎ de bù'ěr·xī gé lǐ de yìsī shì “shènglì”, wèiyú ā gélā shì xī miàn ér 40 gōnglǐ, shì mò wò er dìguó de huánggōng suǒzàidì. 1569 Nián ā kè bā dàdì xiàlǐng jiànào, dàn yīn shuǐyuán wèntí, jiànchéng 14 nián hòu biàn fèiqìle. Zhè shì yīzuò bèi yù wèi zúyǐ yǔ tài jī líng pīmǐ de gǔ bǎo, chūle wàixíng zhuàngguān, miànjī kuānguǎng zhī wài, gōngdiàn gòutú zhī yōuměi, nèibù shèjì zhī jīngqiǎo, yǔ tài jī líng bù xiāng shàngxià. Chéngshì sānmian wèi zǒngzhǎng 6 gōnglǐ de chéngqiáng huánrào, chéngqiáng shàng shè yǒu tǎlóu hé 7 zuò chéng mén, qízhōng bǎocún dé zuì hǎo de shì ā gélā mén. Jué dà bùfèn gǔjī dōu jiàn zài liánjiē dá'ěr wǎ sà hé ā gélā de dàolù běi cè. Gǔchéng jiāng xǔduō fēnggé bùtóng de jìniànbēi hé simiào huicui yī dì, dàn yóuyóu quánbù wèi hóng shāyán jiànzhú, réng jùyǒu tóngyī xìng, xíngchéng jiànzhú qúntǐ de diǎnfàn. Chéngzhōng zuì zhùmíng de shì dá jiā qīngzhēnsì (Dar-gah Mosque), jiàn yú 1571-1572 niánjiān, kě róngnà 1 wàn míng xīntú zuò qídǎo, siyuàn zhōngyāng yǒu shā jī·shā lín·qì sī tí de mù, mù shàng de diǎokè zhuāngshì jīngměi juélún. Tèbié zhídé yī tí de hái yǒu ā mǔ yuàn, jí yèjiàn yuàn, sìzhōu ménláng zhī jiān yǒu yùyòng liáng láng zhítōng huánggōng. Huánggōng běi cè shì kǎ sī tíngyuàn, jí sīrén huì kè tíngyuàn, tōngchéng “zhūbǎo diàn”. Qítā zhùmíng gǔjī yǒu ā nǚ-tǎ lā ōu gōng, bǐ'ěr bǎ'ěr gōng, fēng gōng yǐjí bān jié mò hǎ ēr.

Fatehpur Sikri

Fatehpur Sikri means "victory". It is located 40 kilometers west of Agra and is the site of the Mughal Empire's palace. It was built in 1569 under the order of Emperor Akbar, but was abandoned 14 years after its completion due to water problems. This is an ancient castle that is hailed as comparable to the Taj Mahal. In addition to its spectacular appearance and wide area, the palace's beautiful composition and exquisite interior design are comparable to the Taj Mahal. The city is surrounded on three sides by a 6-kilometer-long wall with towers and 7 gates on the wall. The best preserved of these is the Agra Gate. Most of the monuments are built on the north side of the road connecting Darvasa and Agra. The ancient city brings together many monuments and temples of different styles, but because they are all red sandstone buildings, they still have the same identity, forming a model of architectural groups.

The most famous mosque in the city is the Dargah Mosque, which was built between 1571 and 1572 and can accommodate 10,000 believers for prayers. In the center of the mosque is the tomb of Shaki Sharin Chishti, with exquisite carvings and decorations. The Am Court, or audience court, is also worth mentioning. There is a royal loggia between the porches around it that leads directly to the palace. To the north of the palace is the Khas Court, or private reception court, commonly known as the "Jewelry Court". Other famous monuments include the Anu Taroko Palace, Birbal Palace, Palace of Winds and Panjmahal.

III. 斋浦尔 (JAIPUR)



斋浦尔由维迪亚达尔·巴塔查里亚 (Vidyadhar Bhattacharya) 规划，是印度第一座规划城市。这座拉贾斯坦邦首府以其彩色宝石闻名于世，将古老历史的魅力与大都市的所有优势融为一体。这座繁华的现代化城市是金三角的三个顶点之一，金三角包括德里、阿格拉和斋浦尔。据说，1876年，威尔士亲王访问印度。由于粉红色象征着热情好客，斋浦尔大君拉姆·辛格 (Maharaja Ram Singh) 将整座城市漆成了粉红色。粉红色的装点使整座城市成为一道美丽的风景。斋浦尔在纳哈加尔堡 (Nahargarh)、斋加尔堡 (Jaigarh) 和加尔象头神庙 (Garh Ganesh Temple) 的映衬下，雄伟地矗立着。斋浦尔的历史可以追溯到1727年，由琥珀之王斋·辛格二世 (Jai Singh II) 建立。由于人口迅速增长和水资源日益匮乏，他将首都从安布尔迁至新城。著名建筑师维迪亚达尔·巴塔查里亚 (Vidyadhar Bhattacharya) 运用既定的《风水论》 (Vastu Shastra) 原则建造了这座城市。

斋浦尔的烹饪遗产丰富多彩，风味浓郁，体现了拉贾斯坦邦的多元文化。斋浦尔的一些必尝菜肴包括标志性的 Dal Bati Churma，这是一种传统的拼盘，包含扁豆咖喱、酥油饺子和甜点。Kachoris 是拉贾斯坦邦备受喜爱的小吃，也不容错过。节日期间，用面粉和酥油制成的甜点 Ghevar 是一道备受欢迎的美食。另一种受欢迎的街头小吃是 Mirchi Bada，这是一种用酸甜青辣椒制成的辛辣美食。Ker Sangri 是拉贾斯坦邦的传统菜肴，融合了干浆果和豆类，展现了该地区对独特食材和浓郁风味的热爱。Bajra ki Roti 是一种用珍珠粟粉制成的拉贾斯坦邦传统面包，是当地主食，常与 Lehsun Chutney (一种美味的蒜蓉酸辣酱) 搭配。非素食者可以品尝拉贾斯坦邦的招牌菜 “Laal Maas”，这道辛辣的羊肉咖喱以红辣椒、香料和酥油烹制而成，肉质鲜嫩多汁，风味浓郁。

富丽堂皇的宫殿、粉色砂岩建筑、雄伟的堡垒

斋浦尔以其宏伟的堡垒、宫殿和永恒的建筑遗产而闻名。风之宫殿 (Hawa Mahal)，又名“风之宫”，建于1799年，是一座美丽的建筑奇迹，是斋浦尔精致的标志性象征。其精巧的格子结构和953扇窗户，让皇室女性得以在不被察觉的情况下观看街头庆祝活动。城市宫殿融合了拉贾斯坦邦和莫卧儿王朝的建筑风格，展出文物、手稿和著名的孔雀门。宫殿建筑群包括穆巴拉克宫殿 (Mubarak Mahal) 和钱德拉宫殿 (Chandra Mahal)，让人们得以一窥斋浦尔的皇家历史。琥珀堡，又称阿梅尔堡，是联合国教科文组织世界遗产，其历史可追溯至1592年。

水宫 (Jal Mahal) 是一座美丽的宫殿，矗立于曼萨加尔湖 (Man Sagar Lake) 的中心。宫殿看似漂浮在波光粼粼的湖面上，但仔细观察就会发现它部分被掩埋。宫殿共五层，目前仅剩一层可见。虽然无法进入，但纳哈加尔堡 (Nahargarh Fort) 仍能让人一窥其昔日的辉煌。简塔·曼塔尔天文台 (Jantar Mantar) 是另一个不容错过的联合国教科文组织世界遗产，尤其如果您对天文学感兴趣的话。简塔·曼塔尔天文台由19台天文仪器组成，建于公元1728年至1734年间。它拥有世界上最大的石制日晷。纳哈加尔堡曾是斋浦尔城防务的重要组成部分。它与斋加尔堡相连，可以俯瞰斋浦尔以及现已不对游客开放的水宫 (Jal Mahal) 的全景。斋加尔堡位于阿拉瓦利山脉，海拔 500 英尺。它建于 1726 年，用于守卫琥珀堡宫殿建筑群，从这里可以俯瞰琥珀堡和毛塔湖。

浦尔是印度一座以其充满活力的文化、传统工艺和熙熙攘攘的市场而闻名的城市。这座城市以其音乐和舞蹈表演而闻名，其中包括 Ghoomar 和 Chari 舞蹈，舞者头戴点燃的油灯，在罐子上表演。此外，人们还会使用萨朗吉、埃克塔拉和贾拉尔等传统乐器演唱民歌。斋浦尔全年举办众多文化节庆，包括甘高尔节、斋浦尔文学节、风筝节、提吉节、西特拉玛塔节、查克苏节、大象节以及九夜节期间的琥珀节。

斋浦尔也是购物者的热门目的地。尼赫鲁市场、乔哈里路市场、巴普市场、的黎波利亚市场和钱德波尔市场是该市最受欢迎的购物区。乔哈里路市场以拉贾斯坦邦珠宝、服装和纺织品而闻名。巴普市场以莫贾里、骆驼皮鞋和拉贾斯坦邦纺织品而闻名。的黎波利亚市场是一个熙熙攘攘的市场，出售手镯、布料、地毯和地毯，而钱德波尔市场则以精雕细琢的大理石雕像而闻名。

斋浦尔交通便利，交通便利。从德里出发，经维护良好的NH 8公路行驶5小时即可到达，有私人 and 国营巴士可供选择。斋浦尔国际机场有从马斯喀特、新加坡、阿布扎比等地直飞的国际航班，以及从印度大多数主要城市飞往的23个国内航班。斋浦尔火车站提供直达德里等主要城市的列车，途经沙塔布迪、拉贾达尼、杜龙托和曼多尔快线。豪华的“车轮上的宫殿”列车让您尽享奢华与奢华，并一睹王公贵族的生活。

Zhāi pǔ ěr yóu wéi dì yà dá'ěr-bā tā chá lǐ yǎ (Vidyadhar Bhattacharya) guīhuà, shì yìndù dì yīzuò guīhuà chéngshì. Zhè zuò lǎ jiǎ sītān bāng shǒufǔ yǐ qí cǎisè bǎoshí wénmíng yú shì, jiāng gǔlǎo lǐshǐ de měilì yǔ dà dūshì de suǒyǒu yóushì róng wéi yītǐ. Zhè zuò fánhuà de xiàndàihuà chéngshì shì jīnsānjiào de sān gè dīngdiǎn zhī yī, jīnsānjiào bāokuò déli, ā géla hé zhāi pǔ ěr. Jùshuō, 1876 nián, wēi'ěrshì qīnwáng fāngwèn yìndù. Yóuyú fēnhóng sè xiàngzhēng zhào rèqing hàoquè, zhāi pǔ ěr dà jūn lǎ mǔ-xīn gé (Maharaja Ram Singh) jiāng zhēng zuò chéngshì qī chénglè fēnhóng sè. Fēnhóng sè de zhuāngdiǎn shǐ zhēng zuò chéngshì chéngwéi yīdào měilì de fēngjǐng. Zhāi pǔ ěr zài nà hā jiā'ěr bǎo (Nahargarh), zhāi jiā'ěr bǎo (Jaigarh) hé jiā'ěr xiàng tóu shén miào (Garh Ganesh Temple) de yìngchèn xià, xióngwēi

de chùlizhe. Zhāi pǔ ěr de lishǐ kěyǐ zhuīsù dào 1727 nián, yóu hùpò zhī wáng zhāi-xīn gé ěr shì (Jai Singh II) jiànli. Yóuyú rénkǒu xùnsù zēngzhǎng hé shuǐ zīyuán rìyì kuífǎ, tā jiāng shǒudū cóng ān bù'ěr qiān zhì xīnchéng. Zhùmíng jiànzhù shī wéi dí yà dá'ěr-bā tā chá lǐ yǎ (Vidyadhar Bhattacharya) yùnyòng jìdìng de “fēngshuǐ lùn”(Vastu Shastra) yuánzé jiànzaole zhè zuò chéngshì.

Zhāi pǔ ěr de pēngrèn yíchǎn fēngfù duōcǎi, fēngwèi nóngyù, tǐxiànlè lǎ jiǎ sītǎn bāng de duōyuán wénhuà. Zhāi pǔ ěr de yīxiē bì cháng cài yáo bāokuò biāozhì xìng de Dal Bati Churma, zhè shì yī zhǒng chuántǒng de pīnpán, bāohán biǎndòu gāli, sūyóu jiǎozǐ hé tiándiǎn. Kachoris shì lǎ jiǎ sītǎn bāng bèi shòu xǐ'ài de xiǎochī, yě bùróng cuòguò. Jiérlí qíjiān, yòng miǎnfěn hé sūyóu zhì chéng de tiándiǎn Ghevar shì yīdào bèi shòu huānyíng dì měishí. Líng yī zhǒng shòu huānyíng de jiétóu xiǎochī shì Mirchi Bada, zhè shì yī zhǒng yòng suān tián qīng làjiāo zhì chéng de xīnlà měishí. Ker Sangri shì lǎ jiǎ sītǎn bāng de chuántǒng cài yáo, rónghéle gān jiāngguǒ hé dòu lèi, zhānxiànlè gāi dìqū duì dúte shícái hé nóngyù fēngwèi de rè'ài. Bajra ki Roti shì yī zhǒng yòng zhēnzhū sù fēn zhì chéng de lǎ jiǎ sītǎn bāng chuántǒng miǎnbāo, shì dāngdì zhùshí, cháng yǔ Lehsun Chutney(yī zhǒng měiwèi de suān róng suān làjiāng) dàpèi. Fēi sùshí zhè kěyǐ pīncháng lǎ jiǎ sītǎn bāng de zhāopái cài “Laal Maas”, zhè dào xīnlà de yánggròu gāli yǐ hóng làjiāo, xiāngliào hé sūyóu pēng zhì ěr chéng, ròuzhì xiānnèn duō zhī, fēngwèi nóngyù.

Fùlǐ tánghuáng de gōngdiàn, fēnsè shāyán jiànzhù, xióngwěi de bǎolěi

zhāi pǔ ěr yǐ qí hóngwěi de bǎolěi, gōngdiàn hé yǒnghéng de jiànzhù yíchǎn ěr wénmíng. Fēng zhī gōngdiàn (Hawa Mahal), yòu míng “fēng zhī gōng”, jiàn yú 1799 nián, shì yīzuò měilì de jiànzhù qíjì, shì zhāi pǔ ěr jīngzhì de biāozhì xìng xiàng zhēng. Qí jīngqiǎo de gézǐ jiégòu hé 953 shàn chuānghù, ràng huángshì nǚxíng déyǐ zài bù bèi chájué de qíngkuàng xià guānkàn jiétóu qīngzhù huódòng. Chéngshì gōngdiàn rónghéle lǎ jiǎ sītǎn bāng hé mò wò er wángcháo de jiànzhù fēnggé, zhǎn chū wénwù, shòugǎo hé zhùmíng de kǒngquè mén. Gōngdiàn jiànzhù qún bāokuò mù bālākè gōngdiàn (Mubarak Mahal) hé qián dé lǎ gōngdiàn (Chandra Mahal), ràng rénmen déyǐ yī kuī zhāi pǔ ěr de huángjiā lishǐ. Hùpò bǎo, yòu chēng ā méi ěr bǎo, shì liánhéguó jiàokē wén zǔzhī shìjiè yíchǎn, qí lishǐ kě zhuīsù zhì 1592 nián. Shuǐ gōng (Jal Mahal) shì yīzuò měilì de gōngdiàn, chùlì yú màn sà jiā'ěr hú (Man Sagar Lake) de zhōngxīn. Gōngdiàn kàn sì piāofú zài bōguāng lín lín de húmiàn shàng, dàn zìxì guārchá jiù huì fāxiàn tābùfēn bèi yǎnmái. Gōngdiàn gōng wǔ céng, mùqián jīn shèng yī céng kějiàn. Suǐrán wúfǎ jìnrù, dàn nà hā jiā'ěr bǎo (Nahargarh Fort) réng néng ràng rén yī kuī qí xīrì de huīhuáng. Jiǎn tā·màn tā ěr tiānwéntái (Jantar Mantar) shì líng yīgè bùróng cuòguò de liánhéguó jiàokē wén zǔzhī shìjiè yíchǎn, yóuqí rúguǒ nín duì tiānwénxué gǎn xìngqù dehuà. Jiǎn tā·màn tā ěr tiānwéntái yóu 19 tái tiānwén yíqí zǔchéng, jiàn yú gōngyuán 1728 nián zhì 1734 niánjiān. Tā yǒngyǒu shìjiè shàng zuìdà de shí zhì rìguǐ. Nà hā jiā'ěr bǎo céng shì zhāi pǔ ěr chéng fǎngwù de zhōngyào zǔchéng bùfēn. Tā yǔ zhāi jiā'ěr bǎo xiānglián, kěyǐ fūkàn zhāi pǔ ěr yǐjī xiàn yǐ bùduì yóukè kāifàng de shuǐ gōng (Jal Mahal) de quánjǐng. Zhāi jiā'ěr bǎo wèiyú ā lǎ wǎ lì shānmài, hǎibá 500 yīngchǐ. Tā jiàn yú 1726 nián, yòng yú shòuwèi hùpò bǎo gōngdiàn jiànzhù qún, cóng zhèlǐ kěyǐ fūkàn hùpò bǎo hé máo tā hú.

Pǔ ěr shì yīndù yī zuò yǐ qí chōngmǎn huólì de wénhuà, chuántǒng gōngyì hé xīxīrǎngrǎng de shìchǎng ěr wénmíng de chéngshì. Zhè zuò chéngshì yǐ qí yīnyuè hé wǔdǎo biǎoyǎn ěr wénmíng, qízhōng bāokuò Ghoomar hé Chari wǔdǎo, wǔ zhè tóu dài diǎnrán de yóudēng, zài guānzǐ shàng biǎoyǎn. Cíwài, rénmen hái huì shīyòng sà láng jí, āi kè tā lǎ hé jiǎ lǎ ěr dēng chuántǒng yuèqǐ yǎnchàng míngē. Zhāi pǔ ěr quán nián jǔbàn zhòngduō wénhuà jiéqīng, bāokuò gān gāo ěr jié, zhāi pǔ ěr wénxué jié, fēngzhēng jié, tí jí jié, xī tè lǎ mǎ tā jié, chá kè sū jié, dà xiàng jié yǐjī jiǔ yè jié qíjiān de hùpò jié.

Zhāi pǔ ěr yěshì gòuwù zhě de rèmén mùdì de. Ní hē lǔ shìchǎng, qiáo hǎli lù shìchǎng, bā pǔ shìchǎng, dí lí bō lì yǎ shìchǎng hé qián dé bō ěr shìchǎng shì gāi shì zuì shòu huānyíng de gòuwù qū. Qiáo hǎli lù shìchǎng yǐ lǎ jiǎ sītǎn bāng zhūbǎo, fúzuāng hé fǎngzhīpǐn ěr wénmíng. Bā pǔ shìchǎng yǐ mò jiǎ lǐ, luòtuó píxié hé lǎ jiǎ sītǎn bāng fǎngzhīpǐn ěr wénmíng. Dí lí bō lì yǎ shìchǎng shì yīgè xīxīrǎngrǎng de shìchǎng, chūshòu shòuzhuó, bǔliào, dìtǎn hé dìtǎn, ěr qián dé bō ěr shìchǎng zé yǐ jīng diào xì zhuó de dàlǐshí diāoxiàng ěr wénmíng.

Zhāi pǔ ěr jiāotōng biànlì, jiāotōng biànlì. Cóng déli chūfǎ, jīng wéihù liánghǎo de NH 8 gōnglù xíngshì 5 xiǎoshí jí kě dàodá, yǒu sīrén hé guóyíng bāshì kě gōng xuǎnzé. Zhāi pǔ ěr guóji jīchǎng yǒu cóng mǎ sī kā tè, xīnjiāpō, ā bù zhá bǐ dēng dì zhī fēi de guóji hángbǎn, yǐjī cóng yīndù dà duōshù zhǔyào chéngshì fēi wǎng de 23 gè guónèi hángbǎn. Zhāi pǔ ěr huòchē zhàn tígōng zhídá déli dēng zhǔyào chéngshì dì lièchē, tújīng shā tā bù dí, lǎ jiǎ dá ní, dù lóng tuō hé màn duō ěr kuài xiàn. Háohuá de “chēlún shàng de gōngdiàn” lièchē ràng nín jìn xiǎng shēhuá yǔ shēhuá, bìng yǐ dǔ wánggōng guízú de shēnghuó.

Jaipur the Pink City

Planned by Vidyadhar Bhattacharya, Jaipur holds the distinction of being the first planned city of India. Renowned globally for its coloured gems, the capital city of Rajasthan combines the allure of its ancient history with all the advantages of a metropolis. The bustling modern city is one of the three corners of the golden triangle that includes Delhi, Agra and Jaipur. The story goes that in 1876, the Prince of Wales visited India on a tour. Since the colour pink was symbolic of hospitality, Maharaja Ram Singh of Jaipur painted the entire city pink. The pink that colours the city makes for a marvellous spectacle to behold. Jaipur rises up majestically against the backdrop of the forts Nahargarh, Jaigarh and Garh Ganesh Temple. Jaipur traces back its origins to 1727 when it was established by Jai Singh II, the Raja of Amber. He shifted his capital from Amber to the new city because of the rapidly-growing population and an increasing water scarcity. Noted architect Vidyadhar Bhattacharya used the established principles of Vastu Shastra to build the city.

The culinary heritage of Jaipur is a tapestry of flavours and aromas that reflect the cultural diversity of Rajasthan. Some of the must-try dishes in Jaipur include the iconic Dal Bati Churma, a traditional platter consisting of lentil curry, ghee-infused dumplings and a sweet dessert. Kachoris, a beloved Rajasthani snack, are also a must-try. During festivals, Ghevar, a sweet made with flour and ghee, is a popular delicacy. Another popular street food is Mirchi Bada, which is a spicy delight made with tangy green chillies. Ker Sangri, a traditional Rajasthani preparation, combines dried berries and beans, showcasing the region's love for unique ingredients and bold flavours. Bajra ki Roti, a traditional Rajasthani bread made from pearl millet flour, is a regional staple and is often paired with Lehsun Chutney, a flavourful garlic chutney. Non-vegetarians can head for Laal Maas, a signature Rajasthani dish, which is a spicy

mutton curry made with red chillies, aromatic spices and ghee, resulting in tender, succulent meat that combines bold flavours.

The opulent palaces, the pink sandstone structures, the imposing forts

Jaipur is known for its heritage comprising magnificent forts, palaces, and timeless structures. The Hawa Mahal, also known as the Palace of Winds, a beautiful architectural marvel built in 1799, is an iconic symbol of Jaipur's finesse. Its intricate latticework and 953 windows allowed royal women to observe street festivities without being seen. The City Palace blends Rajasthani and Mughal architecture and showcases artefacts, manuscripts, and the famous Peacock Gate. The palace complex includes the Mubarak Mahal and Chandra Mahal, offering a glimpse into Jaipur's regal past. The Amber Fort, also known as Amer Fort, is a UNESCO World Heritage Site with a history dating back to 1592.

The Jal Mahal is a beautiful palace that rises from the centre of Man Sagar Lake. The palace appears to float on the sparkling lake, yet a closer glance reveals it is partially buried. Only one of its five storeys is currently visible. Although the building is inaccessible, Nahargarh Fort provides a glimpse of its past magnificence. Jantar Mantar is another UNESCO World Heritage Site that you will not want to miss, especially if you are interested in astronomy. The Jantar Mantar is a collection of 19 astronomy instruments constructed between 1728 – 1734 AD. It houses the world's largest stone sundial. Nahargarh Fort was once a critical component in the city's defence. Attached to the Jaigarh Fort, it provides panoramic views of Jaipur as well as the Jal Mahal, which is no longer open to tourists. Jaigarh Fort is positioned 500 feet above sea level in the Aravalli Mountain range. It was built in 1726 to guard the Amer Fort Palace complex and provides a view of both the Amer Fort and Maota Lake.

Brilliant colours galore of gems, dances and costumes

Jaipur is a city in India that is famous for its vibrant culture, traditional crafts, and bustling markets. The city is known for its music and dance performances, including the Ghoomar and Chari dances, where dancers perform on a pot with a lit diya on their heads. Folk songs are also sung using traditional instruments such as the sarangi, ektara, and jhalar. There are many cultural festivals throughout the year in Jaipur, including the Gangaur Festival, Jaipur Literature Festival, Kite Festival, Teej Festival, Shitla Mata Fair, Chaksu Fair, Elephant Fair, and Chhat ka Mela in Amber during Navratri.

Jaipur is also a popular destination for shoppers. Nehru Bazar, Johari Bazaar Road, Bapu Bazar, Tripolia Bazar, and Chandpole Bazar are some of the most popular shopping areas in the city. Johari Bazaar Road is famous for Rajasthani jewellery, clothing, and textiles. Bapu Bazar is known for Mojari, camel skin shoes, and Rajasthani textiles. Tripolia Bazar is a bustling market with bangles, fabrics, carpets, and rugs, while Chandpole Bazar is known for intricately carved marble statues.

A multitude of options

Jaipur's well-developed transportation system makes it easily accessible and convenient to visit. It is 5 hours from Delhi via the well-maintained NH 8, both private and state-run buses are available. Jaipur's International Airport receives direct international flights from Muscat, Singapore, Abu Dhabi etc. and 23 domestic flights from most major Indian cities. Jaipur Railway Station offers direct trains to major cities, including Delhi via Shatabdi, Rajdhani, Duronto, and Mandor Express. The luxurious "Palace on Wheels" train offers opulence and luxury and a glimpse of the life of the Maharaja.

1. 风之宫殿 Hawa Mahal



风之宫殿（Hawa Mahal），字面意思是“风之宫殿”，由诗人国王萨瓦伊·普拉塔普·辛格（Sawai Pratap Singh）于1799年建造，作为他和家人的避暑胜地。这里也是王室女眷们观察日常生活而不被人发现的地方。这座独特的五层建筑融合了印度教和伊斯兰建筑风格，其外部的小格子窗（称为jharokhas）形似克里希纳神的王冠。这些窗户也起到了空调的作用，将凉爽的空气吹进宫殿，使其成为夏季完美的休憩之所。风之宫殿由粉色砂岩建造而成，是斋浦尔的标志性建筑，游客可以从马路对面的外部欣赏其壮丽的景色。当然，您也可以直接爬到顶部，透过窗户欣赏美景。如今，风之宫殿由拉贾斯坦邦政府考古部门维护，庭院内还设有一座考古博物馆。

Fēng zhī gōngdiàn (Hawa Mahal), zìmiàn yìshì “fēng zhī gōngdiàn”, yóu shīrén guówáng sà wǎ yī-pǔ lā tǎ pǔ-xīn gé (Sawai Pratap Singh) yú 1799 nián jiànzhào, zuòwéi tā hé jiārén de bīshǔ shèngdì. Zhèlǐ yěshì wángshì nǚjuānmen guānchá rìcháng shēnghuó ér bù bèi rén fā xiàn dì dìfāng. Zhè zuò dútè de wǔ céng jiànzhù rónghéle yīndùjiào hé yīslán jiànzhù fēnggé, qí wàibù de xiǎo gézǐ chuāng (chēng wéi jharokhas) xíngsì kè lǐ xī nà shén de wángguān. Zhèxiē chuānghù yě qǐ dào le kòngtiáo de zuòyòng, jiāng liángshuǎng de kōngqì chuī jìn gōngdiàn, shǐ qí chéngwéi xiàjì wánměi de xiūqì zhī suǒ. Fēng zhī gōngdiàn yóu fēnsè shāyán jiànzhào ér chéng, shì zhāi pǔ ěr de biāozhì xìng jiànzhù, yóukè kěyǐ cóng mǎlù duimiàn de wàibù xīnshǎng qí zhuànglì de jǐngsè. Dāngrán, nín yě kěyǐ zhíjiē pá dào dīngbù, tòuguò chuānghù xīnshǎng měijǐng. Rújīn, fēng zhī gōngdiàn yóu lǎ jiǎ sītān bāng zhèngfǔ kǎogǔ bùmén wéihù, tíngyuàn nèi hái shè yǒu yīzuò kǎogǔ bówùguǎn.

Hawa Mahal

Hawa Mahal, literally the Palace of Winds, was built in 1799 by the poet king Sawai Pratap Singh as a summer retreat for him and his family. It also served as a place where the ladies of the royal household could observe everyday life without being seen themselves. This unique five-storey structure is a blend of Hindu and Islamic architecture, and the exterior, with its small latticed windows (called jharokhas), resembles the crown of Lord Krishna. The windows also serve as an air-

conditioner of sorts, blowing cool air throughout the palace, making it the perfect retreat during summers. Built from pink sandstone, the Hawa Mahal is Jaipur's iconic landmark and visitors can view its complete magnificence from outside, from across the road. However, it is also possible to climb right up to the top for a wonderful view from the windows. Today, the Mahal is maintained by the Archaeological Department of the Government of Rajasthan and also houses an archaeological museum in the courtyard.

2. 琥珀堡 Amber Fort



琥珀堡位于斋浦尔的旧都 Amber 一座能俯视全城的山丘之上，是印度古代藩王 Raja Man Singh 于 1592 年建立的都城。不同于“粉红之城”的其他建筑颜色，城堡由奶白、浅黄、玫瑰红及纯白石料建成，远看犹如琥珀，故称之为琥珀堡。堡垒内规模宏大华丽，有接见公众的 Hall of Public Audience、接见大臣的 Hall of Private Audience、皇室居住的庭院。特别是“镜之宫” Sheesh Mahal 尤其瑰丽，宫殿用玻璃嵌壁，在阳光的反射下，整个宫殿熠熠生辉。堡垒中的御居十分有趣。地面一层分隔成十二所房子，各住一位王妃。建了十二道独立楼梯通往各妃子的房间，王妃的居室中间却由墙壁分隔，不能互通，无法知道国王到哪位妃子的房间去不在话下，吃醋争吵还要到中央的广场去才骂得成。而国王则在二楼阳台一目了然，一切尽在掌握之中。

Hǔpò bǎo Amber Fort hǔpò bǎo wèiyú zhāi pǔ ěr de jiù dū Amber yīzuò néng fǔshì quán chéng de shān qiū zhī shàng, shì yìndù gǔdài fān wáng Raja Man Singh yú 1592 nián jiànli de dūchéng. Bùtóng yú “fěnhóng zhī chéng” de qítā jiànzhù yánsè, chéngbǎo yóu nǎi bái, qiǎnhuáng, méi guī hóng jí chún báishí liào jiànchéng, yuǎn kàn yóurú hǔpò, gù chēng zhī wèi hǔpò bǎo. Bǎolěi nèi guīmó hóngdà huàlì, yǒu jiējiàn gōngzhòng de Hall of Public Audience, jiējiàn dàchén de Hall of Private Audience, huángshì jūzhù de tíngyuàn. Tèbié shì “jìng zhī gōng” Sheesh Mahal yóuqí guīlì, gōngdiàn yòng bōlǐ qiàn bì, zài yángguāng defǎnshè xià, zhěnggè gōngdiàn yìyì shēng huī. Bǎolěi zhōng de yù jū shífēn yǒuqù. Dìmiàn yī céng fēngé chéng shí'èr suǒ fǎngzi, gè zhù yī wèi wángfēi. Jiànle shí'èr dào dúlì lóutī tōng wǎng gè fēizi de fǎngjiān, wángfēi de jūshì zhōngjiān què yóu qiángbì fēngé, bùnéng hùtōng, wúfǎ zhīdào guówáng dào nǎ wèi fēizi de fǎngjiān qù bùzài huà xià, gā cù zhēngchǎo hái yào dào zhōngyāng de guǎngchǎng qù cái mà dé chéng. Ěr guówáng zé zài èr lóu yángtái yīmùliǎorán, yīqiè jīn zài zhǎngwò zhī zhōng.

Amber Fort

Amber Fort is located in Amber, the old capital of Jaipur. It is built on a hill from where the whole city can be seen. It is a capital city established by an ancient Indian King, Raja Man Singh in 1592. Different from the "Pink City" 's other buildings' colors, the Fort is made of milky white, pale yellow, red and white roses coloured stones, while seeing from far off place it looks like amber, so it was called as Amber Fort in ancient times. The interior of the fortress is Magnificent large-scale constructions, it has a Hall of Public Audience to meet the public, a Hall of Private Audience to meet the ministers, and the Royal residence. Especially the "Palace of Mirrors" Sheesh Mahal is especially beautiful, palace walls embedded with glasses, in the reflection in the sun, the whole palace shines. Home of the Royal Fort is very interesting indeed. Ground floor divided into 12 houses, each for living of a imperial concubine. Built 12 independent staircase leading to the rooms of 12 imperial concubine, the rooms of the imperial concubine were separated by walls and cannot be mutually linked, there was no way to know that the king is with which imperial concubine, if they were to quarrel they have to come to central square. The King is on the second-floor balcony at a glance, everything is under control.

3. 城市皇宫 City Palace



城市皇宫位于旧城中心，是印度保存得最为完好的古迹之一。王宫是拉贾斯坦城邦臣服于莫卧儿帝国后，于1728年兴建的宫殿，现在的斋浦尔国王还生活在皇宫内。皇宫由多个宫殿组成，单是城门就有8个之多，建筑奢华，几乎占了旧市街四分之一面积。城市宫殿的建筑混合着拉贾斯坦和莫卧儿的风格，宫殿部分地方改建成博物馆。博物馆内收藏当时斋浦尔国王使用的精致用品和珍宝，分为军事收藏馆、皇家用品馆等。更藏有一个世界上最大的银瓶，这个瓶子曾用来运载恒河圣水给远赴英国的印度皇子饮用。宫旁还有间 Palace Cafe，在幽雅的庭园中感受印度王族的盛衰起落，也颇有意思。小贴士：宫殿中有衣着鲜艳为游客在手上画画的妇女，50卢比一只手，图案可保持10天不掉色。

门票：200卢比（含相机费用）。门票为联票，可以在两天内参观位于琥珀堡后面的老虎堡，到琥珀堡可在风之宫殿前坐公共汽车去。开放时间：9:30-17:00

Chéngshì huánggōng City Palace: chéngshì huánggōng wèiyú jiù chéng zhōngxīn, shì yìndù bǎocún dé zuìwéi wánhǎo de gǔjī zhī yī. Wánggōng shì lǎ jiǎ sītǎn chéngbāng chénfú yú mò wò er dìguó hòu, yú 1728 nián xīngjiàn de gōngdiàn, xiànzài de zhāi pǔ ěr guówáng hái shēnghuó zài huánggōng nèi. Huánggōng yóu duō gè gōngdiàn zǔchéng, dān shì chéng mén jiù yǒu 8 gè zhī duō, jiànzhù shēhuá, jīhū zhànle jiù shìjiē sì fēn zhī yī miànjī. Chéngshì gōngdiàn de jiànzhù hùnhézhù lǎ jiǎ sītǎn hé mò wò er de fēnggé, gōngdiàn bùfēn dìfāng gǎijiàn chéng bówùguǎn. Bówùguǎn nèi shōucáng dāngshí zhāi pǔ ěr guówáng shíyòng de jīngzhì yòngpǐn hé zhēnbǎo, fēn wéi jūnshì shōucáng guǎn, huángjiā yòngpǐn guǎn děng. Gēng cáng yǒu yīgè shìjiē shàng zuìdà de yín píng, zhège píngzi céng yòng lái yùnzài héng hé shèngshuǐ gěi yuǎn fù yīngguó de yìndù huángzǐ yǐnyòng. Gōng páng hái yǒu jiān Palace Cafe, zài yōuyǎ de tíngyuán zhōng gǎnshòu yìndù wángzú de shèngshuāi qǐluò, yě pō yǒuyìsi. Xiǎo tiē shì: Gōngdiàn zhōng yǒu yīzhūo xiānyàn wèi yóukè zài shǒu shàng huà huà de fùnǚ, 50 lú bǐ yī zhī shǒu, tú'àn kě bǎochí 10 tiān bù diào sè. Ménpiào: 200 Lú bǐ (hán xiàngjī fèiyòng). Ménpiào wèi lián piào, kěyǐ zài liǎng tiānnèi cānguān wèiyú hǔpǒ bǎo hòumiàn de lǎohǔ bǎo, dào hǔpǒ bǎo kě zài fēng zhī gōngdiàn qián zuò gōnggòng qìchē qù. Kāifàng shíjiān: 9:30-17:00

City Palace

City Palace is located in the center of old city, is one of the India's most well preserved monuments. After Rajasthan succumbed to Moghul Empire, the palace was built in 1728. Present king of Jaipur also lived in the Royal Palace. The Palace is composed of a number of palaces, there are as many as eight gates, a luxury building, occupies almost a quarter of the old town area. Construction of city of palaces having mixed style of Rajasthan and Mughals, a part of it is a palace turned into a museum. Museum has the collection of the sophisticated articles of daily use and treasures belonging to the king of Jaipur. It is divided into museum of the military equipment and, the Museum Royal items. It is also in possession of the world's largest Silver Jar, this Jar was used to carry sacred water of the River Ganga to far-off Britain for the purpose of drinking by the Indian Prince. There is Palace Café by the side of palace. In the elegant garden of the royal family, feeling Rise and Fall of India's kings is very interesting experience.

Tips: In the palace, you will find women dressed in brightly colored who paint the visitors' hands with Menhdi, 50 rupees for one hand, designs can be maintained for 10 days, and do not fade.

Tickets: Rs 200 (including camera fee). Tickets for the coat-tail within two days, you can visit Tigers Fort behind the Amber Fort, for going to the Amber Fort, can catch bus in the front of Hawa Mahal.

Opening Hours : 9:30-17: 00

4. 纳哈加尔堡 Nahargarh Fort



纳哈加尔堡傲然屹立于阿拉瓦利山的山脊之上，为斋浦尔城的北部城市增添了一道壮丽的风景。它建于1734年贾伊·辛格统治时期，后于1868年进行了扩建。纳哈加尔意为“老虎的居所”，曾是一道坚固的屏障，保卫斋浦尔抵御外敌入侵。城墙内设有玛德哈文德拉宫，是皇室成员的避暑胜地。这座宫殿由萨瓦伊·玛德哈·辛格建造，拥有12间配套的王后闺房，其中最宽敞的是国王的套房。所有闺房都由装饰着精美壁画的走廊连接。即使在今天，这座宫殿仍然是当地人野餐的热门地点。夜晚，灯光照亮的城堡显得格外璀璨。俯瞰

整座城市，璀璨的灯光交相辉映。

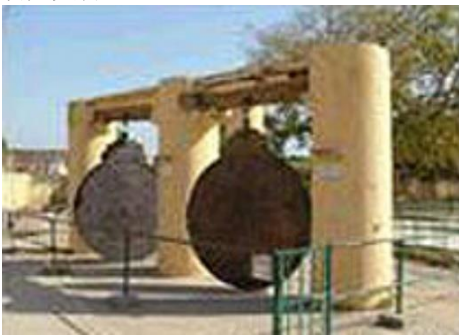
Nà hā jiā'ěr bǎo

Nà hā jiā'ěr bǎo àorán yìlì yú ālā wǎ lì shān de shānjǐ zhī shàng, wèi zhāi pǔ ěr chéng de běibù chéngshì zēngtiānlè yīdào zhuànglì de fēngjǐng. Tā jiàn yú 1734 nián jiǎ yī-xīn gé tǒngzhì shíqí, hòu yú 1868 nián jìnxíng kuòjiàn. Nà hā jiā'ěr yì wèi “lǎohǔ de jūsuǒ”, céng shì yīdào jiāngù de píngzhàng, bǎowèi zhāi pǔ ěr dīyù wàidí rùqīn. Chéngqióng nèi shè yǒu mǎ dé hā wén dé lā gōng, shì huángshì chéngyuán de bīshǔ shèngdì. Zhè zuò gōngdiàn yǒu sà wǎ yī-mǎ dé hā-xīn gé jiànào, yǒngyǒu 12 jiān pèitào de wánghòu guīfáng, qízhōng zuì kuānchǎng de shì guówáng de tàofáng. Suǒyǒu guīfáng dōu yǒu zhuāngshìzhe jīngměi bihuà de zǒuláng liánjiē. Jíshǐ zài jīntiān, zhè zuò gōngdiàn réng rán shì dāngdì rén yěcān de rèmén dìdiǎn. Yèwǎn, dēngguāng zhào liàng de chéngbǎo xiǎndé géwài cuǐcàn. Fùkàn zhèng zuò chéngshì, cuǐcàn de dēngguāng jiāoxiānghuīyìng.

Nahargarh Fort

Nahargarh Fort sits proudly on a ridge of the Aravalli Hills, creating an impressive northern backdrop to the city of Jaipur. It was constructed during the reign of Jai Singh in 1734, and was later expanded in 1868. Nahargarh, which means abode of tigers, was a formidable barrier, defending Jaipur against attacking enemies. Within its walls, the fort houses Madhavendra Bhawan, the summer destination for the members of the royal family. Built by Sawai Madho Singh, the palace has 12 matching boudoirs for the queens, at the head of which is a suite for the king. They are all connected by corridors decorated with delicate murals. Even today the palace is a favoured spot for local picnickers. The fort looks brilliant when floodlit at night. Overlooking the city, it presents a glittering view of the city lights.

古天文台 JANTAR MANTAR



Jantar Mantar 是保存最完好的一处,各种观测仪器,至今还能为天文学家所用。天文台的建造和观测仪器显示出古印度人的惊人智慧,他们很早就具有了观测天文科学知识,这使该天文台

颇具盛名。在这里,可看到两个圆形分许多格子测时间用的、距今有近 300 年历史的日晷,好像是现代的而不是年代久远的仪器。院内十二个三角形的小建筑,代表十二个星座,每个星座的角度及方向都朝着各自的星座,很准确、科学,(十二个星座组成的叫The Rasivalaya)至今还被用于研究占星学。

简塔·曼塔天文台是斋浦尔城建造者萨瓦伊·杰伊·辛格二世(SAWAI JAI SINGH II)的杰作。是当年的星象家用来观测天象、预测事务的场所。开放时间:9:30-17:00。

碧绿的草坪上,散布着众多奇形怪状的砖砌建筑,以及世界最大的日晷,每个都有特别的用途。精准的观测设施体现出古代印度人民的聪明和智慧。

门票100卢比(含照相费用)。

Jantar mantar shì bǎocún zuì wánhǎo de yī chù, gè zhǒng guāncè yíqì, zhījīn hái néng wéi tiānwénxué jiā suǒyòng. Tiānwéntái de jiànào hé guāncè yíqì xiǎnshì chū gǔ yìn duó rén de jīngrén zhìhuì, tāmen hěn zǎo jiù jùyǒule guāncè tiānwén de kēxué zhīshì, zhè shǐ gāi tiānwéntái pǒjù shèngmíng. Zài zhèlǐ, kě kàn dào liǎng gè yuán xíng fēn xǔduō gézi cè shíjiān yòng de, jù jīn yǒu jìn 300 nián lìshǐ de rìguǐ, hǎoxiàng shì xiàndài de ér bùshì niándài jiǔyǒu de yíqì. Yuànnèi shí'èr gè sānjiǎoxíng de xiǎo jiànzhù, dàibiǎo shí'èr gè xīngzuò, měi gè xīngzuò de jiǎodù jí fāngxiàng dōu cháo zhe gèzì de xīngzuò, hěn zhǔnquè, kēxué, (shí'èr gè xīngzuò zǔchéng de jiào The Rasivalaya) zhījīn hái bèi yòng yú yánjiū zhānxīng xué. Jiǎn tǎ·màn tǎ tiānwéntái shì zhāi pǔ ěr chéng jiànào zhě sà wǎ yī·jié yī-xīn gé èr shì (SAWAI JAI SINGH II) de jiézuò. Shì dāngnián de xīngxiàng jiāyòng lái guāncè tiānxiàng, yùcè shìwù de chǎngsuǒ. Kāifàng

shíjiān:9:30-17:00. Bìlǚ de cǎopíng shàng, sànbùzhe zhòngduō qíxíngguàizhuàng de zhuān qì jiànzhù, yǐjī shíjiè zuìdà de rìguǐ, měi gè dōu yǒu tèbié de yòngtú. Jīngzhǔn dì guāncè shèshī tǐxiàn chū gǔdài yìn duó rénmin de cōngmíng hé zhìhuì. Ménpiào 100 lúǐ (hán zhàoxiàng fèiyòng).

Jantar Mantar is the best preserved one, with various observation instruments that can still be used by astronomers. The construction and observation instruments of the observatory show the amazing wisdom of the ancient Indians. They had scientific knowledge of astronomical observation very early, which made the observatory quite famous. Here, you can see two circular sundials with many grids for measuring time, which are nearly 300 years old. They look like modern instruments rather than ancient ones. The twelve triangular small buildings in the courtyard represent the twelve constellations. The angle and direction of each constellation are facing their own constellation. They are very accurate and scientific. (The twelve constellations are called The Rasivalaya). They are still used to study astrology.

Jantar Mantar Observatory is the masterpiece of Sawai Jai Singh II, the builder of Jaipur City. It was a place used by astrologers at that time to observe celestial phenomena and predict affairs. Opening hours: 9:30-17:00.

On the green lawn, there are many odd-shaped brick buildings and the world's largest sundial, each with a special purpose. The precise observation facilities reflect the intelligence and wisdom of the ancient Indian people.

Tickets are 100 rupees (including photography fees).

拉克施密—拿拉央那神庙 Laksmi Narayana Temple



拉克施密—拿拉央那神庙是由印度最有钱的比拉家族捐款修建的神庙，供奉着幸运女神 Laksmi 和她的丈夫主拿拉央那的神像。

Lākè shī mì-ná lā yāng nà shén miào Laksmi Narayana Temple lākè shī mì-ná lā yāng nà shén miào shì yóu yìndù zuì yǒu qián de bǐ lǐ jiāzú juānkǎn xiūjiàn de shén miào, gòngfèngzhe xìngyùn nǚshén Laksmi hé tā de zhàngfū zhǔ ná lā yāng nà de shénxiàng.

Laksmi Narayana Temple

Laksmi Narayana Temple is a temple built by the donations from the richest Indian family, Birla Family. It is having the Idols of enshrined lucky goddess Laksmi and her husband Narayan.

OTHER IMPORTANT TOURIST PLACES IN INDIA

瓦拉纳西 (BANARAS)

瓦拉纳西在印度北方恒河中游的瓦拉纳西和阿西两条河之间，这个名字是由瓦拉纳西和阿西两个印地语词拼成的。它是印度教的圣地和印度教徒朝拜的中心，人口有一百多万，是印度的一个中等城市。瓦拉纳西是在一九五七年以前叫 贝拿勒斯，据说是婆罗门和印度教主神之一的湿婆神，于六千年前所建造的。在公元前四世纪到公元六世纪，它曾经是学术中心，公元十二世纪是为古王朝都城，据说公元前五百年，释迦牟尼第一次讲道就是在附近的鹿野苑，所以这座城被誉为印度之光，佛教大师玄奘曾到此，在瓦拉纳西的恒河弯两侧修建了六十四座带有石阶的码头，供印度教徒沐浴礼拜，这座码头叫加特在恒河两岸的码头上有许多焚尸场，每天都有很多虔诚的信徒，管理死者时限的湿婆神常在恒河岸边巡视，凡在这里火化者，都可免爱轮回再生之苦，并且回到天堂。

Wǎ lā nàxī (BANARAS) wǎ lā nàxī zài yìndù běifāng héng hé zhōngyóu de wǎ lā nàxī hé ā xī liǎng tiáo hé zhī jiān, zhègè míngzì shì yóu wǎ lā nàxī hé ā xī liǎng gè yìn dì yǔcí píng chéng de. Tā shì yìndùjiào de shèngdì hé yìndù jiàotú cháobài de zhōngxīn, rénkǒu yǒu yībǎi wàn duō, shì yìndù de yīgè zhōngděng chéngshì. Wǎ lā nàxī shì zài yījiǔwǔqī nián yǐqián jiào bèi ná lè sī, jùshuō shì pólómén hé yìndùjiào zhǔshén zhī yī de shī pó shén, yú liùqiān nián

qián suǒ jiànzào de. Zài gōngyuán qián sì shìjì dào gōngyuán liù shìjì, tā céngjīng shì xuéshù zhōngxīn, gōngyuán shí'èr shìjì shì wèi gǔ wángcháo dūchéng, jùshuō gōngyuán qián wǔbǎi nián, shì jiā móu ní dì yī cì jiǎng dào jiùshì zài fùjìn de lùyě yuàn, suǒyǐ zhè zuò chéng bèi yù wèi yìndù zhī guāng, fójiào dàshī xuán zàng céng dào cǐ, zài wǎ lā nàxī de héng hé wān liǎng cè xiūjiànle liùshísi zuò dài yǒu shí jiē de mǎtóu, gōng yìndù jiàotú mùyù lǐbài, zhè zuò mǎtóu jiào jiā tè zài héng hé liǎng'àn de mǎtóu shàng yǒu xǔduō fēn shī chǎng, měitiān dū yǒu hěnduō qiánchéng de xìntú, guǎnlǐ sīzhě shíxiàn de shī pó shén cháng zài héng hé'àn biān xúnshì, fán zài zhèlǐ huǒhuà zhě, dōu kě miǎn ài lún huì zàishēng zhī kǔ, bìngqiě huí dào tiāntáng.

Varanasi (Banaras)

Varanasi is located in Uttar Pradesh in India between two rivers Assi and the Varanasi in the middle reaches of the river Ganges. This name is derived by combining two Hindi words; Varanasi and Assi. It is a holy place of Hindu religion and the center of Hindu pilgrimage. It has more than one million population, is a medium-sized cities in India. Varanasi was called as Banaras before 1957. It is said that one of the main God of Brahman and Hindu religion Lord Shiva, founded this city six, thousand years ago. From the fourth century BC to the sixth century AD, it was an academic center. And in the twelfth century AD it was the capital of ancient dynasties. It is said that in 500 BC Sakya Muni's the first sermon took place in Sarnath in the close vicinity of it. So this Town is known as the Light of India, Buddhist Master Hsuan-tsang came to this place. On both sides of the Ganges 64 Ghats (Piers) are constructed of stones. Hindus offer worship here, these terminals are called ghats. There are many cremator on both banks of the river Ganga. Every day, many devout believers, manage cremation of the dead person. It is believed those are cremated here become free from the suffering of life and death and return to paradise.

菩提迦耶 (Bodhgaya)

释迦牟尼的诞生地蓝毗尼园，悟道之处菩提迦耶，第一次无比丘讲说佛法的鹿野苑，一季涅槃之地的拘尸那迦合称四大圣地，菩提迦耶四大圣地中最具有重要意义的圣地，位于巴特纳城南方一百五十千米的地方，相传佛教创始人释迦牟尼在这里修行获得觉悟，所以这个地方被佛教徒称为朝拜圣地，菩提迦耶大塔，据说是由公元三世纪时阿育王所造，塔高约五十米，形状像金子可菩提树，据说佛陀就在这棵树下悟道成佛的。

菩提迦耶大塔世纪时阿育王所造，塔高约五十米，形状像金子可菩提树，据说佛陀就在这棵树下悟道成佛的。

Pútí jiā yé (BODHGAYA) shì jiā móu ní de dànsēng dì lán pí ní yuán, wùdào zhī chù pútí jiā yé, dì yī cì wú bǐqiū jiǎng shuō fófǎ de lùyě yuàn, yījī niè pán zhī dì de jū shī nà jiā hé chéng sì dà shèngdì, pútí jiā yé sì dà shèngdì zhōng zuì jùyǒu zhòngyào yìyì de shèngdì, wèiyú bàtè nà chéng nánfāng yībǎi wúshíqiān mǐ dì dìfāng, xiāngchuán fójiào chuàngshǐ rén shì jiā móu ní zài zhèlǐ xiūxíng huòdé juéwù, suǒyǐ zhège dìfāng bèi fójiào tú chéng wèi cháobài shèngdì, pútí jiā yé dàtǎ, jùshuō shì yóu gōngyuán sān shìjì shí āyù wáng suǒ zào, tǎ gāo yuē wúshí mǐ, xíngzhuàng xiàng jīn zǐ kě pútí shù, jùshuō fótuó jiù zài zhè kē shù xià wùdào chéng fó de. Pútí jiā yé dàtǎ shìjì shí āyù wáng suǒ zào, tǎ gāo yuē wúshí mǐ, xíngzhuàng xiàng jīn zǐ kě pútí shù, jùshuō fótuó jiù zài zhè kē shù xià wùdào chéng fó de.

Bodhgaya

Birth place of Sakyamuni, Lumbini, the place of enlightenment of the Bodha Gaya, the first preaching of Buddhist doctrine at Sarnath, the place of Nirvana Kushinagar these four places are collectively known as Four Holy Lands, Bodhi Gaya is the most important holy place among the four Holy places mentioned above. It is located in the 150 km in the south of Patna city, according to legend the founder of Buddhism Sakyamuni got enlightenment here. Therefore this place is called as place of pilgrimage by followers of Buddhism. Bodhi Gaya large tower, is said to be constructed by Ashoka in the third century AD, the tower is about 50 meters high, shaped like a gold bodhi tree, It is said that Buddha got enlightenment under this tree.

王舍城(RAJGIR)

王舍城是释迦牟尼秀行的地方，四周是岩山围绕的坚固盆地，从前是摩揭陀国的国度，城壁像中国的万里长城外壁厚约五米，兑共长四十米是印度现存最古老的造城壁，王舍城不仅是佛教圣地，也是耆那教圣地。它位于比哈尔邦的巴特那地区，距巴特那一百零二千米，菩提迦耶六十五千米，分为旧城和新城两部分，就城为苏瓦万所建，名字叫瓦苏摩蒂，为摩揭陀国首都，城坐落于山间，由内外两部分，后焚于大火城毁，未生怨王在离旧城约四千米处，五山之北建新城，因建有许多装饰华丽的宫殿，故译为王舍城阿育王时迁都波叱厘城，将王舍城布施给波罗门居住，王舍城早期流行龙神和夜叉崇拜等泛神信仰，以后又流行佛教和耆那教，佛它在世时，曾经长期在这里居住，据说他成佛前，第一次来这里时受到频毗婆罗王礼待，源将国土分一部分给他，城道后在这里传教说法，富有的商人他建造了竹林精舍佛陀圆寂后。信徒根据佛陀生前的业行，建立了众多的寺塔，城东边七十四米处是佛它长住的灵鹫山，上有佛灭后第一次三藏结集的七叶窟，提婆达多要谋害佛陀的石头，佛人定的地方，弟子阿南入定处，舍利子入定处，城的西边是毗布罗山，佛陀生前在山上以温泉洗澡，城的北郊是佛陀住所迦兰陀竹园，未生怨王建的佛舍利塔，阿南半身塔，阿南证果塔和迦兰陀池，耆那教创始人太雄曾在这里度过了十四雨安居，第二十代传人也在这里诞生。

Wáng shěchéng (RAJGIR) wáng shěchéng shì shì jiā móu ní xiùxíng dì dìfāng, sìzhōu shì yánshān wéirào de jiāngù péndì, cóngqián shì mó jiē tuó guó de guódù, chéngbì xiàng zhōngguó de wànlǐ chángchéng wàibì hòu yuē wǔ mǐ, duì gòng zhǎng sìshí mǐ shì yīndù xiàncún zuì gǔlǎo de zào chéngbì, wáng shěchéng bùjīn shì fójiào shèngdì, yěshì qí nà jiào shèngdì. Tā wéiyú bǐ hā ěr bāng de bàtè nà dìqū, jù bàtè ne yībǎi líng èrqīān mǐ, pútí jiā yé liùshíwǔqiān mǐ, fēn wéi jù chéng hé xīnchéng liǎng bùfēn, jù chéng wèi sū wǎ wàn suǒ jiàn, míngzì jiào wǎ sū mó dì, wèi mó jiē tuó guó shǒudū, chéng zuòluò yú shān jiān, yóu nèiwài liǎng bùfēn, hòu fén yú dàhuǒ chéng huǐ, wèi shēng yuàn wáng zài lí jù chéng yuē sìqiān mǐ chù, wúshān zhī běi jiàn xīnchéng, yīn jiàn yǒu xǔduō zhuāngshì huá lì de gōngdiàn, gù yì wèi wáng shěchéng āyù wán shí qiāndū bō chì lí chéng, jiāng wáng shěchéng bùshì gěi bōluó mén jūzhù, wáng shěchéng zǎoqí liúxíng lóng shén hé yè yòu chóngbài děng fàn shén xīnyǎng, yīhòu yòu liúxíng fójiào hé qí nà jiào, fú tā zàishì shí, céngjīng chángqí zài zhèlǐ jūzhù, jùshuō tā wéi chéng fó qián, dì yī cì lái zhèlǐ shí ài dào pín pí bō luó wáng lì dài, yuán jiāng guótǔ fēn yībùfēn gěi tā, chéng dào hòu zài zhèlǐ chuánjiào shuōfǎ, fùyǒu de shānggrén wéi tā jiànzaole zhúlín jīng shě fótuó yuánjì hòu. Xīntú gēnjù fótuó shēngqián de yè xíng, jiànlì zhòngduō de sì tǎ, chéng dōngbian qīshí mǐ chù shì fú tā zhǎng zhù de líng jù shān, shàng yǒu fú miè hòu dì yī cì sānzàng jiéjì de qī yè kū, típó dá duō yào móuhài fótuó de shítou, fú rén dìng dì dìfāng, dì zī ānán rùdìng chù, shèlì zǐ rùdìng chù, chéng de xī biān shì pí bù luó shān, fótuó shēngqián zài shānshàng yǐ wēnquán xīzǎo, chéng de běi jiāo shì fótuó zhùsuǒ jiā lán tuó zhú yuán, wèi shēng yuàn wángjiàn de fú shèlì tǎ, ānán bànsēn tǎ, ānán zhèng guó tā hé jiā lán tuó chí, qí nà jiào chuàngshǐ rén dàxióng céng zài zhèlǐ dùguòle shíshí yǔ ānjū, dì èrshí dài chuánrén yě zài zhèlǐ dànsēng.

RAJGIR

Rajgir is the place where Sakyamuni traveled. It is a solid basin surrounded by rocks and mountains. It used to be the kingdom of Magadha. The city wall is about five meters thick like the outer wall of the Great Wall of China. It is 40 meters long in total and is the oldest existing city wall in India. Rajgir is not only a holy place for Buddhism, but also a holy place for Jainism. It is located in Patna area of Bihar, 102 kilometers away from Patna and 65 kilometers away from Bodhgaya. It is divided into two parts, the old city and the new city. The old city was built by Suvavan and named Vasumati. It was the capital of Magadha. The city was located in the mountains and consisted of inner and outer parts. Later, it was burned down in a fire. King Asanga built a new city about 4 kilometers away from the old city and to the north of the five mountains. Because there were many gorgeously decorated palaces, it was translated as Rajgir. King Ashoka moved the capital to Pataliputra and donated Rajgir to the Brahmins to live in. Pantheistic beliefs such as dragon god and Yaksha worship were popular in Rajgir during the early period, and later Buddhism and Jainism became popular.

When the Buddha was alive, he lived here for a long time. It is said that before he became a Buddha, when he came here for the first time, he was treated by King Bimbisara, who gave him a part of the country. Later, he preached here and a wealthy businessman built the Bamboo Grove Vihara for him after the Buddha passed away. Believers have built numerous temples and pagodas based on the deeds of the Buddha during his lifetime. Seventy-four meters east of the city is Vulture Peak, where the Buddha resided for a long time. On it is the Seven Leaves Cave, where the first Tripitaka was compiled after the Buddha's death, the stone where Devadatta tried to murder the Buddha, the place where the Buddha entered into meditation, the place where his disciple Ananda entered into meditation, and the place where Sariputra entered into meditation. To the west of the city is Mount Vipula, where the Buddha bathed in hot springs during his lifetime. On the northern outskirts of the city is the Kalanda Bamboo Garden, where the Buddha lived, and there is the Buddhist relic pagoda built by King Avici, the Ananda bust pagoda, the Ananda enlightenment pagoda and the Kalanda Pond. Mahavira, the founder of Jainism, spent fourteen rainy seasons here, and the twentieth generation successor was also born here.

那兰陀 (NALANDA)

那兰陀的名称主要是那兰陀寺，是印度佛教著名的寺院，位于巴特那城西北十一点三千米处，据说当地的森林水池中有名那兰陀的神龙，该寺因此得名，据说佛陀曾经在这里说法，湿磐后不久，帝日王在这里建寺，学者认为该寺应该建于五世纪左右，先后有六位印度国王参与了建寺的工程，最感时期方圆四十八里，南北楼十所寺院，长住僧同伴四千人左右加上客人等，又一万多人在这里居住，该寺在印度佛教史上具有重要地位，有最高学府之称。寺内藏有丰富的书籍。曾经培养出很多有名的佛教僧人，玄奘在寺里学习十多年，掌握了佛教大小乘理论，十三世纪左右，那兰陀寺毁于穆斯林军队的战头，僧人大量逃往国外。以后僧一度恢复但是不久又遭毁灭，一八六一年遗址被发现，一九一五年印度政府老古局根据玄奘的记载，做了挖掘工作。新发掘起来的遗址是一片红色砖石砌成的建筑群，中心是一个残塔，原高七层，现在只剩四层，

每层有很多巨大石柱，上面有栩栩如生的佛教，塔的东边有一排排僧房遗址。西边为一排排残存的佛塔，有的而作僧院。

Nà lán tuó (NALANDA) nà lán tuó de míngchēng zhǔyào shì nà lán tuó sì, shì yìndù fójiào zhùmíng de siyuàn, wèiyú bātè nà chéng xīběi shíyī diǎn sānqiān mǐ chù, jùshuō dāngdì de sēnlín shuǐchí zhōng yǒumíng nà lán tuó de shénlóng, gāi sì yīncǐ dé míng, jùshuō fótuó céngjīng zài zhèlǐ shuōfǎ, shī pán hòu bùjiǔ, dì rì wáng zài zhèlǐ jiàn sì, xuézhě rènwéi gāi sì yīnggāi jiàn yú wǔ shìjì zuǒyòu, xiānhòu yǒu liù wèi yìndù guówáng cānyùle jiàn sì de gōngchéng, zuì gǎn shíqí fāngyuán sishíbā lǐ, nánběi lóu shí suǒ siyuàn, zhǎng zhù sēng tóngbàn sìqiān rén zuǒyòu jiā shàng kèrén děng, yòu yī wàn duō rén zài zhèlǐ jūzhù, gāi sì zài yìndù fójiào shìshàng jùyǒu zhōngyào dìwèi, yòu zuìgāo xuéfǔ zhī chēng. Sīnèi cáng yǒu fēngfù de shūjí. Céngjīng péiyǎng chū hěnduō yǒumíng de fójiào sēngrén, xuán zàng zài sì lǐ xuéxí shí duō nián, zhǎng jùle fójiào dàxiǎo chéng lǐlùn, shísān shìjì zuǒyòu, nà lán tuó sì huǐ yú mùsīlín jūnduì de zhàn tóu, sēngrén dàliàng táo wǎng guówài. Yǐhòu sēng yīdù huífù dànsì bùjiǔ yòu zāo huǐmiè, yībāliùyī nián yízhī pī fā xiàn, yījiǔyīwǔ nián yìndù zhèngfǔ lǎo gǔ jú gēnjù xuán zàng de jì dài, zuòle wājué gōngzuò. Xīn fājué qīlái de yízhī shì yīpiàn hóngsè zhuān shí qì chéng de jiànzhù qún, zhōngxīn shì yīgè cán tǎ, yuán gāo qī céng, xiànzài zhǐ shèng sì céng, měi céng yǒu hěnduō jùdà shízhù, shàngmiàn yǒu xǔxǔrúshēng de fójiào, tǎ de dōngbian yǒuyī pái pái sēngfáng yízhǐ. Xībian wéi yī pái pái cáncún de fó tǎ, yǒu de ér zuò sēngyuàn.

Nalanda

Nalanda is the name of Nalanda Monastery, it is a famous Indian Buddhist temple. It is located at a place 11.3 Kms in the northwest of city Patna. It is said that in the local forest and pool there is famous Nalanda monastery. This monestry became famous because of it. It is said that Buddha offered his teachings here. Shortly after his death, King made a Temple here. Total circumference 48 meters, there are 10 monasteries from north to south, around 4000 monks with their companions can live together with other guests, and more than 10,000 people live here. This monastery has an important status in the history of the Buddhist in India. It is the highest known institution. There is a rich collection of books in the Temple. It has trained many well-known Buddhist monks. Xuan Zang studied in this temple for more than a decade. Mastered a lot of Buddhist theories. In about thirteenth century, Nalanda Temple was destroyed by the Muslim army in the war, and a large number of monks fled abroad. But after the monks resumed, shortly destroyed once again. In 1861, the site was discovered, and in 1915 Government of India carried out the excavation work as per the records of Xuan Zang. The newly excavated site is a red brick masonry building. A tower is a remnant in the centre, originally seven-storied, and now there are only four stories. Each story has a lot of stone pillars, there are lively Buddhist life, in the east of the tower, there is a Site of rows of houses of monks. In the west, there is a remaining Buddhist Pagoda. Some are the institutes of monks.

灵鹫山 (Gridhkutta Hill)

印度古代佛教圣地，距离巴特那一百零千米，菩提迦耶六十千米，根据佛经记载，这里石佛陀生前说法和结集佛教的地方，正峰山顶有一个岩石矗立 形状像鹭鸟的头所以叫灵鹫山，释迦牟尼曾在这里住了十二年中国圣人法显和玄奘都曾来过这里。灵鹫山的山顶的石阶，传说提婆达多曾经山顶抛石头要谋害佛陀，结果将佛陀的是打伤，现在这里还有一座平台遗址，相传是佛陀说法的地方，山中有很多石洞是僧人的住所。

Líng jiù shān (GRIDHKUTTA HILL) yìndù gǔdài fójiào shèngdì, jùlǐ bātè nà yībǎi líng qiān mǐ, pútí jiā yé liùshíqiān mǐ, gēnjù fójīng jìzǎi, zhèlǐ shí fótuó shēngqián shuōfǎ hé jiéjí fójiào dì dìfāng, zhèng fēngshāndǐng yǒu yīgè yánshí chùlì xíngzhuàng xiàng jiù niǎo de tóu suǒyǐ jiào líng jiù shān, shì jiā móu ní céng zài zhèlǐ zhùle shí'èr nián zhōngguó shèngrén fǎ xiǎn hé xuán zàng dōu céng láiguò zhèlǐ. Líng jiù shān de shāndǐng de shí jiē, chuánshuō típó dá duō céngjīng shān dǐng pāo shítou yào móuhài fótuó, jiéguǒ jiāng fótuó de shì dǎ shāng, xiànzài zhèlǐ hái yǒu yīzuò píngtái yízhǐ, xiāngchuán shì fótuó shuōfǎ dì dìfāng, shānzhōng yǒu hěnduō shí dòng shì sēngrén de zhùsuǒ.

Gridhkutta Hill

India's ancient holy sites of Buddhism, 100 km away from Patna, and 60 km from Bodh Gaya. According to Buddhist records, Buddha preached here, and Buddhists concentrate here. On the top of the mountain, there is a rock of shaped like a bird Gridh therefore it is called Gridhkutta Hill. Shakyamuni had lived here for 12 years. Chinese saint Faxian and Xuanzang came to this place. The stones on the Gridhkutta Hill, it is said that Devdatta once, from the top of hill threw the stones to conspire in the murder of Buddha, as a result, Buddha was injured. Now there is a platform, it is said that it is the place where Buddha preached. There are many caves in the hill where monks used to live.

拘尸那加 (Kushinagar)

它是印度佛教四大圣地之一，位于北方邦哥达拉克浦县凯西以北约两点四千米的慕大孔瓦镇，相传这个地方原来末罗人住的地方，末罗人信仰佛教，佛它从吠舍离开到王舍城的时候，在途中生病，在这个地方圆寂，这也是佛它生前最后度弟子须跋塔罗和湿磐后金刚士放金杵的地方，以及八王分配佛舍利的地方，佛教徒军称

这里为佛它湿磐地，到处都建有佛它让人朝拜，七世纪的时候，唐慎玄奘曾经来到这里。这里已经成为世界佛教徒重要的朝圣地。

Jū shī nàjiā (KUSHINAGAR) tā shì yìndù fójiào sì dà shèngdì zhī yī, wèiyú běifāng bāng gē dá lākè pǔ xiàn kǎi xī yǐ běiyuē liǎng diǎn sìqiān mǐ de mó dà kǒng wǎ'èr zhèn, xiāngchuán zhège dìfāng yuánlái wèi luó rén zhù dì dìfāng, mò luó rén xīnyǎng fójiào, fú tā cóng fēi shě líkāi dào wáng shěchéng de shíhòu, zài túzhōng shēngbìng, zài zhège dìfāng yuánjì, zhè yěshì fú tā shēngqián zuìhòu dù dìzǐ xū bá tā luō hé shī pán hòu jīngāng shì fāng jīn chǔ dì dìfāng, yǐjī bā wáng fēnpèi fú shèlì dì dìfāng, fójiào tú jūn chēng zhèlǐ wéi fú tā shī pán de, dào chù dōu jiàn yǒu fú tā ràng rén cháobài, qī shìjì de shíhòu, tángshènxuán zàng céngjīng lái dào zhèlǐ. Zhèlǐ yǐjīng chéngwéi shìjiè fójiào tú zhòngyào de cháoshèng dì.

Kushinagar

It is one of the four Holy places of the Buddhist religion, located in Uttar Pradesh. It is said that originally, the Luo people lived here, they were the followers of Buddhism. When Buddha left for Rajgir from Feishe, he fell ill en route and died at this place. The followers of Buddhism say that this is the place of Nirvana, everywhere built the pagodas to allow people to worship. During the seventh century Xuanzang came here. This place has already become an important Pilgrimage destination for Buddhists.

ARRIVAL (到达)

你们来到印度访问之际 我，阿里在印度最古老最美丽的城市德里衷心热烈欢迎你们。我是你们的导游，属于国际旅游社。现在 请你们跟着我来别随便走。请再一次把你的行李检查一下，把行李一起 放在靠近车子的那个地方。请大家上车坐好。我再次代表我的公司和我自己身份欢迎你们。现在我赠送这些花束来欢迎你们请接受吧。我们印度人用花束来对外国客人表示欢迎。我们现在去饭店。刚才你们登陆的地方叫因迪拉甘地国际机场。饭店离这里很近只有五公里路，路上要十五分钟。你们来到印度参观的是一定很愿意了解印度的情况所以我想利用这个时间很简单地给你们介绍我们国家印度的情况。印度是国际舞台上地位比较高的，文化丰富多彩的一个发展中国家。印度是世界上人口最多的国家，也是面积第七最大的国家。印度有五种主要宗教，印度教，回教，锡克教，基督教和佛教。印度教的人平常在额头上做红色的点，回教教徒的戴白色的帽子，锡克教的带头巾，他们不刮胡子。印度的女人 在头发上放红色来表示她们已经结婚了。

请注意把！我们快到饭店了。请等一会儿，在大厅休息吧。请在本子上登记你们的名字和需要的信息就签字。现在我们去各自的房间，只要拿轻而重要的行李，大而重的行李留在这里。饭店的服务员给你们把你们的行李送到你们房间去。我想说明一下关于饭店的服务需要的信息。如果在饭店住的时候发现任何问题就请给我打电话，我来帮助你们。我的电话号码是 940987....。你们的房间号码是，234，435。如果你告诉我 你今天晚饭想吃的菜，和明天早饭 爱吃的菜，我可以给你们通知服务室。他们给你们安排好。明天我们参观德里的红堡，印度门，甘地陵，总统府等地方。请你们早上十点以前准备好，汽车十点来。还有什么事情你们要了解？没有就好。明天见。晚安。

Nimen lái dào yìndù fǎngwèn zhī jì wǒ, ālǐ zài yìndù zuì gǔlǎo zuì měilì de chéngshì délǐ zhōngxīn rèliè huānyíng nimen. Wǒ shì nimen de dǎoyóu, shǔyú guójì lǚyóu shè. Xiànzài qǐng nimen gēnzhe wǒ lái bié suíbiàn zǒu. Qǐng zài yīcǐ bǎ nǐ de xínglǐ jiǎnchá yíxià er, bǎ xínglǐ yīqǐ fàng zài kào jìn chēzi dì nàgè dìfāng. Qǐng dài jīa shàng chē zuò hǎo. Wǒ zài cǐ dài biǎo wǒ de gōngsī hé wǒ zìjǐ shēnfèn huānyíng nimen. Xiànzài wǒ zèng sòng zhèxiē huāshù lái huānyíng nimen qǐng jiēshòu ba. Wǒmen yìn duó rén yòng huāshù lái duì wàiguó kèrén biǎoshì huānyíng. Wǒmen xiànzài qù fàndiàn. Gāngcái nimen dēnglù dì dìfāng jiào yīn dí lǎ gāndì guójì jīchǎng. Fàndiàn lǐ zhèlǐ hěn jìn zhǐyǒu wǒ gōnglǐ lù, lùshàng yào shíwǔ fēnzhōng. Nimen lái dào yìndù cānguān de shì yīdìng hěn yuànyì liǎojiě yìndù de qíngkuàng suǒyǐ

wǒ xiǎng liyòng zhège shíjiān hěn jiǎndān de gěi nǐmen jièshào wǒmen guójiā yìndù de qíngkuàng. Yìndù shì guójiā wǔtái shàng dìwèi bǐjiào gāo de, wénhuà fēngfù duōcǎi de yīgè fāzhǎn zhōng guójiā. Yìndù shì shìjiè shàng rénǒu zuìduō de guójiā, yěshì miànjī dì qī zuìdà de guójiā. Yìndù yǒu wǔ zhǒng zhǔyào zōngjiào, yìndù jiào, huíhui jiào, xī kèjiào, jīdūjiào hé fōujiào. Yìndùjiào de rén píngcháng zài étóu shàng zuò hóngsè de diǎn, huí hui jiàotú de dài báisè de màozi, xī kè jiào de dài tóujīn, tāmen bù guā húzi. Yìndù de nǚrén zài tóufǎ shàng fàng hóngsè lái biǎoshì tāmen yǐjīng jiéhūnle. Qǐng zhùyì bǎ! Wǒmen kuài dào fàndiànle. Qǐng dēng yīhuǐ'er, zài dàtīng xiūxi ba. Qǐng zài běnzi shàng dēngjì nǐmen de míngzì hé xūyào de xīnxī jiù qiānzì. Xiànzài wǒmen qù gèzi de fángjiān, zhǐyào ná qīng ér zhòngyào de xínglǐ, dà ér zhòng de xínglǐ liú zài zhèlǐ., Fàndiàn de fúwùyuán gěi nǐ bǎ nǐmen de xínglǐ sòng dào nǐmen fángjiān qù. Wǒ xiǎng shuōmíng yīxià guānyú fàndiàn de fúwù xūyào de xīnxī. Rúguǒ zài fàndiàn zhù de shíhòu fāxiàn rènhe wèntí jiù qǐng gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà, wǒ lái bāngzhù nǐmen. Wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì 9409872345. Nǐmen de fángjiān hàomǎ shì, 234,435. Rúguǒ nǐ gàosù wǒ nǐ jīntiān wǎnfàn xiǎng chī de cài, hé míngtiān zǎofàn ài chī de cài, wǒ kěyǐ gěi nǐmen tōngzhī fúwù shì. Tāmen gěi nǐmen ānpái hǎo. Míngtiān wǒmen cānguān délǐ de hóng bǎo, yìndù mén, gāndì líng, zǒngtǒng fǔ dēng dìfāng. Qǐng nǐmen zǎoshang shí diǎn yǐqián zhǔnbèi hǎo, qìchē shí diǎn lái. Hái yǒu shé me shìqíng nǐmen yào liǎojiě? Méiyǒu jiù hǎo. Míngtiān jiàn. Wǎn'ān.

On your visit to India, I, Ali hearty welcome you all to Delhi, one of India's ancient and beautiful cities. I am your tourist guide from International Tour Company. Now I request you please follow me, please do not move at your own. Please check your luggage once again and place your luggage at the place close to that vehicle. Please board the bus and make yourself comfortable. I, once again warmly welcome all of you on behalf of my company and my own behalf. Now I will offer you this bouquet to welcome you, please accept it. We Indian people express our welcome to foreign guest by presenting them bouquets.

Now we are going to the Hotel. The place where you have just landed is called "Indira Gandhi International Airport". Our hotel is close to this place, it is just 5 kms from here, and it will take 15 minutes in the route. You have come to visit India; definitely, you would like to know about India, so I want to simply tell you something regarding our country, India.

India is a developing country having rich cultural heritage as well as enjoys a comparatively higher position on the international stage. India has the largest population in the world, in area, it is the seventh biggest country in the world. There are five main religions in India namely; Hindu, Muslim, Sikh, Christian and Buddhism. Hindus generally put a Red Tilak on their forehead, Muslims put on a white cap on their heads, people of the Sikh religion wear a turban on their heads, and they don't shave their beards. You will find Indian women with red colour on their heads; it signifies that they are married.

Please pay attention! We are fast approaching our hotel. Please wait here for a while, please take a rest in the hall. Please enter your name, required information on the register, and put your signature. Now we will move to the respective rooms, just carry light luggage with you and leave the heavy luggage here, attendant of the hotel will carry your luggage to your rooms.

I would like to explain to you a bit regarding the services provided by the hotel. During your stay at hotel, if you face any problem, please call me, my mobile number is 940987.... Your room numbers are 234, 435. Please tell me about your favourite dishes for dinner tonight and for the tomorrow's breakfast, I will convey it to service room for you. Tomorrow we will be visiting Red fort, India gate, Gandhi's Samadhi, Rastrapati Bhawan etc places. Please get ready before 10 am, the bus will reach at 10 o'clock. Is there anything else, you wish to ask? If not, then fine. See you tomorrow. Good night!

Visit to Tourist Places 游览有名的地方

你们！大家都准备好了吗？我们的汽车已经来了。汽车的号码是 DL08 1879. 让我们上汽车吧。首先我们去参观甘地陵。这个地方离这里有十公里，路上可能汽车满极所以最少要一个小时。如果有人要兑换美金就告诉我，在路上有外币兑换所，你们可以兑换。今天的兑换率是 1 美金85 卢比。要兑换多少？可能有小偷儿，小心吧。我来介绍路方边儿的一些有名的地方。请向左边儿看一看，那座圆形的楼，是印度的国会楼。现在我要给你们介绍德里的情况。我们到了甘地陵。让我们下车吧。参观这个地方需要差不多两个小时。免费。开放时间：全天开放。跟我一起来吧。在这里脱你们的鞋子，请别谈话，安静一下。这里不允许照相。在这里可以拍照。请别买，东西太贵。我帮您成交商品。我给您拍一张，请你们都站在那里，做合影。请按时回来，我在这里等您。有什么问题？请告诉我，别犹豫。想买什么，我来帮助您。一块四十卢比，差不多四元。好不好？时间不早了，让我们回去饭店把，好不好？如果你有什么建议请提出吧，大家听一听。交通：甘地陵在红堡对面。可以从市区乘坐公共汽车到达，也可乘坐出租车或地铁。最近的火车站是老德里火车站，最近的机场是甘地国际机场。

Nimen hǎo! Dàjiā dōu zhǔnbèi hǎole ma? Wǒmen de qìchē yǐjīng láile. Qìchē de hàomǎ shì DL08 1879. Ràng wǒmen shàng qìchē bǎ. Shǒuxiān wǒmen qù cānguān gāndì líng. Zhège dìfāng lí zhè lǐ yǒu shí gōnglǐ, lùshàng kěnéng qìchē mǎn jí suǒyǐ zuìshǎo yào yīgè xiǎoshí. Rúguǒ yǒurén yào duìhuàn měijīn jiù gào sù wǒ, zài lùshàng yǒu wàibì duìhuàn suǒ, nimen kěyǐ duìhuàn. Jīntiān de duìhuàn lǜ shì yī měijīn bāshíwulú bǐ. Yào duìhuàn duōshǎo? Kěnéng yǒu xiǎotōu er, xiǎoxīn ba. Wǒ lái jièshào lù fāng biān er de yīxiē yǒumíng dì dìfāng. Qǐng xiàng zuǒbiān er kàn yī kàn, nà zuò yuán xíng de lóu, shì yīndù de guóhuì lóu. Xiànzài wǒ yào gěi nimen jièshào dé lǐ de qíngkuàng. Wǒmen dào le gāndì líng. Ràng wǒmen xià chē ba. Cānguān zhège dìfāng xūyào chàbùduō liǎng gè xiǎoshí. Miǎnfèi. Kāifàng shíjiān: Quán tiān kāifàng. Gēn wǒ yī qǐ lái ba. Zài zhè lǐ tuō nimen de xiézi, qǐng bié tán huà, ānjìng yī xià. Zhè lǐ bù yǔnxǔ zhàoxiàng. Zài zhè lǐ kěyǐ pāizhào. Qǐng bié mǎi, dōngxī tài guì. Wǒ bāng nín chéngjiāo shāngpǐn. Wǒ gěi nín pāi yī zhāng, qǐng nimen dōu zhàn zài nà lǐ, zuò héyǐng. Qǐng ànshí huílái, wǒ zài zhè lǐ děng nín. Yǒu shé me wèntí? Qǐng gào sù wǒ, bié yóuyù. Xiǎng mǎi shénme, wǒ lái bāngzhù nín. Yīkuài sìshí lú bǐ, chàbùduō qī yuán. Hǎobù hǎo? Shíjiān bù zǎo le, ràng wǒmen huí qù fàndiàn bǎ, hǎobù hǎo? Rúguǒ nǐ yǒu shé me jiànyì qǐng tíchū ba, dàjiā tīng yī tīng. Jiāotōng: Gāndì líng zài hóng bǎo duìmiàn. Kěyǐ cóng shì qū chéngzuògōnggòng qìchē dào dá, yě kě chéngzuò chūzū chē huò dìtiě. Zuìjìn de huǒchē zhàn shì lǎo dé lǐ huǒchē zhàn, zuìjìn de jīchǎng shì gāndì guójì jīchǎng.

Good morning! Are you ready? Our bus has already arrived. Our bus number is DL08 1879. Let us board on the bus. First of all, we will visit Gandhi's Samadhi. This place is 10 km from here, en route we may come across heavy traffic, so it may take minimum 1 hour to reach. If any of you wish to exchange dollars, then tell me, there is a foreign exchange counter, where you may exchange your money. Today's exchange rate is rupees 85 a dollar. How much do you want to exchange? Beware of pilferers. Let me introduce some places on the way. Please see to your left, that round building is the Indian parliament. Now I will tell you about Delhi. We have reached Gandhi's Samadhi. Let us get down. It generally takes two hours to visit this place. No ticket required here. Opening time for the visitors is the whole day. Please come with me. Please put off your shoes here, please don't talk here, maintain silence, please. Photography is not allowed here. Don't buy the things here, they are too expensive. I may help you in bargaining. I may take a photograph for you, you may have a group photograph standing there.

Please return on time. I'll be waiting here for you. Do you have any problems? Please tell me, don't hesitate. Do you want to buy something? May I help you? The cost of 1 piece is Rs 40, almost 4 Yuan. Will it be, OK? Gandhi's Samadhi is on the opposite side of the Red Fort. May reach there by bus, also may go by taxi or Metro. The nearest railway station is Old Delhi Railway Station. The nearest airport is Indira Gandhi International Airport.

PART II

Important Information and Mock Practice for Chinese Tourist Guide

中文导游重要信息及模拟练习

Lesson 1
The Tour Guide Job Profile and Responsibilities in India
印度导游的工作简介与职责

导游的工作简介

Dǎoyóu de gōngzuò jiǎnjiè

The Tour Guide Job Profile and Responsibilities in India

印度是一个充满多样文化、历史遗迹和自然美景的国家，每年吸引数百万来自世界各地的游客。导游在塑造游客体验方面起着至关重要的作用，他们通过提供知识、洞察和顺畅的服务，使游客的旅行更具意义和乐趣。

Yìndù shì yí gè chōngmǎn duōyàng wénhuà, lìshǐ yíjì hé zìrán měijǐng de guójiā, měinián xīyīn shù bǎi wàn láizì shìjiè gèdì de yóukè. Dǎoyóu zài sùzào yóukè tiān fāngmiàn qízhe zhiguān zhōngyào de zuòyòng, tāmen tōngguò tígōng zhīshì, dòngchá hé shùnràng de fúwù, shǐ yóukè de lǚxíng gèng jù yìyì hé lèqù.

India, a land of diverse cultures, historical landmarks, and natural beauty, attracts millions of tourists from across the globe each year. Tour guides play a crucial role in shaping a tourist's experience by providing knowledge, insight, and smooth facilitation throughout their journey.

导游是经过培训的专业人员，陪同游客参观历史遗迹、文化景点、自然保护区和其他热门目的地。导游的主要职责是向游客介绍这些景点的历史背景、文化意义和有趣故事，使游客更好地理解 and 欣赏。

Dǎoyóu shì jīngguò péixùn de zhuānyè rényuán, péitóng yóukè cānguān lìshǐ yíjì, wénhuà jǐngdìǎn, zìrán bǎohùqū hé qítā rènmén mùdìdì. Dǎoyóu de zhǔyào zhízé shì xiàng yóukè jièshào zhèxiē jǐngdìǎn de lìshǐ bèijīng, wénhuà yìyì hé yǒuqù gùshi, shǐ yóukè gèng hǎo de lǐjiě hé xīnshǎng.

A tour guide is a trained professional who accompanies tourists to historical sites, cultural landmarks, wildlife sanctuaries, and other destinations of interest. Their primary role is to interpret and present facts, stories, and background about these destinations to visitors in an engaging and informative way.

导游可以独立工作，也可以为旅行社、旅游公司或政府旅游部门工作。他们可以为国内游客、国际游客或学生、探险爱好者等特殊群体提供服务。

Dǎoyóu kěyǐ dúlì gōngzuò, yě kěyǐ wèi lǚxíngshè, lǚyóu gōngsī huò zhèngfǔ lǚyóu bùmén gōngzuò. Tāmen kěyǐ wèi guónèi yóukè, guójì yóukè huò xuéshēng, tànxiǎn àihào zhě děng tèshū qúntǐ tígōng fúwù.

Tour guides can work independently as freelancers, be employed by tour operators or travel agencies, or even be part of government-authorized tourism boards. They may cater to domestic travelers, international tourists, or specialized groups like students, researchers, or adventure enthusiasts.

导游的主要职责

Dǎoyóu de zhǔyào zhízé

Key Responsibilities of a Tour Guide

提供准确且生动的信息

Tígōng zhǔnquè qiě shēngdòng de xīnxi

Providing Accurate and Engaging Information

导游的首要职责是向游客传达准确、有趣的信息，包括景点的历史、建筑、文化故事和背景。例如，在讲解泰姬陵时，导游会介绍建筑的艺术风格以及沙贾汗与穆塔兹之间的爱情故事。

Dǎoyóu de shǒuyào zhízé shì xiàng yóukè chuándá zhǔnquè, yǒuqù de xīnxi, bāokuò jǐngdìǎn de lìshǐ, jiànzhú, wénhuà gùshi hé bèijīng. Lìrú, zài jiǎngjiě Tàijī Lǐng shí, dǎoyóu huì jièshào jiànzhú de yìshù fēnggé yǐjì Shā Jiǎhàn yǔ Mùtāzī zhījiān de àiqíng gùshi.

The first responsibility of a tour guide is to convey accurate and interesting information to tourists, including the history, architecture, cultural stories and background of the attractions. For example, when explaining the Taj Mahal, the tour guide will introduce the artistic style of the building and the love story between Shah Jahan and Mumtaz.

制定和管理行程

Zhìdìng hé guǎnlǐ xíngchéng

Planning and Itinerary Management

导游需要合理安排时间，确保游客能够顺利参观所有的景点。一个结构良好的行程包括观光、餐饮、购物和自由活动时间。

Dǎoyóu xūyào héilǐ ānpái shíjiān, quèbǎo yóukè nénggòu shùnlì cānguān suǒyǒu de jǐngdìǎn. Yí gè jiégòu liánghǎo de xíngchéng bāokuò guānguāng, cānyǐn, gòuwù hé zìyóu huódòng shíjiān.

The tour guide needs to manage the time properly to ensure that tourists can visit all the attractions smoothly. A well-structured itinerary includes sightseeing, dining, shopping and free time.

确保游客的安全与舒适

Quèbǎo yóukè de ānquán yǔ shūshì

Ensuring Safety and Comfort

导游必须确保游客在旅行期间的安全，特别是在拥挤或探险活动中，如在喜马拉雅山徒步旅行或野生动物园中。

Dǎoyóu bìxū quèbǎo yóukè zài lǚxíng qījiān de ānquán, tèbié shì zài yōngjǐ huò tànxiǎn huódòng zhōng, rú zài Xīmǎlāyā Shān túbù lǚxíng huò yěshēng dòngwùyuán zhōng.

Guides must ensure tourists' safety during their tours, especially during crowded or adventurous activities such as trekking

or safari in the Himalayas.

导游需要具备的技能

Dǎoyóu xūyào jùbèi de jīnéng

Skills Required to Be a Tour Guide in India

深厚的历史与文化知识

Shēnhòu de lìshǐ yǔ wénhuà zhīshì

In-depth knowledge of history and culture.

优秀的沟通能力

Yōuxiù de gōutōng nénglì

Excellent communication skills.

时间管理技巧

Shíjiān guǎnlǐ jìqiǎo

Time management skills.

出色的人际关系能力

Chūsè de rénjì guānxì nénglì

Outstanding interpersonal skills.

游是印度旅游业的重要组成部分，他们不仅是知识的传递者，也是文化的桥梁。他们通过专业服务、解决问题和分享故事，为游客创造独特而难忘的旅行体验。

Dǎoyóu shì Yīndù lǚyóu yè de zhòngyào zǔchéng bùfèn, tāmen bùjīn shì zhīshì de chuándì zhě, yě shì wénhuà de qiáoliáng. Tāmen tōngguò zhuānyè fúwù, jiějué wèntí hé fēnxiǎng gùshi, wéi yóukè chuàngzào dùtè ér nánwàng de lǚxíng tīyàn.

Tourists are an important part of India's tourism industry. They are not only the transmitters of knowledge, but also the bridges of culture. They create unique and unforgettable travel experiences for tourists through professional services, problem solving and story sharing.

Lesson 2

Expectations of Chinese tourists from an Excellent Tour Guide from India?

中国游客对印度优秀导游有何期望？

Chinese tourists have specific expectations of tour guides based on their cultural preferences and travel habits. A good Indian tour guide catering to Chinese tourists should meet the following expectations:

1. Effective Communication

Mandarin Language Skills: Fluency or at least basic proficiency in Mandarin is highly valued. Using familiar terms and phrases can make Chinese tourists feel more comfortable.

Clarity and Simplicity: Avoid overly complex or ambiguous explanations, as clear and direct communication is appreciated.

中国游客根据自己的文化偏好和旅行习惯对导游有特定的期望。为中国游客服务的优秀印度导游应满足以下期望：

1. 有效沟通

普通话技能：流利或至少基本掌握普通话的人非常受重视。使用熟悉的术语和短语可以让中国游客感到更舒服。

清晰和简单：避免过于复杂或模棱两可的解释，清晰直接的沟通更受欢迎。

2. Cultural Sensitivity

Understanding Chinese Culture: Familiarity with Chinese traditions, holidays (e.g., Lunar New Year, Mid-Autumn Festival), and etiquette helps build rapport.

Respect for Group Dynamics: Chinese tourists often travel in groups and value collective experiences. Catering to the group's needs is essential.

Food Preferences: Awareness of dietary habits, such as a preference for hot meals, rice-based dishes, and less spicy options.

2. 文化敏感性

了解中国文化：熟悉中国传统、节日（例如农历新年、中秋节）和礼仪有助于建立融洽关系。

尊重团体动态：中国游客经常成群结队旅行，重视集体体验。满足团体的需求至关重要。

食物偏好：了解饮食习惯，例如喜欢热食、米饭和不太辣的食物。

3. Professionalism and Knowledge

Historical and Cultural Knowledge: Provide detailed and accurate information about Indian landmarks, history, and culture. Personal anecdotes and interesting facts are appreciated.

Itinerary Management: Punctuality, efficient time management, and minimizing unnecessary delays are critical.

Problem-Solving Skills: Be proactive in resolving issues, such as transportation hiccups, dietary adjustments, or health concerns.

3. 专业素养和知识

历史和文化知识：提供有关印度地标、历史和文化的详细和准确信息。个人轶事和有趣的事实会受到赞赏。

行程管理：准时、有效的时间管理和尽量减少不必要的延误至关重要。

解决问题的能力：积极主动地解决问题，例如交通问题、饮食调整或健康问题。

4. Personalized Experience

Photography Assistance: Chinese tourists often enjoy taking photos. A guide who suggests photogenic spots or helps take group pictures earns extra appreciation.

Shopping Guidance: Offering tips on authentic products, fair prices, and reputable shops is valued.

4. 个性化体验

摄影协助：中国游客通常喜欢拍照。建议上镜地点或帮助拍摄集体照的导游会获得额外的赞赏。

购物指导：提供有关正宗产品、公平价格和信誉良好的商店的提示会受到重视。

5. Friendly and Engaging Personality

Politeness and Patience: Being courteous, attentive, and willing to answer questions.

Energetic and Enthusiastic: A guide who is passionate about their work can make the experience more enjoyable.

5. 友好而迷人的个性

礼貌和耐心：礼貌、细心并愿意回答问题。

精力充沛、热情：对工作充满热情的导游可以让体验更加愉快。

6. Comfort and Safety

Hygiene and Cleanliness: Highlight clean facilities and maintain a tidy appearance.

Safety First: Ensure safe travel and make tourists aware of local risks or precautions, such as staying hydrated or avoiding crowded areas.

6. 舒适和安全

卫生和清洁：突出清洁设施，保持整洁的外观。

安全第一：确保安全旅行，并让游客了解当地的风险或预防措施，例如保持水分充足或避开拥挤区域。

7. Customization and Flexibility

Tailored Itineraries: Accommodate specific interests, such as historical landmarks, luxury shopping, or cultural experiences.

Language Resources: Providing printed guides or materials in Mandarin can enhance the experience.

A good Indian tour guide for Chinese tourists combines professionalism with cultural awareness, creating a memorable and smooth travel experience.

7. 定制和灵活性

量身定制的行程：满足特定兴趣，例如历史地标、奢侈品购物或文化体验。

语言资源：提供普通话的印刷指南或材料可以增强体验。

为中国游客提供优秀的印度导游将专业精神与文化意识相结合，创造难忘而顺畅的旅行体验。

Lesson 3

Preparations required before embarking on any tour

出发前的准备工作

Before embarking on a tour, thorough preparation is crucial to ensure a smooth, enjoyable, and memorable experience for both the guide and the tourists. Below are the essential steps and considerations for preparation:

1. Research and Planning

For the Destination

Learn About the Sites: Study the history, culture, significance, and interesting facts about each destination.

Understand the Itinerary: Familiarize yourself with the travel schedule, landmarks, and timing for each activity.

For the Audience

Know the Tourists: Understand their preferences, cultural background, language, and specific interests (e.g., religious sites, nature, or shopping).

Anticipate Questions: Prepare answers for common questions tourists might ask about the destination.

在开始任何旅游之前，充分的准备是确保导游和游客都能拥有顺利、愉快且难忘体验的关键。以下是准备工作的必要步骤和注意事项：

1. 研究与规划

目的地方面

了解景点：学习每个目的地的历史、文化、意义和有趣的事实。

熟悉行程：熟悉旅行日程、地标和每项活动的时间安排。

游客方面

了解游客：了解他们的偏好、文化背景、语言和具体兴趣（例如宗教景点、自然风光或购物）。

预测问题：准备好回答游客可能提出的关于目的地的常见问题。

2. Logistical Arrangements

Transportation: Confirm bookings for vehicles, trains, or flights and ensure comfort and punctuality.

Accommodation: Verify hotel bookings and ensure they meet the group's expectations.

Tickets and Permits: Secure entry tickets, permits, and reservations for attractions in advance.

2. 后勤安排

交通工具：确认车辆、火车或航班的预订情况，并确保舒适性和准时性。

住宿：核实酒店预订，确保符合团体的期望。

门票与许可：提前获取景点门票、许可和预订确认。

3. Cultural and Practical Preparations

Cultural Sensitivity: Research local customs, dress codes, and behavioral etiquette.
Language Resources: Prepare language aids (e.g., translation apps, phrasebooks) if there is a language barrier.
Dress Appropriately: Wear clothing suitable for the weather and culturally respectful.

3. 文化与实际准备

文化敏感性：研究当地的习俗、着装要求和行为礼仪。

语言资源：准备语言辅助工具（如翻译应用程序或短语手册），以应对语言障碍。

适当着装：穿着适合天气且符合文化要求的衣服。

4. Safety and Health

First Aid Kit: Carry essential medical supplies for minor injuries or ailments.

Emergency Contacts: Have a list of local emergency numbers and embassy contacts.

Health Advisories: Stay informed about local health risks and vaccinations.

4. 安全与健康

急救箱：携带基本医疗用品，以应对轻微伤病。

紧急联系方式：备好当地紧急电话和大使馆联系方式清单。

健康建议：了解当地健康风险和疫苗接种要求。

5. Tools and Equipment

Guide Materials: Carry maps, brochures, and visual aids to enhance explanations.

Technology: Ensure devices like phones, GPS, or portable chargers are fully functional.

Weather Gear: Pack umbrellas, sunscreen, or jackets depending on the season.

5. 工具与设备

导游资料：携带地图、宣传册和视觉辅助工具，以增强讲解效果。

技术设备：确保手机、GPS或便携式充电器等设备正常运行。

天气装备：根据季节准备雨伞、防晒霜或外套。

6. Personal Preparation

Rehearse the Tour: Practice the flow of information and key points for each site.

Plan Breaks: Schedule adequate time for meals and rest to avoid exhaustion.

Be Presentable: Maintain a neat appearance to create a professional impression.

6. 个人准备

练习导览：熟悉每个景点的信息流程和关键点。

安排休息时间：计划足够的用餐和休息时间，避免疲劳。

注重形象：保持整洁的外表，给人留下专业印象。

7. Communication

Pre-Tour Briefing: Share an overview of the itinerary, expectations, and safety measures with the tourists.

Feedback Mechanism: Be ready to adapt plans based on tourists' feedback.

7. 沟通技巧

行前简报：向游客介绍行程概况、期望和安全措施。

反馈机制：根据游客的反馈调整计划。

8. Documentation

Legal Papers: Carry necessary documentation like licenses, permits, and ID.

Tour Contracts: Keep a copy of any agreements with the tour operator or tourists.

Pro Tips

Emergency Plan: Have a backup plan for potential disruptions like bad weather or transport delays.

Stay Updated: Keep an eye on news or alerts related to the destination.

Engagement Strategies: Prepare stories, trivia, or interactive activities to keep the group engaged.

Thorough preparation ensures a seamless experience and helps build trust and satisfaction among tourists.

8. 文件准备

法律文件：携带必要的文件，如导游证、许可证和身份证明。

旅游合同：保留与旅行社或游客签订的合同副本。

实用小贴士

应急计划：为恶劣天气或交通延误等潜在问题准备备用方案。

保持更新：关注与目的地相关的新闻或提醒。

互动策略：准备故事、趣闻或互动活动，以保持游客的参与度。

充分的准备工作可以确保旅行的顺利进行，同时建立游客的信任与满意度。

Lesson 4

How to handle emergencies in the best way?

如何以最佳方式处理紧急情况

Handling emergencies effectively is one of the most important aspects of being a tour guide. Whether it's a medical situation, an accident, a natural disaster, or a behavioral problem, how you respond in an emergency can make all the difference in ensuring the safety and well-being of your tourists. The key is preparation, calmness, and knowing how to act quickly and efficiently. Here are some essential steps to handle emergencies in the best way possible:

1. Stay Calm and Composed

1.1 Keep Your Cool

Don't Panic: The first step in any emergency is to remain calm. Tourists will look to you for guidance and reassurance, so your ability to stay composed will help them feel safer and more confident.

Use a Steady Voice: When speaking to tourists or emergency responders, maintain a clear and steady voice. Speaking calmly helps others stay calm and prevents further panic or confusion.

1.2 Be Assertive but Not Aggressive

Take Control of the Situation: While it's important to stay calm, you must also be assertive in directing the group. Take charge and issue clear, calm instructions to ensure everyone follows the necessary steps.

Avoid Overreacting: Stay composed even if the situation seems serious. Overreacting can cause unnecessary panic among tourists.

有效处理紧急情况是作为导游最重要的能力之一。无论是医疗状况、意外事故、自然灾害，还是行为问题，导游在紧急情况下的反应对游客的安全和福祉至关重要。关键在于充分准备、保持冷静，以及快速高效地采取行动。

以下是以最佳方式处理紧急情况的必要步骤：

1. 保持冷静与镇定

1.1 保持冷静

不要慌张：在任何紧急情况下，第一步是保持冷静。游客会依赖你的指导和安抚，你的冷静能让他们感到更安全、更自信。

使用平稳的语气：与游客或紧急响应人员交流时，保持清晰、平稳的语气。冷静的交流能帮助他人也保持冷静，避免进一步的恐慌或混乱。

1.2 自信但不强势

掌控局势：保持冷静的同时，也要自信地指挥团队。通过清晰、冷静的指令，确保每个人都遵循必要的步骤。

避免过度反应：即使情况看似严重，也要保持镇定。过度反应可能导致游客产生不必要的恐慌。

2. Prioritize Safety First

2.1 Ensure the Safety of Tourists

Assess the Situation Quickly: Immediately assess the situation and determine if anyone is in immediate danger. The safety of the group comes first, so make sure no one is at risk of injury or harm.

Move the Group to a Safe Location: If necessary, lead the group to a safer area. If you're outdoors and there's a risk (e.g., in the case of bad weather or unsafe terrain), guide them to sheltered or secure spots.

2.2 Prevent Further Harm

Clear the Area of Hazards: If there's a physical hazard (like a road accident or a slip hazard), ensure tourists are moved away from the danger zone to prevent further injuries.

Monitor the Situation: While helping affected individuals, continue to monitor the rest of the group for signs of distress or panic.

3. Assess the Situation and Take Action

3.1 Evaluate the Severity of the Emergency

Classify the Emergency: Quickly identify what type of emergency you are dealing with—medical, weather-related, fire, theft, etc. This will guide your response.

Call for Help: If the situation is beyond your ability to manage, immediately call for help. Contact emergency services (medical, fire, or police) depending on the nature of the emergency.

3.2 Provide First Aid (If Trained)

Administer Basic First Aid: If you're trained in first aid, provide initial care to injured or ill tourists. For example, basic first aid for cuts, sprains, or breathing issues.

Stay Within Your Limits: Don't try to offer medical assistance beyond your training. Instead, provide basic first aid and wait for professional medical responders to arrive.

3.3 Help with Logistics

Assist with Transportation: If necessary, coordinate transportation for injured tourists to the hospital or evacuation point. Ensure that tourists who need medical attention are given priority.

Gather Information: Take note of critical details such as the time of the incident, the affected people, and what steps have already been taken. This information will be helpful for emergency responders.

2. 优先考虑安全

2.1 确保游客安全

迅速评估情况：立即评估情况，判断是否有人处于直接危险中。游客的安全是第一位的，确保没有人受到伤害或威胁。

带领团队到安全地点：如有必要，将团队带到更安全的区域。如果是在户外遇到恶劣天气或不安全地形等风险，指导游客前往庇护或安全地点。

2.2 防止进一步伤害

清除危险区域：如果有物理危险（如交通事故或滑倒危险），将游客移离危险区域以防止进一步受伤。

持续监控情况：在帮助受影响人员的同时，继续观察团队其他成员是否有恐慌或不适的迹象。

3. 评估情况并采取行动

3.1 评估紧急情况的严重性

分类紧急情况：快速判断所面临的紧急情况类型——医疗、天气、火灾、盗窃等。这将指导你的应对措施。

寻求帮助：如果情况超出你的能力范围，立即寻求帮助。根据紧急情况的性质联系相关紧急服务（医疗、消防或警察）。

3.2 提供急救（如接受过培训）

实施基础急救：如果你接受过急救培训，可为受伤或生病的游客提供初步护理，例如处理割伤、扭伤或呼吸问题。量力而行：不要尝试超出自身急救技能范围的医疗协助。提供基础护理后等待专业医务人员到来。

3.3 协助后勤工作

协助交通安排：如有必要，为受伤游客协调前往医院或疏散点的交通工具。优先处理需要医疗护理的游客。

记录信息：记录事故的关键细节，例如发生时间、受影响的人，以及已采取的步骤。这些信息对紧急响应人员至关重要。

4. Communicate Clearly and Effectively

4.1 Inform the Group

Keep Tourists Informed: Let the group know what is happening and provide clear instructions. For example, “We are experiencing a delay due to an emergency, and I’ll keep you updated.”

Avoid Creating Panic: Be mindful of how you communicate the situation. Share only the necessary information to prevent spreading unnecessary panic. Avoid sensationalizing the event.

4.2 Communicate with Authorities

Provide Clear Details: When you contact emergency services, give them all the necessary information: your location, the nature of the emergency, the number of people affected, and any other pertinent details.

Follow Instructions: Once emergency services arrive, listen to their instructions carefully and provide any additional information they need to handle the situation effectively.

5. Handle Difficult or Emotional Tourists

5.1 Offer Emotional Support

Be Empathetic: In emergencies, tourists may feel overwhelmed or scared. Offer reassurance and emotional support by staying calm and positive.

Provide Comfort: If some tourists are particularly distressed, try to comfort them by offering kind words or guiding them to a safe space where they can calm down.

5.2 Manage Anxiety or Panic

De-escalate Anxiety: Some tourists may experience anxiety or panic in an emergency. Speak calmly, maintain eye contact, and reassure them that help is on the way.

Provide a Sense of Control: Give them tasks to focus on, such as holding onto their belongings or standing together in a safe area. This helps distract them and reduces panic.

4. 清晰有效的沟通

4.1 通知团队

告知游客：向团队解释正在发生的事情，并提供清晰的指示。例如，“我们因紧急情况延误，我会及时向大家更新情况。”

避免制造恐慌：注意沟通方式，只分享必要信息以防止不必要的恐慌。避免夸大事件的严重性。

4.2 与相关机构沟通

提供清晰信息：联系紧急服务时，提供所有必要信息：你的所在地、紧急情况的性质、受影响人数以及其他相关细节。

听从指示：紧急服务人员到达后，仔细听取他们的指示，并提供任何额外信息以帮助有效处理情况。

5. 应对情绪激动的游客

5.1 提供情感支持

表现同理心：紧急情况下，游客可能会感到不知所措或害怕。通过冷静和积极的态度给予他们安慰和支持。

给予安慰：如果某些游客特别紧张或受到惊吓，可以通过温和的言辞安抚他们，或引导他们到安全的地方放松情绪。

5.2 管理焦虑或恐慌

缓解焦虑：部分游客在紧急情况下可能感到焦虑或恐慌。用冷静的语气交流，保持眼神接触，并向他们保证援助正在路上。

提供控制感：让他们集中精力做一些任务，例如保管随身物品或站在安全区域。这有助于分散注意力，减少恐慌。

6. Maintain Communication with the Tour Operator

6.1 Keep the Tour Operator Informed

Notify the Tour Operator: Let your tour operator or the agency you work for know about the situation as soon as possible. They may be able to offer further assistance or help with organizing additional logistics.

Coordinate Next Steps: If the situation requires canceling or altering the tour, the operator can help guide you on the next steps, including alternative arrangements or evacuations.

6.2 Keep an Emergency Contact List

Have Important Contacts Handy: Maintain a list of emergency contacts, including your supervisor, tour operator, local emergency numbers, and embassy contacts. This allows you to quickly reach out for help when needed.

7. Manage Post-Emergency Procedures

7.1 Ensure the Well-Being of Tourists

Check on Tourists: After the emergency has been handled, check in with all tourists to ensure they are safe and feeling okay. This is especially important if the emergency involved trauma or stress.

Provide Support: Offer assistance such as contacting family members or helping with any logistical issues that may arise, such as finding alternative accommodations or transportation.

7.2 Document the Incident

Record Details: After the emergency has passed, document what happened, including the actions you took and any other relevant details. This will be important for any follow-up or reporting requirements, and helps the tour company assess how to improve safety protocols.

7.3 Evaluate the Situation

Review and Learn: After the incident, take time to evaluate your response. What worked well? What could be improved? Learning from each experience will help you handle future emergencies more effectively.

Provide Feedback: If necessary, share your observations with your tour operator or company to improve emergency protocols and better prepare for future incidents.

6. 与旅行社保持沟通

6.1 保持信息畅通

通知旅行社: 尽快告知旅行社或雇主相关情况。他们可能会提供进一步的协助或帮助组织后续安排。

协调后续计划: 如果情况需要取消或更改行程, 旅行社可以指导后续步骤, 包括替代安排或疏散计划。

6.2 保留紧急联系方式

随身携带重要联系人信息: 维护一份紧急联系人清单, 包括主管、旅行社、本地紧急号码和大使馆联系方式。这可以让你在需要时快速寻求帮助。

7. 处理紧急情况后的工作

7.1 确保游客的身心健康

安抚游客: 紧急情况解决后, 逐一确认所有游客的安全情况, 尤其是涉及创伤或压力的事件。

提供帮助: 如有需要, 帮助游客联系家人或解决后续问题, 例如寻找替代住宿或交通工具。

7.2 记录事件

记录细节: 事后详细记录事件经过, 包括你采取的措施及其他相关信息。这对后续跟进或报告要求非常重要, 并帮助旅行社评估安全协议的改进方向。

7.3 总结经验

回顾与学习: 事件结束后, 总结自己的应对情况。哪些做得好? 哪些可以改进? 从每次经历中学习可以帮助你更有效地处理未来的紧急情况。

提供反馈: 如有必要, 向旅行社分享你的观察, 以改善紧急应对措施, 更好地应对未来事件。

8. Be Prepared for Future Emergencies

8.1 Train Regularly

First Aid and CPR: Ensure you have up-to-date first aid and CPR certifications. These are essential skills to have as a tour guide.

Emergency Protocols: Familiarize yourself with the emergency procedures for the regions where you work, including evacuation routes, local emergency contacts, and hospital locations.

8.2 Carry Emergency Supplies

Have a First Aid Kit: Always carry a well-stocked first aid kit, especially when guiding outdoor or adventure tours.

Carry Important Documents: Keep a list of emergency contacts, a map of the area, and your insurance information. This will help you stay organized in an emergency.

Handling emergencies as a tour guide requires quick thinking, clear communication, and a calm, composed demeanor. By prioritizing safety, acting decisively, and offering emotional support, you can effectively manage any emergency situation that arises. Being prepared and trained for emergencies, as well as keeping clear lines of communication with tourists, operators, and emergency services, is essential for ensuring a safe and positive outcome in stressful situations.

8. 为未来的紧急情况做好准备

8.1 定期培训

急救和心肺复苏: 确保你拥有最新的急救和心肺复苏认证。这些是导游必须掌握的基本技能。

紧急协议: 熟悉你工作的地区的紧急程序, 包括疏散路线、本地紧急联系人和医院位置。

8.2 携带应急物品

准备急救箱: 特别是在户外或冒险旅行中, 随身携带一个装备齐全的急救箱。

携带重要文件: 保存紧急联系人清单、地区地图和保险信息。这将帮助你在紧急情况下保持有序。

总结

作为导游, 处理紧急情况需要快速的思考、清晰的沟通以及冷静、镇定的态度。通过优先考虑安全、果断行动并提供情感支持, 你可以有效应对任何紧急情况。准备和培训是关键, 同时保持与游客、旅行社和紧急服务之间的畅通沟通, 是在压力情况下确保安全和积极结果的基础。

Lesson 5
The new technologies used in interpreting
口译使用的新技术

1. Real-Time Translation Apps

Examples: Microsoft Translator, Google Translate, iTranslate

Features: These apps provide instant translation of spoken language using voice recognition technology. Some include specialized modes for interpreting conversations in real-time.

Use Case: Useful for informal or ad-hoc interpreting needs, such as during casual conversations or for basic communication.

1. 实时翻译应用

示例: Microsoft Translator、Google Translate、iTranslate

功能: 这些应用使用语音识别技术提供口语的即时翻译。一些应用包括用于实时口译对话的专门模式。

用例: 适用于非正式或临时口译需求, 例如在随意对话或基本交流期间。

2. AI-Powered Interpretation Devices

Examples: Pocketalk, Travis Touch, Timekettle earbuds

Features: Portable devices equipped with AI algorithms for speech recognition, natural language processing, and text-to-speech conversion. They support real-time interpretation with high accuracy.

Use Case: Convenient for travelers, business professionals, and interpreters in less formal settings.

2. 人工智能口译设备

示例: Pocketalk、Travis Touch、Timekettle 耳塞

功能: 配备人工智能算法的便携式设备, 用于语音识别、自然语言处理和文本到语音的转换。它们支持高精度的实时口译。

用例: 方便旅行者、商务人士和非正式场合的口译员使用。

3. Remote Simultaneous Interpreting (RSI) Platforms

Examples: Zoom with interpretation features, KUDO, Interprefy, VoiceBoxer

Features: Platforms that enable interpreters to work remotely while interpreting live events or meetings. These systems include features like dual audio channels, interpreter consoles, and participant management.

Use Case: Ideal for conferences, webinars, and multilingual meetings.

3. 远程同声传译 (RSI) 平台

示例: 具有翻译功能的 Zoom、KUDO、Interprefy、VoiceBoxer

功能: 使口译员能够在翻译现场活动或会议的同时进行远程工作的平台。这些系统包括双音频通道、口译员控制台和参与者管理等功能。

用例: 非常适合会议、网络研讨会和多语言会议。

4. Neural Machine Translation (NMT) Systems

Examples: DeepL, Google NMT, Baidu Translate

Features: Advanced machine learning algorithms for text and speech translation, trained on vast datasets of Chinese and English language pairs.

Use Case: Useful for pre-interpretation preparation, document translation, and generating draft interpretations.

4. 神经机器翻译 (NMT) 系统

示例: DeepL、Google NMT、百度翻译

功能: 用于文本和语音翻译的高级机器学习算法, 在大量中文和英文语言对数据集上进行训练。

用例: 适用于口译前的准备、文档翻译和生成初稿口译。

5. Augmented Reality (AR) Tools

Examples: AR glasses with translation capabilities like Google Glass or Nreal

Features: These tools display translated text or real-time captions directly in the user's field of view. Some can integrate live interpretation feeds.

Use Case: Enhances accessibility in live events, tours, or conferences where Chinese-English interpretation is needed.

5. 增强现实 (AR) 工具

示例: 具有翻译功能的 AR 眼镜, 如 Google Glass 或 Nreal

功能: 这些工具直接在用户的视野中显示翻译的文本或实时字幕。有些可以集成实时口译源。

用例: 在需要中英文翻译的现场活动、旅游或会议中增强可访问性。

6. Voice Recognition and Transcription Software

Examples: Dragon NaturallySpeaking, Otter.ai, Speechmatics

Features: These tools transcribe spoken language into text, facilitating interpreters in understanding fast-paced or unclear speech.

Use Case: Useful for interpreting in environments with complex or technical language.

6. 语音识别和转录软件

示例: Dragon NaturallySpeaking、Otter.ai、Speechmatics

功能: 这些工具将口语转录为文本, 帮助口译员理解快节奏或不清晰的语音。

用例: 适用于在语言复杂或技术性强的环境中进行口译。

7. Artificial Intelligence (AI) Interpreting Systems

Examples: iFLYTEK (Chinese focus), IBM Watson

Features: Advanced AI systems that provide real-time interpretation by analyzing speech patterns and context. They adapt to specific industries or jargon.

Use Case: Effective in business negotiations, technical discussions, and other specialized fields.

7. 人工智能 (AI) 口译系统

示例：科大讯飞（专注于中文）、IBM Watson

功能：通过分析语音模式和上下文提供实时口译的高级 AI 系统。它们适用于特定行业或术语。

用例：在商务谈判、技术讨论和其他专业领域中有效。

8. Speech-to-Speech Translation Systems

Examples: Sogou Voice Translator, Baidu Translate

Features: Converts spoken Chinese directly into spoken English (and vice versa) without intermediate text conversion, improving naturalness and speed.

Use Case: Ideal for dynamic conversations requiring fast interpretation.

8. 语音到语音翻译系统

示例：搜狗语音翻译、百度翻译

功能：无需中间文本转换，即可将口语中文直接转换为口语英语（反之亦然），从而提高自然度和速度。

用例：非常适合需要快速口译的动态对话。

9. Collaborative Platforms with Language Tools

Examples: Slack with translation integrations, Microsoft Teams with interpreter modes

Features: These platforms include features like language switching, real-time translation, and collaboration for multilingual teams.

Use Case: Widely used in corporate environments and remote interpreting scenarios.

9. 具有语言工具的协作平台

示例：具有翻译集成的 Slack、具有口译员模式的 Microsoft Teams

功能：这些平台包括语言切换、实时翻译和多语言团队协作等功能。

用例：广泛用于企业环境和远程口译场景。

10. Corpus and Terminology Management Tools

Examples: SDL MultiTerm, MemoQ, Termcat

Features: Help interpreters manage bilingual glossaries, translation memories, and industry-specific terminologies.

Use Case: Ensures consistency and accuracy in technical or domain-specific interpretation tasks.

10. 语料库和术语管理工具

示例：SDL MultiTerm、MemoQ、Termcat

功能：帮助口译员管理双语词汇表、翻译记忆库和行业特定术语。

用例：确保技术或领域特定口译任务的一致性和准确性。

。

11. Real-Time Subtitling and Captioning Tools

Examples: StreamText, YouTube Live Auto-Captioning

Features: Generate real-time subtitles or captions for live events or recorded videos.

Use Case: Beneficial in multilingual conferences and webinars for accessibility and cross-lingual understanding.

11. 实时字幕和字幕工具

示例：StreamText、YouTube Live Auto-Captioning

功能：为现场活动或录制的视频生成实时字幕或字幕。

用例：有利于多语言会议和网络研讨会的可访问性和跨语言理解

12. Machine-Assisted Interpreter Training Tools

Examples: CAI tools, AI-enhanced practice platforms

Features: Platforms that simulate interpreting scenarios using AI, providing feedback on accuracy, fluency, and timing.

Use Case: Training interpreters to handle Chinese-English language pairs more effectively.

12. 机器辅助口译员培训工具

示例：CAI 工具、AI 增强型实践平台

功能：使用 AI 模拟口译场景的平台，提供有关准确性、流利度和时间的反馈。

用例：培训口译员更有效地处理中英文语言对。

13. Cloud-Based Interpreting Tools

Examples: Qonda, Boostlingo, InterpretCloud

Features: Cloud platforms for seamless remote interpreting with scheduling, client management, and real-time interpretation delivery.

Use Case: Efficient for agencies and freelancers handling Chinese-English interpretation jobs globally.

13. 基于云的口译工具

示例：Qonda、Boostlingo、InterpretCloud

功能：用于无缝远程口译的云平台，具有调度、客户管理和实时口译交付功能。

用例：对于在全球范围内处理中英文口译工作的机构和自由职业者来说非常有效。

14. Sentiment Analysis Tools

Examples: Lexalytics, MonkeyLearn

Features: Analyze speech or text for emotional tone and sentiment, helping interpreters grasp context and nuance.

Use Case: Enhances cultural and emotional understanding in sensitive interpreting scenarios.

14. 情感分析工具

示例：Lexalytics、MonkeyLearn

功能：分析语音或文本的情绪基调和情绪，帮助口译员掌握上下文和细微差别。

用例：在敏感的口译场景中增强文化和情感理解。

15. Wearable Technology for Interpreters

Examples: Smartwatches with language apps, hands-free microphone systems

Features: Tools designed to improve the mobility and efficiency of interpreters, allowing hands-free operation while delivering services.

Use Case: Used in guided tours, events, and live interpretation settings.

By integrating these tools and technologies, Chinese-English interpreters can significantly enhance their efficiency, accuracy, and adaptability in various interpreting contexts

15. 口译员的可穿戴技术

示例：带有语言应用程序的智能手表、免提麦克风系统

功能：旨在提高口译员的工具

提高口译员的移动性和效率，允许在提供服务时解放双手。

用例：用于导游、活动和现场口译环境。

通过整合这些工具和技术，中英文口译员可以显著提高他们在各种口译环境中的效率、准确性和适应性

5a. Tools of the Guiding

A tourist guide's effectiveness often depends on the tools they use to communicate, manage logistics, enhance the visitor experience, and ensure safety. These tools help guides deliver engaging and informative tours while maintaining professionalism and safety. Below is an overview of the essential tools that can assist tour guides in their work:

导游的工作成效往往取决于他们使用的工具。这些工具可以帮助导游进行沟通、管理后勤、提升游客体验以及确保安全。利用这些工具，导游能够提供生动有趣的解说，同时保持专业性和安全性。以下是一些帮助导游开展工作的必要工具概述：

1. Communication Tools

1.1 Microphones and Audio Systems

Wireless Tour Guide System: Used in larger groups or noisy environments, these systems allow the guide to speak into a microphone, and tourists use headsets to hear clearly without straining. This is essential for guiding in crowded places like temples, markets, or museums.

Portable PA System: Useful in situations where a group is spread out over a large area (such as outdoor tours) or in busy settings, allowing the guide to be heard clearly without straining their voice.

1.2 Two-Way Radios

Purpose: Used to maintain communication with other guides, drivers, or staff during the tour, especially when the group is split up or when managing logistics.

Example: If the group is split into smaller groups for specific activities, radios help maintain coordination, especially in large or crowded environments.

1. 沟通工具

1.1 麦克风和音频系统

无线导游系统：适用于大型团队或嘈杂环境，导游通过麦克风讲话，游客佩戴耳机清晰听取内容。在寺庙、市场或博物馆等拥挤场所，这种系统尤为重要。

便携式扩音系统：适合在大面积场地（如户外导览）或繁忙环境中使用，帮助导游无需费力提高音量即可清晰传达信息。

1.2 对讲机

用途：用于与其他导游、司机或工作人员保持沟通，尤其是在团队分组或需要协调后勤时。

实例：如果团队因某些活动分成小组，对讲机有助于在大型或拥挤环境中保持协调。

2. Visual and Educational Tools

2.1 Maps and Diagrams

Paper or Digital Maps: Physical or digital maps are great tools for explaining routes, showing historical boundaries, or giving context to a location's significance.

Diagrams and Schematics: For complex structures like temples, palaces, or historical buildings, these can visually explain architectural features, historical timelines, or layouts.

2.2 Photos and Visual Aids

Photographic Materials: Carrying historical photos or visual aids can help tourists visualize how a location looked in the past, adding context to the experience.

Projectors or Tablets: In some tours, projectors or tablets can be used to display historical images, maps, or videos to bring locations or concepts to life.

2.3 Artifacts and Souvenirs

Local Artifacts: Bringing along small items that represent the local culture (e.g., handcrafted objects, textiles, or replicas of historical items) can make the tour more interactive and engaging.

Handouts: Distribute brochures or pamphlets with information about the sites visited, local history, or additional resources for tourists to reference after the tour.

2. 视觉和教育工具

2.1 地图和图表

纸质或数字地图：方便讲解路线、展示历史边界或提供地点背景信息。

结构图和示意图：对于复杂的建筑物（如寺庙、宫殿或历史建筑），这些工具可以直观地解释建筑特征、历史时间线或布局。

2.2 照片和视觉辅助工具

历史照片：携带历史照片或视觉材料，帮助游客了解地点的历史面貌，为体验增添背景信息。

投影仪或平板电脑：在某些导览中，可使用投影仪或平板展示历史图像、地图或视频，使地点或概念生动形象。

2.3 文物和纪念品

本地文物：携带小型具有地方特色的物品（如手工艺品、纺织品或历史物件的复制品），让导览更具互动性和趣味性。

宣传资料：分发有关参观地点、当地历史或额外资源的手册或宣传册，方便游客在导览结束后参考。

Technological Tools

3.1 Smartphones and Apps

Navigation and Mapping Apps: Use apps like Google Maps or offline navigation tools to help with orientation or to check distances and directions.

Language Translation Apps: Tools like Google Translate, Pleco (for Chinese tourists), or iTranslate can assist when there are language barriers.

Tourist Apps: Some tourist sites have their own apps that provide interactive maps, augmented reality experiences, or additional content.

3.2 Digital Cameras and Video Recorders

Recording Devices: Some guides use cameras to record certain moments of the tour to provide tourists with a keepsake or share later through social media or tour group apps.

Video Content: Showing short videos or using videos to explain complex topics, such as historical events or the construction of a monument, can enrich the experience.

3. 科技工具

3.1 智能手机和应用程序

导航和地图应用：使用Google地图或离线导航工具帮助定位，检查距离和方向。

语言翻译应用：例如Google翻译、Pleco（适用于中国游客）或iTranslate，帮助解决语言障碍。

旅游应用：一些景区拥有自己的应用程序，提供互动地图、增强现实体验或额外内容。

3.2 数码相机和录像设备

记录设备：导游可以用相机记录导览中的某些时刻，作为纪念品提供给游客，或通过社交媒体与导览群体分享。

视频内容：通过播放简短视频或利用视频讲解复杂主题（如历史事件或纪念碑建造过程），丰富导览体验。

4. Practical Logistics Tools

4.1 Itinerary and Schedules

Printed or Digital Itinerary: Having a detailed itinerary ensures the guide can keep track of timings, locations, and activities throughout the day. It also helps in answering tourists' questions about the schedule.

Travel Document Management: A guide should have all necessary documents (e.g., permits, tickets, and travel documents) organized and easily accessible to avoid delays.

4.2 Safety and First Aid Kits

First Aid Kit: Always carry a basic first aid kit with essential supplies like band-aids, antiseptics, pain relievers, allergy medication, and any necessary personal medication.

Emergency Contact List: Have a list of emergency contacts, including local medical facilities, embassy details, and emergency numbers.

4. 后勤管理工具

4.1 行程安排与计划

打印或数字行程表：详细行程安排有助于导游跟踪时间、地点和活动，也方便解答游客关于行程的疑问。

旅行文件管理：导游需妥善整理和携带必要文件（如许可证、门票、旅行文件），以避免延误。

4.2 安全和急救工具

急救箱：随身携带基础急救用品，如创可贴、消毒药水、止痛药、抗过敏药以及必要的个人药物。

紧急联系方式：准备紧急联系人名单，包括当地医疗机构、大使馆信息和紧急电话号码。

5. Interactive and Educational Tools

5.1 Interactive Games and Activities

Quiz or Trivia: Engage tourists with fun facts or trivia about the destination. For example, ask questions related to the history of a monument or local customs and provide small prizes for correct answers.

Cultural Demonstrations: For certain cultures or regions, performing or explaining a local activity (e.g., a traditional dance, music, or art) can make the tour more memorable.

5.2 Language Support Tools

Translation Books or Phrases Lists: For multilingual groups, having printed or digital translation guides can assist when speaking with tourists who may not speak English fluently.

Phrasebooks: Knowing essential phrases in the tourists' native language (e.g., Chinese, Spanish) can help build rapport and improve the overall experience.

5. 互动与教育工具

5.1 互动游戏和活动

问答或知识竞赛：通过关于目的地的趣味问答或知识竞赛吸引游客。例如，询问有关纪念碑历史或当地习俗的问题，并为答对者提供小奖品。

文化展示：在特定文化或地区，通过表演或解释本地活动（如传统舞蹈、音乐或艺术），让导览更加难忘。

5.2 语言支持工具

翻译手册或短语表：为多语言团队准备打印或数字翻译指南，方便与游客沟通。

常用短语手册：学习游客母语中的一些常用短语（如中文、西班牙语），有助于拉近距离，提升体验感。

6. Personal and Presentation Tools

6.1 Identification Tools

Name Tags or Badges: Wearing an easily visible name tag helps tourists identify the guide and establishes a sense of professionalism.

Uniforms or Consistent Apparel: Some tour guides wear uniforms or attire that is consistent and recognizable, making it easier for tourists to spot them.

6.2 Writing Tools

Notebooks or Digital Devices: Use notebooks or tablets to jot down key information during the tour, take notes for future reference, or help with calculations or logistics.

Markers and Whiteboard: For more interactive tours, guides may use a portable whiteboard and markers to draw diagrams, maps, or quick explanations of historical events or cultural aspects.

6. 个人和展示工具

6.1 身份标识工具

姓名牌或徽章：佩戴醒目的姓名牌，方便游客识别导游，同时增强专业形象。

统一服装或一致风格：一些导游穿着统一制服或易于识别的服饰，使游客更容易找到他们。

6.2 书写工具

笔记本或数字设备：用来记录导览中的重要信息，或者协助计算和管理后勤。

标记笔和白板：在更具互动性的导览中，使用便携式白板和标记笔绘制示意图、地图或快速解释历史事件和文化背景。

7. Personal and Comfort Tools

7.1 Water Bottles and Snacks

Water and Snacks: Carry extra water and light snacks to provide tourists, especially during long tours or when access to shops or restaurants is limited.

Portable Coolers or Bags: On longer tours, a portable cooler with refreshments can ensure tourists stay hydrated and comfortable.

7.2 Umbrella, Sunglasses, and Weather Gear

Weather Protection: Always be prepared with essentials like an umbrella, sunscreen, hats, or sunglasses to protect both yourself and your tourists from harsh weather conditions (e.g., heat, rain).

Comfortable Footwear: As a guide, wearing comfortable shoes is crucial, as you'll likely be walking long distances or standing for extended periods.

7. 个人及舒适工具

7.1 水瓶和零食

水和零食：随身携带额外的水和轻便零食，尤其是在长途导览或难以找到商店和餐馆的情况下提供给游客。

便携式冷藏包：在较长导览中，携带便携冷藏包装载饮品，确保游客保持舒适和充足的水分。

7.2 雨伞、太阳镜及防晒装备

防晒保护：随时准备好必需品，如雨伞、防晒霜、帽子或太阳镜，以保护自己和游客免受恶劣天气影响（如高温或下雨）。

舒适的鞋：导游通常需要长时间行走或站立，穿着舒适的鞋子尤为重要。

8. Emergency Preparedness Tools

8.1 Emergency Evacuation Plans

Maps and Exit Plans: Have emergency exit plans for the locations you're guiding. In case of natural disasters, accidents, or other crises, it's vital to know how to safely evacuate your group.

Communication Systems: Always have backup communication devices, such as mobile phones or radios, to coordinate with other guides, security staff, or emergency services.

The tools of a tour guide are essential for ensuring a seamless, enjoyable, and educational experience for tourists. A successful guide is one who uses a combination of communication, logistics, and educational tools to engage visitors, manage the tour effectively, and provide support in various circumstances. Having the right tools can make all the difference in delivering a memorable and smooth tour.

8. 应急准备工具

8.1 紧急撤离计划

地图和撤离计划：准备参观地点的紧急撤离计划。在自然灾害、事故或其他危机中，确保了解如何安全撤离游客。

通信系统：始终备有备用通信设备（如手机或对讲机），以便与其他导游、安全人员或紧急服务机构进行协调。

结语

导游的工具对于确保游客获得流畅、愉快和具有教育意义的体验至关重要。成功的导游善于利用沟通、后勤和教育工具吸引游客，有效管理导览并在各种情况下提供支持。拥有合适的工具能够显著提高导览的质量和游客的满意度。

Lesson 6
Steps to Becoming a Chinese Tour Guide in India
成为印度中文导游的步骤

Becoming a Chinese tour guide in India involves a combination of linguistic expertise, cultural understanding, and professional certification. Below is a step-by-step guide:

1. Assess and Develop Skills

1.1 Language Proficiency

Mandarin and Cantonese Skills: Develop fluency in Chinese, particularly Mandarin, which is the most widely spoken language. Some familiarity with Cantonese may also be helpful.

Certification: Obtain certification in Chinese from recognized institutions like Confucius Institutes, universities, or language schools.

1.2 Cultural Knowledge

Understand Chinese Culture: Learn about Chinese traditions, festivals, social norms, and preferences to connect better with tourists.

Study Indian Culture and History: Master Indian cultural heritage, history, and major tourist attractions to provide accurate and interesting narratives.

1.3 Communication and Soft Skills

Enhance storytelling, interpersonal skills, and the ability to manage diverse groups.

成为印度中文导游需要具备语言专业知识、文化理解和专业认证。以下是分步指南：

1. 评估和发展技能

1.1 语言能力

普通话和粤语技能：提高中文流利程度，尤其是普通话，这是使用最广泛的语言。熟悉粤语也可能有帮助。

认证：从孔子学院、大学或语言学校等公认机构获得中文认证。

1.2 文化知识

了解中国文化：了解中国传统、节日、社会规范和偏好，以便更好地与游客联系。

研究印度文化和历史：掌握印度文化遗产、历史和主要旅游景点，以提供准确而有趣的叙述。

1.3 沟通和软技能

提高讲故事、人际交往能力和管理不同群体的能力。

2. Acquire Formal Education

2.1 Relevant Academic Background

Pursue a degree in tourism, history, languages, or hospitality to gain foundational knowledge.

Short-term diploma or certification courses in tourism and guiding are also beneficial.

2.2 Specialized Tourism Courses

Enroll in tourism-related courses focusing on guiding skills, such as those offered by the Indian Institute of Tourism and Travel Management (IITTM) or similar institutions.

2. 接受正规教育

2.1 相关学术背景

攻读旅游、历史、语言或酒店管理学位，以获得基础知识。

短期旅游和导游文凭或认证课程也很有帮助。

2.2 专业旅游课程

参加专注于导游技能的旅游相关课程，例如印度旅游与旅行管理学院 (IITTM) 或类似机构提供的课程。

3. Obtain a Tour Guide License

3.1 Eligibility Criteria

Typically, the minimum qualifications include:

A degree or diploma in tourism.

Proficiency in at least two languages (English and Chinese).

A valid work visa if you are not an Indian citizen.

3.2 Apply for Training Programs

Join the Regional Level Guide Training Program (RLGTP) conducted by the Ministry of Tourism, Government of India, or other approved bodies.

Duration: These programs usually last several months.

Modules: Training includes history, art, culture, customer service, and soft skills.

3.3 Licensing Examination

After completing the training, appear for the qualifying examination.

Successful candidates are awarded a guide license that allows them to operate within specific regions or nationwide, depending on the type of license.

3. 获得导游执照

3.1 资格标准

通常，最低资格包括：

旅游学位或文凭。

熟练掌握至少两种语言（英语和中文）。

如果您不是印度公民，则需要有效的工作签证。

3.2 申请培训计划

加入由印度政府旅游部或其他批准机构开展的区域级导游培训计划 (RLGTP)。

持续时间：这些计划通常持续几个月。

模块：培训包括历史、艺术、文化、客户服务和软技能。

3.3 执照考试

完成培训后，参加资格考试。

成功的候选人将获得导游执照，根据执照类型，该执照允许他们在特定地区或全国范围内开展业务。

4. Gain Practical Experience

4.1 Internships or Assistant Roles

Work as an assistant guide or intern with established tour operators or travel agencies to gain hands-on experience.

Shadow experienced guides to learn effective techniques for engaging with tourists.

4.2 Freelance Work

Start by guiding small groups or freelance projects to build confidence and a portfolio.

4. 获得实践经验

4.1 实习或助理角色

在知名旅行社或旅行社担任助理导游或实习生，获得实践经验。

跟随经验丰富的导游学习与游客互动的有效技巧。

4.2 自由职业

从指导小团体或自由职业项目开始，以建立信心和投资组合。

5. Build a Niche

5.1 Specialize in Chinese Tourist Needs

Understand preferences such as:

Popular destinations (e.g., Taj Mahal, Jaipur, Kerala, Varanasi).

Dining options (including Chinese-friendly meals or vegetarian options).

Activities (shopping, cultural experiences).

5.2 Develop a Unique Selling Point (USP)

Offer value-added services such as:

Translation or interpretation services for industrial visits.

Tailored itineraries for Chinese tourists.

5. 建立一个利基市场

5.1 专注于中国游客的需求

了解偏好，例如：

热门目的地（例如泰姬陵、斋浦尔、喀拉拉邦、瓦拉纳西）。

餐饮选择（包括适合中国人的餐点或素食选择）。

活动（购物、文化体验）。

5.2 开发独特卖点 (USP)

提供增值服务，例如：

工业访问的翻译或口译服务。

为中国游客量身定制的行程。

6. Network and Collaborate

6.1 Join Professional Associations

Become a member of organizations like the Tourist Guides Federation of India (TGFI) or other regional guide associations.

6.2 Partner with Travel Agencies

Collaborate with travel agencies that cater to Chinese tourists for regular assignments.

Use platforms like TripAdvisor, Klook, or WeChat to reach a wider audience.

. 6建立网络和合作

6.1 加入专业协会

成为印度导游联合会 (TGFI) 或其他地区导游协会等组织的成员。

6.2 与旅行社合作

与专门为中国游客提供服务的旅行社合作，进行定期任务。

使用 TripAdvisor、Klook 或微信等平台来覆盖更广泛的受众。

7. Leverage Technology

7.1 Online Presence

Create a professional website or social media profiles showcasing your skills, experiences, and services in both English and Chinese.

Use platforms like WeChat or Xiaohongshu to connect with Chinese tourists.

7.2 Digital Tools

Familiarize yourself with translation apps, travel planning tools, and digital payment systems (like Alipay or WeChat Pay) to assist Chinese tourists effectively.

7. 利用技术

7.1 在线形象

创建一个专业的网站或社交媒体资料，用英文和中文展示您的技能、经验和服务。

使用微信或小红书等平台与中国游客建立联系。

7.2 数字工具

熟悉翻译应用程序、旅行计划工具和数字支付系统（如支付宝或微信支付），以有效地协助中国游客。

8. Maintain Professional Standards

8.1 Continuous Learning

Keep upgrading your knowledge about Indian and Chinese cultures.

Attend workshops, conferences, or advanced language courses to stay competitive.

8.2 Stay Updated on Regulations

Keep track of changes in tourism policies, visa requirements, and regional laws.

8. 保持专业水准

8.1 持续学习

不断提升您对印度和中国文化的了解。

参加研讨会、会议或高级语言课程以保持竞争力。

8.2 随时了解最新法规

跟踪旅游政策、签证要求和地区法律的变化。

9. Seek Industrial or Corporate Opportunities

Explore opportunities in industrial interpretation, particularly for Chinese business delegations visiting India.

Work with companies involved in trade or partnerships with China to expand your services.

Pro Tips for Success

Cultural Sensitivity: Be mindful of Chinese tourists' customs and preferences, such as meal timings, group dynamics, and respect for hierarchy.

Customer-Centric Approach: Offer personalized experiences that cater to their needs.

Professional Conduct: Be punctual, well-dressed, and approachable at all times.

Conclusion

Becoming a Chinese tour guide in India requires dedication, cultural understanding, and a focus on delivering exceptional service. By combining formal training, practical experience, and a customer-oriented mindset, you can thrive in this rewarding career and make a lasting impact on your clients.

9. 寻求行业或企业机会

探索行业口译机会，特别是针对访问印度的中国商务代表团。

与与中国有贸易或伙伴关系的公司合作，扩大您的服务。

成功的专业秘诀

文化敏感性：注意中国游客的习俗和偏好，例如用餐时间、群体动态和对等级制度的尊重。

以客户为中心的方法：提供满足他们需求的个性化体验。

专业行为：始终准时、着装得体、平易近人。

结论

成为印度的中文导游需要奉献精神、文化理解力和提供卓越服务的专注力。通过结合正规培训、实践经验和以客户为中心的思维，您可以在这个回报丰厚的职业中茁壮成长，并给客户留下持久的印象。

Lesson 7

Theories and Principles for Tourist Guides

导游理论和原则

Tour guiding is both an art and a science, rooted in principles that ensure effective communication, group management, and customer satisfaction. Below is a detailed outline of theories and principles relevant to tourist guides:

1. Theories in Tour Guiding

1.1 Interpretative Guiding Theory

Definition: Focuses on presenting information in a way that creates emotional and intellectual connections between tourists and the destination.

Key Principles:

Transform facts into stories or themes that are engaging and relatable.

Use metaphors, analogies, and storytelling to make history and culture come alive.

Encourage curiosity and personal reflection to deepen the tourist's experience.

导游既是一门艺术，也是一门科学，其根基是确保有效沟通、团队管理和客户满意度的原则。以下是与导游相关的理论和原则的详细概述：

1. 导游理论

1.1 解释性导游理论

定义：专注于以一种在游客和目的地之间建立情感和智力联系的方式呈现信息。

关键原则：

将事实转化为引人入胜且可关联的故事或主题。

使用隐喻、类比和讲故事让历史和文化栩栩如生。

鼓励好奇心和个人反思，以加深游客的体验。

1.2 Social Exchange Theory

Definition: Explains the relationship between guides and tourists based on mutual benefit and trust.

Application:

Tourists gain knowledge and experiences, while guides gain satisfaction, feedback, and sometimes financial rewards (tips).

Guides must ensure tourists feel valued by providing excellent service and personalized attention.

1.3 Cultural Mediation Theory

Definition: Highlights the role of guides as mediators between cultures.

Application:

Guides bridge the gap between the tourists' culture and the local culture.

They explain cultural norms, practices, and etiquette to prevent misunderstandings and foster respect.

1.4 Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs

Definition: Guides address tourists' needs at various levels, from basic comfort to self-actualization.

Application:

Physiological Needs: Ensure tourists have access to food, water, and restrooms.

Safety Needs: Provide a safe and secure environment during tours.

Belongingness: Foster group bonding and inclusivity.

Self-Actualization: Offer enriching experiences that help tourists fulfill their personal goals (e.g., learning about a new culture).

1.5 Service Quality Theory (SERVQUAL)

Definition: Focuses on understanding and meeting tourists' expectations through quality service.

Key Dimensions:

Reliability: Deliver consistent and accurate information.

Responsiveness: Address tourists' needs and concerns promptly.

Assurance: Build trust through knowledge and confidence.

Empathy: Show understanding and care for tourists' preferences.

Tangibles: Maintain a professional appearance and ensure high-quality tools and materials.

1.2 社会交换理论

定义：解释基于互利和信任的导游和游客之间的关系。

应用：

游客获得知识和经验，而导游获得满足感、反馈，有时还有经济奖励（小费）。

导游必须通过提供优质服务 and 个性化关注来确保游客感到被重视。

1.3 文化中介理论

定义：强调导游作为文化中介的作用。

应用：

导游弥合了游客文化与当地文化之间的鸿沟。

他们解释文化规范、习俗和礼仪，以防止误解并培养尊重。

1.4 马斯洛需求层次理论

定义：导游满足游客各个层次的需求，从基本的舒适到自我实现。

应用：

生理需求：确保游客能够获得食物、水和洗手间。

安全需求：在旅游期间提供安全可靠的环境。

归属感：促进团体凝聚力和包容性。

自我实现：提供丰富的体验，帮助游客实现个人目标（例如，了解新文化）。

1.5 服务质量理论 (SERVQUAL)

定义：专注于通过优质服务了解和满足游客的期望。

关键维度：

可靠性：提供一致且准确的信息。

响应能力：及时解决游客的需求和担忧。

保证：通过知识和信心建立信任。

同理心：表现出对游客喜好的理解和关心。

有形：保持专业形象，确保工具和材料的质量。

2. Principles for Tourist Guides

2.1 Principle of Communication

Speak clearly, concisely, and in a way that engages the audience.

Use language that matches the tourists' level of understanding (avoid overly technical jargon).

Incorporate storytelling, humor, and visuals to make the information more relatable and memorable.

2. 导游原则

2.1 沟通原则

说话清晰、简洁，吸引观众。

使用与游客理解水平相匹配的语言（避免使用过于专业的术语）。

结合讲故事、幽默和视觉效果，使信息更具相关性和难忘性。

2.2 以观众为中心的原则

关注游客的兴趣、需求和期望。

根据团体的人口统计数据（例如年龄、文化或身体能力）调整旅游。

鼓励互动和参与，以创造更具吸引力的体验。

2.2 Principle of Audience-Centered Approach

Focus on the tourists' interests, needs, and expectations.

Adapt the tour to the group's demographics, such as age, culture, or physical abilities.

Encourage interaction and participation to create a more engaging experience.

2.3 Principle of Authenticity

Provide accurate and well-researched information.

Avoid exaggeration or fabrication of facts.

Highlight the unique aspects of the destination, emphasizing its genuine cultural and historical significance.

2.4 Principle of Cultural Sensitivity

Respect cultural differences and avoid making assumptions or stereotypes.

Educate tourists about local customs and encourage respectful behavior.

Mediate conflicts or misunderstandings that arise due to cultural differences.

2.5 Principle of Environmental Responsibility

Promote sustainable tourism by educating tourists about conservation and minimizing their environmental impact.

Follow and encourage adherence to local regulations regarding waste disposal, wildlife interaction, and cultural heritage preservation.

2.6 Principle of Safety and Risk Management

Prioritize the physical and emotional safety of tourists.

Prepare for emergencies by having a first-aid kit, emergency contacts, and a plan for unforeseen situations (e.g., medical issues, weather changes).

Conduct pre-tour safety briefings and provide clear instructions.

2.7 Principle of Group Dynamics

Manage group interactions to ensure everyone feels included and valued.

Address difficult tourists or disruptive behavior with diplomacy and professionalism.

Balance the needs of individuals with the overall group's experience.

2.8 Principle of Continuous Learning

Stay updated on changes in local history, tourism regulations, and cultural trends.

Attend workshops, seminars, and advanced training sessions to enhance skills.

Seek feedback from tourists to identify areas for improvement.

2.3 真实性原则

提供准确且经过充分研究的信息。

避免夸大或捏造事实。

突出目的地的独特之处，强调其真正的文化和历史意义。

2.4 文化敏感性原则

尊重文化差异，避免做出假设或刻板印象。

教育游客了解当地风俗习惯，鼓励尊重他人的行为。

调解因文化差异而产生的冲突或误解。

2.5 环境责任原则

通过教育游客了解保护环境和尽量减少对环境的影响来促进可持续旅游业。

遵守并鼓励遵守当地有关废物处理、野生动物互动和文化遗产保护的规定。

2.6 安全和风险管理原则

优先考虑游客的身体和情感安全。

准备好急救箱、紧急联系人和应对不可预见情况（例如医疗问题、天气变化）的计划，以应对紧急情况。

进行旅游前安全简报并提供明确说明。

2.7 群体动力原则

管理群体互动，确保每个人都感到被包容和重视。

用外交和专业的态度处理难缠的游客或破坏性行为。

平衡个人需求和整个团队的体验。

2.8 持续学习原则

随时了解当地历史、旅游法规和文化趋势的变化。

参加讲习班、研讨会和高级培训课程以提高技能。

征求游客的反馈意见，以确定需要改进的地方。

3. Practical Applications

3.1 Thematic Guiding

Develop themes for your tours to create a cohesive narrative (e.g., "The Mughal Legacy," "Spiritual India").

Ensure every stop on the tour connects to the central theme.

3.2 Storytelling Techniques

Start with an attention-grabbing fact or anecdote.

Use vivid imagery and descriptive language to immerse tourists in the experience.

End with a memorable takeaway or call to reflection.

3.3 Question Handling

Acknowledge every question with respect, even if repetitive or unrelated.

If you don't know the answer, admit it honestly and promise to follow up.

Conclusion

Theories and principles of guiding offer a foundation for professional excellence. By applying these concepts, guides can create engaging, meaningful, and safe experiences that exceed tourists' expectations, fostering positive memories and long-term satisfaction.

3. 实际应用

3.1 主题指导

为您的旅游开发主题，以创建一个有凝聚力的叙述（例如，“莫卧儿遗产”、“精神印度”）。

确保旅游的每一站都与中心主题相关。

3.2 讲故事技巧

从引人注目的事实或轶事开始。

使用生动的图像和描述性语言让游客沉浸在体验中。

以令人难忘的外卖或电话结束反思。

3.3 问题处理

尊重地回答每一个问题，即使是重复或不相关的问题。

如果您不知道答案，请诚实地承认并承诺跟进。

结论

导游的理论和原则为专业卓越奠定了基础。通过应用这些概念，导游可以创造引人入胜、有意义且安全的体验，超越游客的期望，培养积极的记忆和长期的满足感。

Lesson 8

Practical Tips for Chinese Tour Guides in India

印度中文导游实用技巧

Being a Chinese tour guide in India presents unique challenges and opportunities. To effectively guide Chinese tourists and create a memorable experience for them, it's important to combine cultural awareness, communication skills, and local knowledge. Below are some practical tips tailored specifically for Chinese tour guides operating in India:

1. Cultural Sensitivity and Awareness

1.1 Understand Chinese Cultural Expectations

Group Orientation: Chinese tourists often travel in large groups, so managing group dynamics and maintaining order is crucial.

Respect for Hierarchy: Chinese culture places great importance on respect for authority and hierarchy. If there are senior tourists in the group, give them extra attention and defer to them in group interactions.

Formalities: Greet tourists with respect, and use formal titles when addressing them (e.g., Mr., Mrs.). Avoid overly casual language unless invited to do so.

Gift Giving: In Chinese culture, gift-giving is a sign of respect. Have small tokens of appreciation (like souvenirs) to offer in some situations, especially if a tourist gives you a gift.

1.2 Address Dietary Preferences and Restrictions

Vegetarian Options: Chinese tourists are often vegetarian, especially those from certain regions like Tibet or Shanghai. Ensure that vegetarian meal options are included in itineraries.

Avoid Spicy Foods: Many Chinese tourists are not accustomed to the level of spice common in Indian cuisine. It's important to inquire about spice preferences and offer milder versions where necessary.

Chinese-friendly Restaurants: Familiarize yourself with Chinese-friendly restaurants that offer a mix of Chinese and Indian food. Some hotels may also serve Chinese-style meals.

1.3 Be Mindful of Etiquette and Behavior

Respect for Privacy: Chinese tourists may prefer a more reserved approach to personal questions. Avoid overly personal topics unless the group is open to discussion.

Politeness: Chinese tourists appreciate politeness and good manners. Ensure you always address people with respect and maintain a professional demeanor.

Punctuality: Time management is highly valued in Chinese culture. Always be punctual when meeting the group or arriving at destinations.

在印度做中文导游面临着独特的挑战和机遇。要有效地引导中国游客并为他们创造难忘的体验，文化意识、沟通技巧和当地知识的结合非常重要。以下是专门为在印度工作的中文导游量身定制的一些实用技巧：

1. 文化敏感性和意识

1.1 了解中国文化期望

团体导向：中国游客经常成群结队旅行，因此管理团体动态和维持秩序至关重要。

尊重等级：中国文化非常重视对权威和等级的尊重。如果团体中有年长的游客，请给予他们额外的关注并在团体互动中尊重他们。

礼节：尊重地迎接游客，并在称呼他们时使用正式的头衔（例如，先生、女士）。除非受到邀请，否则避免使用过于随意的语言。

送礼：在中国文化中，送礼是一种尊重的表现。在某些情况下，可以准备一些小礼物（如纪念品）以表示感谢，尤其是当游客给你礼物的时候。

1.2 解决饮食偏好和限制

素食选择：中国游客通常是素食主义者，尤其是来自西藏或上海等特定地区的游客。确保行程中包括素食选择。

避免辛辣食物：许多中国游客不习惯印度菜中常见的辛辣程度。询问他们的辛辣偏好并在必要时提供较温和的版本非常重要。

适合中国人的餐厅：熟悉提供中餐和印度菜混合的适合中国人的餐厅。一些酒店也可能提供中式餐点。

1.3 注意礼仪和行为

尊重隐私：中国游客可能更喜欢以更保守的方式回答个人问题。除非团队愿意讨论，否则请避免过于私人的话题。

礼貌：中国游客欣赏礼貌和礼貌。确保您始终尊重他人并保持专业风度。

准时：中国文化非常重视时间管理。与团队会面或到达目的地时一定要准时。

2. Language and Communication

2.1 Master Basic Chinese Phrases

Greetings and Common Phrases: Learn a few key phrases in Mandarin, such as:

你好 (Nǐ hǎo) – Hello

谢谢 (Xièxiè) – Thank you

再见 (Zàijiàn) – Goodbye

请问 (Qǐngwèn) – Excuse me

方便吗 (Fāngbiàn ma?) – Is it convenient?

Numbers and Money: Be familiar with basic numbers in Chinese to assist tourists with transactions and prices.

2.2 Use Clear and Simple English

Avoid Complicated Vocabulary: While many Chinese tourists speak some English, their proficiency can vary. Use simple English to explain things and avoid idiomatic expressions that might be confusing.

Visual Aids: Use maps, pictures, and signs to help explain complex ideas and locations, making it easier for tourists to understand.

2. 语言和交流

2.1 掌握基本中文短语

问候和常用短语：学习一些普通话的关键短语，例如：

你好 (Nǐ hǎo) – 你好

谢谢 (Xièxiè) – 谢谢

再见 (Zàijiàn) – 再见

请问 (Qǐngwèn) – 对不起

方便吗 (Fāngbiàn ma?) – 方便吗？

数字和货币：熟悉中文的基本数字，以帮助游客进行交易和了解价格。

2.2 使用清晰简单的英语

避免使用复杂的词汇：虽然许多中国游客会说一些英语，但他们的熟练程度各不相同。使用简单的英语来解释事情，避免使用可能令人困惑的惯用语。

视觉辅助工具：使用地图、图片和标志来帮助解释复杂的想法和位置，使游客更容易理解。

3. Personal Interaction and Customer Service

3.1 Build Rapport

Show Interest in Their Culture: Ask about their favorite places in China or share positive experiences you've had with Chinese tourists. This helps to establish a connection and shows your respect for their background.

Be Approachable and Friendly: Smile often and maintain an approachable attitude. Chinese tourists appreciate guides who show genuine warmth and kindness.

Understand Group Dynamics: Chinese tourists often prefer to stay in groups. Ensure you manage interactions with the group in mind and don't make individual tourists feel singled out or left out.

3.2 Provide Constant Updates

Keep Them Informed: Always explain what's coming up next during the tour, whether it's a new stop or a break. This keeps them engaged and informed about the itinerary.

Be Transparent: If there are any changes to the itinerary (e.g., delayed transport or canceled stops), inform the group calmly and clearly.

3.3 Anticipate Needs

Comfort Items: Be mindful of their comfort, especially when traveling in hot weather. Carry water, tissues, and other basic supplies.

Shopping and Souvenirs: Chinese tourists often enjoy shopping, so be sure to highlight local markets and recommended places to buy souvenirs. If possible, assist them in negotiating prices.

3. 个人互动和客户服务

3.1 建立融洽关系

表现出对他们的文化的兴趣：询问他们在中国最喜欢的地方，或分享你与中国游客的积极经历。这有助于建立联系并表明你对他们背景的尊重。

平易近人、友好：经常微笑，保持平易近人的态度。中国游客欣赏表现出真诚热情和善良的导游。

了解群体动态：中国游客通常更喜欢待在团体中。确保你在管理互动时考虑到团体，不要让个别游客感到被孤立或被排除在外。

3.2 提供持续更新

让他们了解情况：始终解释游览期间接下来会发生什么，无论是新的站点还是休息。这让他们参与并了解行程。

保持透明：如果行程有任何变化（例如，交通延误或取消停靠站），请冷静、清楚地通知团队。

3.3 预测需求

舒适物品：注意他们的舒适度，尤其是在炎热天气旅行时。携带水、纸巾和其他基本用品。

购物和纪念品：中国游客通常喜欢购物，因此一定要突出当地市场和推荐的购买纪念品的地方。如果可能，协助他们协商价格。

4. Managing Logistics and Safety

4.1 Understand Travel Routes and Timings

Local Knowledge: Ensure that you're familiar with all the major tourist attractions in the region and have backup plans in case of any unexpected changes in the schedule.

Avoid Long Travel Times: Chinese tourists may not have the same tolerance for long travel times as some other groups. Whenever possible, plan itineraries that minimize travel time between attractions.

4.2 Handle Emergencies Calmly

Know Local Health Services: Have emergency contact numbers handy, including medical services and embassy numbers, in case of any health-related issues.

Crisis Management: If an emergency arises, stay calm, reassure the group, and provide clear instructions. Chinese tourists will appreciate a composed, professional response.

. 管理物流和安全

4.1 了解旅行路线和时间

当地知识: 确保您熟悉该地区所有主要旅游景点, 并有备用计划, 以防行程出现任何意外变化。

避免长时间旅行: 中国游客可能不像其他一些团体那样能忍受长时间旅行。尽可能规划行程, 以尽量减少景点之间的旅行时间。

4.2 冷静应对紧急情况

了解当地卫生服务: 准备好紧急联系电话, 包括医疗服务和大使馆电话, 以防出现任何与健康相关的问题。

危机管理: 如果发生紧急情况出现问题时, 保持冷静, 安抚团队并提供明确的指示。中国游客会喜欢沉着、专业的回应。

5. Leverage Technology

5.1 Mobile Apps and Translation Tools

Translation Apps: Install translation apps like Google Translate or Pleco to help you communicate more effectively if there's a language barrier.

Mobile Payment Familiarity: Chinese tourists often use WeChat Pay or Alipay for payments. Familiarize yourself with these systems and provide assistance if needed.

5.2 Use Social Media

WeChat: Many Chinese tourists use WeChat for communication. Consider setting up a WeChat group for your tour group to share updates, photos, or videos of the tour.

5. 利用技术

5.1 移动应用程序和翻译工具

翻译应用程序: 如果存在语言障碍, 请安装 Google 翻译或 Pleco 等翻译应用程序, 以帮助您更有效地沟通。

移动支付熟悉度: 中国游客经常使用微信支付或支付宝付款。熟悉这些系统并在需要时提供帮助。

5.2 使用社交媒体

微信: 许多中国游客使用微信进行交流。考虑为您的旅行团建立一个微信群, 以分享旅行的最新消息、照片或视频。

6. Be Ready to Handle Difficult Situations

6.1 Addressing Complaints

Listen Actively: If a tourist has a complaint, listen attentively and express empathy. Chinese tourists may be reluctant to directly express dissatisfaction, so be proactive in checking if everyone is satisfied.

Offer Solutions: If something goes wrong (e.g., a delayed lunch or a missed stop), offer a solution and provide alternatives when possible.

6.2 Dealing with Sensitive Topics

Avoid Politics and Religion: Some topics, like politics, may be sensitive for Chinese tourists. Avoid discussing controversial issues unless it's part of the planned tour content.

Handle Disagreements Diplomatically: If there's a dispute or disagreement in the group, remain neutral and mediate calmly.

Conclusion
Being a Chinese tour guide in India requires a deep understanding of both cultures, effective communication skills, and an ability to anticipate and meet the needs of your tourists. By applying the tips above, you can create an enriching, enjoyable experience for Chinese tourists while ensuring their safety, comfort, and satisfaction. Your professionalism will help bridge cultural gaps and foster a positive connection with your guests.

6. 准备好应对困难情况

6.1 处理投诉

积极倾听: 如果游客有投诉, 请认真倾听并表达同理心。中国游客可能不愿意直接表达不满, 因此请主动检查每个人是否都满意。

提供解决方案: 如果出现问题(例如, 午餐延迟或错过站点), 请提供解决方案并在可能的情况下提供替代方案。

6.2 处理敏感话题

避免政治和宗教: 某些话题(如政治)对中国游客来说可能很敏感。除非是计划的旅游内容, 否则请避免讨论有争议的问题。

以外交方式处理分歧: 如果团队中发生争议或分歧, 请保持中立并冷静调解。

结论

在印度做中国导游需要对两种文化有深刻的了解, 具有有效的沟通技巧, 并能够预测和满足游客的需求。通过应用上述技巧, 您可以为中国游客创造丰富、愉快的体验, 同时确保他们的安全、舒适和满意。您的专业精神将有助于弥合文化差距并与客人建立积极的联系。

Lesson 9
General Do's and Don'ts for Chinese tour guides
中文导游的基本注意事项

Being a successful tour guide involves not only having the right knowledge and skills but also understanding and respecting the cultural preferences and expectations of your tourists. For Chinese tourists, this is particularly important, as there are distinct cultural norms and preferences to consider. Below are some general dos and don'ts for Chinese tour guides to ensure that tours are both enjoyable and respectful.

Do's

1. Do Show Respect and Politeness

Address Elders with Respect: In Chinese culture, there is a deep respect for elders. Always use formal titles like "Mr.," "Mrs.," or "Sir" when addressing older tourists. Showing respect for age and seniority is crucial.

Use Polite Language: Be polite in your interactions. Simple gestures like saying "please" and "thank you" in Mandarin, if you know the language, go a long way in creating a positive atmosphere.

Be Courteous and Professional: Maintain a professional demeanor at all times. Ensure that your tone is respectful and your actions are considerate of their comfort and cultural norms.

成为一名成功的导游不仅需要具备专业知识和技能，还需理解并尊重游客的文化偏好和期望。对于中国游客来说，这一点尤为重要，因为他们有独特的文化习惯和偏好需要导游注意。以下是为中国导游整理的一些基本注意事项，以确保导览既愉快又充满尊重。

要做的事项

1. 展现尊重与礼貌

尊重长者：在中国文化中，对长辈怀有深厚的敬意。与年长游客交流时，请使用正式称谓，如“先生”、“女士”或“老先生”。尊重年龄和资历是关键。

使用礼貌用语：与游客互动时保持礼貌。如果懂普通话，使用简单的礼貌用语，如“请”和“谢谢”，能营造良好的氛围。

保持专业和礼貌：始终展现专业态度，确保语气尊重，行为符合他们的舒适度和文化规范。

2. Do Be Punctual and Organized

Stick to the Schedule: Chinese tourists appreciate punctuality and a well-structured itinerary. Arrive on time and ensure that the group sticks to the schedule to avoid delays.

Provide Clear Information: Always explain the itinerary, timings, and schedule clearly at the beginning of the tour. This ensures that tourists understand what to expect and don't feel confused or overwhelmed.

2. 准时和有条理

严格遵守时间表：中国游客非常重视准时性和结构化的行程安排。按时到达并确保团队按计划进行，避免延误。

提供清晰信息：在导览开始时清楚说明行程、时间安排和计划，以便游客了解期待内容，减少困惑和不安。

3. Do Engage with the Tourists

Use Storytelling: Chinese tourists enjoy learning through stories, especially historical anecdotes or local legends. Relate the information to Chinese history or culture when possible to make it more relevant.

Be Interactive: Ask questions or give tourists the opportunity to ask you questions. Engaging with them helps create a more personalized experience.

Provide Opportunities for Photos: Encourage tourists to take photos at scenic spots. Chinese tourists enjoy capturing memories and sharing photos, so offer to help with group pictures or suggest the best spots for a great shot.

3. 与游客互动

讲故事：中国游客喜欢通过故事学习，尤其是历史轶事或地方传说。如果可能，将信息与中国的历史或文化联系起来，使内容更贴近他们。

互动性强：提问或鼓励游客提问，通过互动创造更个性化的体验。

提供拍照机会：鼓励游客在景点拍照。中国游客喜欢记录回忆并分享照片，可以主动帮助拍团体照或推荐拍摄效果好的地点。

4. Do Understand and Adapt to Their Preferences

Offer Chinese Food Options: Many Chinese tourists prefer Chinese food, so it's beneficial to offer or suggest Chinese restaurants or familiar dishes whenever possible.

Be Mindful of Shopping: Chinese tourists love shopping, especially for souvenirs that represent the culture or the place. Provide them with information about local markets or popular shopping areas.

Provide Translation Assistance: While many Chinese tourists may understand basic English, offering translation assistance in Mandarin or using language apps can make them feel more comfortable.

4. 理解并适应游客的偏好

提供中餐选择：许多中国游客更喜欢中餐，因此推荐中餐馆或熟悉的菜肴会更受欢迎。

注重购物需求：中国游客热衷于购物，尤其是能代表当地文化或风情的纪念品。向他们提供关于当地市场或热门购物区的信息。

提供翻译协助：虽然许多中国游客懂基本英语，但提供普通话翻译协助或使用语言应用程序会让他们感到更舒适。

5. Do Be Patient and Compassionate

Understand Their Needs: Be patient if tourists have special requests or if there's a language barrier. Show empathy and help where necessary.

5. 保持耐心 and 同理心

理解他们的需求：如果游客有特殊要求或存在语言障碍，请保持耐心并提供必要的帮助。

管理期望：清楚说明导览过程中可能会遇到的情况，包括步行距离或某些地点的设施情况，避免产生失望情绪。

Manage Expectations: Be clear with tourists about what they can expect during the tour, including the amount of walking or the facilities available at certain locations, to prevent any disappointments.

Don'ts

1. Don't Be Disrespectful or Overly Casual

Avoid Informal Language: Don't use overly casual language or nicknames, especially with older tourists. Address them formally and respectfully.

Don't Ignore Hierarchy: In Chinese culture, respecting hierarchy is important. Avoid treating older tourists in a casual or equal manner unless they express a preference for this.

2. Don't Rush the Tour

Avoid Speeding Through Attractions: Chinese tourists tend to appreciate leisurely tours with enough time to explore. Rushing them through a site without giving them time to absorb the surroundings will likely create a negative experience.

Don't Skip Breaks: Long walking tours can be tiring, especially for older tourists. Always schedule breaks for rest and refreshment. Ignoring their need for breaks can lead to discomfort.

不要做的事项

1. 不要不尊重或过于随意

避免使用非正式语言：尤其是对年长游客，不要使用过于随便的语言或绰号。使用正式且尊重的称呼。

不要忽视等级观念：在中国文化中，尊重等级和资历很重要。除非长者表示可以，否则不要以随意或平等的方式对待他们。

2. 不要催促导览

避免匆匆浏览景点：中国游客更喜欢有足够时间探索的悠闲导览。匆忙参观可能会带来负面体验。

不要跳过休息时间：长时间的步行导览可能会让游客，尤其是年长者感到疲惫。务必安排休息时间，提供饮水和放松机会。

3. Don't Criticize Their Culture or Behavior

Avoid Negative Comments: Never criticize Chinese customs, traditions, or habits. If a cultural misunderstanding occurs, address it gently and respectfully without making anyone feel embarrassed.

Don't Dismiss Questions: Chinese tourists, like any tourists, may ask a lot of questions. Don't brush them off or become impatient. Answer their inquiries thoughtfully, as they may have a genuine interest in learning.

4. Don't Overload Them with Information

Avoid Over-Explaining: While it's important to provide historical or cultural context, avoid overwhelming tourists with too much information in one go. Chinese tourists appreciate clarity and conciseness in the information shared.

Don't Use Complex Terminology: Use simple language when explaining complex concepts or historical events. Avoid using jargon or too many technical terms that could confuse them.

. 不要批评他们的文化或行为

避免负面评论：不要批评中国的习俗、传统或行为。如果发生文化误解，应以温和和尊重的方式解决，避免让任何人感到尴尬。

不要忽略问题：中国游客可能会提出许多问题，不要敷衍或表现出不耐烦。认真解答，满足他们的学习兴趣。

4. 不要信息过载

避免过多解释：虽然提供文化或历史背景很重要，但避免一次性提供太多信息，以免游客感到负担。

不要使用复杂术语：在解释复杂概念或历史事件时，使用简单易懂的语言，避免专业术语或过于技术性的表达。

5. Don't Neglect Safety and Comfort

Don't Ignore Their Comfort Needs: Always ensure that your tourists are comfortable, whether it's the temperature of the vehicle, the accessibility of the location, or their seating arrangement.

Don't Overlook Health and Safety Concerns: Chinese tourists often have concerns regarding food hygiene, air quality, and their health while traveling. Avoid ignoring any concerns they may have and be proactive in addressing them, especially when it comes to food safety or access to medical help.

6. Don't Disregard Local Customs

Avoid Improper Behavior in Sacred Places: In places of worship or sacred sites, be respectful of local customs and encourage tourists to do the same. Don't allow disrespectful behavior such as speaking loudly or taking photos in restricted areas.

Don't Make Assumptions: Avoid making assumptions about tourists' preferences or abilities. Ask before making decisions about their comfort, such as whether they can handle spicy food or if they require extra assistance during walks.

Conclusion

By following these dos and don'ts, Chinese tour guides can create a positive and culturally sensitive experience for their tourists. The key is to balance professionalism with empathy, structure with flexibility, and clear communication with cultural respect. Guides who understand and embrace these principles are more likely to provide an enjoyable and memorable experience for Chinese tourists, helping them feel comfortable, valued, and engaged throughout their journey.

5. 不要忽视安全与舒适

不要忽略他们的舒适需求：确保游客感到舒适，包括交通工具的温度、地点的可达性或座位安排等。

不要忽视健康和安全问题：中国游客通常关注食品卫生、空气质量和旅行中的健康问题。不要忽略他们的担忧，应积极主动地解决，尤其是食品安全或医疗帮助方面的问题。

6. 不要忽视当地习俗

避免不当行为：在宗教场所或圣地，尊重当地习俗，并鼓励游客也保持礼貌。例如，不要允许大声喧哗或在禁止拍照的地方拍摄。

不要妄加揣测：不要对游客的喜好或能力做出假设。在决定游客是否能接受辛辣食物或是否需要步行协助时，应先询问。

结语

通过遵守这些注意事项，中国导游可以为游客创造一个积极且文化敏感的导览体验。关键在于平衡专业与共情、结构与灵活、清晰沟通与文化尊重。理解并践行这些原则的导游更可能提供愉快且难忘的导览服务，让中国游客在旅途中感到舒适、受重视并充满参与感。

Lesson 10

Handling questions from Chinese tourists

应对中国游客提问的技巧

Chinese tourists are typically very curious and keen to learn about the culture, history, and nuances of the places they visit. Their questions can range from simple curiosity to deep cultural or historical inquiries. As a tour guide, it's essential to approach these questions with patience, respect, and clarity. Below are key tips and strategies for handling questions from Chinese tourists effectively.

1. Be Patient and Attentive

1.1 Listen Carefully

Allow them to finish: Make sure to listen attentively until they have finished speaking. Interrupting may cause frustration or make them feel disrespected.

Show interest: Acknowledge their curiosity by nodding or offering small affirmations like “I understand” or “That’s an interesting question.” This shows that you value their inquiry.

1.2 Avoid Rushing

Take time to answer: Chinese tourists often appreciate detailed answers. Don’t rush through a response, especially if the question relates to something important, like cultural significance or historical facts.

Give space for follow-up questions: After answering a question, give them a moment to ask if they need further clarification. This ensures they fully understand and feel engaged.

中国游客通常充满好奇心，渴望了解他们参观地的文化、历史以及各种细节。他们提出的问题可能涉及简单的好奇心，也可能是深刻的文化或历史探讨。作为导游，重要的是以耐心、尊重和清晰的方式应对这些问题。以下是应对中国游客提问的关键策略和技巧：

1. 保持耐心和专注

1.1 仔细倾听

让游客讲完：耐心倾听，直到他们完全表达完。如果打断他们，可能会让他们感到不被尊重或沮丧。

表现出兴趣：通过点头或简单回应如“我明白”或“这是个有趣的问题”来肯定他们的好奇心，表明你重视他们的问题。

1.2 避免匆忙回答

花时间回答：中国游客通常喜欢详细的回答。不要匆忙作答，尤其是涉及文化意义或历史事实的问题。

留出追问的空间：回答完一个问题后，稍作停顿，看看游客是否有进一步的提问。这可以确保他们完全理解并感受到互动。

2. Provide Clear and Detailed Answers

2.1 Be Concise Yet Thorough

Avoid Overcomplicating: While Chinese tourists enjoy detailed information, avoid overwhelming them with unnecessary complexity or too much jargon. Keep explanations clear and direct.

Use Simple Language: If you’re speaking in English or another language, try to avoid complicated vocabulary. Chinese tourists, especially older ones, may not be fluent in English, so it's helpful to speak slowly and use straightforward language.

2.2 Relate Information to Chinese Culture

Contextualize Answers: Whenever possible, try to relate the information to something familiar in Chinese culture or history. For example, when talking about a religious site, you could reference similarities to Chinese temples or traditions.

Use Examples: Offering examples from Chinese history or popular culture can make your answer more relatable. If a tourist asks about a specific landmark, you might compare it to famous Chinese landmarks to give them a point of reference.

2.3 Be Honest and Transparent

Don’t Guess: If you don’t know the answer, be honest about it. It’s okay to admit you don’t know something. You can offer to find the answer for them later or suggest where they can get more information.

Provide Sources: If applicable, recommend books, websites, or other resources where they can learn more about the subject. This helps tourists feel that they are receiving valuable and well-researched information.

2. 提供清晰且详细的答案

2.1 简明但全面

避免复杂化：虽然中国游客喜欢细致的信息，但不要用于过于复杂的术语或过量信息使他们感到负担。保持解释清晰、直接。

使用简单语言：如果用英文或其他语言交流，尽量避免复杂的词汇。尤其是年长游客可能不熟悉外语，放慢语速并使用通俗易懂的语言。

2.2 与中国文化联系

提供文化背景：尽量将信息与中国文化或历史联系起来。例如，谈及宗教场所时，可以提到与中国寺庙或传统的相似之处。

使用例子：通过中国历史或流行文化的例子让答案更贴切。例如，若游客问及某地标，可以将其与中国著名地标作对比，以便他们更容易理解。

2.3 坦诚透明

不要随意猜测：如果不知道答案，坦诚相告。这是可以接受的，你可以表示稍后查找答案或建议他们获取信息的其他途径。

推荐资源：如果合适，可推荐相关书籍、网站或其他资源，帮助游客进一步了解。这能让他们感到信息是有价值且经过深思熟虑的。

3. Addressing Sensitive or Complex Topics

3.1 Be Respectful of Cultural Sensitivities

Avoid Sensitive Topics: Be mindful when answering questions that could touch on sensitive topics, such as politics or historical controversies. Chinese tourists may be more sensitive to topics related to China's history, political landscape, or foreign relations.

Answer Diplomatically: If questions about sensitive subjects arise, answer diplomatically, sticking to the facts and maintaining a neutral stance. For example, when discussing historical events, provide both perspectives without delving too deeply into contentious issues.

3.2 Show Cultural Sensitivity

Acknowledge Chinese Contributions: When discussing historical sites or achievements, it can be beneficial to mention China's significant contributions to world culture and civilization. This shows respect for their heritage and fosters goodwill.

Avoid Stereotypes: Never make generalized or stereotypical statements about China or Chinese people. Always treat their culture with respect and speak in ways that reflect this.

3. 应对敏感或复杂话题

3.1 尊重文化敏感性

避免敏感话题：回答涉及敏感话题时要谨慎，例如政治或历史争议问题。中国游客对与中国历史、政治或外交相关的话题可能更加敏感。

外交性回答：若问题涉及敏感内容，保持中立立场，仅陈述事实。例如，在讨论历史事件时，可提供多角度的视角，而不过多深入争议点。

3.2 展现文化尊重

认可中国的贡献：在讲解历史遗址或成就时，提到中国对世界文化和文明的重要贡献，会增加对他们文化的尊重，促进友好关系。

避免刻板印象：不要对中国或中国人民发表泛化或刻板印象的言论。始终以尊重的方式讨论他们的文化。

4. Handle Language Barriers Effectively

4.1 Speak Clearly and Slowly

Use Simple Words and Phrases: Many Chinese tourists may not be fluent in English, so speak clearly, and avoid using slang or idiomatic expressions that may be hard to understand.

Pause Regularly: Give them time to absorb what you're saying, especially if they are translating or processing in their minds. This helps avoid confusion.

4.2 Offer Translation Help

Use Translation Apps: If there's a language barrier, use translation apps or simple phrases in Mandarin. Many Chinese tourists will appreciate the effort to communicate in their native language.

Clarify Key Information: For complex or technical explanations, break things down into simpler terms, and provide key details clearly to avoid misunderstandings.

4. 有效应对语言障碍

4.1 清晰缓慢地表达

使用简单词汇：许多中国游客可能不熟悉英语，因此表达时避免俚语或难以理解的短语。

定期停顿：尤其在解释复杂内容时，给游客时间消化内容，避免产生混淆。

4.2 提供翻译帮助

使用翻译工具：若语言存在障碍，可以使用翻译应用或简单的普通话短语与他们交流。很多中国游客会感激这种努力。

简化复杂信息：对于复杂或技术性解释，将其分解为更易懂的部分，并清楚地提供关键细节，避免误解。

5. 鼓励参与和好奇心

5. Encourage Participation and Curiosity

5.1 Invite Questions Throughout the Tour

Foster Curiosity: Let tourists know that they can ask questions at any time. This opens up opportunities for them to engage and helps you tailor your responses to their specific interests.

Offer Opportunities for Interaction: After answering a question, encourage tourists to share their thoughts or personal experiences related to the topic. This creates an interactive and dynamic learning environment.

5.2 Use Visual Aids

Show Visual Examples: When answering questions about art, architecture, or history, use images or artifacts (if available). Chinese tourists may appreciate visual aids as they help them connect more deeply with the subject matter.

Point to Relevant Objects or Locations: If the question concerns a particular artifact or monument, make sure to point out or refer to the object directly. This makes the answer more tangible and helps tourists visualize what you're describing.

5.1 在导览过程中邀请提问

激发好奇心：让游客知道他们可以随时提问。这有助于他们更深入参与，也便于你根据他们的兴趣调整回答。

提供互动机会：回答问题后，鼓励游客分享与主题相关的想法或个人经历。这可以创造互动且有趣的学习氛围。

5.2 使用视觉辅助

展示视觉示例：回答艺术、建筑或历史相关问题时，使用图片或实物（如有）更能帮助游客理解。
指向相关物品或地点：若问题涉及某一文物或地标，直接指向相关对象，使答案更具象化，帮助游客联想。

6. Handling Repetitive or Overwhelming Questions

6.1 Stay Patient

Don't Get Frustrated: Sometimes, tourists may ask the same question multiple times or ask a lot of questions in quick succession. Stay calm, and patiently answer each query, ensuring they fully understand before moving on.

Repeat Key Points: If a tourist repeatedly asks similar questions, gently remind them of previous answers in a polite manner, "As I mentioned earlier..." or "I'm glad you're curious about that; here's a quick recap..."

6.2 Provide Written Information

Offer Brochures or Handouts: If questions are about specific places, events, or dates, provide tourists with brochures or handouts containing relevant information. This allows them to read at their own pace and prevents you from being interrupted too frequently.

6. 应对重复或过多的问题

6.1 保持耐心

不显不耐烦：有时游客可能会多次问相同的问题，或连续提很多问题。保持冷静，耐心回答，确保他们完全理解后再继续。

重复关键点：若游客反复问类似问题，可礼貌地提醒之前的回答，例如，“正如我之前提到的...”或“我很高兴你对此感兴趣，这里是快速回顾...”

6.2 提供书面信息

分发手册或资料：如果问题涉及具体地点、事件或日期，可为游客提供手册或资料。这能让他们自行阅读，减少频繁打断的情况。

7. Closing Questions and Creating Lasting Impressions

7.1 Encourage Final Questions

At the End of the Tour: Before concluding, encourage the tourists to ask any final questions. This ensures that they leave with all their curiosities satisfied and strengthens the positive experience.

Offer Additional Resources: If the tourists have more detailed questions, suggest books, documentaries, or websites where they can learn more. This provides value and shows your commitment to helping them expand their knowledge.

7.2 Leave a Positive Lasting Impression

Express Gratitude: Thank the tourists for their questions and participation. Let them know you enjoyed answering their inquiries and that you're happy to have shared the experience with them.

Personalized Goodbyes: If possible, offer a personalized goodbye. For example, "It was a pleasure answering your questions about the local culture, and I hope you have a wonderful time in India!"

Handling questions from Chinese tourists requires patience, clear communication, cultural sensitivity, and attentiveness. By actively listening, providing clear and relevant answers, and being respectful of cultural preferences, you will not only meet their needs but also enhance their overall tour experience. Chinese tourists value learning about history, culture, and the local environment, and as a guide, your ability to answer their questions thoughtfully and thoroughly will contribute to their enjoyment and satisfaction during the tour.

7. 收尾提问并留下良好印象

7.1 鼓励最终提问

在导览结束时：在结束前，鼓励游客提任何未解决的问题。确保他们的疑问都得到解答，加强他们的积极体验。

提供额外资源：对于更深入的问题，建议相关书籍、纪录片或网站，让游客能够进一步学习。

7.2 留下积极的印象

表达感谢：感谢游客的提问和参与。让他们知道你很高兴回答他们的问题，并且很高兴与他们分享这段经历。

个性化告别：如果可能，提供个性化的告别语。例如，“很高兴回答您关于本地文化的问题，祝您在印度玩得愉快！”

应对中国游客提问需要耐心、清晰的沟通、文化敏感性和关注细节。通过认真倾听、提供清晰相关的回答以及尊重文化偏好，你不仅能满足他们的需求，还能提升他们整体的旅行体验。中国游客重视学习历史、文化和当地环境，作为导游，您周到且细致的回答将极大地增加他们的满意度与快乐感受。

Lesson 11

Code of conduct for Tourist Guide

导游行为准则

A tour guide needs to follow some norms to ensure that he can work efficiently and make people (groups) satisfied. A code of conduct is a framework or a set of directives a tour guide has to follow in his profession. The code of conduct is very important for a long career. Few of these norms are given below:-

导游需要遵守一些规范，以确保他能高效工作并让人们（团体）满意。行为准则是导游在其职业中必须遵守的框架或一套指令。行为准则对于长期的职业生涯非常重要。以下列出了其中一些规范：-

Follow the law of the land.

Respect the rules framed by the government in the area where you are guiding.

Purchase proper entry tickets (if required)

Do not indulge in commercial activities.

Do not travel without ticket.

Do not purchase tickets from unauthorized vendor.
Follow rules framed by the Archeological Survey of India (ASI) for historical monuments.
Do not indulge in illegal activities. Also, do not support tourists in any illegal activity.
Work according to Wildlife Act (if you are in wildlife area or protected area).
Do not indulge in poaching of animals. It is strictly prohibited.
Do not engage children in jobs (falls under child labor act).

遵守当地法律。

尊重您导游所在地区政府制定的规则。

购买适当的门票（如果需要）

不要从事商业活动。

不要无票出行。

不要从未经授权的供应商处购买门票。

遵守印度考古调查局 (ASI) 为历史古迹制定的规则。

不要从事非法活动。此外，不要支持游客从事任何非法活动。

根据《野生动物法》工作（如果您在野生动物区或保护区）。

不要偷猎动物。这是严格禁止的。

不要让儿童从事工作（属于童工法）。

Tour Guide (TG) is the link between travel agency and tour group. Tour Guide must know the language spoken by group members. In tourism industry, guide is an expert in activities, and he must also have knowledge of local customs, traditions, flora and fauna.

Guide is often overlooked by the tourists as an essential component in tour planning who may prefer to understand destinations through their knowledge. Except for a few tourists who research thoroughly before tour, majority may miss on important aspects of tour attractions. Tour guides fill this gap and provide the necessary information in the available time. Additionally, a guide is a very good support for the tourists to get help on many fronts not visualized prior to tour.

Guiding qualification (in many countries) is particular to every single nation/country; at times the qualification is national, at times it is separated into region/ areas/ districts. In all cases it is embedded in the educational and training ethic of that nation/country.

导游 (TG) 是旅行社和旅游团之间的纽带。导游必须了解团员使用的语言。在旅游业中，导游是活动方面的专家，他还必须了解当地的风俗、传统、动植物。

导游往往被游客忽视，而他们可能更愿意通过自己的知识来了解目的地，因此导游是旅游规划中必不可少的组成部分。除了少数在旅游前进行彻底研究的游客外，大多数游客可能会错过旅游景点的重要方面。导游填补了这一空白，并在可用的时间内提供必要的信息。此外，导游是游客在旅游前无法想象的许多方面获得帮助的非常好的助手。

导游资格（在许多国家/地区）是每个国家/地区独有的；有时资格是全国性的，有时则分为地区/地区/地区。在所有情况下，它都嵌入了该国/国家的教育和培训道德中。

A Tour Guide:

- (i) Must have respect for belief system;
- (ii) Be punctual;
- (iii) Maintain acceptable personal hygiene;
- (iv) Well Dressed
- (v) Ensure that privacy of tourist is respected
- (vi) Be ethical;
- (vii) Behave politely;
- (viii) Act friendly and approachable;

导游：

- (i) 必须尊重信仰体系；
- (ii) 准时；
- (iii) 保持可接受的个人卫生；
- (iv) 着装得体
- (v) 确保尊重游客的隐私
- (vi) 讲道德；
- (vii) 举止有礼；
- (viii) 举止友好、平易近人；

Tour guide must also keep in mind following points.

Do not personalize any issues with the tourists.
Remember greeting your clients.
Have flag in your hands.
Be visible to all.
Everything and anything. Building, Plants, Pavements, Lamp posts, Security.
What you can see, feel, hear and smell.
We feel nervous because we feel exposed to ridicules (feel restricted,)
Voice must be loud enough, clear enough, varied enough. Manage pitch and tone.

Grab attention by speaking slowly, fast for few sentences, quietly for suspense, stop altogether.

Keep your message short and simple.

导游还必须牢记以下几点。

不要将游客的任何问题个人化。

记得问候您的客户。

手持旗帜。

让所有人都能看到。

一切。建筑物、植物、人行道、灯柱、安全。

您能看到、感觉到、听到和闻到的东西。

我们感到紧张，因为我们感到受到嘲笑（感到受限制），

声音必须足够响亮、足够清晰、足够多变。控制音调和语调。

通过慢慢说话来吸引注意力，快速说几句话，安静地制造悬念，完全停止。

保持您的信息简短明了。

Never underestimate audiences' intelligence.

Never overestimate, other persons' knowledge.

Pause for a while and confirm your clients.

Using proper/ appropriate adjectives makes a tremendous difference.

Attending questions: listen, show pleasure and speak.

Handling unwanted questions: allocate specific time, listen and repeat, evade politely.

Do not lose your cool.

永远不要低估观众的智力。

永远不要高估其他人的知识。

暂停一会儿并确认您的客户。

使用适当/合适的形容词会产生巨大的不同。

回答问题：倾听、表示高兴并发言。

处理不必要的问题：分配特定时间，倾听并重复，礼貌回避。

不要失去冷静。

Guiding is a learning process.

To be a good speaker develops style.

In the Museum: ask whether photography, bags, and mobile are allowed or not allowed.

Do not stand in front of the object.

Be sure that everyone can see it.

Before entering, we need to tell them where are Toilets/Washrooms, Restaurants etc.

引导是一个学习过程。

要成为一名优秀的演讲者，需要培养自己的风格。

在博物馆：询问是否允许拍照、携带包和手机。

不要站在物品前面。

确保每个人都能看到它。

进入之前，我们需要告诉他们厕所/盥洗室、餐厅等在哪里。

Preparations

a. Check if Place is open.

b. You have to know the place.

c. Plan stops and Top Visual Priorities (TVPs).

d. Theme.

e. Gathering points.

f. Rest room

g. Length of walk where it ends.

h. Safety specially during crossing the road.

i. Do's and do not's e.g. bagging.

准备工作

a. 检查地方是否开放。

b. 你必须知道这个地方。

c. 计划停留点和最高视觉优先级 (TVP)。

d. 主题。

e. 集合点。

f. 休息室

g. 步行的长度，在哪里结束。

h. 安全，特别是过马路时。

i. 注意事项，例如装袋。

Walking techniques

a. Lead your group

b. Never walk backwards.

- c. Never talk while walking.
- d. Road crossing.
- e. Gather then move on.
- f. Wait till all members have arrived.
- g. Your responsibility is to the whole group.

步行技巧

- a. 带领你的团队
- b. 永远不要倒着走。
- c. 永远不要边走边说话。
- d. 过马路。
- e. 集合然后继续前行。
- f. 等到所有成员都到达。
- g. 你对整个团队负责。

Coach

- a. Know the coach company
- b. Driver's name and plate
- c. Itinerary
- d. Before visitor arrive
- e. Plan route in advance
- f. Have alternate plan or plan-B
- g. Meet driver and obtain his name
- h. Check the working status of the microphone and speakers.
- i. Locate the first aid kit/ box.
- j. Claim guide seat
- k. Discuss the route with the driver
- l. Welcome members as they board

教练

- a. 了解教练公司
- b. 司机姓名和车牌
- c. 行程
- d. 在游客到达之前
- e. 提前规划路线
- f. 有备选计划或计划 B
- g. 与司机会面并了解他的名字
- h. 检查麦克风和扬声器的工作状态。
- i. 找到急救箱/急救箱。
- j. 认领导游座位
- k. 与司机讨论路线
- l. 欢迎成员登机

Before setting off

- a. Count guests
- b. Introduce yourself and the driver
- c. Safety announcements-exits seat belt/ no walking in the aisle when moving.
- d. Introduce the passengers
- e. Length of tour
- f. Highlight stops.

出发前

- a. 清点客人
- b. 介绍自己和司机
- c. 安全公告-退出安全带/移动时不要在过道上行走。
- d. 介绍乘客
- e. 行程长度
- f. 突出显示站点。

Enroute Do's

- a. Choose Top Visual Priorities (TVPs)
- b. Say on your right and left
- c. Use verbal indication
- d. Use links what they have seen, with their country
- e. Use fillers in areas, where no TVPs

途中注意事项

- a. 选择最高视觉优先级 (TVP)
- b. 说您的右侧和左侧
- c. 使用口头指示

d.使用他们所看到的内容和他们所在的国家/地区的链接

e. 在没有 TVP 的区域使用填充词

Do not's

a. Say over here, over there

b. Say behind you

c. Say in front of you

If stopping for photographs, or refreshments on the way give time.

不要做的

a. 说这里，那里

b. 说你身后

c. 说你前面

如果在途中停下来拍照或吃点东西 g时间。

End of the tour

a. Give conclusions

b. Thank driver

c. Remind the group to collect all belongings

d. Stay to answer questions and make suggestions.

游览结束

a. 总结

b. 感谢司机

c. 提醒团队收拾好所有物品

d. 留下来回答问题并提出建议。

Before Tour

a. Check opening time, and last entry time at the monument.

b. Check parking, drop off points

c. Check Toilets/washrooms and facilities for the differently abled.

d. Check the rule for photography, and selfie.

e. Recheck/ reconfirm your information

游览前

a. 检查开放时间和纪念碑的最后入场时间。

b. 检查停车场、下车点

c. 检查厕所/盥洗室和残疾人设施。

d. 检查摄影和自拍规则。

e. 重新检查/重新确认您的信息

Commentary

a. History, development

b. Assemble group

c. 45 degree

d. Stand on one side of a small object

e. Always speak facing the group

f. Speak loud enough

g. Do not block the way

h. Locate small object precisely through verbal discussions

评论

a. 历史、发展

b. 集合团队

c. 45 度

d. 站在小物体的一侧

e. 始终面向团队讲话

f. 说话声音要足够大

g. 不要挡路

h. 通过口头讨论准确定位小物体

8.8 Professional Tour Guides should

Work with showing associates and understudy Tour Guides in light of a legitimate concern for sharing, creating and supporting great practice and keeping up the most astounding nature of useful and informative for tourists.

A tour guide has to work between individual and society i.e. a communitarian with tourists, local administration, different individuals from staff, in trying to viably address the issues of travelers/ tourists.

Coordinate with the transport department, traffic police/ police department, customs, Archeological Survey of India etc.

Code of morals for Regional Level Tourist Guides (as proposed by Government of India)

The Tourist Guide might dependably know about anticipating a decent and positive gesture.

Publicity and positive remarks tremendously affect the formation of an image for the nation in the mind of tourists.

8.8 专业导游应

与指导同事和学生导游合作，以分享、创造和支持最佳实践的合理关切，并保持对游客最有用和信息丰富的性质。

导游必须在个人与社会之间工作，即与游客、当地政府、工作人员等进行沟通，努力有效解决游客/游客的问题。与交通部门、交警/警察部门、海关、印度考古调查局等协调。

地区级导游道德规范（由印度政府提出）

导游必须知道如何期待一个体面和积极的姿态。

宣传和积极的评论极大地影响了游客心中国家形象的形成。

The most recent improvements in the nation and stay up dated with the latest developments. He or she would comprehend and pass on the constructive parts of his way of life and convention, and be knowledgeable with issues identifying with nearby traditions, propensities and customs to guarantee that both the travelers and the neighborhood individuals regard each other.

The Tourist Guide would dependably be reliable.

Properly dressed well mannered, cool and calm and well refined. His/her devotion and lead ought to guarantee that the picture of the calling or that of the nation is never discolored. The Tourist Guide might constantly be solid with the endowed obligations.

了解国家的最新发展，并及时了解最新发展。他或她将理解并传播其生活方式和传统的积极方面，并熟悉与当地传统、习惯和习俗相关的问题，以确保游客和当地人相互尊重。

导游必须值得信赖。

穿着得体、举止得体、冷静沉着、举止得体。导游应尽职尽责，确保其职业或国家形象不被玷污。导游应始终履行所赋予的义务。

Be of commendable lead, in managing tourists, local authorities and with people from tourism trade, like: the Government departments' personnel (for e.g. Police, Archeological Survey of India, Tourism Development corporations, Railways, Airlines, Roadways, Customs, Excise, Central Industrial Security Force (CISF), Airport Authority of India, Museum, Archeological Survey of India and Narcotics etc.) and host population.

The Tourist Guide might forgo unscrupulous or prejudicial lead.

在与游客、地方当局和旅游业人士打交道时，应具有良好的领导能力，这些人士包括：政府部门人员（例如警察、印度考古调查局、旅游开发公司、铁路、航空公司、公路、海关、消费税、中央工业安全部队（CISF）、印度机场管理局、博物馆、印度考古调查局和禁毒部门等）和当地居民。

导游不得采取不道德或有偏见的指导。

8.9 Code of Guiding Practice for Licensed/ Authorized Tourist Guides

It is of most extreme significance that the authorized tour guide should hold fast to Code of Guiding practice to give a confirmation of the abnormal state of polished methodology and an esteem included administration offered by an individual manual for his or her customers. All the tourists guides issued with a license by Tourism Promotion Board/ government of India/ state government/ government should live with the code of morals and in the event that anybody is found disregarding these might confront the cancelation of his or her license to hone as a tour guide.

The guide License is not transferable.

Any encroachment of this control would make him/her subject to disciplinary action and withdrawal of the guide allow yielded to him/her.

In the event that there ought to emerge an event of setback or damage to the guide allow the guide would quickly light up the work environment of concerned Tourism expert and the nearest Police Station to that place. The Guide would need to apply over again for the duplicate copy allow on the lodge of First Information Report (FIR) and clarification that the guide license has been lost. The guide would be responsible for the shielded guardianship of the guide License.

8.9 持牌/授权导游的导游行为准则

最重要的是，授权导游应遵守导游行为准则，以确保其个人导游为其客户提供的优质方法和有价值的服务。所有获得旅游促进委员会/印度政府/州政府/政府颁发的导游执照的导游都应遵守道德规范，如果发现有人违反这些规范，可能会面临取消其导游执照的处罚。

导游执照不可转让。

任何违反此规定的行为都将受到纪律处分，并吊销其导游执照。

如果出现导游执照受损或损坏的情况，导游将立即通知相关旅游专家的办公室和离该地点最近的警察局。导游必须重新申请执照副本，并向第一手报告 (FIR) 并说明导游执照已丢失。导游将负责导游执照的保密。

The guide would not ask for tips from tourists/ sightseers.

The approved guide would dress in a satisfactory way or sharp looking to keep up the honorability and regard of the calling to which he/she has a place and of the country.

The guide would not battle business of any kind in light of a legitimate concern for the business house, tourism and Travel Company, hoteliers, guest houses, retailers, tourism transport authority and so forth, nor he/she would recognize cash related any commission from them or appreciate some different corrupt practices.

The guide would not go into whatever different business game-plans with any of the establishments either by strategy for association or on commission premise.

Aides observed to be soliciting for shopping foundations like shops offering painstaking work and so on, would be at risk for cancellation of their license.

A tour guide must dress properly and attend all courses for enhancement of his/her knowledge (as instructed by the concerned authority). He should not campaign any kind of business while tour guiding. He should not over commit. He should behave properly and decent manner with the tourists (client).

A tour guide must be aware of ritual, past practices, festivals etc. He must be sensible and aware about ecology. He must encourage tourist to save it.

He must know the Indian values and ethics and welcome the guest warmly. He must convey credit to the country. He must also acknowledge the arrangement made by the travel agent. He must abide by the rules and conditions framed by the travel

agency, for whom he is working.

导游不得向游客/观光客索要小费。经批准的导游应穿着得体或外表光鲜，以维护其所属职业和国家的尊严和尊重。导游不得以合法利益为由与商业机构、旅游和旅行社、酒店经营者、宾馆、零售商、旅游交通当局等进行任何形式的业务竞争，也不得接受任何佣金或参与其他腐败行为。

导游不得与任何机构进行任何其他商业交易，无论是以合作为目的还是以佣金为目的。

如果发现导游为购物机构招揽顾客，如提供劳务的商店等，将面临吊销执照的风险。

导游必须穿着得体，并参加所有课程以提高其知识（按照指示）导游必须遵守有关当局的规定。导游在导游期间不得进行任何形式的商业活动。导游不应过度承诺。导游应与游客（客户）举止得体。

导游必须了解礼仪、过去的做法、节日等。导游必须明智并了解生态环境。导游必须鼓励游客保护生态环境。

导游必须了解印度的价值观和道德观，热情欢迎客人。导游必须向国家表示敬意。导游还必须承认旅行社的安排。导游必须遵守其所服务的旅行社制定的规则和条件。

8.10 Code of conduct and guiding ethics

Tour guides must know the code of conduct as well as ethics in tour guiding.

Be prohibited from selling or buying any goods

A tour guide should not be allowed for any commercial activity with any tourist to make any benefit from a tourist while he is on the tour. A tour guide should not make money out of any commercial activity.

Be aware of critical situations and act responsibly

A tour guide must act responsibly and protect biological, botanical treasure of the country. A Tour Guide might attempt to dependably be aware of conceivably unsafe circumstances and to familiarize himself or herself with any security dangers natural to any range in India preceding a visit or visit direct action here, which should incorporate organic security dangers. A Tour Guide should act mindfully consistently, might dependably have respect for the individual wellbeing of the tourist under his or her direction, which might incorporate, yet not be constrained to, not being affected by liquor or other denied substances.

Respect the culture, historical and environmental heritage

A tour guide must study Indian culture, history and environment and portray its' legacy in his commentary to the tourists rightly. He must explain the value of Indian heritage.

8.10 行为准则和导游道德

导游必须了解导游行为准则和道德观。

禁止出售或购买任何商品

导游在旅游期间不得与任何游客进行任何商业活动，以从游客那里获得任何利益。导游不得从任何商业活动中赚钱。

了解紧急情况并采取负责任的行动

导游必须采取负责任的行动，保护该国的生物、植物宝藏。导游应始终注意可能存在的危险情况，并在游览或直接前往印度之前熟悉印度任何地区可能存在的任何安全风险，其中应包括自然安全风险。导游应始终谨慎行事，始终尊重其指导下的游客的个人健康，这可能包括但不限于不喝酒或其他违禁物质。

尊重文化、历史和环境遗产

导游必须研究印度文化、历史和环境，并在向游客的解说中正确描述其遗产。他必须解释印度遗产的价值。

Cancelling a tour

If a Tour Guide mulls over wiping out a visit, a warning of this cancellation must be made in advance either to the Tour operator.

Follow that itinerary and act in accordingly

After collecting itinerary from the travel agent or Travel Company, your guide must plan it. If he is guiding first time, he must rehearse it before organizing real time tour.

He must think or imagine probable question tourists may ask him.

Cultivate a positive relationship

Tour guides' job is dependent on his relationship with travel agent, tourists, monument staff, tourist transport staff, hotelier, event group people etc. He must be able to cultivate and nurture a positive relationship with all.

取消旅游

如果导游考虑取消旅游，必须提前向旅行社发出取消通知。

遵循行程并采取相应行动

从旅行社或旅游公司获得行程后，您的导游必须进行规划。如果他是第一次带团，他必须在组织实际旅游之前进行排练。

他必须思考或想象游客可能会问他的问题。

培养积极的关系

导游的工作取决于他与旅行社、游客、纪念碑工作人员、旅游交通工作人员、酒店经营者、活动团体人员等的关系。他必须能够与所有人培养和培养积极的关系。

No discriminate

A tour guide must see all group members with equal importance. He should not give weight-age to any specific person. It may create a problem or it may be the cause of resentment in the long term.

Regular updating of knowledge

A Tour Guide might be required by the authority to go to instructional classes, workshops or other enlightening exercises designed by the authority, or any individual or organization following up on directions from the authority, with the end goal

of proceeded with professional improvement in the tourism sector.

He must refer good library, information resources, and websites of the ministry of Tourism, incredible India, Archeological survey of India, UNESCO etc. He must see reputed magazine and news papers regularly and must watch informative news channels (related to travel, geography, history and other relevant areas etc.).

不歧视

导游必须平等对待所有团体成员。他不应该给任何特定的人赋予权重。这可能会造成问题，也可能是长期怨恨的原因。

定期更新知识

当局可能会要求导游参加当局或任何个人或组织设计的教学课程、研讨会或其他启发性练习，以跟进当局的指示，最终目标是继续在旅游部门进行专业改进。

他必须参考好的图书馆、信息资源以及旅游部、不可思议的印度、印度考古调查局、联合国教科文组织等网站。他必须定期阅读知名杂志和报纸，并且必须观看信息丰富的新闻频道（与旅游、地理、历史和其他相关领域等相关）。

8.11 Do's and Don'ts for a tour guide

There are certain dos and don'ts for a tour guide. A code of conduct is more serious in nature. Dos and don'ts work as an advisory for a tour guide.

Do not accept tips from the tourist.

Do not quarrel with a group member or locals.

Always ask your driver to take lunch first. He has to be ready to drive once all the group members are finished with their lunch.

Do not use sarcastic language for group members and staff even in a language they do not know, understand or speak.

Do not talk loudly, or roughly.

Do not try tantra, mantra, and black magic on tour group members.

Do not force group members to make purchases from unauthorized, unreliable dealers.

Do not over-commit.

Do not stare at any individual in the group unnecessarily.

Clearly announce the time of stoppage on the way for using washrooms and the loo.

Clearly announce your name (simple form, which they could remember), meaning of signs on the way, distance you will travel, time taken in the journey and other information.

Keep your flag or placard (if prescribed by the company) ready.

Do not jump from a running coach, bus or train.

Do not take a chance if there is an adverse weather forecast or a warning of land slide, avalanche, flood, tsunami etc.

Do not permit tourists to take the driver's seat.

Inform the driver of the coach that honking is not allowed in many countries.

8.11 导游的注意事项

导游有一些注意事项。行为准则的性质更为严肃。注意事项对导游来说是一种建议。

不要接受游客的小费。

不要与团员或当地人争吵。

一定要让你的司机先吃午饭。所有团员吃完午饭后，他必须准备好开车。

不要对团员和工作人员使用讽刺性的语言，即使是他们不懂、听不懂或不会的语言。

不要大声说话，也不要粗鲁。

不要对旅游团成员施行密宗、咒语和黑魔法。

不要强迫团员从未经授权、不可靠的经销商处购买商品。

不要过度承诺。

不要不必要地盯着团里的任何人。

在途中清楚地宣布使用洗手间和厕所的停车时间。

清楚地宣布你的名字（简单形式，他们可以记住）、路上标志的含义、你要行驶的距离、旅途中花费的时间和其他信息。

准备好你的旗帜或标语牌（如果公司规定的话）。

不要从行驶中的客车、公共汽车或火车上跳下来。

如果有恶劣的天气预报或山体滑坡、雪崩、洪水、海啸等警告，不要冒险。

不要让游客坐在驾驶座上。

告诉客车司机，在许多国家不允许鸣喇叭。

8.12 Why code of conduct and Do's and Do not are required?

There are certain norms and advisories in each profession that make our jobs more structured, systematic and smooth. If we follow these guidelines mentioned above, our job will become more secure and there will be fewer chances of error. Few advisories are issued by the government from time to time for the benefit of the guides and the tourists.

It is the responsibility of a tour guide to keep an eye on these norms and advisories.

8.13 Summary

In this chapter, we have discussed the code of conduct for a tour guide and the dos and don'ts. Code of conduct refers to certain norms or set of rules designed to keep a tour guide's job smooth. Dos and don'ts are more generalized in nature.

(Source: Patashala)

8.12 为什么需要行为准则和应该做的和不应该做的事？

每个专业都有特定的规范和建议规范使我们的工作更加结构化、系统化和顺利。如果我们遵循上述这些准则，我

们的工作将变得更加安全，出错的机会也会减少。政府不时发布一些建议，以造福导游和游客。导游有责任关注这些规范和建议。

8.13 总结

在本章中，我们讨论了导游的行为准则以及应该做的和不应该做的事情。行为准则是指旨在确保导游工作顺利进行的某些规范或规则。应该做的和不应该做的事情在本质上更为普遍。

（来源：Patashala）

Lesson 12

All-encompassing, useful, practical and skill-enhancing information for Tour Guides

为导游提供全面、有用、实用且能提高技能的信息

To be an exceptional tour guide, it's essential to combine professionalism, knowledge, and soft skills. 要成为一名出色的导游，必须将专业素养、知识和软技能结合起来。

Here's a comprehensive guide to mastering the craft:

以下是掌握这门手艺的综合指南：

1. Essential Knowledge for Tour Guides

1. 导游必备知识

1.1 Historical and Cultural Expertise

1.1 历史和文化专业知识

Master the history, culture, and significance of the destinations you guide.

掌握您指导的目的地的历史、文化和意义。

Learn about local customs, festivals, folklore, and traditions to share rich narratives.

了解当地的习俗、节日、民间传说和传统，以分享丰富的故事。

Stay updated with new archaeological discoveries or historical interpretations.

随时了解新的考古发现或历史解释。

1.2 Geography and Logistics

1.2 地理和物流

Understand the geography of the area, including landmarks, hidden gems, and shortcuts.

了解该地区的地理环境，包括地标、隐藏的宝石和捷径。

Know transport options, best travel routes, and alternative plans for weather disruptions.

了解交通选择、最佳旅行路线和天气干扰的替代计划。

1.3 Practical Information

1.3 实用信息

Learn about local facilities: hospitals, ATMs, restrooms, and food options.

了解当地设施：医院、自动取款机、洗手间和食物选择。

Familiarize yourself with visa regulations, currency exchanges, and local laws.

熟悉签证规定、货币兑换和当地法律。

2. Practical Skills for Tour Guides

2. 导游实用技能

2.1 Communication Skills

2.1 沟通技巧

Speak clearly and confidently, tailoring your tone to the audience's language proficiency.

说话清晰自信，根据观众的语言能力调整语气。

Use storytelling to make facts engaging and memorable.

用讲故事的方式让事实引人入胜、令人难忘。

Incorporate humor, but ensure it's culturally appropriate.

融入幽默，但要确保其文化适宜。

2.2 Multilingual Proficiency

2.2 多语言能力

Learn basic phrases in the tourists' native languages to build rapport.

学习游客母语的基本短语以建立融洽关系。

Be fluent in the primary language of your audience and local languages where possible.

尽可能流利地使用观众的主要语言和当地语言。

2.3 Time Management

2.3 时间管理

Stick to the schedule while allowing flexibility for unique moments.

严格遵守时间表，同时为特殊时刻留出灵活性。

Ensure smooth transitions between activities to maximize enjoyment.

确保活动之间的平稳过渡，以最大限度地提高乐趣。

2.4 Group Management

2.4 团队管理

Be attentive to the group's dynamics, ensuring everyone feels included.

注意团队的动态，确保每个人都感到被包容。

Manage group safety and minimize disruptions with clear guidelines.

管理团队安全，并通过明确的指导方针尽量减少干扰。

3. Personality Traits for Success

3. 成功的个性特征

3.1 Enthusiasm and Passion

3.1 热情和激情

Your energy sets the tone for the tour—stay enthusiastic and approachable.

您的能量为旅游定下了基调——保持热情和平易近人。

3.2 Empathy and Patience

3.2 同理心和耐心

Understand tourists' needs, especially if they're traveling far from home.

了解游客的需求，尤其是当他们远离家乡时。

Remain calm when dealing with complaints, disruptions, or difficult tourists.

处理投诉、干扰或难缠的游客时保持冷静。

3.3 Adaptability

3.3 适应性

Be prepared to adjust plans when unexpected situations arise.

准备在出现意外情况时调整计划。

Handle cultural differences and unique group expectations gracefully.

优雅地处理文化差异和独特的群体期望。

4. Advanced Techniques and Tips

4. 高级技巧和提示

4.1 Storytelling Techniques

4.1 讲故事技巧

Use the Vivid Description Method: Paint a picture with words to make historical events come alive.

使用生动描述法：用文字描绘一幅图画，让历史事件栩栩如生。

Create Emotional Connections: Link stories to emotions tourists can relate to, like love, courage, or curiosity.

建立情感联系：将故事与游客可以产生共鸣的情感联系起来，如爱、勇气或好奇心。

Interactive Storytelling: Involve tourists by asking questions or role-playing key events.

互动式讲故事：通过提问或角色扮演关键事件来吸引游客。

4.2 Enhancing the Experience

4.2 增强体验

Offer unique insights or "insider knowledge" not available online.

提供独特的见解或网上没有的“内幕知识”。

Point out photo-worthy spots and suggest creative angles.

指出值得拍照的景点并提出创意角度。

Use props, maps, or multimedia tools to visually enhance your storytelling.

使用道具、地图或多媒体工具在视觉上增强您的讲故事能力。

4.3 Personalization

4.3 个性化

Research the group's preferences before the tour (e.g., family-friendly, adventurous, spiritual).

在游览前研究团队的偏好（例如，适合家庭、冒险、精神）。

Tailor recommendations for food, shopping, or activities based on their interests.

根据他们的兴趣定制食物、购物或活动的建议。

5. Handling Challenges Effectively

5. 有效应对挑战

5.1 Questions

5.1 问题

Prepare for common questions about history, culture, and logistics.

准备关于历史、文化和后勤的常见问题。

Stay calm if you don't know an answer; offer to find out and follow up.

如果您不知道答案，请保持冷静；主动寻找答案并跟进。

5.2 Emergencies

5.2 紧急情况

Familiarize yourself with first aid procedures.

熟悉急救程序。

Have a contingency plan for lost tourists, weather issues, or accidents.

为迷路的游客、天气问题或事故制定应急计划。

5.3 Difficult Tourists

5.3 难缠的游客

Listen empathetically to their complaints and address issues diplomatically.

用同理心倾听他们的抱怨，并以外交方式解决问题。

Manage disruptive behavior without alienating the individual or the group.

在不疏远个人或团体的情况下管理破坏性行为。

6. Technology for Tour Guides

6. 导游技术

6.1 Digital Tools

6.1 数字工具

Use GPS apps (Google Maps, Waze) for efficient navigation.

使用 GPS 应用程序（Google 地图、Waze）进行高效导航。

Leverage translation apps like Google Translate for language barriers.

利用 Google 翻译等翻译应用程序解决语言障碍。

Employ presentation tools (e.g., PowerPoint, videos) for larger groups.

对于较大的团体，使用演示工具（例如 PowerPoint、视频）。

6.2 Social Media

6.2 社交媒体

Share real-time updates or photos with tourists during the tour.
在游览期间与游客分享实时更新或照片。

Encourage tourists to tag your services for organic marketing.
鼓励游客标记您的服务以进行有机营销。

7. Professional Development

7. 专业发展

7.1 Continuous Learning

7.1 持续学习

Attend workshops or online courses to refine storytelling, language, or cultural skills.
参加研讨会或在线课程，以提高讲故事、语言或文化技能。

Stay updated with industry trends and local news.
随时了解行业趋势和当地新闻。

7.2 Networking

7.2 网络

Build relationships with local businesses, hotels, and travel agencies.
与当地企业、酒店和旅行社建立关系。

Join professional tour guide associations for support and growth opportunities.
加入专业导游协会，获得支持和成长机会。

7.3 Feedback and Improvement

7.3 反馈和改进

Collect feedback after tours to identify strengths and areas for improvement.
收集游览后的反馈，以确定优势和需要改进的地方。

Use constructive criticism to enhance your skills and service quality.
使用建设性的批评来提高您的技能和服务质量。

8. Self-Care and Sustainability

8. 自我照顾和可持续性

8.1 Physical Preparation

8.1 身体准备

Stay fit for walking long distances or managing physically demanding tours.
保持健康，以适应长途步行或应对体力要求高的旅行。

Pack essentials: water, snacks, sunscreen, and comfortable clothing/shoes.
打包必需品：水、零食、防晒霜和舒适的衣服/鞋子。

8.2 Mental Well-Being

8.2 心理健康

Practice stress management techniques like mindfulness or deep breathing.
练习正念或深呼吸等压力管理技巧。

Maintain a work-life balance to avoid burnout.
保持工作与生活的平衡，避免倦怠。

By mastering these elements, tour guides can create exceptional experiences, build strong reputations, and enjoy long-lasting success in their careers.

通过掌握这些要素，导游可以创造非凡的体验，树立良好的声誉，并在职业生涯中享受持久的成功。

Lesson 13
Presenting Yourself as a Guide
以导游的身份介绍自己

A tour guide's introduction sets the tone for the entire tour. A professional and engaging presentation not only builds rapport with tourists but also establishes credibility and trust. Here's a guide to effectively present yourself:

导游的介绍为整个旅游奠定了基调。专业而引人入胜的介绍不仅可以与游客建立融洽的关系，还可以建立信誉和信任。以下是有效介绍自己的指南：

1. Preparation Before the Tour

1.1 Dress Professionally

Wear comfortable, weather-appropriate clothing that reflects professionalism.

Include subtle cultural elements (e.g., a scarf or pin with regional significance) to create a connection.

Use a name badge for easy identification.

1.1 着装专业

穿着舒适、适合天气的衣服，体现专业精神。

加入微妙的文化元素（例如具有区域意义的围巾或别针）以建立联系。

使用姓名徽章以便于识别。

1.2 Be Well-Groomed

Ensure neat grooming (clean hair, nails, etc.), as this reflects professionalism.

Carry essentials like a notepad, itinerary, maps, or visual aids to demonstrate preparedness.

1.2 打扮得体

确保整洁（干净的头发、指甲等），因为这体现了专业精神。

携带记事本、行程、地图或视觉辅助工具等必需品，以表明准备就绪。

1.3 Know Your Audience

Research the group's demographics, interests, and potential concerns to tailor your approach.

Be aware of their language preferences and cultural sensitivities.

1.3 了解您的受众

研究该群体的人口统计、兴趣和潜在问题，以量身定制您的方法。

注意他们的语言偏好和文化敏感性。

2. Structure of Your Introduction

2.1 Start with a Warm Greeting

Use a welcoming tone and greet tourists in their native language, if possible (e.g., Mandarin for Chinese tourists). Example:

“Nǐ hǎo! Huānyíng dào Yìndù! (Hello! Welcome to India!)”

Follow up in English for inclusivity, e.g.:

“Good morning, everyone! I'm thrilled to be your guide today.”

2.1 以热情的问候开始

尽可能使用欢迎的语气并用游客的母语问候他们（例如，对中国游客使用普通话）。示例：

“你好！欢迎来到印度！”

为了包容性，请用英语跟进，例如：

“大家早上好！我很高兴今天能成为你们的导游。”

2.2 Introduce Yourself

Share your name, credentials, and experience in a friendly and confident manner:

“My name is [Your Name], and I've been a tour guide for [X] years. I specialize in guiding visitors from [country/region] and love sharing India's rich culture and history with travelers like you.”

2.2 自我介绍

以友好而自信的方式分享您的姓名、资历和经验：

“我叫[您的姓名]，我当导游已有[X]年了。我专门为来自[国家/地区]的游客提供导游服务，并喜欢与您这样的旅行者分享印度丰富的文化和历史。”

2.3 Explain Your Role

Clearly outline your responsibilities and how you'll make the tour enjoyable:

“My job is to ensure you have a fun, informative, and comfortable experience today. I'll share stories about the places we visit, answer your questions, and guide you through our exciting itinerary.”

2.3 解释您的角色

清楚地概述您的职责以及您将如何让旅行变得愉快：

“我的工作确保您今天拥有有趣、信息丰富且舒适的体验。我会分享我们参观过的地方的故事，回答您的问题，并指导您完成我们令人兴奋的行程。”

2.4 Highlight the Itinerary

Provide a brief overview of what to expect:

“Today, we’ll be exploring [site name], enjoying a traditional meal, and visiting the local market. We’ll finish by [end time].”

2.4 突出行程

简要概述预期内容：

“今天，我们将探索 [景点名称]，享用传统美食，并参观当地市场。我们将在 [结束时间] 前结束。”

2.5 Set Expectations and Guidelines

Share practical details about the tour, such as:

Meeting points: “If we get separated, let’s meet here by the main entrance.”

Timings: “Please be back on the bus by [time], as we need to stay on schedule.”

Safety: “Always stay with the group, and let me know if you need any assistance.”

2.5 设定期望和指导方针

分享有关旅行的实际细节，例如：

集合地点：“如果我们走散了，让我们在正门附近见面。”

时间安排：“请在 [时间] 前回到巴士上，因为我们需要准时到达。”

安全：“始终与团队待在一起，如果您需要任何帮助，请告诉我。”

3. Engaging with the Group

3.1 Break the Ice

Use a light-hearted comment or question to create a relaxed atmosphere:

“How many of you are visiting India for the first time? Great! You’re in for an unforgettable journey!”

3.1 打破僵局

使用轻松的评论或问题来营造轻松的氛围：

“你们中有多少人第一次访问印度？太好了！你们将迎来一次难忘的旅程！”

3.2 Be Attentive and Approachable

Make eye contact and smile to build trust.

Use body language to convey confidence and enthusiasm.

3.2 细心且平易近人

通过眼神交流和微笑来建立信任。

使用肢体语言传达自信和热情。

3.3 Establish Communication Protocols

Encourage questions: “Feel free to ask questions anytime. I’m here to make this experience as informative as possible!”

Explain how to address concerns: “If there’s anything you need, just let me know privately or during breaks.”

3.3 建立沟通协议

鼓励提问：“随时提问。我在这里是为了让您获得尽可能丰富的体验！”

解释如何解决问题：“如果您有任何需要，请私下或在休息期间告诉我。”

4. Adapt Based on the Audience

4.1 For International Tourists

Use simple, clear language and avoid jargon.

Incorporate culturally relevant examples to build connections.

For Chinese tourists: Highlight Indian-Chinese historical ties, such as Buddhism spreading from India to China.

4.1 对于国际游客

使用简单、清晰的语言，避免使用行话。

结合文化相关的例子来建立联系。

对于中国游客：强调印度和中国的历史联系，例如佛教从印度传播到中国。

4.2 For Families or Elderly Groups

Speak slower and include anecdotes or light humor to keep everyone engaged.

Be mindful of accessibility needs or additional breaks.

4.2 对于家庭或老年人群体

说话要慢一些，并加入一些趣闻轶事或轻松的幽默，以保持每个人的参与度。

注意无障碍需求或额外的休息时间。

5. Example Introduction Script

Step-by-Step Example

Greeting:

“Nǐ hǎo! Wǒ hěn gāoxìng jièshào wǒ zìjǐ. (Hello! I’m delighted to introduce myself.)”

“Good morning! My name is [Your Name], and I’m your guide today. It’s my pleasure to welcome you to India, a land of incredible diversity and history.”

问候语：

“你好！我很高兴能自我介绍一下。（你好！我很高兴能自我介绍一下。）”

“早上好！我叫 [你的名字]，今天我是你的导游。我很高兴欢迎你来到印度，一个拥有令人难以置信的多样性和历史的国家。”

About You:

“I’ve been a guide for over [X years] and have had the honor of guiding visitors from [mention their country, e.g., China]. I love sharing my country’s culture, traditions, and hidden gems with travelers like you.”

关于你：

“我做导游已经超过 [X 年] 了，很荣幸能为来自 [提及他们的国家，例如中国] 的游客提供导游服务。我喜欢和像你这样的旅行者分享我国家的文化、传统和隐藏的宝石。”

Role and Expectations:

“My role is to ensure you have a memorable, comfortable, and insightful experience. Feel free to ask questions, share your thoughts, or take as many photos as you like!”

角色和期望：

“我的职责是确保您拥有难忘、舒适和有见地的体验。请随意提问、分享您的想法或拍摄任意多的照片！”

Itinerary:

“Today, we’ll visit [site name], where I’ll tell you about its fascinating history and legends. We’ll also have time to enjoy local cuisine and shop for some souvenirs.”

行程：

“今天，我们将参观 [地点名称]，我将向您介绍其迷人的历史和传说。我们还将有时间品尝当地美食并购买一些纪念品。”

Guidelines:

“For everyone’s safety, please stay with the group and follow the schedule. If you need anything, I’ll be right here to help.”

指导方针：

“为了大家的安全，请与团队待在一起并遵守时间表。如果您有任何需要，我会立即提供帮助。”

Engagement:

“Before we begin, let’s break the ice! What’s the one thing you’re most excited about seeing today? [Pause for responses.] That’s fantastic—let’s make it happen!”

参与：

“在开始之前，让我们打破僵局！今天您最兴奋的事情是什么？[暂停以听取回应。] 太棒了——让我们实现它！”

6. Tips for a Lasting Impression

Use Humor: A little humor can make you relatable and approachable.

Personalize the Tour: Reference the group’s interests to create a unique experience.

Stay Positive: Even if there are challenges, maintain a cheerful and optimistic attitude.

6. 留下持久印象的技巧

使用幽默：一点幽默可以让你变得平易近人。

个性化旅游：参考团队的兴趣来创造独特的体验。

保持积极：即使有挑战，也要保持开朗乐观的态度。

By presenting yourself with confidence, warmth, and professionalism, you can make a strong first impression and set the stage for a successful and memorable tour.

通过展现自信、热情和专业，您可以给人留下深刻的第一印象，为成功和难忘的旅行奠定基础。

Lesson 14

Tourist – the customer

游客——顾客

Tourists are the heart of the travel industry, and as customers, they expect not just services but memorable and enriching experiences.

游客是旅游业的核心，作为客户，他们不仅期望获得服务，还期望获得难忘而丰富的体验。

Understanding their characteristics, needs, and expectations is key for a successful and satisfying tour.

了解他们的特点、需求和期望是成功和令人满意的旅行的关键。

Below is a detailed breakdown of the tourist as a customer:

以下是游客作为客户的详细分类：

1. Types of Tourists

Tourists can vary widely based on their interests, preferences, and motivations for travel. Recognizing these types helps customize your approach:

游客可以根据他们的兴趣、偏好和旅行动机而有很大差异。识别这些类型有助于定制您的方法：

1.1 Cultural Tourists

Seek deep insights into history, art, traditions, and local life.

深入了解历史、艺术、传统和当地生活。

Appreciate detailed storytelling and visits to historical sites, museums, and cultural landmarks.

欣赏详细的故事讲述和参观历史遗迹、博物馆和文化地标。

1.2 Adventure Tourists

Prefer adrenaline-filled activities like trekking, rafting, or wildlife safaris.

喜欢充满刺激的活动，如徒步旅行、漂流或野生动物狩猎。

Value guides who are knowledgeable about safety and adventure techniques.

重视了解安全和冒险技巧的导游。

1.3 Leisure Tourists

Travel to relax and unwind, often choosing resorts, beaches, or spas.

旅行是为了放松身心，经常选择度假村、海滩或水疗中心。

Look for comfort, convenience, and hassle-free experiences.

寻找舒适、方便和无忧的体验。

1.4 Religious Tourists

Visit destinations for spiritual or religious purposes, such as temples or pilgrimage sites.

出于精神或宗教目的访问目的地，例如寺庙或朝圣地。

Expect respectful handling of rituals, traditions, and cultural sensitivity.

期望尊重仪式、传统和文化敏感性。

1.5 Business Tourists

Combine work with leisure, often needing smooth logistics and tailored recommendations for dining and local experiences during free time.

将工作与休闲相结合，通常需要顺畅的后勤服务和在空闲时间针对餐饮和当地体验的量身定制的建议。

2. Characteristics of Tourists as Customers

2.1 Diverse Backgrounds

Tourists come from different cultures, languages, and socioeconomic backgrounds, influencing their expectations and behavior.

游客来自不同的文化、语言和社会经济背景，影响他们的期望和行为。

2.2 Information Seekers

Tourists often rely on guides for accurate and interesting information about the destination.

游客通常依靠导游获取有关目的地的准确而有趣的信息。

They appreciate insights that are not easily found online or in guidebooks.

他们欣赏在线或旅游指南中不容易找到的见解。

2.3 Time-Conscious

Many tourists have packed itineraries and value guides who respect time and manage schedules effectively.

许多游客的行程安排很紧凑，他们看重尊重时间并有效管理日程安排的导游。

2.4 Value-Oriented

Tourists seek value for their money, including enriching experiences, personalized services, and good hospitality.

游客寻求物有所值，包括丰富的体验、个性化的服务和良好的款待。

3. Understanding Tourist Needs

To serve tourists effectively, guides must identify and address their needs:

为了有效地服务游客，导游必须识别并满足他们的需求：

3.1 Basic Needs

Safety: Tourists expect secure environments, clear guidance on risks, and emergency preparedness.

安全：游客期望安全的环境、明确的风险指导和应急准备。

Comfort: Access to clean restrooms, proper transportation, and meal options tailored to dietary preferences.

舒适：可以使用干净的卫生间、适当的交通和根据饮食偏好量身定制的餐食选择。

3.2 Social Needs

Group Engagement: Most tourists appreciate activities that foster interaction and group bonding.

团体参与：大多数游客喜欢促进互动和团体凝聚力的活动。

Personal Attention: They value when guides acknowledge their presence, answer questions, and show genuine interest in their well-being.

个人关注：他们重视导游承认他们的存在、回答问题并表现出对他们健康的真正关心。

3.3 Experiential Needs

Memorable Experiences: Tourists seek unique, authentic encounters that they can share with friends or family.

难忘的体验：游客寻求可以与朋友或家人分享的独特、真实的体验。

Storytelling: They love interesting anecdotes and narratives that add depth to the sites they visit.

讲故事：他们喜欢有趣的轶事和叙事，这些故事可以为他们参观的景点增添深度。

4. Expectations from Tour Guides

4.1 Professionalism

Tourists expect punctuality, organization, and expertise.

游客期望准时、有组织和专业。

A guide's ability to handle unexpected situations, such as changes in itinerary, reflects professionalism.

导游处理意外情况（例如行程变更）的能力反映了专业性。

4.2 Communication

Clear, concise, and engaging explanations are essential.

清晰、简洁、引人入胜的讲解至关重要。

Tourists appreciate guides who speak their language or make an effort to bridge language gaps.

游客们会欣赏那些会说他们语言或努力弥补语言差距的导游。

4.3 Personalized Approach

Tailoring recommendations based on individual preferences enhances customer satisfaction.

根据个人喜好定制建议可提高客户满意度。

For instance, suggesting vegetarian-friendly restaurants for a group with dietary restrictions.

例如，为有饮食限制的团体推荐素食餐厅。

5. Building a Connection with Tourists

5.1 Rapport-Building Techniques

Start with a warm introduction and a brief overview of the day's itinerary.

从热情的介绍和当天行程的简要概述开始。

Use humor and icebreakers to make tourists feel comfortable.

使用幽默和破冰游戏让游客感到舒适。

Show genuine enthusiasm about the destination and the group.

对目的地和团体表现出真正的情。

5.2 Active Listening

Pay attention to tourists' comments, feedback, and concerns.

注意游客的评论、反馈和担忧。

Respond thoughtfully to their questions or suggestions.

认真回答他们的问题或建议。

5.3 Anticipating Needs

Provide useful tips, like suggesting the best times for photography or avoiding long queues.

提供有用的提示，例如建议拍照的最佳时间或避免排长队。

Offer small gestures, such as handing out water or assisting with heavy luggage.

提供一些举动，例如分发水或帮助搬运沉重的行李。

6. Handling Challenges with Tourists

6.1 Managing Expectations

Be transparent about what the tour includes and does not include.

对旅游包含和不包含的内容保持透明。

Clarify limitations, such as time restrictions or weather-related changes.
明确限制，例如时间限制或与天气相关的变化。

6.2 Addressing Complaints

Listen to grievances calmly and resolve issues quickly and effectively.
冷静地倾听不满并迅速有效地解决问题。

Apologize if necessary and explain how the problem will be addressed.
必要时道歉并解释如何解决问题。

6.3 Balancing Group Dynamics

Ensure everyone feels included, especially quieter or less assertive tourists.
确保每个人都感到被包容，尤其是比较安静或不太自信的游客。

Handle difficult or disruptive individuals with tact and diplomacy.
用机智和外交手段处理难缠或捣乱的个人。

7. Turning Tourists into Loyal Customers

7.1 Exceeding Expectations

Go the extra mile by sharing local secrets, taking them to off-the-beaten-path spots, or suggesting personalized souvenirs.
通过分享当地的秘密、带他们去人迹罕至的地方或建议个性化的纪念品，多做一点。

7.2 Encouraging Feedback

Ask for reviews or feedback to improve future tours and build credibility.
征求评论或反馈，以改进未来的旅游并建立信誉。

7.3 Creating Memories

Provide opportunities for tourists to take memorable photos or participate in interactive activities like cooking classes or craft workshops.

为游客提供拍摄难忘照片或参与互动活动的机会，例如烹饪课或手工艺工作坊。

Tourists are more than customers—they are partners in creating a shared experience.
游客不仅仅是顾客，他们还是创造共同体验的合作伙伴。

By understanding their needs, exceeding their expectations, and building lasting connections, guides can turn ordinary tours into extraordinary journeys.

通过了解他们的需求、超越他们的期望并建立持久的联系，导游可以将普通的旅行变成非凡的旅程。

Lesson 15

Mechanics of tour guiding for Chinese people **为中国人的导游机制**

Tour Guiding for Chinese Tourists

中国人的导游机制

Tour guiding for Chinese tourists requires specific approaches due to cultural nuances, preferences, and communication styles. Understanding these mechanics can significantly improve the effectiveness of the tour guide in delivering an exceptional experience. Below are the key components and best practices for guiding Chinese tourists:

由于文化差异、偏好和沟通方式的不同，中国游客的导游需要采用特定的方法。了解这些机制可以显著提高导游在提供非凡体验方面的效率。以下是导游中国游客的关键要素和最佳实践：

1. Understanding Chinese Tourists' Expectations

1. 了解中国游客的期望

1.1 Importance of Group Dynamics

1.1 团体动态的重要性

Group Travel Preference: Chinese tourists tend to prefer traveling in groups. Solo travel or small groups are less common compared to large, organized tours. A guide needs to manage large groups efficiently, ensuring that each member is engaged.
团体旅游偏好： 中国游客倾向于团体旅行。与大型有组织的旅游相比，单独旅行或小团体旅行不太常见。导游需要有效地管理大团体，确保每个成员都参与其中。

Hierarchy in Groups: Chinese culture places importance on respect for seniority. Pay special attention to elder tourists, addressing them respectfully, and ensuring their needs are prioritized.

团体中的等级制度： 中国文化重视对长辈的尊重。要特别关注年长的游客，尊重他们，并确保他们的需求得到优

先考虑。

Punctuality: Chinese tourists highly value punctuality. Being on time is essential for maintaining a positive reputation and avoiding disappointment. Always stick to the schedule or communicate delays early to manage expectations.

准时: 中国游客非常重视准时。准时对于保持良好的声誉和避免失望至关重要。始终遵守时间表或提前告知延误,以管理期望。

1.2 Preferences for Comfort and Convenience

1.2 舒适和便利偏好

Accommodation: Chinese tourists prefer comfortable, well-maintained hotels with familiar amenities. They may prioritize cleanliness and convenience over luxurious options.

住宿: 中国游客更喜欢舒适、维护良好且设施熟悉的酒店。他们可能优先考虑清洁和便利,而不是豪华的选择。

Food Preferences: As many Chinese tourists are accustomed to Chinese food, they might struggle with spicy or unfamiliar Indian cuisine. Offer a mix of Chinese and Indian food options when possible. Additionally, be mindful of dietary restrictions such as vegetarian preferences or halal food.

饮食偏好: 由于许多中国游客习惯了中国菜,他们可能会难以适应辛辣或不熟悉的印度菜。尽可能提供中餐和印度菜的混合选择。此外,还要注意饮食限制,如素食或清真食品。

Shopping: Chinese tourists love to shop for souvenirs, particularly items that represent the local culture. They often expect guidance on what to buy, where to buy it, and how to get the best deal.

购物: 中国游客喜欢购买纪念品,尤其是代表当地文化的物品。他们经常希望得到关于买什么、在哪里买以及如何获得最优惠价格的指导。

1.3 Information and Interaction

1.3 信息和互动

Clear, Structured Information: Chinese tourists appreciate clear, well-organized information. Avoid complex, long-winded explanations and stick to the most important points. Providing easily digestible content will resonate more.

清晰、结构化的信息: 中国游客喜欢清晰、组织良好的信息。避免复杂、冗长的解释,坚持最重要的要点。提供易于理解的内容会引起更多共鸣。

Translation Support: While many Chinese tourists understand basic English, providing tour information in Mandarin or with the help of a translation tool is highly beneficial.

翻译支持: 虽然许多中国游客都懂基本的英语,但用普通话或借助翻译工具提供旅游信息非常有益。

Respectful and Courteous: Chinese tourists often expect a high level of politeness and formality. A formal tone, using titles like “Mr.” or “Mrs.” for addressing elders, is expected, especially in initial interactions.

尊重有礼: 中国游客通常期望得到高度的礼貌和正式礼节。尤其是在初次互动时,应使用正式语气,使用“先生”或“夫人”等头衔来称呼长辈。

2. Essential Communication Techniques

2. 基本沟通技巧

2.1 Language and Clarity

2.1 语言和清晰度

Mandarin Chinese Basics: Learning a few basic phrases in Mandarin, such as greetings, directions, and polite expressions, can significantly improve rapport with Chinese tourists.

普通话基础知识: 学习一些普通话的基本短语,如问候、方向和礼貌用语,可以显著改善与中国游客的关系。

Visual Communication: If there are language barriers, use visual aids such as maps, photos, and video content to explain concepts, locations, or historical facts clearly. Chinese tourists often appreciate these tools as they help bridge communication gaps.

视觉交流: 如果存在语言障碍,请使用地图、照片和视频内容等视觉辅助工具来清楚地解释概念、位置或历史事实。中国游客通常很欣赏这些工具,因为它们有助于弥合沟通鸿沟。

Simple English: While some Chinese tourists speak English, use simple and clear language. Avoid idiomatic phrases, jargon, or overly complex explanations. Focus on speaking slowly and clearly.

简单英语: 虽然有些中国游客会说英语,但要使用简单明了的语言。避免使用惯用短语、行话或过于复杂的解释。注重缓慢清晰地说话。

2.2 Non-Verbal Communication

2.2 非语言交流

Body Language: Non-verbal cues are important. Smile, maintain eye contact, and use open body language. Chinese tourists appreciate friendly, approachable guides who communicate warmth through gestures and tone.

肢体语言: 非语言提示很重要。微笑、保持目光接触并使用开放的肢体语言。中国游客喜欢友好、平易近人的导

游，他们通过手势和语气传达温暖。

Respecting Personal Space: While Chinese tourists are often comfortable in groups, they still appreciate personal space. Be aware of this when guiding, especially in crowded environments, to avoid making them feel uncomfortable.

尊重个人空间：虽然中国游客在团体中往往很自在，但他们仍然重视个人空间。在做导游时，尤其是在拥挤的环境中，要注意这一点，避免让游客感到不舒服。

3. Managing Logistics

3. 管理物流

3.1 Itinerary and Time Management

3.1 行程和时间管理

Structured Timetable: Chinese tourists prefer well-planned, structured itineraries. Clear schedules allow them to understand the flow of the day. Distribute printed or digital itineraries so tourists are aware of what to expect.

结构化的时间表：中国游客喜欢精心规划、结构化的行程。明确的时间表让他们了解一天的行程。分发印刷或数字行程，让游客知道会发生什么。

Time Sensitivity: Punctuality is key. Chinese tourists appreciate guides who are on time and avoid delays. Ensure that travel times are factored into the itinerary, and always have a backup plan in case of delays.

时间敏感性：准时是关键。中国游客欣赏准时、避免延误的导游。确保行程中考虑到旅行时间，并始终有备用计划以防延误。

3.2 Efficient Transportation and Travel

3.2 高效的交通和旅行

Comfortable Transportation: When traveling between locations, ensure the vehicles are comfortable and air-conditioned, as Chinese tourists value comfort during travel. Keep the travel times as short as possible.

舒适的交通：在各个地点之间旅行时，确保车辆舒适且有空调，因为中国游客重视旅行时的舒适度。尽可能缩短旅行时间。

Smooth Transitions: Make transitions between attractions seamless. Tourists will appreciate clear communication when moving from one location to another, especially if they need to prepare (e.g., restroom breaks or short stops).

平稳过渡：让景点之间的过渡变得无缝衔接。游客在从一个地方移动到另一个地方时会喜欢清晰的沟通，尤其是当他们需要准备时（例如上厕所或短暂停留）。

3.3 Safety and Convenience

3.3 安全和便利

Emergency Preparedness: Familiarize yourself with emergency contacts, such as the nearest hospitals, police stations, and embassy details. Have a first-aid kit ready, and ensure that everyone knows where the emergency exits are if visiting indoor attractions.

应急准备：熟悉紧急联系人，例如最近的医院、警察局和大使馆的详细信息。准备好急救箱，如果参观室内景点，确保每个人都知道紧急出口在哪里。

Comfort Items: Carry extra water, hand sanitizers, tissues, and wet wipes. These small conveniences make a big difference in ensuring tourists are comfortable, particularly in hot or busy environments.

舒适物品：携带额外的水、洗手液、纸巾和湿巾这些小便利对于确保游客感到舒适大有裨益，尤其是在炎热或繁忙的环境中。

4. Cultural Sensitivity

4. 文化敏感性

4.1 Respect for Traditions

4.1 尊重传统

Understanding Customs: Be aware of key Chinese customs. For example, during introductions, a slight bow or handshake is appropriate. Always address guests respectfully, and avoid using first names unless invited to do so.

了解习俗：了解中国的一些主要习俗。例如，在介绍时，适当的轻微鞠躬或握手是合适的。始终以尊重的方式称呼客人，除非对方邀请，否则不要直接使用名字。

Gift-Giving Etiquette: If offering gifts, avoid items like clocks or white flowers, as they symbolize bad luck or mourning in Chinese culture. Instead, opt for small, meaningful tokens of appreciation.

送礼礼仪：如果赠送礼物，请避免时钟或白花等物品，因为它们在中国文化中象征着厄运或哀悼。相反，可以选择小而有意义的感激纪念品。

Respect for Group Dynamics: Chinese tourists often travel in groups and value collective decision-making. When presenting options, ensure that everyone has an opportunity to share their input or vote as a group.

尊重团体动态：中国游客通常以团体形式旅行，并重视集体决策。在提供选择时，请确保每个人都有机会分享意见或以团体方式投票。

4.2 Sensitivity to Dietary Preferences

4.2 饮食偏好敏感性

Understanding Chinese Cuisine: Chinese tourists often prefer familiar dishes, especially rice, noodles, and soups. Offering options that align with their palate is highly appreciated.

了解中餐: 中国游客通常喜欢熟悉的菜肴, 尤其是米饭、面条和汤。提供符合其口味的选择会受到高度欢迎。

Avoiding Missteps: Be mindful of dietary restrictions. For example, many Chinese avoid cold or raw foods during breakfast and may prefer hot dishes instead. Additionally, respect any personal or religious dietary needs.

避免失误: 注意饮食禁忌。例如, 许多中国人避免在早餐时食用冷或生的食物, 可能更喜欢热菜。此外, 尊重任何个人或宗教饮食需求。

5. Enhancing the Tourist Experience

5. 提升游客体验

5.1 Interactive Storytelling

5.1 互动式讲故事

Cultural Context: Share stories that highlight cultural or historical connections between your destination and China. This fosters a sense of familiarity and curiosity.

文化背景: 分享一些突显您旅游目的地与中国之间文化或历史联系的故事。这会培养一种熟悉感和好奇心。

Interactive Engagement: Encourage tourists to participate by asking questions, sharing their thoughts, or even reenacting historical events. This makes the experience more memorable and enjoyable.

互动参与: 鼓励游客通过提问、分享想法, 甚至重现历史事件来参与。这会使体验更加难忘和有趣。

Visual Storytelling: Use props, costumes, or visuals like maps and photos to bring stories to life. Many Chinese tourists appreciate immersive and engaging presentations.

视觉讲述: 使用道具、服装或视觉工具(如地图和照片)来使故事栩栩如生。许多中国游客欣赏身临其境且引人入胜的展示。

5.2 Personalized Recommendations

5.2 个性化推荐

Local Experiences: Offer suggestions for unique local experiences, such as cultural festivals, local cuisine, or special shopping spots. Tailoring recommendations based on the group's interests adds a personal touch.

本地体验: 提供关于独特本地体验的建议, 例如文化节、当地美食或特别购物地点。根据团队的兴趣量身定制建议可增加个人化的体验。

Souvenirs: Recommend culturally significant souvenirs or items that resonate with Chinese values, such as tea, jade, or artisanal crafts. Avoid overly commercialized or generic options.

纪念品: 推荐具有文化意义的纪念品或符合中国价值观的物品, 例如茶叶、玉器或手工艺品。避免过于商业化或普通的选择。

5.3 Social Media and Photography

5.3 社交媒体和摄影

Photo Opportunities: Chinese tourists enjoy taking photos to share on social media platforms like WeChat or Xiaohongshu. Point out the best spots for capturing stunning visuals or group shots.

拍照机会: 中国游客喜欢拍照并在微信或小红书等社交媒体平台上分享。指出拍摄壮观画面或团队合照的最佳地点。

Respect Privacy: While photography is popular, always seek permission before taking or posting photos of individuals. Respect their personal space and preferences.

尊重隐私: 尽管摄影很受欢迎, 但在拍摄或发布个人照片之前, 请务必征得同意。尊重他们的个人空间和偏好。

Lesson 16

Methods of Handling Difficult Tourists

处理难缠游客的方法

Dealing with difficult tourists is part of a tour guide's job, and it requires patience, diplomacy, and strong communication skills. Difficult tourists may become frustrated, demanding, or disruptive, which can affect the overall experience for the rest of the group. However, by adopting the right strategies, a guide can effectively manage challenging situations. Below are methods and techniques for handling difficult tourists:

处理难缠游客是导游工作的一部分, 需要耐心、外交能力和强大的沟通技巧。难缠的游客可能会感到沮丧、苛刻或破坏性强, 这会影响团队其他成员的整体体验。但是, 通过采用正确的策略, 导游可以有效地处理具有挑战性的情况。以下是处理难缠游客的方法和技巧:

1. Stay Calm and Professional

1. 保持冷静和专业

1.1 Maintain Composure

1.1 保持镇静

Don't Take It Personally: Understand that difficult behavior is not necessarily a personal attack. Tourists may be experiencing stress, fatigue, or cultural differences that lead to frustration. By keeping your composure, you can diffuse tension.

不要太在意：要明白难缠的行为不一定是人身攻击。游客可能会感到压力、疲劳或文化差异，从而导致沮丧。保持镇静，可以缓解紧张局势。

Breathe and Think Before Responding: In situations of conflict, take a deep breath before responding. Quick reactions, especially if emotional, may escalate the situation. By pausing, you give yourself time to consider the best course of action. 呼吸和思考后再回应：在发生冲突的情况下，在回应之前先深呼吸。快速反应，尤其是情绪化的反应，可能会使情况升级。通过暂停，您可以给自己时间考虑最佳行动方案。

1.2 Keep a Professional Tone

1.2 保持专业语气

Use Polite Language: Even when dealing with a rude or demanding tourist, maintain politeness. Speak in a calm, respectful, and professional manner. This shows that you are in control of the situation and discourages the tourist from continuing negative behavior.

使用礼貌语言：即使面对粗鲁或苛刻的游客，也要保持礼貌。说话要冷静、尊重、专业。这表明您能掌控局面，并阻止游客继续做出负面行为。

2. Listen Actively and Empathetically

2. 积极倾听并富有同理心

2.1 Hear Them Out

2.1 听他们说完

Let Them Vent: Sometimes, difficult tourists just want to express their frustration. Give them a moment to air their grievances. Listening attentively without interrupting shows that you value their opinion and helps calm them down.

让他们发泄：有时，难缠的游客只是想表达他们的沮丧。给他们一点时间来发泄他们的不满。专心倾听而不打断他们，表明您重视他们的意见并帮助他们平静下来。

Acknowledge Their Concerns: After they've expressed themselves, acknowledge their feelings. Phrases like "I understand your frustration" or "I can see how that would be upsetting" show empathy and that you're taking their concerns seriously. 承认他们的担忧：在他们表达了自己的感受后，承认他们的感受。像“我理解你的沮丧”或“我知道那会让人心烦意乱”这样的短语表明了您的同理心，表明您认真对待他们的担忧。

2.2 Ask Clarifying Questions

2.2 提出澄清问题

Understand the Issue: If the tourist is upset, ask open-ended questions to fully understand the problem. For example, "Can you help me understand what went wrong?" or "What would make you feel more comfortable?"

了解问题：如果游客感到不安，请提出开放式问题以充分了解问题。例如，“你能帮我了解哪里出了问题吗？”或“什么会让你感觉更舒服？”

Offer Solutions: Once you have a clear understanding of the issue, try to offer a practical solution. This might include adjusting the tour schedule, offering alternatives, or making accommodations if necessary.

提供解决方案：一旦你清楚了解了这个问题，试着提供一个切实可行的解决方案。这可能包括调整旅游行程、提供替代方案或在必要时做出调整。

3. Set Clear Expectations from the Start

3. 从一开始就设定明确的期望

3.1 Establish Boundaries Early

3.1 尽早建立界限

Outline Tour Policies: At the beginning of the tour, make it clear what is expected from the group and what the tour policies are. For instance, discuss the schedule, punctuality, and any behavior that is not acceptable. This helps tourists understand the structure and limits from the outset.

概述旅游政策：在旅游开始时，明确对团队的期望以及旅游政策是什么。例如，讨论时间表、准时性和任何不可接受的行为。这有助于游客从一开始就了解结构和限制。

Create a Positive Tone: Set a welcoming tone by being friendly and engaging while still being clear about the rules. A well-structured introduction helps prevent confusion and misunderstandings later on.

营造积极的氛围：通过友好和参与营造欢迎的氛围，同时仍然清楚规则。结构良好的介绍有助于防止以后出现混乱和误解。

3.2 Explain Consequences in a Calm Manner

3.2 以平静的方式解释后果

If a tourist's behavior is disruptive, calmly explain the consequences of their actions. For example, "If we are delayed, we may not have enough time to visit the next attraction, and we may have to cut the tour short."

如果游客的行为具有破坏性，请冷静地解释其行为的后果。例如，“如果我们被耽搁了，我们可能没有足够的时间参观下一个景点，我们可能不得不缩短旅游时间。”

4. Be Flexible but Firm

4. 灵活但坚定

4.1 Offer Alternatives

4.1 提供替代方案

Provide Options: If a tourist is dissatisfied with a particular aspect of the tour (e.g., food, location, or activities), offer them alternatives. For instance, suggest they can skip part of the tour if they're tired, or recommend a nearby area of interest if the current location isn't to their liking.

提供选择：如果游客对旅游的某个方面不满意（例如食物、地点或活动），请为他们提供替代方案。例如，建议他们可以跳过部分旅游，如果他们累了，或者如果当前位置不合他们的心意，可以推荐附近的景点。

Flexible Problem Solving: If the tourist's complaint is valid, show flexibility by offering adjustments. For example, if a delay has caused frustration, you might add a bit more time at the next stop or adjust the timing.

灵活解决问题：如果游客的投诉合理，请通过提供调整来显示灵活性。例如，如果延误导致沮丧，您可以在下一站增加一点时间或调整时间。

4.2 Set Limits on Demands

4.2 设定要求的限制

While flexibility is important, it's equally crucial to set limits. If a tourist is being unreasonable or making excessive demands, assertively but politely explain what you can and cannot do. For example, "I understand that you'd like more time, but I need to follow the schedule to ensure the whole group has a positive experience."

虽然灵活性很重要，但设定限制同样重要。如果游客不讲道理或要求过高，请自信但礼貌地解释您可以做什么和不能做什么。例如，“我明白你想要更多时间，但我需要遵守时间表，以确保整个团队都有积极的体验。”

5. Stay Solution-Oriented

5. 以解决方案为导向

5.1 Focus on Solutions, Not Problems

5.1 关注解决方案，而不是问题

Shift Attention to Solutions: Instead of dwelling on what went wrong, focus on finding a solution that addresses the tourist's concern. For example, if there's a long wait, provide entertainment or suggest activities to pass the time.

将注意力转移到解决方案上：不要纠结于哪里出了问题，而要专注于找到解决游客担忧的解决方案。例如，如果等待时间太长，可以提供娱乐或建议消磨时间的活动。

Offer Quick Resolutions: Handle complaints promptly by offering immediate solutions or adjusting the itinerary when possible. The quicker the resolution, the more likely the tourist will feel satisfied.

提供快速解决方案：及时处理投诉，提供即时解决方案或在可能的情况下调整行程。解决方案越快，游客就越有可能感到满意。

5.2 Be Proactive

5.2 积极主动

Prevent Issues Before They Arise: Stay vigilant and anticipate potential problems. For example, if you know a certain spot tends to get crowded or has long waiting lines, inform tourists in advance and offer tips on how to avoid frustration.

防患于未然：保持警惕并预测潜在问题。例如，如果您知道某个地方往往会变得拥挤或排队很长，请提前通知游客并提供避免沮丧的提示。

Be Prepared for Common Complaints: Anticipate frequent tourist complaints—such as concerns over long walks, food, or delays—and prepare solutions in advance. A good tour guide always has strategies to handle common difficulties.

为常见投诉做好准备：预测频繁的游客投诉（例如对长途步行、食物或延误的担忧），并准备解决方案提前告知。优秀的导游总是有应对常见困难的策略。

6. Handle Aggression with Tact

6. 巧妙应对攻击行为

6.1 Stay Calm in the Face of Aggression

6.1 面对攻击行为保持冷静

Don't Engage in Arguments: If a tourist becomes aggressive or argumentative, maintain your calm. Respond with facts, explain the situation clearly, and avoid raising your voice. Engaging in an argument will only escalate the situation.

不要参与争论：如果游客变得具有攻击性或喜欢争论，请保持冷静。用事实回应，清楚地解释情况，避免大声说话。参与争论只会使情况升级。

Maintain Distance: If a tourist becomes physically or verbally aggressive, keep a safe physical distance and remain

composed. In extreme cases, it may be necessary to involve security or other authorities, but always remain professional. 保持距离：如果游客变得具有身体或言语攻击性，请保持安全的身体距离并保持镇定。在极端情况下，可能需要让安全或其他当局介入，但始终保持专业。

6.2 Offer a Private Conversation

6.2 提供私人对话

Speak One-on-One: If the situation involves a serious complaint or issue, invite the tourist to speak privately, away from the rest of the group. This approach gives the tourist a chance to voice their concerns without causing a scene or embarrassing them in front of others.

一对一交谈：如果情况涉及严重的投诉或问题，请邀请游客私下交谈，远离团体中的其他人。这种方法让游客有机会表达他们的担忧，而不会引起骚动或在他人面前让他们感到尴尬。

7. Ensure the Rest of the Group is Comfortable

7. 确保团队其他成员感到舒适

7.1 Address Group Concerns Without Favoritism

7.1 解决团队问题，不要偏袒任何一方

Group Dynamics Matter: If a tourist is disruptive to the rest of the group, address the issue without drawing too much attention to the individual. It's important to maintain a balanced and harmonious group atmosphere.

团队动态很重要：如果一名游客扰乱了团队其他成员的秩序，请解决问题，但不要过多关注该个人。保持平衡和和谐的团队氛围很重要。

Balance Attention: Don't let the behavior of one tourist dominate the tour. If necessary, politely remind the group of the tour's goals and how everyone's experience is important. This encourages cooperation and minimizes disruption.

平衡注意力：不要让一名游客的行为主导整个旅程。如有必要，礼貌地提醒团队旅行的目的以及每个人的体验都很重要。这可以鼓励合作并最大限度地减少干扰。

7.2 Keep the Group Engaged

7.2 保持团队参与

Redirect Attention: If one tourist is being particularly difficult, gently redirect the group's focus back to the tour. Engage them in discussion, use visual aids, or prompt them to share experiences. This can help keep the tour on track and prevent others from feeling uncomfortable.

转移注意力：如果一名游客特别难缠，请温和地将团队的注意力转移回旅行上。让他们参与讨论，使用视觉辅助工具，或提示他们分享经验。这可以帮助让旅行保持正轨并防止其他人感到不舒服。

8. Know When to Seek Help

8. 知道何时寻求帮助

8.1 Escalate When Necessary

8.1 必要时上报

Involve Management: If a situation is beyond your ability to resolve, don't hesitate to seek assistance from your supervisor, manager, or the tour operator. It's better to escalate the situation early than to let it negatively impact the entire group.

让管理层参与：如果情况超出您的能力范围，请毫不犹豫地让您的主管、经理或旅行社寻求帮助。最好尽早上报情况，而不是让它对整个团队产生负面影响。

Offer a Refund or Compensation: If a tourist is genuinely dissatisfied, you might need to discuss compensation or refunds, in line with company policies. Offering a sincere apology and potential solutions shows that you take their concerns seriously.

提供退款或补偿：如果游客真的不满意，您可能需要根据公司政策讨论补偿或退款。真诚道歉并提供可能的解决方案表明您认真对待他们的担忧。

Handling difficult tourists is a skill that requires a blend of patience, clear communication, empathy, and problem-solving. By maintaining professionalism, offering solutions, and being proactive, a tour guide can turn a potentially negative situation into a positive one. The key is to manage emotions, stay calm, and focus on providing the best possible experience for all tourists, even when faced with challenging behavior.

处理难缠的游客是一项需要耐心、清晰沟通、同理心和解决问题能力的技能。通过保持专业精神、提供解决方案和积极主动，导游可以将潜在的负面情况转变为积极情况。关键是管理情绪、保持冷静，并专注于为所有游客提供最佳体验，即使面对具有挑战性的行为

Lesson 17

How to enhance interpersonal skills

如何增强人际交往能力

Enhancing interpersonal skills is essential for building strong personal and professional relationships. These skills involve effective communication, empathy, emotional intelligence, and teamwork. Here's a detailed guide on how to develop and improve your interpersonal skills:

如何提高人际交往能力

提高人际交往能力对于建立牢固的个人和职业关系至关重要。这些技能包括有效沟通、同理心、情商和团队合作。以下是有关如何发展和提高人际交往能力的详细指南：

Improve Communication Skills

Effective communication is the cornerstone of good interpersonal skills.

1. 提高沟通能力

有效沟通是良好人际交往能力的基石。

a. Active Listening

Focus fully on the speaker without interrupting.

a. 积极倾听

全神贯注于说话者，不要打断。

Show understanding by paraphrasing and asking relevant questions.

通过解释和提出相关问题来表示理解。

Use non-verbal cues like nodding to indicate attentiveness.

使用点头等非语言提示来表示专注。

b. Clear Expression

Speak clearly and concisely, avoiding jargon.

b. 清晰表达

说话清晰简洁，避免使用行话。

Maintain a positive and respectful tone.

保持积极和尊重的语气。

Adapt your communication style to suit your audience.

调整您的沟通风格以适应您的听众。

c. Non-Verbal Communication

Maintain appropriate eye contact.

c. 非语言交流

保持适当的目光接触。

Use open body language.

使用开放的肢体语言。

Be mindful of facial expressions and gestures.

注意面部表情和手势。

Cultivate Empathy

Empathy is the ability to understand and share the feelings of others.

2. 培养同理心

同理心是理解和分享他人感受的能力。

Practice Perspective-Taking: Try to see situations from another person's viewpoint.

练习换位思考：尝试从他人的角度看待情况。

Show Genuine Interest: Ask questions and listen to understand emotions and concerns.

表现出真正的兴趣：提出问题并倾听以了解情绪和担忧。

Validate Feelings: Acknowledge others' emotions and respond with kindness.

确认感受：承认他人的情绪并以善意回应。

Develop Emotional Intelligence

Emotional intelligence helps in managing your emotions and understanding others'.

3. 培养情商

情商有助于管理您的情绪和理解他人的情绪。

Self-Awareness: Reflect on your emotions and triggers.

自我意识：反思您的情绪和触发因素。

Self-Regulation: Learn to control impulses and respond calmly.

自我调节：学会控制冲动并冷静应对。

Social Skills: Build rapport and navigate social situations with ease.
社交技能：建立融洽关系并轻松应对社交场合。

Enhance Teamwork and Collaboration

Working effectively with others is vital in professional settings.

4. 增强团队合作和协作

在专业环境中，与他人有效合作至关重要。

Be Reliable: Fulfill your commitments and contribute to group efforts.
值得信赖：履行您的承诺并为团队努力做出贡献。

Respect Diversity: Value different opinions and perspectives.
尊重多样性：重视不同的意见和观点。

Encourage Collaboration: Foster an environment where everyone feels comfortable sharing ideas.
鼓励合作：营造一种每个人都愿意分享想法的环境。

Build Conflict Resolution Skills

Handling conflicts constructively is key to maintaining healthy relationships.

5. 培养解决冲突的技能

建设性地处理冲突是维持健康关系的关键。

Stay Calm: Approach conflicts without aggression.
保持冷静：以平和的态度处理冲突。

Seek Solutions: Focus on finding common ground rather than winning.
寻求解决方案：专注于寻找共同点，而不是取胜。

Communicate Openly: Use “I” statements to express feelings and needs.
公开交流：使用“我”的陈述来表达感受和需求。

Practice Positive Attitude and Open-Mindedness

A positive attitude and willingness to learn can make interactions more enjoyable.

6. 保持积极的态度和开放的心态

积极的态度和学习意愿可以使互动更加愉快。

Stay Optimistic: Approach challenges with a can-do attitude.
保持乐观：以积极的态度应对挑战。

Be Open to Feedback: Accept constructive criticism gracefully and use it for growth.
接受反馈：优雅地接受建设性的批评并将其用于成长。

Show Gratitude: Appreciate others' efforts and express thanks.
表达感激：欣赏他人的努力并表达感谢。

Build Trust and Rapport

Trust is fundamental to strong interpersonal relationships.

7. 建立信任和融洽关系

信任是建立牢固人际关系的基础。

Be Honest: Always speak the truth and maintain transparency.
诚实：始终说实话并保持透明度。

Show Consistency: Be dependable in your actions and behavior.
保持一致性：在行动和行为上值得信赖。

Respect Boundaries: Understand and honor personal and professional limits.
尊重界限：理解并尊重个人和职业界限。

Practice Networking

Expanding your social and professional network strengthens your interpersonal skills.

8. 练习建立人际网络

扩大您的社交和职业网络可以增强您的人际交往能力。

Attend Events: Engage in social and professional gatherings.
参加活动：参加社交和专业聚会。

Connect Online: Use platforms like LinkedIn to connect with like-minded individuals.

在线联系：使用 LinkedIn 等平台与志同道合的人建立联系。

Follow Up: Maintain relationships by staying in touch.

跟进：通过保持联系来维持关系。

Learn and Adapt

Interpersonal skills require continuous improvement.

9. 学习和适应

人际交往技巧需要不断提高。

Take Courses: Enroll in workshops or online classes on communication and relationship-building.

参加课程：参加有关沟通和建立关系的研讨会或在线课程。

Observe Role Models: Learn from individuals with strong interpersonal skills.

观察榜样：向具有强大人际交往能力的人学习。

Reflect and Adjust: After interactions, assess what went well and identify areas for improvement.

反思和调整：互动后，评估哪些方面进展顺利并确定需要改进的地方。

Practice Self-Care

Good interpersonal skills are easier to maintain when you're mentally and physically healthy.

10. 练习自我照顾

当你身心健康时，良好的人际交往技巧更容易保持。

Manage Stress: Practice mindfulness, meditation, or other stress-relief techniques.

管理压力：练习正念、冥想或其他缓解压力的技巧。

Maintain a Healthy Lifestyle: Eat well, exercise, and get adequate rest.

保持健康的生活方式：吃得好、锻炼身体、获得充足的休息。

Develop Confidence: Believe in your abilities and present yourself assertively.

培养自信：相信自己的能力并自信地展示自己。

Conclusion

Enhancing interpersonal skills takes consistent effort and practice. By focusing on effective communication, empathy, emotional intelligence, and adaptability, you can foster better relationships, improve teamwork, and achieve greater success in personal and professional spheres.

结论

提高人际交往能力需要持续的努力和练习。通过专注于有效的沟通、同理心、情商和适应性，您可以培养更好的关系、改善团队合作并在个人和职业领域取得更大的成功。

Lesson 18

How can a Chinese guide Enhance storytelling?

中文导游如何增强讲故事的能力？

Here is your requested alignment of Chinese and English paragraphs:

Enhancing storytelling as a Chinese guide can significantly enrich tourists' experiences by making history, culture, and landmarks more engaging and memorable. Storytelling combines factual information with creativity, making it an essential skill for any guide. Here's how a Chinese guide can enhance storytelling:

中文导游如何提高讲故事的能力？

中文导游提高讲故事的能力可以大大丰富游客的体验，让历史、文化和地标更具吸引力和难忘感。讲故事将事实信息与创造力相结合，是任何导游的必备技能。中文导游如何提高讲故事的能力：

1. Understand the Audience

Adapt to Preferences: Identify what interests the group—history, legends, food, or personal anecdotes—and tailor the story accordingly.

Cultural Context: Adjust your storytelling style to suit the cultural background of the tourists, ensuring clarity and relevance.

Engage the Emotions: Use themes that resonate emotionally, such as perseverance, love, or transformation.

1. 了解观众

适应偏好：确定群体的兴趣——历史、传说、食物或个人轶事——并相应地调整故事。

文化背景：调整讲故事的风格以适应游客的文化背景，确保清晰和相关。

激发情感：使用能引起情感共鸣的主题，例如毅力、爱或转变。

2. Research and Prepare

Deep Knowledge: Study local history, myths, and cultural nuances thoroughly. For example:

Share tales from Chinese history like the Romance of the Three Kingdoms or stories about the Great Wall's construction.

Use folklore like the legend of the Dragon Boat Festival or the story behind Mooncakes.

Blend Facts and Legends: Combine verified historical facts with local legends to add depth to the narrative.

Visit Sites: Personally explore sites to gather unique details or perspectives that make your stories authentic.

2. 研究和准备

深度知识：彻底研究当地历史、神话和文化细微差别。例如：

分享中国历史故事，如《三国演义》或长城修建的故事。

使用民间传说，如端午节的传说或月饼背后的故事。

融合事实和传说：将经过验证的历史事实与当地传说结合起来，为叙事增添深度。

访问网站：亲自探索网站，收集独特的细节或观点，使您的故事真实可信。

3. Structure Stories Effectively

Create a Narrative Arc: Use the classic storytelling structure of:

Introduction: Set the scene with intriguing context or a question.

Conflict/Challenge: Introduce a historical dilemma or cultural mystery.

Resolution: Conclude with the outcome, moral, or current significance.

Use Cliffhangers: At transitions or breaks, leave the audience eager to hear what happens next.

3. 有效地构建故事

创建叙事弧：使用经典的故事叙述结构：

介绍：用有趣的背景或问题设置场景。

冲突/挑战：介绍历史困境或文化谜团。

解决方案：以结果、道德或当前意义结束。

使用悬念：在过渡或休息时，让观众渴望听到接下来会发生什么。

4. Add Drama and Personalization

Vivid Imagery: Use descriptive language to paint a picture, such as “Imagine standing here centuries ago as traders from the Silk Road arrived.”

Relate to Modern Life: Connect historical or cultural stories to contemporary issues or relatable themes.

Personify Figures: Bring historical figures to life by describing their emotions, challenges, or achievements.

4. 添加戏剧和个性化

生动的形象：使用描述性语言描绘一幅画面，例如“想象一下几个世纪前丝绸之路的商人到达时站在这里。”

与现代生活相关：将历史或文化故事与当代问题或相关主题联系起来。

拟人化人物：通过描述历史人物的情感、挑战或成就，让历史人物栩栩如生。

5. Engage the Senses

Visual Cues: Point to physical features at the site that connect to the story (e.g., carvings, architecture, or landmarks).

Sounds and Smells: Describe sensory elements, such as the clang of ancient tools or the aroma of a traditional feast.

Demonstrations: Use props, gestures, or even reenactments to immerse the audience.

5. 调动感官

视觉提示：指出与故事相关的现场物理特征（例如雕刻、建筑或地标）。

声音和气味：描述感官元素，例如古代工具的铿锵声或传统宴会的香气。

演示：使用道具、手势甚至重演来让观众沉浸其中。

6. Use Humor and Lightheartedness

Add Anecdotes: Share humorous or surprising facts, such as quirky traditions or unique local sayings.

Self-Deprecating Humor: Light jokes about common cultural differences can break the ice (e.g., “Yes, we Chinese love tea so much we invented over 1,000 kinds!”).

Playful Interaction: Engage the audience with funny quizzes or role-play.

6. 运用幽默和轻松

添加趣闻轶事：分享幽默或令人惊讶的事实，例如古怪的传统或独特的当地谚语。

自嘲式幽默：关于常见文化差异的轻松笑话可以打破僵局（例如，“是的，我们中国人非常喜欢茶，我们发明了1,000多种茶！”）。

有趣的互动：通过有趣的测验或角色扮演吸引观众。

7. Foster Interactivity

Ask Questions: Start with questions like “What do you think this symbol means?” to spark curiosity.

Encourage Participation: Invite the audience to guess the next part of the story or share their thoughts.

Use Puzzles or Riddles: Especially for myths or folklore, let the audience unravel mysteries.

7. 促进互动

提问：以“你认为这个符号代表什么？”之类的问题开始，以激发好奇心。

鼓励参与：邀请观众猜测故事的下一部分或分享他们的想法。

使用谜题或谜语：特别是对于神话或民间传说，让观众解开谜团。

8. Incorporate Multimedia Tools

Audio and Visual Aids: Use pictures, videos, or AR apps to supplement the story.

Mobile Apps: Leverage tourist apps that include augmented reality or interactive maps to provide a richer context.

Music and Sounds: Include traditional Chinese music or sound effects to create an atmosphere.

8. 结合多媒体工具

音频和视觉辅助：使用图片、视频或 AR 应用程序来补充故事。

移动应用程序：利用包含增强现实或交互式地图的旅游应用程序来提供更丰富的背景。

音乐和声音：包括中国传统音乐或音效来营造氛围。

9. Practice Delivery

Tone and Voice Modulation: Use variations in pitch and volume to emphasize key moments or emotions.

Body Language: Use gestures and expressions to illustrate actions or highlight emotions.

Pacing: Pause for effect during suspenseful moments and speed up to convey excitement.

9. 练习传递

音调和语音调节：使用音调和音量的变化来强调关键时刻或情绪。

肢体语言：使用手势和表情来说明动作或强调情绪。

节奏：在悬念时刻暂停以产生效果，并加快速度以传达兴奋。

10. Collect Feedback and Reflect

Ask for Feedback: Regularly check how tourists respond to your storytelling style and refine it based on their comments.

Analyze Success: Note which stories captivate the audience and identify what makes them effective.

Experiment: Continuously introduce new stories or storytelling methods to keep the experience fresh.

10. 收集反馈并反思

征求反馈：定期检查游客对您的讲故事风格的反应，并根据他们的评论进行改进。

分析成功之处：注意哪些故事吸引了观众，并确定是什么让它们有效。

实验：不断引入新的故事或讲故事方法，以保持体验新鲜。

11. Infuse Chinese Cultural Essence

Idioms and Proverbs: Introduce relevant Chinese sayings or idioms to add cultural flavor.

Symbolism: Explain the deeper meanings behind traditional symbols or practices.

Philosophy and Morality: Share how Chinese philosophies like Confucianism, Taoism, or Buddhism connect to the narrative.

11. 注入中国文化精髓

成语和谚语：介绍相关的中国俗语或成语，以增加文化气息。
象征意义：解释传统符号或习俗背后的深层含义。
哲学和道德：分享儒家、道教或佛教等中国哲学如何与叙事联系起来。

Storytelling is both an art and a skill that can be enhanced with practice, creativity, and cultural insight. By making stories vivid, engaging, and relevant, a Chinese guide can transform an ordinary tour into a captivating journey through China's rich heritage and traditions.

讲故事既是一门艺术，也是一门技能，可以通过实践、创造力和文化洞察力来提高。通过使故事生动、引人入胜和相关，中文导游可以将普通的旅行变成一次引人入胜的旅程，带您领略中国丰富的遗产和传统。○

Lesson 19

Managing Tourist Groups and Itinerary Effectively

高效管理旅游团体与行程

Gāo xiào guǎn lǐ lǚ yóu tuán tǐ yǔ xíng chéng

1. Understanding Group Dynamics

1. 了解团队动态

Liǎo jiě tuán duì dòng tài

The first step in managing a tourist group effectively is understanding group dynamics.

高效管理旅游团体的第一步是了解团队动态。

Gāo xiào guǎn lǐ lǚ yóu tuán tǐ de dì yī bù shì liǎo jiě tuán duì dòng tài.

Every group is diverse, consisting of people from different cultures, ages, and preferences.

每个旅游团体都具有多样性，包括来自不同文化、年龄和偏好的人群。

Měi gè lǚ yóu tuán tǐ dōu jù yǒu duō yàng xìng, bāo kuò lái zì bù tóng wén huà, nián líng hé piān hào de rén qún.

Key actions include:

关键措施包括：

Guān jiàn cuò shī bāo kuò:

Establishing clear introductions and group rules at the start of the tour.

在旅行开始时进行清晰的介绍并制定团队规则。

Zài lǚ xíng kāi shǐ shí jìn xíng qīng xī de jiè shào bìng zhì dìng tuán duì guī zé.

Encouraging interaction while respecting individuals' personal boundaries.

鼓励互动，同时尊重每个人的个人界限。

Gǔ lì hù dòng, tóng shí zūn zhòng měi gè rén de gè rén jiè xiàn.

Recognizing and addressing special needs or concerns, such as dietary restrictions, mobility issues, or language barriers.

识别并解决特殊需求或顾虑，例如饮食限制、行动不便或语言障碍。

Shí bié bìng jiě jué tè shū xū qiú huò gù lǜ, lì rú yǐn shí xiàn zhì, xíng dòng bù biàn huò yǔ yán zhàng ài.

2. Planning an Efficient Itinerary

2. 规划高效的行程安排

Guī huà gāo xiào de xíng chéng ān pái

An effective itinerary is the backbone of a well-managed tour.

一份高效的行程是成功管理旅游团的核心。

Yī fèn gāo xiào de xíng chéng shì chéng gōng guǎn lǐ lǚ yóu tuán de hé xīn.

A good itinerary strikes a balance between sightseeing, rest time, meals, and free exploration while ensuring punctuality.

一个好的行程能平衡观光、休息、用餐和自由活动的时间，同时确保准时。

Yī gè hǎo de xíng chéng néng píng héng guān guāng, xiū xi, yòng cān hé zì yóu huó dòng de shí jiān, tóng shí què bǎo zhǔn shí.

Key components of an efficient itinerary:

高效行程的关键要素包括：

Gāo xiào xíng chéng de guān jiàn yào sù bāo kuò:

Well-Researched Activities

经过充分调研的活动安排

Jīng guò chōng fēn tiáo yán de huó dòng ān pái

Time Management 时间管理 Shí jiān guǎn lǐ

Buffer Periods

预留缓冲时间

Yù liú huǎn chōng shí jiān

3. Effective Communication and Coordination

3. 有效的沟通与协调

Yǒu xiào de gōu tōng yǔ xié tiáo

Clear and timely communication is crucial for managing tourist groups.

清晰及时的沟通对管理旅游团至关重要。

Qīng xī jí shí de gōu tōng duì guǎn lǐ lǚ yóu tuán zhì guān zhòng yào.

Best practices include:

最佳实践包括:

Zuì jiā shí jiàn bāo kuò:

Providing a detailed itinerary and schedule in advance.

提前提供详细的行程和时间安排。

Tí qián tí gōng xiáng xì de xíng chéng hé shí jiān ān pái.

4. Ensuring Safety and Comfort

4. 确保安全与舒适

Què bǎo ān quán yǔ shū shì

The safety and comfort of the group are a tour manager's primary responsibility.

确保团队的安全与舒适是导游的首要责任。

Què bǎo tuán duì de ān quán yǔ shū shì shì dǎo yóu de shǒu yào zé rèn.

5. Handling Challenges and Changes

5. 应对挑战与变化

Yīng duì tiǎo zhàn yǔ biàn huà

Even the most carefully planned tours can face unexpected challenges, such as delays, weather disruptions, or group conflicts.

即使是最周密的行程也可能遇到意外挑战，比如延误、天气变化或团队冲突。

Jí shǐ shì zuì zhōu mì de xíng chéng yě kě néng yù dào yì wài tiǎo zhàn, bǐ rú yán wù, tiān qì biàn huà huò tuán duì chōng tū.

6. Providing a Personalized Experience

6. 提供个性化体验

Tí gōng gè xìng huà tǐ yàn

To create memorable experiences, the tour leader can incorporate personalized touches that enhance the group's enjoyment.

为了创造难忘的体验，导游可以加入个性化的安排，提升团队的旅游乐趣。

Wèi le chuàng zào nán wàng de tǐ yàn, dǎo yóu kě yǐ jiā rù gè xìng huà de ān pái, tí shēng tuán duì de lǚ yóu lè qù.

7. Post-Tour Follow-Up

7. 旅游后的跟进

Lǚ yóu hòu de gēn jìn

The role of a tour manager does not end when the tour concludes.

导游的工作并不在行程结束时终止。

Dǎo yóu de gōng zuò bìng bù zài xíng chéng jié shù shí zhōng zhǐ.

Managing tourist groups and itineraries effectively requires a combination of strategic planning, strong leadership, and a focus on creating exceptional experiences.

高效管理旅游团体与行程需要战略规划、卓越的领导能力以及对创造优质体验的关注。

Gāo xiào guǎn lǐ lǚ yóu tuán tǐ yǔ xíng chéng xū yào zhàn lüè guī huà, zhuó yuè de lǐng dǎo néng lì yǐ jí duì chuàng zào yōu zhì tǐ yàn de guān zhù. An essay on Managing Tourist Groups and Itinerary Effectively

Lesson 20
Effective Communication and Customer Service Skills
高效沟通与客户服务技巧
Gāo xiào gōu tōng yǔ kè hù fú wù jì qiǎo

1. Importance of Communication Skills

1. 沟通技巧的重要性

Gōu tōng jì qiǎo de zhòng yào xìng

Effective communication is the foundation of excellent customer service.

高效的沟通是优质客户服务的基础。

Gāo xiào de gōu tōng shì yōu zhì kè hù fú wù de jī chǔ.

As a tour guide or service provider, communication ensures clear understanding, builds trust, and fosters positive relationships.

作为导游或服务提供者，沟通可以确保清晰理解，建立信任，培养积极的关系。

Zuò wéi dǎo yóu huò fú wù tí gōng zhě, gōu tōng kě yǐ què bǎo qīng xī lǐ jiě, jiàn lì xìn rèn, péi yǎng jī jí de guān xì.

Key aspects of communication include:

沟通的关键要素包括：

Gōu tōng de guān jiàn yào sù bāo kuò:

Active Listening

积极倾听

Jī jí qīng tīng

Clarity in Speaking

语言表达清晰

Yǔ yán biǎo dá qīng xī

Non-Verbal Communication

非语言沟通

Fēi yǔ yán gōu tōng

2. Active Listening

2. 积极倾听

Jī jí qīng tīng

Active listening involves fully focusing, understanding, and responding to the customer.

积极倾听意味着全神贯注地倾听、理解并回应客户。

Jī jí qīng tīng yì wèi zhe quán shén guān zhù de qīng tīng, lǐ jiě bìng huí yìng kè hù.

Key strategies include:

主要策略包括：

Zhǔ yào cè lüè bāo kuò:

Maintaining eye contact to show attentiveness.

保持眼神交流，显示出专注。

Bǎo chí yǎn shén jiāo liú, xiǎn shì chū zhuān zhù.

Nodding or using verbal cues like “I see” or “I understand.”

点头或使用“我明白”“我理解”等语言提示。

Diǎn tóu huò shǐ yòng “wǒ míng bái,” “wǒ lǐ jiě” děng yǔ yán tí shì.

Avoiding interruptions and waiting until the speaker has finished.

避免打断，等待对方说完。

Bì miǎn dǎ duàn, děng dài duì fāng shuō wán.

3. Clarity in Speaking

3. 清晰表达

Qīng xī biǎo dá

Clear and concise communication helps avoid misunderstandings.

清晰简洁的表达有助于避免误解。

Qīng xī jiǎn jié de biǎo dá yǒu zhù yú bì miǎn wù jiě.

Essential tips include:

重要技巧包括:

Zhòng yào jì qiǎo bāo kuò:

Speaking slowly and using simple language when addressing non-native speakers.

语速放慢, 与非母语人士沟通时使用简单的语言。

Yǔ sù fàng màn, yǔ fēi mǔ yǔ rén shì gōu tōng shí shǐ yòng jiǎn dān de yǔ yán.

Rephrasing or repeating information for clarity.

重复或换句话说, 确保表达清楚。

Chóng fù huò huàn jù huà shuō, què bǎo biǎo dá qīng chǔ.

Using examples or visuals to explain complex information.

用实例或图示解释复杂的信息。

Yòng shí lì huò tú shì jiě shì fù zá de xìn xī.

4. Non-Verbal Communication

4. 非语言沟通

Fēi yǔ yán gōu tōng

Non-verbal communication includes body language, gestures, facial expressions, and tone of voice.

非语言沟通包括肢体语言、手势、面部表情和语调。

Fēi yǔ yán gōu tōng bāo kuò zhī tǐ yǔ yán, shǒu shì, miàn bù biǎo qíng hé yǔ diào.

Important tips for non-verbal communication:

非语言沟通的重要技巧:

Fēi yǔ yán gōu tōng de zhòng yào jì qiǎo:

Maintaining an approachable and friendly posture.

保持亲切友好的姿态。

Bǎo chí qīn qiè yǒu hǎo de zī tài.

Smiling to create a welcoming environment.

微笑, 营造友好的氛围。

Wēi xiào, yíng zào yǒu hǎo de fēn wéi.

Avoiding gestures that may be misunderstood in other cultures.

避免使用可能被其他文化误解的手势。

Bì miǎn shǐ yòng kě néng bèi qí tā wén huà wù jiě de shǒu shì.

5. Customer Service Skills

5. 客户服务技巧

Kè hù fú wù jì qiǎo

Customer service skills involve providing a pleasant and memorable experience for tourists or clients.

客户服务技巧是为游客或客户提供愉快且难忘的体验。

Kè hù fú wù jì qiǎo shì wèi yóu kè huò kè hù tí gōng yú kuài qiě nán wàng de tǐ yàn.

Best practices for customer service include:

客户服务的最佳实践包括:

Kè hù fú wù de zuì jiā shí jiàn bāo kuò:

Being polite and respectful at all times.

始终保持礼貌和尊重。

Shǐ zhōng bǎo chí lǐ mào hé zūn zhòng.

Handling complaints calmly and providing solutions.

冷静处理投诉, 提供解决方案。

Lěng jìng chǔ lǐ tóu sù, tí gōng jiě jué fāng àn.

Going the extra mile to assist customers with special requests.

尽力帮助客户满足特殊需求。

Jìn lì bāng zhù kè hù mǎn zú tè shū xū qiú.

Following up to ensure customer satisfaction.

跟进以确保客户满意。
Gēn jìn yǐ què bǎo kè hù mǎn yì.

6. Adapting to Different Cultures
6. 适应不同文化
Shì yīng bù tóng wén huà

Tour guides and service providers must adapt their communication and behavior based on cultural differences.
导游和服务人员必须根据文化差异调整沟通方式和行为。
Dǎo yóu hé fú wù rén yuán bì xū gēn jù wén huà chà yì tiáo zhěng gōu tōng fāng shì hé xíng wéi.

Effective communication and customer service skills are critical for ensuring customer satisfaction and a smooth tour experience.
高效的沟通与客户服务技巧对于确保客户满意和顺利的旅游体验至关重要。
Gāo xiào de gōu tōng yǔ kè hù fú wù jì qiǎo duì yú què bǎo kè hù mǎn yì hé shùn lì de lǚ yóu tǐ yàn zhì guān zhòng yào.

Lesson 21

Indian Geography and Environmental Awareness

印度地理与环境意识

Yìn dù dì lǐ yǔ huán jìng yì shí

1. Overview of Indian Geography

1. 印度地理概况

Yìn dù dì lǐ gài kuàng

India is a vast and diverse country located in South Asia, covering an area of about 3.28 million square kilometers. It is the seventh-largest country in the world.

印度是一个位于南亚的广阔多样的国家，国土面积约为328万平方公里，是世界上第七大国家。

Yìn dù shì yí gè wèi yú nán yà de guǎng kuò duō yàng de guó jiā, guó tǔ miàn jī yuē wèi 328 wàn píng fāng gōng lǐ, shì shì jiè shàng dì qī dà guó jiā.

India's geographical diversity includes mountains, plains, plateaus, deserts, and coastal regions.

印度的地理多样性包括山脉、平原、高原、沙漠和沿海地区。

Yìn dù de dì lǐ duō yàng xìng bāo kuò shān mài, píng yuán, gāo yuán, shā mò hé yán hǎi dì qū.

Key Geographical Features

主要地理特征

Zhǔ yào dì lǐ tè zhēng

Himalayan Mountains

喜马拉雅山脉

Xǐ mǎ lā yǎ shān mài

Located in the north, these mountains are home to some of the world's highest peaks, including Mount Everest.

位于北部，这些山脉拥有世界上最高的山峰之一，包括珠穆朗玛峰。

Wèi yú běi bù, zhè xiē shān mài yōng yǒu shì jiè shàng zuì gāo de shān fēng zhī yī, bāo kuò Zhū mù lǎng mǎ fēng.

Indo-Gangetic Plains

印度-恒河平原

Yìn dù - Héng hé píng yuán

Fertile plains formed by rivers like the Ganges, Yamuna, and Brahmaputra, supporting agriculture and population.

由恒河、亚穆纳河和布拉马普特拉河等河流形成的肥沃平原，支持农业和人口。

Yóu Héng hé, Yà mù nà hé hé Bù lā mǎ pǔ tè lā hé děng hé liú xíng chéng de féi wò píng yuán, zhī chí nóng yè hé rén kǒu.

Thar Desert

塔尔沙漠

Tǎ ěr shā mò

Located in western India, primarily in Rajasthan. It is an arid region with extreme climate conditions.

位于印度西部，主要在拉贾斯坦邦，是一个气候极端的干旱地区。

Wèi yú Yìn dù xī bù, zhǔ yào zài Lā jiā sī tǎn bāng, shì yí gè qì hòu jí duān de gān hàn dì qū.

Western and Eastern Ghats

西高止山脉和东高止山脉

Xī gāo zhǐ shān mài hé Dōng gāo zhǐ shān mài

Mountain ranges running along the western and eastern coasts of India, known for biodiversity and scenic beauty.

沿印度东西海岸延伸的山脉，以生物多样性和风景秀丽著称。

Yán Yìn dù dōng xī hǎi àn yán shēn de shān mài, yǐ shēng wù duō yàng xì hé fēng jǐng xiù lì zhù chēng.

Coastal Regions

沿海地区

Yán hǎi dì qū

India has a coastline of over 7,500 kilometers, with significant ports like Mumbai, Chennai, and Kochi.

印度拥有超过7500公里的海岸线，主要港口包括孟买、金奈和科钦。

Yìn dù yōng yǒu chāo guò 7500 gōng lǐ de hǎi àn xiàn, zhǔ yào gǎng kǒu bāo kuò Mèng mǎi, Jīn nài hé Kē qīn.

2. Environmental Awareness in India

2. 印度的环境意识

Yìn dù de huán jìng yì shí

Environmental awareness has become increasingly important in India due to population growth, industrialization, and environmental degradation.

由于人口增长、工业化和环境恶化，环境意识在印度变得越来越重要。

Yóu yú rén kǒu zēng zhǎng, gōng yè huà hé huán jìng è huà, huán jìng yì shí zài Yìn dù biàn dé yuè lái yuè zhòng yào.

Major Environmental Issues

主要环境问题

Zhǔ yào huán jìng wèn tí

Air Pollution

空气污染

Kōng qì wū rǎn

Urban areas like Delhi suffer from severe air pollution caused by vehicles, industries, and crop burning.

德里等城市由于车辆、工业和秸秆焚烧导致空气严重污染。

Dé lǐ děng chéng shì yóu yú chē liàng, gōng yè hé jié gǎn fén shāo dǎo zhì kōng qì yán zhòng wū rǎn.

Water Pollution

水污染

Shuǐ wū rǎn

Rivers like the Ganges face pollution due to sewage discharge and industrial waste.

恒河等河流因污水排放和工业废物而污染。

Héng hé děng hé liú yīn wū shuǐ pái fàng hé gōng yè fèi wù ér wū rǎn.

Deforestation 森林砍伐 Sēn lín kǎn fá

Deforestation for agriculture and urbanization impacts biodiversity and climate.

由于农业和城市化导致的森林砍伐影响生物多样性和气候。

Yóu yú nóng yè hé chéng shì huà dǎo zhì de sēn lín kǎn fá yǐng xiǎng shēng wù duō yàng xì hé qì hòu.

Plastic Waste

塑料垃圾

Sù liào lā jī

Plastic pollution is a significant problem in cities and oceans.

塑料污染是城市和海洋中的重大问题。

Sù liào wū rǎn shì chéng shì hé hǎi yáng zhōng de zhòng dà wèn tí.

3. Initiatives to Promote Environmental Awareness

3. 提高环境意识的举措

Tí gāo huán jìng yì shí de jǔ cuò

Swachh Bharat Abhiyan (Clean India Mission)

清洁印度运动

Qīng jié Yìn dù yùn dòng

A government program to promote cleanliness and reduce waste.

一个政府项目，旨在推动清洁和减少垃圾。

Yí gè zhèng fǔ xiàng mù, zhǐ zài tuī dòng qīng jié hé jiǎn shǎo lā jī.

Afforestation Campaigns

植树造林活动

Zhí shù zào lín huó dòng

Programs to increase forest cover and combat climate change.

旨在增加森林覆盖率，抵抗气候变化的活动。

Zhǐ zài zēng jiā sēn lín fù gài lǜ, dǐ kàng qì hòu biàn huà de huó dòng.

India's unique geography and growing environmental challenges highlight the need for sustainable development and environmental awareness.

印度独特的地理环境和不断增长的环境挑战凸显了可持续发展与环境意识的重要性。

Yìn dù dú tè de dì lǐ huán jìng hé bù duàn zēng zhǎng de huán jìng tiǎo zhàn tū xiǎn le kě chí xù fā zhǎn yǔ huán jìng yì shí de zhòng yào xìng.

Lesson 22

Indian Art, Architecture, and Heritage

印度的艺术、建筑与遗产 Yìn dù de yì shù, jiàn zhù yǔ yí chǎn

India is a land of diverse cultural heritage, with a history that spans thousands of years. Its art, architecture, and heritage reflect a rich blend of traditions, religions, and influences. From ancient temples to Mughal monuments, from classical dances to intricate paintings, India's cultural legacy is a testament to its creativity and spirituality.

印度是一个文化遗产多样的国家，拥有数千年的悠久历史。印度的艺术、建筑和遗产反映了传统、宗教和各种影响的融合。从古老的寺庙到莫卧儿纪念碑，从古典舞蹈到精美的绘画，印度的文化遗产见证了其创造力与精神性。

Yìn dù shì yí gè wén huà yí chǎn duō yàng de guó jiā, yǒu yǒu shù qiān nián de yǒu jiǔ lì shǐ. Yìn dù de yì shù, jiàn zhù hé yí chǎn fǎn yǐng le chuán tǒng, zōng jiào hé gè zhǒng yǐng xiǎng de róng hé. Cóng gǔ lǎo de sì miào dào Mò wò ér jì niàn bēi, cóng gǔ diǎn wǔ dǎo dào jīng měi de huì huà, Yìn dù de wén huà yí chǎn jiàn zhèng le qí chuàng zào lì yǔ jīng shén xìng.

Indian Art 印度的艺术 Yìn dù de yì shù

Indian art includes a wide variety of forms such as paintings, sculptures, dance, and music, each with its unique regional style and historical significance.

印度的艺术包括绘画、雕塑、舞蹈和音乐等多种形式，每种形式都有其独特的地方风格和历史意义。

Yìn dù de yì shù bāo kuò huì huà, diāo sù, wǔ dǎo hé yīn yuè děng duō zhǒng xíng shì, měi zhǒng xíng shì dōu yǒu qí dú tè de dì fāng fēng gé hé lì shǐ yì yì.

Paintings 绘画 Huì huà

Indian paintings range from ancient cave paintings like the Ajanta murals to Mughal miniatures and modern art. Each style, such as Madhubani and Tanjore, showcases Indian aesthetics and storytelling.

印度绘画从阿旃陀石窟壁画到莫卧儿微型画和现代艺术。不同风格，如马杜巴尼画和坦贾武尔画，展示了印度的美学和叙事风格。

Yìn dù huì huà cóng Ā zhān tuó shí kū bì huà dào Mò wò ér wēi xíng huà hé xiàn dài yì shù. Bù tóng fēng gé, rú Mǎ dù bā ní huà hé Tǎn jiǎ wǔ ěr huà, zhǎn shì le Yìn dù de měi xué hé xù shì fēng gé.

Dance and Music 舞蹈和音乐 Wǔ dǎo hé yīn yuè

India is home to classical dance forms like Bharatanatyam, Kathak, and Odissi, which combine rhythm, expression, and storytelling. Traditional music, including Hindustani and Carnatic styles, forms the soul of Indian art.

印度拥有婆罗多舞、卡塔克舞和奥迪西舞等古典舞蹈形式，融合了节奏、表情与叙事。传统音乐，包括印度斯坦音乐和卡纳提克音乐，构成了印度艺术的灵魂。

Yìn dù yǒu yǒu Pó luó duō wǔ, Kǎ tǎ kè wǔ hé Ào dí xī wǔ děng gǔ diǎn wǔ dǎo xíng shì, róng hé le jié zòu, biǎo qíng yǔ xù shì. Chuán tǒng yīn yuè, bāo kuò Yìn dù sī tǎn yīn yuè hé Kǎ nà tí kè yīn yuè, gòu chéng le Yìn dù yì shù de líng hún.

Sculptures 雕塑 Diāo sù

Ancient Indian sculptures, such as those seen in Khajuraho and Ellora, depict religious themes and intricate craftsmanship.

印度古代雕塑，如卡久拉霍和埃洛拉的雕塑，体现了宗教主题和精湛的工艺。

Yìn dù gǔ dài diāo sù, rú Kǎ jiǔ lā huò hé Āi luò lā de diāo sù, tǐ xiàn le zōng jiào zhǔ tí hé jīng zhàn de gōng yì.

Indian Architecture 印度的建筑 Yìn dù de jiàn zhù

Indian architecture reflects the cultural, religious, and historical evolution of the country. It includes ancient, medieval, and colonial styles.

印度的建筑反映了国家的文化、宗教和历史演变，包括古代、中世纪和殖民时期的风格。

Yìn dù de jiàn zhù fǎn yìng le guó jiā de wén huà, zōng jiào hé lì shǐ yǎn biàn, bāo kuò gǔ dài, zhōng shì jì hé zhí mín shí qí de fēng gé.

Temples 寺庙 Sì miào

Hindu, Jain, and Buddhist temples like Konark Sun Temple and Mahabodhi Temple are famous for their intricate carvings and spiritual significance.

印度教、耆那教和佛教寺庙，如科纳克太阳神庙和摩诃菩提寺，以精美的雕刻和深远的宗教意义而闻名。

Yìn dù jiào, Qí nà jiào hé Fó jiào sì miào, rú Kē nà kè Tài yáng shén miào hé Mó hé pú tí sì, yǐ jīng měi de diāo kè hé shēn yuǎn de zōng jiào yì yì ér wén míng.

Mughal Architecture 莫卧儿建筑 Mò wò ér jiàn zhù

Structures like the Taj Mahal and Red Fort showcase Persian influences, grand domes, and symmetrical designs.

泰姬陵和红堡等建筑展示了波斯风格、宏伟的穹顶和对称设计。

Tài jī líng hé Hóng bǎo děng jiàn zhù zhǎn shì le Bō sī fēng gé, hóng wěi de qióng dǐng hé duì chèn shè jì.

Colonial Architecture 殖民时期建筑 Zhí mín shí qí jiàn zhù

British colonial structures like the Victoria Memorial and Gateway of India combine European styles with Indian elements.

英国殖民时期的建筑，如维多利亚纪念堂和印度门，融合了欧洲风格与印度元素。

Yīng guó zhí mín shí qí de jiàn zhù, rú Wéi duō lì yà jì niàn táng hé Yìn dù mén, róng hé le Ōu zhōu fēng gé yǔ Yìn dù yuán sù.

India's heritage sites are protected through government initiatives like UNESCO programs, promoting tourism and cultural preservation.

印度的遗产地通过政府倡导的保护计划和联合国教科文组织项目加以保护，推动旅游业和

Cultural Protection文化保护。Wén huà bǎo hù.

The government of India, along with various organizations, works to maintain and protect these heritage sites through laws, guidelines, and international collaborations. Efforts such as the restoration of ancient temples, preservation of historical monuments, and protection of wildlife sanctuaries help ensure that India's rich heritage is passed down to future generations while simultaneously promoting sustainable tourism.

印度政府与各个组织合作，通过法律、指南和国际合作，努力维护和保护这些遗产地。恢复古代寺庙、保护历史遗迹和保护野生动物保护区等工作，帮助确保印度丰富的遗产能传承给未来的世代，同时促进可持续的旅游业。

Yìn dù zhèng fǔ yǔ gè gè zǔ zhī hé zuò, tōng guò fǎ lǚ, zhǐ nán hé guó jì hé zuò, nǚ lì wéi hù hé bǎo hù zhèxiē yí chǎn dì. Huī fù gǔ dài sì miào, bǎo hù lì shǐ yí jì hé bǎo hù yě shēng dòng wù bǎo hù qū děng gōng zuò, bāng zhù què bǎo Yìn dù fēng fù de yí chǎn néng chuán chéng gěi wèi lái de shì dài, tóng shí cù jìn kě chí xù de lǚ yóu yè.

Many heritage sites in India are also linked to religious practices and have a deep spiritual significance. These sacred places attract pilgrims and tourists alike, contributing to the economy and cultural exchange. The balance between preserving these sites and accommodating the needs of tourists is crucial in maintaining India's cultural integrity.

印度的许多遗产地也与宗教活动密切相关，并具有深刻的精神意义。这些圣地吸引了朝圣者和游客，为经济和文化交流做出了贡献。保护这些遗产地与满足游客需求之间的平衡，对于保持印度文化的完整性至关重要。

Yìn dù de xǔ duō yí chǎn dì yě yǔ zōng jiào huó dòng mì qiè xiāng guān, bìng jù yǒu shēn kè de jīng shén yì yì. Zhèxiē shèng dì xī yǐn le cháo shèng zhě hé yóu kè, wéi jīng jì hé wén huà jiāo liú zuò chū le gòng xiàn. Bǎo hù zhèxiē yí chǎn dì yǔ mǎn zú yóu kè xū qiú zhī jiān de píng héng, duì yú bǎo chí Yìn dù wén huà de wán zhěng xìng zhì guān zhòng yào.

The tourism industry in India relies heavily on its rich heritage, and preserving these sites ensures that India can continue to share its history and culture with the world. Through collective efforts, India's heritage will remain a living testament to its past, inspiring future generations to value and protect their cultural inheritance.

印度的旅游业在很大程度上依赖于其丰富的遗产，保护这些遗产地确保印度能够继续与世界分享其历史和文化。通过集体努力，印度的遗产将继续作为其历史的活生生的见证，激励未来的世代珍视并保护他们的文化遗产。

Yìn dù de lǚ yóu yè zài hěn dà chéng dù shàng yī lǎi yú qí fēng fù de yí chǎn, bǎo hù zhèxiē yí chǎn dì què bǎo Yìn dù néng gòu jì xù yǔ shì jiè fēn xiǎng qí lì shǐ hé wén huà. Tōng guò jí tǐ nǚ lì, Yìn dù de yí chǎn jiāng jì xù zuò wéi qí lì shǐ de huó shēng shēng de jiàn zhèng, jī lì wèi lái de shì dài zhēn shì bìng bǎo hù tā men de wén huà yí chǎn.

Lesson 23

A Mock Conversation between Guide and Chinese Tourists

导游与中国游客的模拟对话

游览德里、阿格拉、斋浦尔的中国游客与导游的详细对话。

A detailed conversation between the Chinese tourists and the guide visiting Delhi, Agra, and Jaipur.

游客A: 你好，我们计划来印度旅游，但对一些细节不太了解。你能给我们一些建议吗？

Yóukè A: Nǐ hǎo, wǒmen jì huà lái Yīndù lǚ yóu, dàn duì yī xiē xì jié bù tài liǎo jiě. Nǐ néng gěi wǒmen yī xiē jiàn yì ma?

Tourist A: Hello, we are planning to travel to India, but we don't know much about the details. Can you give us some advice?

导游: 当然可以！印度是一个文化丰富的国家，您的行程中是否有特别的兴趣或需求？

Dǎoyóu: Dāngrán kě yǐ! Yīndù shì yī gè wén huà fēng fù de guó jiā, nǐ men de xíng chéng zhōng shì fǒu yǒu tè bié de xìng qù huò xū qiú?

Guide: Of course! India is a country with rich culture. Do you have any specific interests or requirements in your itinerary?

游客B: 我们对历史和文化很感兴趣，特别是印度的古迹和宗教景点。

Yóukè B: Wǒmen duì lì shǐ hé wén huà hěn gǎn xìng qù, tè bié shì Yīndù de gǔ jī hé zōng jiào jǐng diǎn.

Tourist B: We are very interested in history and culture, especially historical sites and religious landmarks in India.

导游: 了解了。如果您们对历史和宗教景点感兴趣，我建议你们在德里、阿格拉和斋浦尔多停留一些时间，这些地方有很多著名的景点。

Dǎoyóu: Liǎo jiě le. Rú guǒ nǐ men duì lì shǐ hé zōng jiào jǐng diǎn gǎn xìng qù, wǒ jiàn yì nǐ men zài Dé lǐ, Ā gē lā hé Zhāi pǔ

ěr duō tíngliú yīxiē shíjiān, zhèxiē dìfāng yǒu hěn duō zhùmíng de jǐngdiǎn.

Guide: Got it. If you're interested in historical and religious landmarks, I suggest you spend more time in Delhi, Agra, and Jaipur. These places have many famous attractions.

游客A: 听起来很不错。你能为我们安排一些经典的旅游景点吗?

Yóukè A: Tīng qílái hěn bùcuò. Nǐ néng wèi wǒmen ānpái yīxiē jīngdiǎn de lǚyóu jǐngdiǎn ma?

Tourist A: That sounds great. Can you arrange some classic tourist spots for us?

导游: 当然可以! 在德里, 我建议参观红堡和胡马雍陵, 这些都是非常有名的历史遗址。在阿格拉, 您们一定不能错过泰姬陵, 这是印度最著名的建筑之一。斋浦尔的琥珀堡也是一个必去的地方。

Dǎoyóu: Dāngrán kěyǐ! Zài Dé lǐ, wǒ jiànyì cānguān Hóngbǎo hé Húmayōng líng, zhèxiē dōu shì fēicháng yǒumíng de lìshǐ yízhǐ. Zài Ā gé lā, nǐmen yíding bù néng cuòguò Tàijī líng, zhè shì Yīndù zuì zhùmíng de jiànzhù zhī yī. Zhāi pǔ ěr de Hǔpǔ bǎo yě shì yīgè bì qù de dìfāng.

Guide: Of course! In Delhi, I recommend visiting the Red Fort and Humayun's Tomb, both of which are very famous historical sites. In Agra, you must visit the Taj Mahal, one of India's most famous buildings. The Amber Fort in Jaipur is also a must-see.

游客B: 太好了! 我们还了解一下交通问题。印度的交通怎么样? 我们应该选择什么方式出行?

Yóukè B: Tài hǎo le! Wǒmen hái xiǎng liǎojiě yīxià jiāotōng wèntí. Yīndù de jiāotōng zěnmeyàng? Wǒmen yīnggāi xuǎnzé shénme fāngshì chūxíng?

Tourist B: That's great! We would also like to know more about transportation. How is the transportation in India? What kind of transport should we choose?

导游: 印度的交通可能会比其他国家复杂一些, 特别是在大城市里。建议您们在城市间可以选择飞机或者火车, 火车是一种非常有体验, 而且价格相对合理。在城市内部, 我们可以安排租车或使用出租车, 虽然有时候交通会比较拥堵。

Dǎoyóu: Yīndù de jiāotōng kěnéng huì bǐ qítā guójiā fùzá yīxiē, tèbié shì zài dà chéngshì lǐ. Jiànyì nǐmen zài chéngshì jiān kěyǐ xuǎnzé fēijī huòzhě huòchē, huòchē shì yī zhōng fēicháng yǒuqù de tǐyàn, érqǐ jiàgé xiāngduì hé lǐ. Zài chéngshì nèi bù, wǒmen kěyǐ ānpái zūchē huò shǐyòng chūzūchē, suīrán yǒu shíhòu jiāotōng huì bǐjiào yōngdǔ.

Guide: Transportation in India can be more complex than in other countries, especially in large cities. I suggest you take flights or trains between cities, as trains are a fun experience and relatively affordable. Within the cities, we can arrange car rentals or use taxis, although traffic can sometimes be quite congested.

游客A: 我们能选择火车旅行吗? 听说印度的火车很有名。

Yóukè A: Wǒmen néng xuǎnzé huòchē lǚxíng ma? Tīng shuō Yīndù de huòchē hěn yǒumíng.

Tourist A: Can we choose train travel? I heard Indian trains are very famous.

导游: 当然可以! 印度的火车旅行是一个非常独特的体验, 尤其是卧铺火车, 可以让您们更好地感受印度的地方风情。

Dǎoyóu: Dāngrán kěyǐ! Yīndù de huòchē lǚxíng shì yīgè fēicháng dúte de tǐyàn, yóuqí shì wòpù huòchē, kěyǐ ràng nǐmen gèng hǎo de gǎnshòu Yīndù de dìfāng fēngqíng.

Guide: Of course! Train travel in India is a very unique experience, especially sleeper trains, which allow you to better experience the local culture of India.

游客B: 听起来很有趣。你们是否提供导游服务?

Yóukè B: Tīng qílái hěn yǒuqù. Nǐmen shìfǒu tígōng dǎoyóu fúwù?

Tourist B: That sounds interesting. Do you provide guide services?

导游: 是的, 我们提供全程导游服务, 帮助您更好地了解每个景点的历史和文化。

Dǎoyóu: Shì de, wǒmen tígōng quánchéng dǎoyóu fúwù, bāngzhù nǐmen gèng hǎo de liǎojiě měi gè jǐngdiǎn de lìshǐ hé wénhuà.

Guide: Yes, we provide full-time guide services to help you better understand the history and culture of each attraction.

游客A: 听起来很棒。你能为我们安排好所有的行程吗?

Yóukè A: Tīng qílái hěn bàng. Nǐ néng wèi wǒmen ānpái hǎo suǒyǒu de xíngchéng ma?

Tourist A: That sounds wonderful. Can you arrange the entire itinerary for us?

导游: 当然, 我会为您们安排好所有的行程、交通和住宿。请您们放心, 您的旅程会非常顺利和愉快!

Dǎoyóu: Dāngrán, wǒ huì wèi nǐmen ānpái hǎo suǒyǒu de xíngchéng, jiāotōng hé zhùsù. Qǐng nǐmen fāngxīn, nǐ de lǚchéng huì fēicháng shùnlì hé yúkuài!

Guide: Of course, I will arrange everything for you, including the itinerary, transportation, and accommodation. Please rest assured, your trip will be smooth and enjoyable!

游客A: 你好, 我们计划去印度旅行, 想去德里、阿格拉和斋浦尔。能帮我们预定火车票、机票、租车、酒店、游轮和旅游套餐吗?

Yóukè A: Nǐ hǎo, wǒmen jìhuà qù Yīndù lǚxíng, xiǎng qù Dé lǐ, Ā gé lā hé Zhāi pǔ ěr. Néng bāng wǒmen yùdìng huòchē piào, jīpiào, zūchē, jiǔdiàn, yóulún hé lǚyóu tàocān ma?

Booking Tickets

Tourist A: Hello, we are planning a trip to India, and we want to visit Delhi, Agra, and Jaipur. Can you help us book train tickets, air tickets, car rentals, hotels, cruises, and tour packages?

导游: 当然可以! 你们打算先从哪里开始呢? 是先到德里, 还是从其他地方出发?

Dǎoyóu: Dāngrán kěyǐ! Nǐmen dāsuan xiān cóng nǎlǐ kāishǐ ne? Shì xiān dào Dé lǐ, háishì cóng qítā dìfāng chūfā?

Guide: Of course! Where do you plan to start from? Are you starting from Delhi, or from somewhere else?

游客B: 我们打算先到德里。请帮我们安排从北京到德里的机票。

Yóukè B: Wǒmen dāsuan xiān dào Dé lǐ. Qǐng bāng wǒmen ānpái cóng Běijīng dào Dé lǐ de jīpiào.

Tourist B: We plan to start in Delhi. Please help us book a flight from Beijing to Delhi.

导游: 好的, 从北京到德里的航班大约有6个小时。你们想选择哪个时间的航班?

Dǎoyóu: Hǎo de, cóng Běijīng dào Dé lǐ de hángbān dàyuē yǒu 6 gè xiǎoshí. Nǐmen xiǎng xuǎnzé nǎge shíjiān de hángbān?

Guide: Okay, flights from Beijing to Delhi are about 6 hours long. What time would you like to depart?

游客A: 我们想选择早上的航班, 最好是9点前的。

Yóukè A: Wǒmen xiǎng xuǎnzé zǎoshàng de hángbān, zuì hǎo shì 9 diǎn qián de.

Tourist A: We would like to choose a morning flight, preferably before 9 AM.

导游: 最早的是8点30分的航班, 飞行时间大约6小时。您觉得怎么样?

Dǎoyóu: Zuì zǎo de shì 8 diǎn 30 fēn de hángbān, fēixíng shíjiān dàyuē 6 xiǎoshí. Nín juéde zěnmeyàng?

Guide: The earliest flight is at 8:30 AM, and the flight time is about 6 hours. How does that sound?

游客B: 这个时间可以, 定这个航班吧。

Yóukè B: Zhège shíjiān kěyǐ, dìng zhège hángbān ba.

Tourist B: That time is fine. Let's book this flight.

导游: 好的, 接下来是火车票, 您们打算从德里到阿格拉坐火车吗?

Dǎoyóu: Hǎo de, jiēxiàlái shì huǒchē piào, nǐmen dāsuan cóng Dé lǐ dào Ā gé lǎ zuò huǒchē ma?

Guide: Okay, next is the train tickets. Do you plan to take the train from Delhi to Agra?

游客A: 是的, 我们从德里到阿格拉, 需要预定火车票。可以推荐一下吗?

Yóukè A: Shì de, wǒmen cóng Dé lǐ dào Ā gé lǎ, xūyào yùdìng huǒchē piào. Kěyǐ tuījiàn yīxiē ma?

Tourist A: Yes, we are traveling from Delhi to Agra, and we need to book train tickets. Can you recommend some options?

导游: 我们有很多从德里到阿格拉的火车, 最快的是超级快车, 车程大约2小时。您们想选择什么时候的车次?

Dǎoyóu: Wǒmen yǒu hěnduō cóng Dé lǐ dào Ā gé lǎ de huǒchē, zuì kuài de shì chāojí kuàichē, chēchéng dàyuē 2 xiǎoshí. Nǐmen xiǎng xuǎnzé shénme shíhòu de chēcì?

Guide: We have many trains from Delhi to Agra, and the fastest is the super-fast train, with a travel time of about 2 hours. What time would you like to depart?

游客B: 我们希望下午2点出发。

Yóukè B: Wǒmen xīwàng xiàwǔ 2 diǎn chūfā.

Tourist B: We would like to depart at 2 PM in the afternoon.

导游: 好的, 下午2点的超级快车已经预定好了。接下来是从阿格拉到斋浦尔的火车, 您们要选择什么时候出发呢?

Dǎoyóu: Hǎo de, xiàwǔ 2 diǎn de chāojí kuàichē yǐjīng yùdìng hǎo le. Jiēxiàlái shì cóng Ā gé lǎ dào Zhāi pǔ ěr de huǒchē, nǐmen xiǎng xuǎnzé shénme shíhòu chūfā ne?

Guide: Okay, the 2 PM super-fast train has been booked. Next, for the train from Agra to Jaipur, when would you like to depart?

游客A: 我们打算第二天上午出发, 能推荐早一点的车次吗?

Yóukè A: Wǒmen dāsuan dì èr tiān zǎoshàng chūfā, néng tuījiàn zǎo yīdiǎn de chēcì ma?

Tourist A: We plan to depart the next morning. Can you recommend an earlier train?

导游: 最早的火车是早上6点30分出发, 车程大约4小时。

Dǎoyóu: Zuì zǎo de huǒchē shì zǎoshàng 6 diǎn 30 fēn chūfā, chēchéng dàyuē 4 xiǎoshí.

Guide: The earliest train is at 6:30 AM, with a travel time of about 4 hours.

游客B: 那就定早上6点30分的车次吧。

Yóukè B: Nà jiù dìng zǎoshàng 6 diǎn 30 fēn de chēcì ba.

Tourist B: Then let's book the 6:30 AM train.

导游: 好的, 火车票都已经安排好了。接下来, 您们打算租车吗? 在这些城市里我们可以安排车辆接送。

Dǎoyóu: Hǎo de, huǒchē piào dōu yǐjīng ānpái hǎo le. Jiēxiàlái, nǐmen dǎsuàn zūchē ma? Zài zhèxiē chéngshì lǐ wǒmen kěyǐ ānpái chēliàng jiē sòng.

Guide: Okay, all the train tickets are arranged. Now, would you like to rent a car? We can arrange transportation in these cities.

游客A: 是的, 我们需要一辆车从德里到阿格拉, 然后从阿格拉到斋浦尔。

Yóukè A: Shì de, wǒmen xūyào yī liàng chē cóng Dé lǐ dào Ā gé lǎ, ránhòu cóng Ā gé lǎ dào Zhāi pǔ ěr.

Tourist A: Yes, we need a car from Delhi to Agra and then from Agra to Jaipur.

导游: 我们可以提供司机服务的租车, 您需要哪种类型的车呢?

Dǎoyóu: Wǒmen kěyǐ tígōng sījī fúwù de zūchē, nǐmen xūyào nǎ zhǒng lèixíng de chē ne?

Guide: We can offer a car with a driver. What type of car would you like?

游客B: 我们需要一辆中型车, 足够舒适就好。

Yóukè B: Wǒmen xūyào yī liàng zhōngxíng chē, zúgòu shūshì jiù hǎo.

Tourist B: We need a mid-sized car, just comfortable enough.

导游: 好的, 中型车的租赁费用是每天1500卢比。接下来, 关于酒店, 您们是希望住五星级还是四星级酒店?

Dǎoyóu: Hǎo de, zhōngxíng chē de zūlìn fèiyòng shì měitiān 1500 lú bǐ. Jiēxiàlái, guānyú jiǔdiàn, nǐmen shì xīwàng zhù wǔxīngjí háishì sìxīngjí jiǔdiàn?

Guide: Okay, the rental for a mid-sized car is 1500 INR per day. Next, regarding hotels, would you like to stay in a 5-star or 4-star hotel?

游客A: 我们想住四星级的酒店, 靠近市中心的。

Yóukè A: Wǒmen xiǎng zhù sìxīngjí de jiǔdiàn, kào jìn shì zhōngxīn de.

Tourist A: We would like to stay in a 4-star hotel, close to the city center.

导游: 我们有几家四星级酒店, 位置都非常方便。您们在德里、阿格拉和斋浦尔都需要酒店吗?

Dǎoyóu: Wǒmen yǒu jǐ jiā sìxīngjí jiǔdiàn, wèizhì dōu fēicháng fāngbiàn. Nǐmen zài Dé lǐ, Ā gé lǎ hé Zhāi pǔ ěr dōu xūyào jiǔdiàn ma?

Guide: We have several 4-star hotels, all in very convenient locations. Do you need hotels in Delhi, Agra, and Jaipur?

游客B: 对, 我们需要在三个城市都预定酒店。

Yóukè B: Duì, wǒmen xūyào zài sān gè chéngshì dōu yùdìng jiǔdiàn.

Tourist B: Yes, we need hotels in all three cities.

导游: 好的, 我会为您安排好。关于游轮, 您们对在印度进行游轮旅行感兴趣吗?

Dǎoyóu: Hǎo de, wǒ huì wèi nín ānpái hǎo. Guānyú yóulún, nǐmen duì zài Yīndù jìnxíng yóulún lǚxíng gǎn xìngqù ma?

Guide: Okay, I will arrange that for you. Now, regarding cruises, are you interested in a cruise in India?

游客A: 我们对在斋浦尔附近的湖上游轮有兴趣。

Yóukè A: Wǒmen duì zài Zhāi pǔ ěr fùjìn de hú shàng yóulún yǒu xìngqù.

Tourist A: We are interested in a lake cruise near Jaipur.

导游: 斋浦尔附近的湖泊确实有一些不错的游轮体验, 您们想要安排下午的游船还是傍晚的游船?

Dǎoyóu: Zhāi pǔ ěr fùjìn de húpō quèshí yǒu yīxiē bùcuò de yóulún tǐyàn, nǐmen xiǎng yào ānpái xiàwǔ de yóuchuán háishì bàngwǎn de yóuchuán?

Guide: There are indeed some great cruise experiences on the lakes near Jaipur. Would you like to arrange an afternoon cruise or an evening one?

游客B: 我们喜欢傍晚的游船, 能够欣赏日落。

Yóukè B: Wǒmen xǐhuān bàngwǎn de yóuchuán, nénggòu xīnshǎng rìluò.

Tourist B: We prefer the evening cruise to enjoy the sunset.

导游: 好的, 傍晚的游船我会为您安排。最后, 关于旅游套餐, 您们希望参加什么类型的旅游团?

Dǎoyóu: Hǎo de, bàngwǎn de yóuchuán wǒ huì wèi nín ānpái. Zuìhòu, guānyú lǚyóu tàocān, nǐmen xīwàng cānjiā shénme lèixíng de lǚyóu tuán?

Guide: Alright, I will arrange the evening cruise for you. Finally, regarding tour packages, what kind of tour would you like to join?

游客A: 我们对历史和文化类的套餐感兴趣, 特别是参观古迹和博物馆。

Yóukè A: Wǒmen duì lìshǐ hé wénhuà lèi de tàocān gǎn xìngqù, tèbié shì cānguān gǔjī hé bówùguǎn.

Tourist A: We are interested in history and culture packages, especially visiting historical sites and museums.

导游: 我们有一个为期四天的文化之旅套餐, 包括德里、阿格拉和斋浦尔的主要景点。您们觉得怎么样?

Dǎoyóu: Wǒmen yǒu yīgè wèi qī sì tiān de wénhuà zhī lǚ tào cān, bāokuò Dé lǐ, Ā gē lā hé Zhāi pǔ ěr de zhǔyào jǐngdiǎn. Nǐmen juéde zěnmeyàng?

Guide: We have a 4-day cultural tour package that covers the major attractions in Delhi, Agra, and Jaipur. How does that sound?

游客B: 听起来很不错, 那就选择这个套餐吧。

Yóukè B: Tīng qǐlái hěnbùcuò, nà jiù xuǎnzé zhège tàocān ba.

Tourist B: That sounds great, let's go with this package.

导游: 好的, 所有的安排我会尽快确认, 并发送详细信息给您。祝您们旅途愉快!

Dǎoyóu: Hǎo de, suǒyǒu de ānpái wǒ huì jǐnkuài quèrèn, bìng fāsòng xiángxì xìnxī gěi nín. Zhù nǐmen lǚtú yúkuài!

Guide: Alright, I will confirm all the arrangements and send you the details soon. Wishing you a pleasant trip!

A conversation between a guide and Chinese tourists, where the guide provides advice and consultation on Web Check-in, Boarding Pass, and Airport Formalities.

游客A: 你好, 我们要从印度回中国了。能帮我们了解一下机场的手续和登机流程吗?

Yóukè A: Nǐ hǎo, wǒmen yào cóng Yīndù huí Zhōngguó le. Néng bāng wǒmen liǎojiě yíxià jīchǎng de shǒuxù hé dēngjī liúchéng ma?

Tourist A: Hello, we are flying back to China from India. Could you help us understand the airport formalities and the boarding process?

导游: 当然可以! 在印度的机场, 通常都提供网页值机服务。你们可以提前通过航空公司的网站或手机APP完成网络值机, 这样可以节省排队的时间。

Dǎoyóu: Dāngrán kěyǐ! Zài Yīndù de jīchǎng, tōngcháng dōu tígōng wǎngyè zhí jī fúwù. Nǐmen kěyǐ tíqián tōngguò hángkōng gōngsī de wǎngzhàn huò shǒujī APP wánchéng wǎngluò zhí jī, zhèyàng kěyǐ jiéshěng pái duì de shíjiān.

Guide: Of course! At the airports in India, they usually offer web check-in services. You can check in online in advance via the airline's website or mobile app, which will save you time from queuing.

游客B: 听起来不错, 网络值机后, 我们要怎么拿登机牌呢?

Yóukè B: Tīng qǐlái bùcuò, wǎngluò zhí jī hòu, wǒmen yào zěnmeyàng ná dēngjīpái ne?

Tourist B: Sounds good! After web check-in, how do we get our boarding passes?

导游: 如果你们通过网页或APP完成了值机, 通常会得到电子登机牌, 您可以直接在手机上查看。如果您们想要纸质登机牌, 您可以在机场的自助值机机或者航空公司柜台打印登机牌。

Dǎoyóu: Rúguǒ nǐmen tōngguò wǎngyè huò APP wánchéng le zhí jī, tōngcháng huì dédào diànzǐ dēngjīpái, nín kěyǐ zhíjiē zài shǒujī shàng chá kàn. Rúguǒ nǐmen xiǎng yào zhǐzhì dēngjīpái, nín kěyǐ zài jīchǎng de zìzhù zhí jī jī huòzhě hángkōng gōngsī guítái dǎyìn dēngjīpái.

Guide: If you complete the check-in through the website or app, you will usually receive an electronic boarding pass, which you can check directly on your phone. If you prefer a paper boarding pass, you can print it at the self-check-in kiosks or at the airline's counter at the airport.

游客A: 那我们到了机场后, 除了值机以外还需要做什么呢?

Yóukè A: Nà wǒmen dào le jīchǎng hòu, chúle zhí jī yǐwài hái xūyào zuò shénmeyàng ne?

Tourist A: After we arrive at the airport, what else do we need to do besides checking in?

导游: 到了机场后, 您需要办理行李托运手续。如果有托运行李, 可以前往航空公司柜台或者自助托运机办理。如果没有托运行李, 就可以直接前往安检区域。

Dǎoyóu: Dào le jīchǎng hòu, nǐmen xūyào bànlǐ xínglǐ tuōyùn shǒuxù. Rúguǒ yǒu tuōyùn xínglǐ, kěyǐ qiánwǎng hángkōng gōngsī guítái huòzhě zìzhù tuōyùn jī bànlǐ. Rúguǒ méiyǒu tuōyùn xínglǐ, jiù kěyǐ zhíjiē qiánwǎng ān jiǎn qūyù.

Guide: After you arrive at the airport, you will need to check in your luggage if you have any. You can go to the airline counter or use the self-service kiosks for check-in. If you don't have checked baggage, you can head directly to the security check area.

游客B: 安检之后, 我们应该做什么?

Yóukè B: Ān jiǎn zhīhòu, wǒmen yīnggāi zuò shénmeyàng?

Tourist B: After security check, what should we do next?

导游: 通过安检后, 您就可以前往登机口。请注意查看登机口的显示屏, 确保登机口没有变化。如果有时间, 您可以在登机口附近的候机区休息或购物。

Dǎoyóu: Tōngguò ān jiǎn hòu, nǐmen jiù kěyǐ qiánwǎng dēngjī kǒu. Qǐng zhùyì chá kàn dēngjī kǒu de xiǎnshì píng, quèbǎo dēngjī kǒu méiyǒu biànhuà. Rúguǒ yǒu shíjiān, nǐmen kěyǐ zài dēngjī kǒu fùjìn de hòujī qū xiūxi huò gòuwù.

Guide: After passing security, you can go to the boarding gate. Make sure to check the display screens for any gate changes. If you have time, you can rest or shop in the waiting area near the gate.

游客A: 如果登机时间到了, 怎么才能确认我们可以开始登机呢?

Yóukè A: Rúguǒ dēngjī shíjiān dào le, zěnmeyàng cáinéng quèrèn wǒmen kěyǐ kāishǐ dēngjī ne?

Tourist A: When it's time to board, how do we confirm that we can start boarding?

导游: 通常登机时, 航空公司会根据座位号按顺序开始登机。请留意广播和显示屏, 工作人员会呼叫您的座位号并允许您登机。

Dǎoyóu: Tōngcháng dēngjī shí, hángkōng gōngsī huì gēnjù zuòwèi hào àn shùnxù kāishǐ dēngjī. Qǐng liúyì guǎngbō hé xiǎnshì píng, gōngzuò rényuán huì hūjiào nín de zuòwèi hào bìng yǔnxǔ nín dēngjī.
Guide: Usually, during boarding, the airline will call passengers to board in order, based on seat numbers. Please pay attention to the announcements and display screens, as the staff will announce your seat number and allow you to board.

游客B: 了解了, 非常感谢! 这样看来, 我们的旅行应该会非常顺利。

Yóukè B: Liǎojiěle, fēicháng gǎnxiè! Zhèyàng kàn lái, wǒmen de lǚxíng yīnggāi huì fēicháng shùnlì.
Tourist B: Understood, thank you very much! It looks like our trip will go very smoothly.

导游: 不客气! 希望你们旅行愉快, 安全顺利。

Dǎoyóu: Bù kèqì! Xīwàng nimen de lǚxíng yúkuài, ānquán shùnlì.

Guide: You're welcome! I hope you have a pleasant, safe, and smooth journey.

Ticket Changes, Reissue, Cancellations, and Refunds:

游客A: 你好, 导游! 我们有个问题, 我们的机票可能需要更改, 能告诉我们如何办理机票改签吗?

Yóukè A: Nǐ hǎo, dǎoyóu! Wǒmen yǒu gè wèntí, wǒmen de jīpiào kěnéng xūyào gēnggǎi, néng gàosù wǒmen rúhé bànlǐ jīpiào gǎiqiān ma?

Tourist A: Hello, guide! We have a question. Our flight tickets might need to be changed. Can you tell us how to handle a ticket change?

导游: 当然可以! 如果您的机票需要更改, 您可以联系航空公司或者通过旅行社来办理。通常, 航空公司会根据票价的规定收取一定的手续费, 您可以选择更改日期、时间或航班。

Dǎoyóu: Dāngrán kěyǐ! Rúguǒ nín de jīpiào xūyào gēnggǎi, nín kěyǐ liánxì hángkōng gōngsī huòzhě tōngguò lǚxíngshè lái bànlǐ. Tōngcháng, hángkōng gōngsī huì gēnjù piàojià de guīdìng shōuxù fèi, nín kěyǐ xuǎnzé gēnggǎi rìqī, shíjiān huò hángbān.

Guide: Of course! If you need to change your ticket, you can contact the airline directly or go through the travel agency. Typically, the airline will charge a service fee according to the fare rules, and you can choose to change the date, time, or flight.

游客B: 如果我们无法更改机票, 能取消机票吗? 我们应该怎么做?

Yóukè B: Rúguǒ wǒmen wúfǎ gēnggǎi jīpiào, néng qǔxiāo jīpiào ma? Wǒmen yīnggāi zěnmě zuò?

Tourist B: If we cannot change the ticket, can we cancel it? What should we do?

导游: 如果您无法更改机票, 您可以申请取消。不过, 航空公司通常会根据票价的不同收取一定的取消费。如果是可退票, 您需要联系航空公司或旅行社办理。

Dǎoyóu: Rúguǒ nín wúfǎ gēnggǎi jīpiào, nín kěyǐ shēnqǐng qǔxiāo. Bùguò, hángkōng gōngsī tōngcháng huì gēnjù piàojià de bùtóng shōuxù fèi. Rúguǒ shì kě tuì piào, nín xūyào liánxì hángkōng gōngsī huò lǚxíngshè bànlǐ.

Guide: If you cannot change the ticket, you can apply for a cancellation. However, the airline will usually charge a cancellation fee depending on the ticket type. If it's a refundable ticket, you will need to contact the airline or travel agency to process the cancellation.

游客A: 如果我们取消了机票, 什么时候能收到退款呢?

Yóukè A: Rúguǒ wǒmen qǔxiāo le jīpiào, shénme shíhòu néng shōudào tuikuǎn ne?

Tourist A: If we cancel the ticket, when will we receive a refund?

导游: 一般来说, 退款的处理时间取决于航空公司的规定, 通常需要7到15个工作日。退款会通过原支付方式退还给您。

Dǎoyóu: Yībān lái shuō, tuikuǎn de chǔlǐ shíjiān qǔjué yú hángkōng gōngsī de guīdìng, tōngcháng xūyào 7 dào 15 gè gōngzuò rì. Tuikuǎn huì tōngguò yuán zhīfù fāngshì fǎnhuì gěi nín.

Guide: Generally, the processing time for refunds depends on the airline's policy, and it typically takes 7 to 15 business days. The refund will be returned to the original payment method.

游客B: 那如果我们的机票是特价票, 能退钱吗?

Yóukè B: Nà Rúguǒ wǒmen de jīpiào shì tèjià piào, néng tuì qián ma?

Tourist B: What if our ticket is a special promotion ticket? Can we get a refund?

导游: 如果是特价票, 通常是不退的, 或者会有非常高的取消费。不过, 如果航班被航空公司取消, 您通常可以要求全额退款。

Dǎoyóu: Rúguǒ shì tèjià piào, tōngcháng shì bù tuì de, huòzhě huì yǒu fēicháng gāo de qǔxiāo fèi. Bùguò, Rúguǒ hángbān bèi hángkōng gōngsī qǔxiāo, nín tōngcháng kěyǐ yāoqiú quán'èr tuikuǎn.

Guide: If it's a special promotion ticket, typically it is non-refundable, or it will have a very high cancellation fee. However, if the flight is canceled by the airline, you can usually request a full refund.

游客A: 如果我们需要重新出票, 怎么办?

Yóukè A: Rúguǒ wǒmen xūyào chóngxīn chūpiào, zěnmě bàn?

Tourist A: If we need to reissue the ticket, what should we do?

导游: 如果需要重新出票, 您可以直接联系航空公司或者旅行社。通常需要提供您的机票信息, 支付可能的重新出票费用, 然后航空公司会为您重新安排航班。

Dǎoyóu: Rúguǒ xūyào chóngxīn chūpiào, nín kěyǐ zhíjiē liánxì hángkōng gōngsī huòzhě lǚxíngshè. Tōngcháng xūyào tígōng nín de jīpiào xīnxi, zhīfù kěnéng de chóngxīn chūpiào fèi, ránhòu hángkōng gōngsī huì wèi nín chóngxīn ānpái hángbān.

Guide: If you need to reissue your ticket, you can contact the airline or travel agency directly. You will typically need to provide your ticket information, pay any reissue fees, and then the airline will rebook your flight.

游客B: 那我们需要提前申请吗?

Yóukè B: Nà wǒmen xūyào tíqián shēnqǐng ma?

Tourist B: Do we need to apply in advance for reissue?

导游: 是的, 最好提前联系航空公司, 尤其是在临近出发日期时, 票务变动会更加繁忙, 提前办理可以避免麻烦。

Dǎoyóu: Shì de, zuì hǎo tíqián liánxì hángkōng gōngsī, yóuqí shì zài línjìn chūfā rìqī shí, piàowù biàndòng huì gèng jiǎ fánmáng, tíqián bànlǐ kěyǐ bìmiǎn máfan.

Guide: Yes, it's best to contact the airline in advance, especially close to the departure date, as ticket changes become busier. Taking care of it early can help avoid complications.

游客A: 谢谢你的帮助! 现在我们对票务问题有了更清晰的了解。

Yóukè A: Xièxiè nǐ de bāngzhù! Xiànzài wǒmen duì piàowù wèntí yǒule gèng qīngxī de liǎojiě.

Tourist A: Thank you for your help! Now we have a clearer understanding of the ticket issues.

导游: 不客气! 如果还有其他问题, 随时告诉我。

Dǎoyóu: Bù kèqì! Rúguǒ hái yǒu qítā wèntí, suíshí gàosù wǒ.

Guide: You're welcome! If you have any more questions, feel free to let me know anytime.

Air Booking Procedures, Dos and Don'ts, Baggage Rules, and Excess Baggage Booking:

游客A: 你好, 导游! 我们了解一下关于机票预订的手续和注意事项。能帮忙解释一下吗?

Yóukè A: Nǐ hǎo, dǎoyóu! Wǒmen xiǎng liǎojiě yíxià guānyú jīpiào yùdìng de shǒuxù hé zhùyì shìxiàng. Néng bāngmáng jiěshì yíxià ma?

Tourist A: Hello, guide! We want to understand the procedures for booking flight tickets and what to watch out for. Can you help explain?

导游: 当然可以! 首先, 预订机票时, 确保您选择了正确的日期和时间。建议提前预订, 这样可以确保有座位并可能享受更好的价格。

Dǎoyóu: Dāngrán kěyǐ! Shǒuxiān, yùdìng jīpiào shí, quèbǎo nín xuǎnzé le zhèngquè de rìqī hé shíjiān. Jiànyì tíqián yùdìng, zhèyàng kěyǐ quèbǎo yǒu zuòwèi bìng kěnéng xiǎngshòu gèng hǎo de jiàgé.

Guide: Of course! First, when booking your flight ticket, make sure you've selected the correct date and time. It's recommended to book in advance, which ensures seat availability and possibly better prices.

游客B: 机票有些规则需要特别注意吗?

Yóukè B: Jīpiào yǒu xiē guīzé xūyào tèbié zhùyì ma?

Tourist B: Are there any specific rules about the ticket we should pay special attention to?

导游: 是的, 特别是机票的改签和取消规则。有些票可能不允许更改或者取消, 尤其是特价票。记得在购买时了解清楚这些条款。

Dǎoyóu: Shì de, tèbié shì jīpiào de gǎiqiān hé qǔxiāo guīzé. Yǒuxiē piào kěnéng bù yǔnxǔ gēnggǎi huòzhě qǔxiāo, yóuqí shì tèjià piào. Jìdé zài gòumǎi shí liǎojiě qīngchǔ zhèxiē tiáokuǎn.

Guide: Yes, especially the rules for ticket changes and cancellations. Some tickets may not allow changes or cancellations, especially promotional tickets. Make sure to check these terms when purchasing.

游客A: 另外, 我们需要注意关于行李的规定吗? 特别是超重行李。

Yóukè A: Língwài, wǒmen xūyào zhùyì guānyú xínglǐ de guīdìng ma? Tèbié shì chāo zhòng xínglǐ.

Tourist A: Also, do we need to pay attention to baggage rules, especially regarding excess baggage?

导游: 是的, 行李规定非常重要。大多数航空公司都有免费的行李配额, 通常是每位乘客托运一件行李, 重量在20到30公斤之间。如果超重, 会有额外费用。

Dǎoyóu: Shì de, xínglǐ guīdìng fēicháng zhòngyào. Dàduōshù hángkōng gōngsī dōu yǒu miǎnfèi de xínglǐ pèi'é, tōngcháng shì měi wèi chéngkè tuōyùn yī jiàn xínglǐ, zhòngliàng zài 20 dào 30 gōngjīn zhījiān. Rúguǒ chāo zhòng, huì yǒu éwài fèiyòng.

Guide: Yes, baggage rules are very important. Most airlines offer a free baggage allowance, usually one checked bag per passenger, with a weight limit of 20 to 30 kilograms. If your baggage exceeds this limit, you will be charged extra.

游客B: 如果行李超重, 我们应该如何处理?

Yóukè B: Rúguǒ xínglǐ chāo zhòng, wǒmen yīnggāi rúhé chǔlǐ?

Tourist B: What should we do if our baggage is overweight?

导游: 如果您的行李超重, 您可以选择支付超重费用, 或者减少行李的重量。如果选择支付, 费用根据航空公司的不同会有所差异。

Dǎoyóu: Rúguǒ nín de xínglǐ chāo zhòng, nín kěyǐ xuǎnzé zhǐfù chāo zhòng fèiyòng, huòzhě jiǎnshǎo xínglǐ de zhòngliàng. Rúguǒ xuǎnzé zhǐfù, fèiyòng gēnjù hángkōng gōngsī de bùtóng huì yǒu suǒ chāyì.

Guide: If your baggage is overweight, you can choose to pay the excess baggage fee, or reduce the weight of your baggage. The fee varies depending on the airline.

游客A: 那如果我们想提前预定超重行李呢?

Yóukè A: Nà rúguǒ wǒmen xiǎng tíqián yùdìng chāo zhòng xínglǐ ne?

Tourist A: What if we want to pre-book excess baggage?

导游: 您可以提前向航空公司申请预定超重行李。这通常会有折扣, 提前安排会比在机场临时支付费用更便宜。

Dǎoyóu: Nín kěyǐ tíqián xiàng hángkōng gōngsī shēnqǐng yùdìng chāo zhòng xínglǐ. Zhè tōngcháng huì yǒu zhékòu, tíqián ānpái huì bǐ zài jīchǎng línshí zhǐfù fèiyòng gèng piányi.

Guide: You can apply to pre-book excess baggage with the airline. This is usually cheaper, and booking in advance will be less expensive than paying the fees at the airport.

游客B: 对了, 我们的航班是否提供网上值机? 我们应该怎样操作?

Yóukè B: Duìle, wǒmen de hángbān shǐfǒu tígōng wǎngshàng zhí jī? Wǒmen yīnggāi zěnmē cāozuò?

Tourist B: By the way, does our flight offer online check-in? How should we do it?

导游: 大多数航空公司都提供网上值机, 您可以提前24小时通过航空公司的网站或应用程序进行办理。在线办理后, 您可以打印登机牌, 节省时间。

Dǎoyóu: Dàduōshù hángkōng gōngsī dōu tígōng wǎngshàng zhí jī, nín kěyǐ tíqián 24 xiǎoshí tōngguò hángkōng gōngsī de wǎngzhàn huò yìngyòng chéngxù jìnxíng bànlǐ. Zàixiàn bànlǐ hòu, nín kěyǐ dǎyìn dēngjīpái, jiéshěng shíjiān.

Guide: Most airlines offer online check-in, and you can do it up to 24 hours before the flight through the airline's website or app. After checking in online, you can print your boarding pass and save time.

游客A: 如果我们不在网上值机, 会不会有麻烦?

Yóukè A: Rúguǒ wǒmen bù zài wǎngshàng zhí jī, huì bù huì yǒu máfan?

Tourist A: Will there be any trouble if we don't check in online?

导游: 不会太麻烦, 但是如果不进行网上值机, 您可能需要在机场排长队办理登机手续。网上值机可以帮助您节省时间并避免拥挤。

Dǎoyóu: Bù huì tài máfan, dànshì rúguǒ bù jìnxíng wǎngshàng zhí jī, nín kěnéng xūyào zài jīchǎng pái cháng duì bànlǐ dēngjī shǒuxù. Wǎngshàng zhí jī kěyǐ bāngzhù nín jiéshěng shíjiān bìng bìmiǎn yōngjǐ.

Guide: It won't be too troublesome, but if you don't check in online, you may have to wait in long lines at the airport for check-in. Online check-in can save time and help you avoid crowds.

Lesson 24 **Arrival in Delhi 抵达德里**

Guide:

欢迎来到印度的首都德里! 我是你们的导游, 请叫我阿尼尔。希望你们的旅程愉快!

Wǒ huānyíng lái dào Yìndù de shǒudū Dé Lǐ! Wǒ shì nǐmen de dǎoyóu, qǐng jiào wǒ Ānǐ'ěr. Xīwàng nǐmen de lǚchéng yúkuài!

Welcome to Delhi, the capital of India! I'm your guide, please call me Anil. I hope you have a wonderful trip!

Tourist:

阿尼尔先生, 我们很高兴来到这里。今天的行程是什么?

Ānǐ'ěr xiānsheng, wǒmen hěn gāoxìng lái dào zhèlǐ. Jīntiān de xíngchéng shì shénme? Mr. Anil, we are very happy to be here. What is today's itinerary?

Guide:

我们今天会参观红堡、印度门和胡马雍陵。之后我们会去品尝正宗的印度美食。

Wǒmen jīntiān huì cānguān Hóng Bǎo, Yìndù Mén hé Húmǎyōng Líng. Zhīhòu wǒmen huì qù pǐncháng zhèngzōng de Yìndù měishí.

Today, we will visit the Red Fort, India Gate, and Humayun's Tomb. After that, we'll enjoy authentic Indian cuisine.

At the Red Fort

Guide:

这座红色的城堡是莫卧儿王朝的象征，建于 17 世纪。

Zhè zuò hóngsè de chéngbǎo shì Mòwò'ér wángcháo de xiàngzhēng, jiànyú shíqī shìjì. This red fort is a symbol of the Mughal Empire, built in the 17th century.

Tourist:

它的建筑风格和中国的故宫很不一样！

Tā de jiànzhù fēnggé hé Zhōngguó de Gùgōng hěn bù yīyàng!

Its architectural style is very different from the Forbidden City in China! Guide:

是的，这里融合了波斯、伊斯兰和印度的建筑特色。

Shì de, zhèlǐ rónghéle Bōsī, Yīslán hé Yìndù de jiànzhù tèsè.

Yes, it combines Persian, Islamic, and Indian architectural elements.

At Humayun's Tomb

Guide:

这座陵墓是莫卧儿王朝的第二位皇帝胡马雍的安息之地。它是印度次大陆上第一座花园式陵墓。Zhè zuò língmù shì Mòwò'ér wángcháo de dì èr wèi huángdì Húmayōng de ānxī zhī dì. Tā shì Yìndù cìdàlù shàng dì yī zuò huāyuán shì língmù.

This tomb is the resting place of Humayun, the second emperor of the Mughal dynasty. It is the first garden-style tomb in the Indian subcontinent.

Tourist 1:

花园式陵墓是什么意思？

Huāyuán shì língmù shì shénme yìsi?

What does a garden-style tomb mean?

Guide:

它指的是陵墓被设计在对称的花园中，象征着伊斯兰教的天堂。

Tā zhǐ de shì língmù bèi shèjì zài duìchèn de huāyuán zhōng, xiàngzhēngzhe Yīslánjiào de tiāntáng. It means the tomb is designed within a symmetrical garden, symbolizing paradise in Islam.

Tourist 2:

这座建筑的风格和泰姬陵很像！

Zhè zuò jiànzhù de fēnggé hé Tàijíling hěn xiàng!

The style of this structure looks very similar to the Taj Mahal! Guide:

是的，泰姬陵的设计深受胡马雍陵的影响。所以胡马雍陵常被称为“泰姬陵的前身”。

Shì de, Tàijíling de shèjì shēn shòu Húmayōng Líng de yǐngxiǎng. Suǒyǐ Húmayōng Líng cháng bèi chēng wéi “Tàijíling de qiánshēn.”

Yes, the design of the Taj Mahal was heavily influenced by Humayun's Tomb. It's often referred to as the predecessor of the Taj Mahal.

At India Gate

Guide:

印度门是一座纪念碑，建于 1921 年，用来纪念在第一次世界大战中牺牲的印度士兵。

Yìndù Mén shì yī zuò jìniànbēi, jiànyú 1921 nián, yòng lái jìniàn zài Dìyī Cì Shìjiè Dàzhàn zhōng xīshēng de Yìndù shìbīng.

India Gate is a memorial built in 1921 to honor the Indian soldiers who sacrificed their lives during World War I.

Tourist 1:

这里的火焰有什么特别意义吗？

Zhèlǐ de huǒyàn yǒu shénme tèbié yìyì ma?

What is the special significance of the flame here?

Guide:

那是“无名烈士之焰”，象征着对所有无名烈士的敬意。这里的火焰从 1971 年起就从未熄灭过。 Nà shì “Wú míng Liè shì zhī Yàn,” xiàng zhēng zhe duì suǒ yǒu wú míng liè shì de jìng yì. Zhèlǐ de huǒ yàn cóng 1971 nián qǐ jiù cóng wèi xī miè guò.

That is the “Flame of the Unknown Soldier,” symbolizing respect for all unknown martyrs. The flame has been burning continuously since 1971.

Tourist 2:

我们可以在这里拍照吗？

Wǒ men kě yǐ zài zhèlǐ pāi zhào ma?

Can we take photos here?

Guide:

当然可以！请注意不要打扰其他游客。

Dāng rán kě yǐ! Qǐng zhùyì bù yào dǎ rǎo qí tā yóu kè.

Of course! Just be mindful not to disturb other visitors.

Exploring Chandni Chowk

Guide:

接下来，我们会去德里的月光集市，这里是印度最古老的集市之一。

Jiē xià lái, wǒ men huì qù Dé Lǐ de Yuè guāng Jí shì, zhèlǐ shì Yīndù zuì gǔ lǎo de jí shì zhī yī. Next, we'll visit Chandni Chowk, one of the oldest markets in India.

Tourist 1:

这里卖什么东西？ Zhèlǐ mài shénme dōng xī? What do they sell here?

Guide:

这里什么都有！传统服饰、香料、珠宝、还有非常有名的小吃。

Zhèlǐ shénme dōu yǒu! Chuántǒng fúshì, xiāngliào, zhūbǎo, hái yǒu fēicháng yǒumíng de xiǎochī. Everything! Traditional clothing, spices, jewellery, and very famous snacks.

Tourist 2:

你推荐我们尝试哪些小吃？ Nǐ tuī jiàn wǒ men cháng shì nǎ xiē xiǎochī? What snacks do you recommend we try?

Guide:

试试萨莫萨（炸三角饺）和巴尼普里（灌汤球），它们非常美味！

Shì shì Sà mó sà (zhà sān jiǎo jiǎo) hé Bā nǐ pǔ lǐ (guàn tāng qiú), tā men fēi cháng měi wèi!

Try the samosa (fried triangular dumplings) and pani puri (crispy hollow balls filled with flavored water); they are very delicious!

Evening discussion

Tourist 3.

德里的交通真的很特别，到处都是嘟嘟车。

Dé Lǐ de jiāo tōng zhēn de hěn tè bié, dào chù dōu shì dū dū chē. Delhi's traffic is really unique; there are auto rickshaws everywhere.

Guide:

是的，嘟嘟车是这里非常方便的交通工具，尤其是在狭窄的街道上。

Shì de, dūdū chē shì zhèlǐ fēicháng fāngbiàn de jiāotōng gōngjù, yóuqí zài xiázhǎi de jiēdào shàng. Yes, auto rickshaws are a very convenient mode of transportation here, especially on narrow streets.

Tourist 1:

谢谢您为我们解说了这么多！今天非常有趣！

Xièxiè nín wèi wǒmen jiěshuōle zhème duō! Jīntiān fēicháng yǒuqù! Thank you for explaining so much to us! Today was very interesting!

Guide:

不客气！希望明天参观阿格拉时你们也会感到愉快！

Bù kèqì! Xīwàng míngtiān cānguān Āgélā shí nǐmen yě huì gǎndào yúkuài! You're welcome! I hope you'll also enjoy tomorrow's visit to Agra!

At Qutub Minar

Guide:

现在我们来到古特卜塔，这是世界上最高的砖塔，高达 73 米，建于 12 世纪末。

Xiànzài wǒmen lái dào Gùtèbù Tǎ, zhè shì shìjiè shàng zuì gāo de zhuāntǎ, gāodá 73 mǐ, jiànyú 12 shìjì mò.

Now we are at the Qutub Minar, the tallest brick minaret in the world, standing 73 meters tall, built at the end of the 12th century.

Tourist 1:

为什么要建这么高的塔呢？ Wèishéme yào jiàn zhème gāo de tǎ ne? Why was such a tall tower built?

Guide:

它是为了纪念胜利，也是为了宣扬伊斯兰教的信仰。古特卜·艾拔克是塔的建设者。

Tā shì wèile jìniàn shènglì, yě shì wèile xuānyáng Yīslánjiào de xìnyǎng. Gùtèbù·Àibāk shì tā de jiànshè zhě.

It was built to commemorate victory and to proclaim the faith of Islam. Qutb al-Din Aibak was the builder of the tower.

Tourist 2:

可以爬上去看看风景吗？

Kěyǐ pá shàngqù kàn kàn fēngjǐng ma? Can we climb up and see the view?

Guide:

不可以，现在塔内不对游客开放。不过，可以在外面拍照，风景同样很美。

Bù kěyǐ, xiànzài tā nèi bù duì yóukè kāifàng. Bùguò, kěyǐ zài wàimiàn pāizhào, fēngjǐng tóngyàng hěn měi.

No, it is not open to visitors now. However, you can take pictures from the outside; the view is equally beautiful.

At Jama Masjid

Guide:

现在我们来到贾玛清真寺，这是印度最大的清真寺之一，建于 1656 年。

Xiànzài wǒmen lái dào Jiǎmǎ Qīngzhēnsì, zhè shì Yìndù zuì dà de Qīngzhēnsì zhī yī, jiànyú 1656 nián. Now we are at Jama Masjid, one of the largest mosques in India, built in 1656.

Tourist 1:

哇！这个庭院好大，能容纳多少人？

Wā! Zhège tíngyuàn hǎo dà, néng róngnà duōshǎo rén? Wow! This courtyard is huge; how many people can it hold?

Guide:

这个清真寺的庭院可以容纳两万五千人，非常壮观！

Zhègè Qīngzhēnsì de tíngyuàn kěyǐ róngnà liǎng wàn wǔqiān rén, fēicháng zhuàngguān! The mosque's courtyard can accommodate 25,000 people; it's truly spectacular!

Tourist 2:

我们需要脱鞋才能进去，对吧？ Wǒmen xūyào tuōxié cáinéng jìnqù, duì ba? We need to remove our shoes to enter, right?

Guide:

是的，进入清真寺需要脱鞋，这是对宗教的尊重。同时请注意保持安静。

Shì de, jìnrù Qīngzhēnsì xūyào tuōxié, zhè shì duì zōngjiào de zūnzhòng. Tóngshí qǐng zhùyì bǎochí ānjìng.

Yes, you need to remove your shoes before entering; it's a sign of respect for the religion. Please also remain quiet.

During a Lunch Break

Guide:

我们现在来到一家餐厅，尝试印度传统的北印度菜，比如黄油鸡和大蒜烤饼。

Wǒmen xiànzài lái dào yíjiā cāntīng, chángshì Yīndù chuántǒng de Běi Yīndù cài, bǐrú Huángyóu Jī hé Dàsuàn Kǎobǐng.

We are now at a restaurant to try traditional North Indian dishes, such as butter chicken and garlic naan. Tourist 1:

这些菜肴看起来很美味，但会不会很辣？

Zhèxiē cài kàn qǐlái hěn měiwèi, dàn huì bù huì hěn là? These dishes look delicious, but are they very spicy?

Guide:

黄油鸡的味道比较温和，不是很辣。你们可以告诉服务员根据你的口味调节辣度。

Huángyóu Jī de wèidào bǐjiào wēnhé, bù shì hěn là. Nǐmen kěyǐ gàosù fúwùyuán gēnjù nǐ de kǒuwèi tiáojié làdù.

Butter chicken has a milder flavor, not too spicy. You can tell the waiter to adjust the spice level according to your preference.

Tourist 2: 这个大蒜烤饼怎么吃？配黄油鸡吗？ Zhègè Dàsuàn Kǎobǐng zěnmē chī? Pèi Huángyóu Jī ma? How do you eat this garlic naan? With butter chicken?

Guide: 是的，用手撕下一块烤饼，然后蘸黄油鸡的酱汁吃。这是最地道的吃法！

Shì de, yòng shǒu sī xià yí kuài kǎobǐng, ránhòu zhān Huángyóu Jī de jiàngzhī chī. Zhè shì zuì didào de chīfǎ!

Yes, tear off a piece of naan with your hand and dip it into the butter chicken gravy. That's the most authentic way to enjoy it!

Evening Rickshaw Ride in Old Delhi

Guide: 为了让你们体验地道的德里，我们安排了在旧德里的三轮车之旅。

Wèile ràng nǐmen tīyàn didào de Dé Lǐ, wǒmen ānpáile zài Jiù Dé Lǐ de sānlúchē zhī lǚ.

To give you an authentic Delhi experience, we have arranged a rickshaw ride through Old Delhi. Tourist 1: 这里的街道好窄，而且非常热闹！ Zhèlǐ de jiēdào hǎo zhǎi, érqǐ fēicháng rènao!

The streets here are so narrow and lively!

Guide: 是的，旧德里是最古老的市区，有很多商店、市场和街头小吃摊，非常热闹。

Shì de, Jiù Dé Lǐ shì zuì gǔlǎo de shìqū, yǒu hěn duō shāngdiàn, shìchǎng hé jiētóu xiǎochī tān, fēicháng rènao. Yes, Old Delhi is the oldest part of the city, full of shops, markets, and street food stalls. It's very bustling.

Tourist 2: 坐三轮车感觉很特别，也很刺激！ Zuò sānlúchē gǎnjué hěn tèbié, yě hěn cìjī! Riding a rickshaw feels so unique and thrilling!

Guide:

是的，这是一种独特的体验！小心你的随身物品，保持安全。Shì de, zhè shì yī zhǒng dú tè de tī yàn! Xiǎoxīn nǐ de suíshēn wùpǐn, bǎochí ānquán. Yes, it's a unique experience! Be mindful of your belongings and stay safe.

At Rashtrapati Bhavan (President's House)

Guide: 现在我们来到总统府，这是印度总统的官邸，也是世界上最大的总统官邸之一，占地 330 英亩。

Xiànzài wǒmen lái dào Zǒngtǒng Fǔ, zhè shì Yìndù zǒngtǒng de guāndǐ, yě shì shìjiè shàng zuì dà de zǒngtǒng guāndǐ zhī yī, zhàndì 330 yīngmǔ.

Now we are at Rashtrapati Bhavan, the residence of the President of India. It is one of the largest presidential residences in the world, covering 330 acres.

Tourist 1: 可以进去参观吗？Kěyǐ jìnqù cānguān ma? Can we go inside to visit?

Guide: 只有一部分对公众开放，比如博物馆和花园。花园的最佳参观时间是每年春季。Zhǐyǒu yī bùfèn duì gōngzhòng kāifàng, bǐrú bówùguǎn hé huāyuán. Huāyuán de zuì jiā cānguān shíjiān shì měinián chūntiān. Only some parts are open to the public, like the museum and gardens. The best time to visit the gardens is during spring.

Tourist 2: 这座建筑的风格很特别，是什么风格？Zhè zuò jiànzhù de fēnggé hěn tèbié, shì shénme fēnggé? The architecture looks unique; what style is it?

Guide: 它融合了印度和欧洲的风格，比如莫卧儿风格和新古典主义风格。

Tā rónghéle Yìndù hé Ōuzhōu de fēnggé, bǐrú Mòwò'ér fēnggé hé Xīn Gǔdiǎnzhǔyì fēnggé. It blends Indian and European styles, such as Mughal and Neoclassical architecture.

At Lotus Temple (Bahá'í House of Worship)

Guide: 我们现在参观的是莲花庙，建于 1986 年。这座建筑形似莲花，是一座巴哈伊信仰的宗教场所。Wǒmen xiànzài cānguān de shì Liánhuā Miào, jiànyú 1986 nián. Zhè zuò jiànzhù xíng sì liánhuā, shì yī zuò Bāhāyī xìnyǎng de zōngjiào chǎngsuǒ.

We are now visiting the Lotus Temple, built in 1986. This building resembles a lotus flower and is a place of worship for the Bahá'í Faith.

Tourist 1: 这里是只能巴哈伊教徒来吗？Zhèlǐ shì zhǐ néng Bāhāyī jiàotú lái ma? Is this only for Bahá'í followers?

Guide: 不是的，这里欢迎所有宗教信仰的人来参观和祈祷。

Bùshì de, zhèlǐ huānyíng suǒyǒu zōngjiào xìnyǎng de rén lái cānguān hé qídǎo. No, it welcomes people of all religions to visit and pray.

Tourist 2:

这个地方看起来很安静，可以拍照吗？Zhège dìfāng kàn qǐlái hěn ānjìng, kěyǐ pāizhào ma? This place looks very peaceful; can we take photos?

Guide:

可以拍照，但请不要在祈祷厅内使用闪光灯，也不要打扰其他人。

Kěyǐ pāizhào, dàn qǐng bùyào zài qídǎo tīng nèi shǐyòng shǎnguāngdēng, yě bùyào dǎrǎo qítā rén. You can take photos, but please do not use flash inside the prayer hall or disturb others.

At Akshardham Temple

Guide: 现在我们来到阿克萨达姆神庙，这是德里最著名的印度教庙宇之一，展示了印度的传统和文化。

Xiànzài wǒmen lái dào Ākèsàdám Shénmiào, zhè shì Dé Lǐ zuì zhù míng de Yìndùjiào miàoyǔ zhī yī, zhǎnshìle Yìndù de chuántǒng hé wénhuà. Now we are at Akshardham Temple, one of the most famous Hindu temples in Delhi, showcasing India's tradition and culture.

Tourist 1: 这座庙宇是什么时候建的？Zhè zuò miàoyǔ shì shénme shíhòu jiàn de? When was this temple built?

Guide: 它建于 2005 年，是现代建筑与传统工艺的完美结合。

Tā jiànyú 2005 nián, shì xiàndài jiànzhù yǔ chuántǒng gōngyì de wánměi jiéhé.

It was built in 2005 and is a perfect combination of modern architecture and traditional craftsmanship.

Tourist 2:

神庙里有什么特别之处? Shénmiào lǐ yǒu shéme tèbié zhī chù? What is special about the temple? Guide: 这里有非常精美的雕刻, 反映了印度的神话故事, 还有一个水声音乐喷泉表演, 非常值得观看! Zhèlǐ yǒu fēicháng jīngměi de diāokè, fǎnyǐng le Yìndù de shénhuà gùshì, hái yǒu yīgè shuǐshēng yīnyuè pēnquán biǎoyǎn, fēicháng zhídé guānkàn!

Exquisite carvings depict Indian mythological stories and a musical fountain show that is worth seeing!

Tourist 3: 需要脱鞋才能进去吗? Xūyào tuōxié cáinéng jìnqù ma? Do we need to remove our shoes to enter? Guide: 是的, 进入神庙需要脱鞋。这是印度教庙宇的传统规则。

Shì de, jìnrù shénmiào xūyào tuōxié. Zhè shì Yìndùjiào miàoyǔ de chuántǒng guīzé. Yes, you need to remove your shoes to enter. It's a traditional rule for Hindu temples.

At Connaught Place (Shopping and Dining)

Guide: 现在我们来到康诺特广场, 这是德里最著名的购物和餐饮区之一。Xiànzài wǒmen lái dào Kāngnuò tè Guǎngchǎng, zhè shì Dé Lǐ zuì zhù míng de gòuwù hé cānyǐn qū zhī yī. Now we are at Connaught Place, one of the most famous shopping and dining areas in Delhi.

Tourist 1: 这里有什么特别的商店吗? Zhèlǐ yǒu shéme tèbié de shāngdiàn ma? Are there any special shops here?

Guide: 有很多独特的商店, 比如手工艺品店、珠宝店和古董店。你们还可以找到许多国际品牌的专卖店。

Yǒu hěnduō dú tè de shāngdiàn, bǐrú shǒugōngyì pǐn diàn, zhūbǎo diàn hé gǔdǒng diàn. Nǐmen hái kěyǐ zhǎodào xǔduō guójì pǐnpái de zhuānmài diàn. There are many unique shops, such as handicraft stores, jewelry shops, and antique stores. You can also find exclusive stores of many international brands.

Tourist 2: 这里的餐厅有什么推荐吗? Zhèlǐ de cāntīng yǒu shéme tuījiàn ma? Any recommendations for restaurants here?

Guide: 这里有很多餐厅提供北印度菜、南印度菜, 还有国际美食, 比如意大利菜和中餐。

Zhè lǐ yǒu hěnduō cāntīng tí gōng běi yìndù cài, nán yìndù cài, hái yǒu guójì měishí, bǐrú yìdài cài hé zhōngcān. There are many restaurants here offering North Indian, South Indian, and international cuisine like Italian and Chinese.

Lesson 25

Travel to Agra 参观阿格拉

Guide: 现在我们将前往阿格拉, 参观世界著名的泰姬陵。

Xiànzài wǒmen jiāng qiánwǎng Āgélā, cānguān shìjiè zhù míng de Tàijīlíng. Now, we're heading to Agra to visit the world-famous Taj Mahal.

Tourist: 泰姬陵是为了爱情而建的, 对吗? Tàijīlíng shì wèile àiqíng ér jiàn de, duì ma? The Taj Mahal was built for love, right?

Guide:

是的, 沙贾汗皇帝为纪念他的妻子建造了这座宏伟的陵墓。

Shì de, Shājiā Hàn huángdì wèi jìniàn tā de qīzi jiànzaole zhè zuò hóngwěi de língmù. Yes, Emperor Shah Jahan built this magnificent tomb in memory of his wife.

At the Entrance

Guide:

欢迎来到泰姬陵, 这是印度最著名的地标之一, 也是世界新七大奇迹之一。它被称为“爱情的纪念碑”。

Huānyíng lái dào Tàijī Líng, zhè shì Yìndù zuì zhù míng de dìbiāo zhī yī, yě shì Shìjiè Xīn Qī Dà Qíjī zhī yī. Tā bèi chēng wéi “àiqíng de jìniànbēi.”

Welcome to the Taj Mahal, one of the most iconic landmarks of India and one of the New Seven Wonders of the World. It is called the "Monument of Love."

Tourist 1: 这是谁建造的? Zhè shì shéi jiànzào de? Who built this?

Guide:

泰姬陵是由莫卧儿皇帝沙贾汗为纪念他的皇后穆姆塔兹·玛哈尔而建的。她去世后, 皇帝为了表达深厚的爱意建造了这座陵墓。

Tàijī Líng shì yóu Mòwò'ér Huángdì Shājiāhàn wèi jìniàn tā de Huánghòu Mùmǔtǎzī·Mǎhā'ěr ér jiàn de. Tā qùshì hòu, Huángdì wèile biǎodá shēnhòu de àiyì jiànzào le zhè zuò língmù.

The Taj Mahal was built by the Mughal Emperor Shah Jahan in memory of his wife Mumtaz Mahal. After her death, the emperor constructed this mausoleum to express his deep love.

Tourist 2: 花了多久建成的? Huāle duōjiǔ jiànchéng de? How long did it take to complete?

Guide: 建造泰姬陵花了大约 22 年, 从 1631 年到 1653 年, 有超过 2 万名工匠参与了建造。

Jiànzào Tàijī Líng huāle dàyuē 22 nián, cóng 1631 nián dào 1653 nián, yǒu chāoguò 2 wàn míng gōngjiàng cānyùle jiànzào.

It took about 22 years to build the Taj Mahal, from 1631 to 1653, with over 20,000 artisans involved in its construction.

While Walking Through the Gardens

Tourist 3: 这个花园设计得非常对称, 背后有什么意义吗?

Zhège huāyuán shèjì de fēicháng duìchèn, bèihòu yǒu shéme yìyì ma?

This garden is designed very symmetrically. Is there any significance behind it?

Guide: 是的, 花园采用的是波斯花园的设计风格, 象征着天堂的完美与永恒。

Shì de, huāyuán cǎiyòng de shì Bōsī Huāyuán de shèjì fēnggé, xiàngzhēngzhe tiāntáng de wánměi yǔ yǒnghéng.

Yes, the garden is designed in the Persian garden style, symbolizing the perfection and eternity of paradise.

Tourist 1: 那个长长的水池有什么作用? Nàgè chángcháng de shuǐchí yǒu shéme zuòyòng? What is the purpose of that long water pool?

Guide: 水池用来反射泰姬陵的影像, 增强其美感。这种设计也被称为“倒影池”。

Shuǐchí yòng lái fǎnshè Tàijī Líng de yǐngxiàng, zēngqiáng qí měigǎn. Zhè zhǒng shèjì yě bèi chēng wéi "dàoyǐng chí."

The pool reflects the image of the Taj Mahal, enhancing its beauty. This design is also known as a "reflection pool."

Inside the Taj Mahal

Guide: 现在我们进入泰姬陵的主建筑, 这里安葬着沙贾汗皇帝和穆姆塔兹皇后。

Xiànzài wǒmen jìnrù Tàijī Líng de zhǔ jiànzhù, zhèlǐ ānzàngzhe Shājiāhàn Huángdì hé Mùmǔtǎzī Huánghòu. Now we are entering the main building of the Taj Mahal, where Emperor Shah Jahan and Queen Mumtaz Mahal are buried.

Tourist 2:

这里的雕刻真是精美! 这些花纹是用什么做的?

Zhèlǐ de diāokè zhēnshì jīngměi! Zhèxiē huāwén shì yòng shénme zuò de? The carvings here are so exquisite! What are these patterns made of?

Guide: 这些花纹是由宝石镶嵌而成的, 包括玛瑙、绿松石和碧玉等半宝石。这种工艺被称为“镶嵌工艺”。

Zhèxiē huāwén shì yóu bǎoshí xiāngqiàn ér chéng de, bāokuò Mǎnǎo, Lǜsōngshí hé Bìyù děng bànbǎoshí. Zhè zhǒng gōngyì bèi chēng wéi "xiāngqiàn gōngyì."

These patterns are made with inlaid gemstones, including agate, turquoise, and jade. This technique is called "inlay work."

Tourist 3: 墙上的阿拉伯文字是什么意思? Qiáng shàng de Ālābó wénzì shì shénme yìsi? What do the Arabic inscriptions on the walls mean?

Guide:

这些是《古兰经》的经文, 表达了对天堂的向往和对逝者的祝福。

Zhèxiē shì "Gǔlánjīng" de jīngwén, biǎodá de duì tiāntáng de xiàngwǎng hé duì shìzhě de zhùfú. These are verses from the Quran, expressing aspirations for paradise and blessings for the departed.

At Sunset

Tourist 1: 夕阳下的泰姬陵真的太美了，颜色也变了！Xīyáng xià de Tàijī Líng zhēn de tài měi le, yánsè yě biàn le! The Taj Mahal looks so beautiful at sunset, and its color has changed!

Guide: 是的，泰姬陵的白色大理石会随着光线的变化呈现不同的颜色。清晨、正午和傍晚都有不同的美感。

Shì de, Tàijī Líng de báisè dàlǐshí huì suízhe guāngxiàn de biànhuà chéngxiàn bùtóng de yánsè. Qīngchén, zhèngwǔ hé bàngwǎn dōu yǒu bùtóng de měigǎn.

Yes, the white marble of the Taj Mahal changes its color with the light. It has a different beauty in the morning, noon, and evening.

Tourist 2: 我们可以在这里拍几张全景照片吗？Wǒmen kěyǐ zài zhèlǐ pāi jǐ zhāng quánjǐng zhàopiàn ma? Can we take some panoramic photos here?

Guide: 当然可以！最佳拍摄位置是在河对岸的月光花园，或者在前方的长廊上。

Dāngrán kěyǐ! Zuì jiā pāishè wèizhì shì zài Hé duì'àn de Yuèguāng Huāyuán, huòzhě zài qiánfāng de chángláng shàng.

Of course! The best spots for photography are the Moonlight Garden across the river or the gallery up ahead.

Wrapping Up the Visit

Guide: 今天的参观就到这里了，希望你们喜欢泰姬陵。如果你们还有时间，也可以去附近的阿格拉堡看看。Jīntiān de cānguān jiù dào zhèlǐ le, xīwàng nǐmen xǐhuān Tàijī Líng. Rúguǒ nǐmen hái yǒu shíjiān, yě kěyǐ qù fùjìn de Āgélā Bǎo kànkàn.

That concludes today's visit. I hope you enjoyed the Taj Mahal. If you have time, you can also visit the nearby Agra Fort.

Tourist Group: 谢谢导游！这是一次难忘的体验！Xièxiè dǎoyóu! Zhè shì yīcì nánwàng de tǐyàn! Thank you, guide!

This was an unforgettable experience!

Lesson 26

At Jaipur - The Pink City

斋浦尔——粉红之城

Zhāi pǔ'ěr——fěnhóng zhī chéng

Guide: 欢迎来到斋浦尔，这座城市被称为“粉红之城”。今天我们会参观琥珀堡和城市宫殿。Huānyíng lái dào Zhāipǔ'ěr, zhè zuò chéngshì bèi chēng wéi "fěnhóng zhī chéng." Jīntiān wǒmen huì cānguān Hūpò Bǎo hé Chéngshì Gōngdiàn.

Welcome to Jaipur, known as the "Pink City." Today, we'll visit the Amber Fort and City Palace. Tourist: 为什么斋浦尔被称为“粉红之城”？Wèishéme Zhāipǔ'ěr bèi chēng wéi "fěnhóng zhī chéng"? Why is Jaipur called the "Pink City"?

Guide: 因为这里的建筑在1876年为了欢迎英国皇储涂成了粉红色，象征热情和友好。

Yīnwèi zhèlǐ de jiànzhù zài 1876 nián wèile huānyíng Yīngguó huángchú tú chéngle fěnhóng sè, xiàngzhēng rèqíng hé yǒuhǎo.

Because, the buildings were painted pink in 1876 to welcome the Prince of Wales, symbolizing hospitality and warmth.

Shopping in Jaipur

Tourist: 我们可以买一些传统的印度工艺品吗？Wǒmen kěyǐ mǎi yīxiē chuántǒng de Yìndù gōngyìpǐn ma? Can we buy some traditional Indian handicrafts?

Guide: 当然可以！斋浦尔以珠宝、蓝陶和手工艺品闻名。Dāngrán kěyǐ! Zhāipǔ'ěr yǐ zhūbǎo, lántáo hé shǒugōngyìpǐn wénmíng. Of course! Jaipur is famous for jewellery, blue pottery, and handicrafts.

Tourist:这真是一次难忘的旅行！谢谢您，阿尼尔！Zhè zhēnshì yīcì nánwàng de lǚxíng! Xièxiè nín, Āní'ěr! This has been an unforgettable trip! Thank you, Anil!

Guide:

不客气！希望你们以后还能再来印度！Bù kèqì! Xīwàng nimen yǐhòu hái néng zài lái Yìndù! You're welcome! I hope you can visit India again in the future!

At the Amber Fort

Guide: 欢迎来到琥珀堡，这是斋浦尔最著名的宫殿之一，建于1592年。它展示了拉贾斯坦的独特建筑风格和文化。Huānyíng lái dào Hǔpò Bǎo, zhè shì Zhāipǔ'ěr zuì zhùmíng de gōngdiàn zhī yī, jiàn yú 1592 nián. Tā zhǎnshì le Lājiasītān de dú tè jiànzhù fēnggé hé wénhuà.

Welcome to the Amber Fort, one of Jaipur's most famous palaces, built in 1592. It showcases the unique architectural style and culture of Rajasthan.

Tourist 1: 这座堡垒为什么选在山上？Zhè zuò bǎolěi wèishéme xuǎn zài shān shàng? Why was this fort built on a hill?

Guide: 堡垒的位置具有战略意义，可以俯瞰周围的山谷，方便防御敌人。同时，也象征着权力和威严。

Bǎolěi de wèizhì jùyǒu zhànlüè yìyì, kěyǐ fǔkàn zhōuwéi de shāngǔ, fāngbiàn fángyù dí rén. Tóngshí, yě xiàngzhēngzhe quánlì hé wēiyán.

The fort's location was strategic, overlooking the surrounding valleys for defense against enemies. It also symbolized power and authority.

Tourist 2: 这里的墙上有很多精美的镜子，是什么作用？

Zhèlǐ de qiáng shàng yǒu hěn duō jīngměi de jìngzi, shì shénme zuòyòng? There are many beautiful mirrors on the walls. What purpose do they serve?

Guide: 这是琥珀堡的镜厅，叫“谢什·玛哈尔”。这些镜子在烛光下会反射，营造出星空般的效果，非常浪漫。

Zhè shì Hǔpò Bǎo de Jìng Tīng, jiào "Xièshén Mǎhā'ěr." Zhèxiē jìngzi zài zhúguāng xià huì fǎnshè, yíngzào chū xīngkōng bān de xiàoguǒ, fēicháng làngmàn.

This is the Sheesh Mahal, or the Mirror Palace. These mirrors reflect light from candles, creating an effect like a starry sky, which is very romantic.

Tourist 1: 这个堡垒这么大，里面有多少房间？Zhège bǎolěi zhème dà, lǐmiàn yǒu duōshǎo fángjiān? This fort is so large. How many rooms are inside?

Guide: 琥珀堡有很多房间和庭院，包括皇宫、马厩、会议厅等。每个区域都有不同的用途。Hǔpò Bǎo yǒu hěn duō fángjiān hé tíngyuàn, bāokuò huánggōng, mǎjiù, huìyì tīng děng. Měi gè qūyù dōu yǒu bùtóng de yòngtú.

Amber Fort has many rooms and courtyards, including the palace, stables, and meeting halls. Each area served a different purpose.

Tourist 2: 有没有特别的房间可以参观？Yǒu méiyǒu tèbié de fángjiān kěyǐ cānguān? Are there any special rooms we can visit?

Guide: 当然，您可以参观镜厅（谢什·玛哈尔），它因墙壁上的镜子而得名，还有皇后宫殿和庭院。Dāngrán, nín kěyǐ cānguān jìng tīng (Xièshén Mǎhā'ěr), tā yīn qiángbì shàng de jìngzi ér dé míng, hái yǒu huánghòu gōngdiàn hé tíngyuàn.

Of course! You can visit the Sheesh Mahal (Mirror Palace), named for the mirrors on its walls, as well as the Queen's quarters and courtyards.

Tourist 3: 这个堡垒的建筑风格有什么特色？Zhège bǎolěi de jiànzhù fēnggé yǒu shénme tè sè? What are the unique architectural features of this fort?

Guide: 琥珀堡的建筑风格融合了莫卧儿（Mughal）和拉杰普特（Rajput）的元素，尤其是在拱门、庭院和装饰中能看到明显的伊斯兰和印度风格结合。

Hǔpò Bǎo de jiànzhù fēnggé rónghéle Mòwò'ér (Mughal) hé Lājépùtè (Rajput) de yuánsù, yóuqí shì zài gǒngmén, tíngyuàn

hé zhuāngshì zhōng néng kàn dào míngxiǎn de Yīslán hé Yìndù fēnggé jiéhé.

The architectural style of Amber Fort blends Mughal and Rajput elements, particularly visible in the arches, courtyards, and decorations, where you can see the combination of Islamic and Indian design.

At the City Palace

Guide: 接下来，我们来到斋浦尔的城市宫殿，它是拉贾斯坦王公的住处。这里融合了莫卧儿和拉杰普特建筑风格。

Jiēxiàlái, wǒmen lái dào Zhāipǔ'ěr de Chéngshì Gōngdiàn, tā shì Lājiāstān wánggōng de zhùchù. Zhèlǐ rónghéle Mòwò'ěr hé Lājépùtè jiànzhù fēnggé.

Next, we're visiting the City Palace of Jaipur, which was the residence of the Maharajas of Rajasthan. It blends Mughal and Rajput architectural styles.

Tourist 1:

宫殿里还有王室住吗？Gōngdiàn lǐ hái yǒu wángshì zhù ma? Does the royal family still live here? Guide: 是的，王室的后裔仍然住在宫殿的一部分，而另一部分被改建为博物馆，向公众开放。Shì de, wángshì de hòuyì réngrán zhù zài gōngdiàn de yībùfèn, ér lìng yībùfèn bèi gǎijiàn wéi bówùguǎn, xiàng gōngzhòng kāifàng.

Yes, descendants of the royal family still reside in part of the palace, while the other part has been converted into a museum open to the public.

Tourist 2: 这里的博物馆展示了什么？Zhèlǐ de bówùguǎn zhǎnshìle shénme? What does the museum exhibit?

Guide: 博物馆展出了传统服饰、武器、手工艺品和绘画，展示了拉贾斯坦的历史和文化。Bówùguǎn zhǎnshìle chuántǒng fúshì, wǔqì, shǒugōngyìpǐn hé huìhuà, zhǎnshìle Lājiāstān de lìshǐ hé wénhuà.

The museum showcases traditional clothing, weapons, handicrafts, and paintings, reflecting the history and culture of Rajasthan.

Tourist 1: 斋浦尔的城市宫殿和印度其他地方的宫殿有什么不同？

Zhāipǔ'ěr de Chéngshì Gōngdiàn hé Yìndù qítā dìfāng de gōngdiàn yǒu shénme bùtóng? How is the City Palace of Jaipur different from palaces in other parts of India?

Guide: 城市宫殿的设计展示了独特的拉贾斯坦风格，尤其是在宫殿的细节和装饰上。与其他地区的宫殿相比，这里融合了印度教和伊斯兰教的建筑风格。

Chéngshì Gōngdiàn de shèjì zhǎnshìle dúte de Lājiāstān fēnggé, yóuqí shì zài gōngdiàn de xìjié hé zhuāngshì shàng. Yǔ qítā dìqū de gōngdiàn xiāng bǐ, zhèlǐ rónghéle Yìndùjiào hé Yīslánjiào de jiànzhù fēnggé.

The design of the City Palace displays the unique Rajasthani style, especially in the details and decorations of the palace. Compared to palaces in other regions, it blends the architectural styles of Hinduism and Islam.

Tourist 2: 宫殿中最有名的部分是什么？Gōngdiàn zhōng zuì yǒumíng de bùfèn shì shénme? What is the most famous part of the palace?

Guide: 最有名的部分是“昌德波尔宫”，那里展示了精美的艺术作品和豪华的内部装饰。另一个很受欢迎的部分是“皮尔·曼吉尔宫”，这是皇室的私人住宅。

Zuì yǒumíng de bùfèn shì "Chāng Dé Bō ěr Gōng," nàlǐ zhǎnshìle jīngměi de yìshù zuòpǐn hé háohuá de nèibù zhuāngshì. Lìng yíge hěn shòu huānyíng de bùfèn shì "Pí'ěr Mánjǐ'ěr Gōng," zhè shì huángshì de sīrén zhùzhái.

The most famous part of the palace is the "Chandralok Mahal," where beautiful artwork and luxurious interior decorations are displayed. Another popular section is the "Peehr Mangir Mahal," which is the private residence of the royal family.

Tourist 1: 这个宫殿看起来非常华丽，里面有哪些特别的房间？

Zhège gōngdiàn kàn qǐlái fēicháng huá lì, lǐmiàn yǒu nǎxiē tèbié de fángjiān? This palace looks very luxurious. What special

rooms are inside?

Guide: 城市宫殿有很多著名的房间，例如“佩尔宫”和“精致的宴会厅”。最著名的是“皇宫博物馆”，展示了许多历史遗物。

Chéngshì gōngdiàn yǒu hěn duō zhùmíng de fángjiān, lìrú “Pèi’ěr gōng” hé “jīngzhì de yànhuì tīng.” Zuì zhùmíng de shì “huánggōng bówùguǎn,” zhǎnshìle xǔduō lìshǐ yíwù.

The City Palace has many famous rooms, such as the "Per Palace" and the "Elegant Banquet Hall." The "Palace Museum" is the most famous, which displays many historical artifacts.

Tourist 2: 这些房间的装修风格是什么？ Zhèxiē fángjiān de zhuāngxiū fēnggé shì shénme? What is the decorative style of these rooms?

Guide: 这些房间融合了印度和欧洲的风格，尤其是穆斯林和拉贾斯坦的传统元素。它们展示了当时皇室的豪华生活。

Zhèxiē fángjiān rónghéle Yìndù hé Ōuzhōu de fēnggé, yóuqí shì Mùsīlín hé Lājīāsītǎn de chuántǒng yuánsù. Tāmen zhǎnshìle dāngshí huángshì de háohuá shēnghuó.

These rooms blend Indian and European styles, especially incorporating Muslim and Rajasthani traditional elements. They showcase the luxurious lifestyle of the royal family at that time.

Tourist 3: 这个宫殿最吸引游客的地方是什么？ Zhège gōngdiàn zuì xīyǐn yóukè de dìfāng shì shénme? What is the most attractive feature of this palace for tourists?

Guide: 城市宫殿的“琉璃花园”和“浮动门”是非常著名的景点。游客可以在这里拍照并欣赏皇家建筑的美丽。

Chéngshì gōngdiàn de “liúlí huāyuán” hé “fú dòngmén” shì fēicháng zhùmíng de jǐngdiǎn. Yóukè kěyǐ zài zhèlǐ pāizhào bìng xīnshǎng huángjiā jiànzhù de měilì.

The City Palace's "Glass Garden" and the "Floating Gate" are very famous attractions. Tourists can take pictures here and enjoy the beauty of royal architecture.

At the Hawa Mahal (Palace of Winds)

Guide: 现在我们来到风之宫殿，这是斋浦尔的标志性建筑之一，由红砂岩建成，有 953 个窗户。 Xiànzài wǒmen lái dào Fēng zhī Gōngdiàn, zhè shì Zhāipǔ’ěr de biāozhìxìng jiànzhù zhī yī, yóu hóng shāyán jiànchéng, yǒu 953 gè chuānghù.

Now we're at the Hawa Mahal, one of Jaipur's most iconic structures, built from red sandstone with 953 windows.

Tourist 1: 这些窗户为什么这么多？ Zhèxiē chuānghù wèishéme zhème duō? Why are there so many windows?

Guide: 风之宫殿是为王宫的女性建造的，目的是让她们可以从窗户观察街道上的活动，而不用被外人看到。

Fēng zhī Gōngdiàn shì wèi wánggōng de nǚxìng jiànzhào de, mùdì shì ràng tāmen kěyǐ cóng chuānghù guānchá jiēdào shàng de huódòng, ér bù yòng bèi wàiren kàn dào.

The Hawa Mahal was built for the women of the royal family, allowing them to observe street activities without being seen by outsiders.

Tourist 2: 宫殿的设计还有其他特殊功能吗？ Gōngdiàn de shèjì hái yǒu qítā tèshū gōngnéng ma? Does the design have any other special features?

Guide: 是的，这些窗户的设计使空气可以自由流通，即使在炎热的夏天，里面也会感到凉爽。 Shì de, zhèxiē chuānghù de shèjì shǐ kōngqì kěyǐ zìyóu liútōng, jíshǐ zài yánrè de xiàtiān, lǐmiàn yě huì gǎndào liángshuǎng.

Yes, the design of these windows allows air to circulate freely, making it cool inside even during hot summers.

Tourist 1: 这里的窗户很特别，是不是为了夏天通风而设计的？

Zhèlǐ de chuānghù hěn tèbié, shì bùshì wèile xiàtiān tōngfēng ér shèjì de?

These windows are quite unique. Were they designed for ventilation during the summer?

Guide: 是的, 风之宫殿的设计是为了确保宫殿内部通风良好, 让宫殿在炎热的夏天保持凉爽。 Shì de, Fēng zhī Gōngdiàn de shèjì shì wèile quèbǎo gōngdiàn nèibù tōngfēng liánghǎo, ràng gōngdiàn zài yánrè de xiàtiān bǎochí liángshuǎng.

Yes, the design of the Hawa Mahal was meant to ensure proper ventilation inside the palace, keeping it cool during the hot summer months.

Tourist 2: 它的外观像什么? Tā de wàiguān xiàng shénme? What does it look like from the outside? Guide: 风之宫殿的外观像一座蜂巢, 有着许多小窗户, 形状像蜂窝一样。它给人一种非常独特的视觉体验。

Fēng zhī Gōngdiàn de wàiguān xiàng yīzuò fēngcháo, yǒuzhe xǔduō xiǎo chuānghù, xíngzhuàng xiàng fēngwō yīyàng. Tā gěi rén yī zhǒng fēicháng dú tè de shìjué tīyàn.

The Hawa Mahal's exterior resembles a beehive, with many small windows shaped like honeycombs. It provides a very unique visual experience.

Tourist 3: 这些窗户在设计时考虑到了哪些因素? Zhèxiē chuānghù zài shèjì shí kǎolǜ dào le nǎxiē yīnsù?

What factors were considered when designing these windows?

Guide: 设计时考虑到了通风、隐私和美学。宫殿的女性可以通过这些窗户观看外面而不被看到。 Shèjì shí kǎolǜ dào le tōngfēng, yīnsī hé měixué. Gōngdiàn de nǚxìng kěyǐ tōngguò zhèxiē chuānghù guānkàn wàimiàn ér bù bèi kàn dào.

The design took ventilation, privacy, and aesthetics into account. The women of the palace could watch the outside world through these windows without being seen themselves.

Tourist 1: 这个宫殿有多少个窗户? Zhège gōngdiàn yǒu duōshǎo gè chuānghù? How many windows does this palace have?

Guide: 风之宫殿共有 953 个窗户, 它们的设计非常精巧, 目的是让风可以流通, 保持宫殿的凉爽。 Fēng zhī gōngdiàn gòng yǒu 953 gè chuānghù, tāmen de shèjì fēicháng jīngqiǎo, mùdì shì ràng fēng kěyǐ liútōng, bǎochí gōngdiàn de liángshuǎng.

The Hawa Mahal has a total of 953 windows. Their design is very intricate, with the purpose of allowing air circulation to keep the palace cool.

Tourist 2: 这座宫殿是为了皇宫的女性建造的吗? Zhèzuò gōngdiàn shì wèile huánggōng de nǚxìng jiànzhào de ma? Was this palace built for the women of the royal family?

Guide: 是的, 风之宫殿是为了皇宫的女性和宫廷的其他成员设计的, 他们可以通过这些窗户看到外面的世界, 而不被外人看到。

Shì de, Fēng zhī gōngdiàn shì wèile huánggōng de nǚxìng hé gōngtīng de qítā chéngyuán shèjì de, tāmen kěyǐ tōngguò zhèxiē chuānghù kàn dào wàimiàn de shìjiè, ér bù bèi wàiren kàn dào.

Yes, the Hawa Mahal was designed for the women of the royal family and other members of the court. They could watch the outside world through these windows without being seen.

Tourist 3: 这些窗户的形状很特别, 是模仿什么吗?

Zhèxiē chuānghù de xíngzhuàng hěn tèbié, shì mófǎng shénme ma?

The shape of these windows is quite unique. Are they modelled after anything?

Guide: 这些窗户的形状灵感来自于传统的印度建筑和穆斯林的建筑风格, 尤其是在北印度的装饰风格中非常常见。

Zhèxiē chuānghù de xíngzhuàng línggǎn lái zì yú chuántǒng de Yìndù jiànzhù hé Mùsílín de jiànzhù fēnggé, yóuqí shì zài běi Yìndù de zhuāngshì fēnggé zhōng fēicháng chángjiàn.

The shape of these windows is inspired by traditional Indian architecture and Islamic design, which is especially common in the decorative style of northern India.

At the Jantar Mantar (Astronomical Observatory)

Guide: 现在我们来到简塔·曼塔天文台，这是 18 世纪由贾伊·辛格二世建造的天文遗址，已被列为世界遗产。

Xiànzài wǒmen lái dào Jiǎntǎ·Màntǎ Tiānwéntái, zhè shì 18 shìjì yóu Jiǎ Yī Xīng Gé Èr Shì jiànzhào de tiānwén yízhǐ, yǐ bèi liè wéi Shìjiè Yíchǎn.

Now we're at the Jantar Mantar, an 18th-century astronomical site built by Jai Singh II, which is a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

Tourist 1: 这些仪器是用来做什么的？Zhèxiē yíqì shì yòng lái zuò shénme de? What are these instruments used for?

Guide: 这些仪器用于观测天体运动、时间测量和预测星象。最大的仪器叫“萨姆拉特·亚纳特”，是世界上最大的日晷。

Zhèxiē yíqì yòng yú guāncè tiāntǐ yùndòng, shíjiān cèliáng hé yùcè xīngxiàng. Zuìdà de yíqì jì

Tourist 1: 这些巨大的天文仪器是怎么工作的？Zhèxiē jùdà de tiānwén yíqì shì zěnmē gōngzuò de? How do these giant astronomical instruments work?

Guide: 这些仪器通过天体的影像和观察来测量星体的位置和时间。例如，最大的仪器“萨姆拉特·亚纳特”可以测量太阳的时间。

Zhèxiē yíqì tōngguò tiāntǐ de yǐngxiàng hé guānchá lái cèliáng xīngtǐ de wèizhì hé shíjiān. Lìrú, zuìdà de yíqì “Sàmùlāt·Yànàtè” kěyǐ cèliáng tàiyáng de shíjiān.

These instruments work by observing celestial bodies and measuring their positions and time. For example, the largest instrument, the Samrat Yantra, can measure the time based on the position of the sun.

Tourist 2: 这些仪器是由谁设计的？Zhèxiē yíqì shì yóu shuí shèjì de? Who designed these instruments?

Guide: 这些仪器是由斋浦尔的马哈拉贾贾伊·辛格二世设计的，他是一位天文学家，对天文有着浓厚的兴趣。

Zhèxiē yíqì shì yóu Zhāipǔ'ěr de Mǎhālāzhā Jiǎ Yī Xīng Gé Èr Shì shèjì de, tā shì yī wèi tiānwénxuéjiā, duì tiānwén yǒu zhe nóng hòu de xìngqù.

These instruments were designed by the Maharaja Jai Singh II of Jaipur, who was an astronomer with a deep interest in astronomy.

Tourist 3: 天文台的这些仪器能与现代的仪器相比吗？Tiānwéntái de zhèxiē yíqì néng yǔ xiàndài de yíqì xiāng bǐ ma?

Can these instruments compare to modern equipment?

Guide: 这些仪器是非常精准的，虽然是古老的，但它们的设计和功能仍然非常有效。

Zhèxiē yíqì shì fēicháng jīngzhǔn de, suīrán shì gǔlǎo de, dàn tāmen de shèjì hé gōngnéng réngrán fēicháng yǒuxiào.

These instruments are very accurate. Although ancient, their design and functionality are still very effective.

Tourist 1: 这里是世界上最大的天文仪器吗？Zhèlǐ shì shìjiè shàng zuìdà de tiānwén yíqì ma? Are these the largest astronomical instruments in the world?

Guide: 这里有一些世界上最大的天文仪器，像“萨姆拉特·亚纳特”是全球最大的一种太阳仪，它的设计可以测量太阳的位置和时间。

Zhèlǐ yǒu yīxiē shìjiè shàng zuìdà de tiānwén yíqì, xiàng “Sàmùlāt·Yànàtè” shì quánqiú zuìdà de yī zhǒng tàiyáng yí, tā de shèjì kěyǐ cèliáng tàiyáng de wèizhì hé shíjiān.

This site features some of the largest astronomical instruments in the world. For example, the Samrat Yantra is the world's largest solar instrument, designed to measure the position and time of the sun.

Tourist 2: 这些仪器是怎么发明的？Zhèxiē yíqì shì zěnmē fāmíng de? How were these instruments invented?

Guide: 这些天文仪器是由马哈拉贾贾伊·辛格二世发明的，他是一位天文学家，并且对天文学非常感兴趣。

Zhèxiē tiānwén yíqì shì yóu Mǎhālāzhā Jiǎ Yī-Xīng Gé Èr Shì fāmíng de, tā shì yī wèi tiānwénxuéjiā, bǐngqiě duì tiānwénxué fēicháng gǎn xìngqù.

These astronomical instruments were invented by Maharaja Jai Singh II, who was an astronomer and had a deep interest in astronomy.

Tourist 3: 这个天文台在古代的天文学中起到了什么作用?

Zhège tiānwéntái zài gǔdài de tiānwénxué zhōng qǐdàole shénme zuòyòng? What role did this observatory play in ancient astronomy?

Guide: 它是古代天文学和科学研究的重要工具, 帮助天文学家准确测量星体的运动, 并帮助确定季节变化。

Tā shì gǔdài tiānwénxué hé kēxué yánjiū de zhòngyào gōngjù, bāngzhù tiānwénxuéjiā zhǔnquè cèliáng xīngtǐ de yùndòng, bìng bāngzhù quèdìng jìjié biànhuà.

It was an important tool for ancient astronomy and scientific research, helping astronomers to accurately measure the movement of celestial bodies and determine seasonal changes.

Lesson 27

Visit to Bihar: Bodhgaya (Place of Buddha's Enlightenment)

游览比哈尔邦：菩提伽耶（佛陀成道之地）

Yóulǎn bǐhā ēr bāng: Pútí jiāyē (fótuó chéngdào zhī dì)

Tourist 1: 这里是释迦牟尼成道的地方吗? Zhèlǐ shì Shìjiā Móuní chéngdào de dìfāng ma? Is this the place where Buddha attained enlightenment?

Guide: 是的, 释迦牟尼在这里的菩提树下冥想, 获得了开悟。这里是佛教最圣洁的地方之一。

Shì de, Shìjiā Móuní zài zhèlǐ de Pútí shù xià míngxiǎng, huòdéle kāiwù. Zhèlǐ shì fójiào zuì shèngjié de dìfāng zhī yī. Yes, Buddha meditated under the Bodhi tree here and attained enlightenment. This is one of the holiest places in Buddhism.

Tourist 2: 这个菩提树和原来的树有什么区别? Zhège Pútí shù hé yuánlái de shù yǒu shénme qūbié? How is this Bodhi tree different from the original tree?

Guide: 这棵树是原来菩提树的后代, 传说释迦牟尼成道后, 弟子们亲自培育了这棵树。

Zhè kē shù shì yuánlái Pútí shù de hòudài, chuánshuō Shìjiā Móuní chéngdào hòu, dìzǐmen qīnzì péiyùle zhè kē shù.

This tree is a descendant of the original Bodhi tree. According to legend, after Buddha's enlightenment, his disciples personally nurtured this tree.

Tourist 3: 菩提树下的那座寺庙是什么? Pútí shù xià de nà zuò sìmiào shì shénme? What is the temple under the Bodhi tree?

Guide: 那是“菩提寺”, 这是佛教徒朝圣的地方, 寺内有一座佛像, 代表释迦牟尼的智慧和慈悲。 Nà shì “Pútí Sì,” zhè shì fójiàotú cháoshèng de dìfāng, sì nèi yǒu yī zuò fóxiàng, dàibiǎo Shìjiā Móuní de zhìhuì hé cíbēi.

That is the "Bodhi Temple," a place of pilgrimage for Buddhists. Inside the temple is a statue of Buddha, symbolizing his wisdom and compassion.

Tourist 1: 这个地方对佛教徒有什么特别的意义?

Zhège dìfāng duì fójiàotú yǒu shénme tèbié de yìyì?

What special significance does this place have for Buddhists?

Guide: Bodhgaya 是佛教的圣地, 许多佛教徒从世界各地来到这里, 进行朝圣和冥想, 以寻求精神上的启蒙与安宁。

Bodhgaya shì fójiào de shèngdì, xǔduō fójiàotú cóng shìjiè gèdì lái dào zhèlǐ, jìnxíng cháoshèng hé míngxiǎng, yǐ xúnqiú jīngshén shàng de qǐméng yǔ ānníng.

Bodhgaya is a holy place for Buddhists, and many Buddhists from all over the world come here for pilgrimage and meditation, seeking spiritual enlightenment and peace.

2: 这里是古代的大学遗址吗? Zhèlǐ shì gǔdài de dàxué yízhǐ ma? Is this the site of an ancient university?

Guide: 是的, Nalanda 是古印度著名的大学之一, 曾是世界上最早¹的大学之一, 吸引了来自各地的学生和学者。

Shì de, Nalanda shì gǔ Yìndù zhù míng de dàxué zhī yī, céng shì shìjiè shàng zuì zǎo de dàxué zhī yī, xīyǐnle láizi gèdì de xuéshēng hé xuézhě.

Yes, Nalanda was one of ancient India's most renowned universities and one of the earliest in the world, attracting students and scholars from all over.

Tourist 1: 这里的学者都学些什么? Zhèlǐ de xuézhě dōu xué xiē shénme? What did the scholars here study?

Guide: Nalanda 的课程涵盖了哲学、天文学、医学、数学、文学等多个学科, 是一所综合性的学术机构。

Nalanda de kèchéng hán'gài le zhéxué, tiānwénxué, yīxué, shùxué, wénxué děng duō gè xuékē, shì yī suǒ zōnghé xìng de xuéshù jīgòu.

The courses at Nalanda covered a wide range of subjects including philosophy, astronomy, medicine, mathematics, and literature, making it a comprehensive academic institution.

Tourist 3:

这座古老的大学为什么会消失? Zhèzuò gǔlǎo de dàxué wèishéme huì xiāoshī? Why did this ancient university disappear?

Guide: Nalanda 大学在 12 世纪时遭到突厥帝国的侵略和破坏, 最终被完全摧毁。

Nalanda dàxué zài 12 shìjì shí zāodào tūjué dìguó de qīnlüè hé pòhuài, zuìzhōng bèi wánquán cuīhuǐ. Nalanda University was destroyed in the 12th century due to invasions and destruction by the Turkish Empire.

Tourist 2: 现在我们可以看到什么遗址? Xiànzài wǒmen kěyǐ kàn dào shénme yízhǐ? What ruins can we see here today?

Guide: 如今, Nalanda 的遗址包括寺庙、学院建筑、学者的宿舍和藏书楼的残留部分。还有一些雕塑和浮雕, 展示了当时的学术氛围。

Rújīn, Nalanda de yízhǐ bāokuò sìmiào, xuéyuàn jiànzhù, xuézhě de sùshè hé cángshū lóu de cánliú bùfèn. Hái yǒu yīxiē diāosù hé fúdiào, zhǎnshìle dāngshí de xuéshù fēnwéi.

Today, the ruins of Nalanda include temples, academic buildings, scholar dormitories, and remnants of the library. There are also sculptures and carvings depicting the scholarly atmosphere of that time.

Tourist 3: Nalanda 的遗址与其他古代大学有什么不同?

Nalanda de yízhǐ yǔ qítā gǔdài dàxué yǒu shénme bùtóng?

How is the site of Nalanda different from other ancient university sites?

Guide: Nalanda 的独特之处在于它是世界上第一所真正意义上的高等学府, 吸引了来自不同文化和宗教背景的学者进行交流。它是知识与文化交流的中心。

Nalanda de dú tè zhī chù zài yú tā shì shìjiè shàng dì yī suǒ zhēnzhèng yìyì shàng de gāoděng xuéfǔ, xīyǐnle láizi bùtóng wénhuà hé zōngjiào bèijīng de xuézhě jìnxíng jiāoliú. Tā shì zhīshì yǔ wénhuà jiāoliú de zhōngxīn.

What sets Nalanda apart is that it was the first true institution of higher learning in the world, attracting scholars from various cultural and religious backgrounds for intellectual exchange. It was a center for knowledge and cultural interaction.

A detailed conversation related to formalities when leaving India, paying hotel bills, and other payments.

有关离开印度时的手续、支付酒店账单和其他款项的详细对话。

Yǒuguān líkāi yìndù shí de shǒuxù, zhīfù jiǔdiàn zhàngdān hé qítā kuǎnxiàng de xiángxì duìhuà.

游客A: 导游, 我们快要离开印度了, 能告诉我们离境时需要做哪些手续吗?

Yóukè A: Dǎoyóu, wǒmen kuài yào líkāi Yìndù le, néng gàosù wǒmen líkè shí xūyào zuò nǎxiē shǒuxù ma?

Tourist A: Guide, we are about to leave India. Can you tell us what formalities we need to complete before leaving?

导游: 离境时, 首先要确保您已经办理了退房手续。并且在离开前支付所有账单, 包括酒店账单、餐饮费用等。

Dǎoyóu: Líkè shí, shǒuxiān yào quèbǎo nín yǐjīng bànlǐ le tuìfáng shǒuxù. Bìngqiě zài líkāi qián zhīfù suǒyǒu zhàngdān, bāokuò jiǔdiàn zhàngdān, cānyǐn fèiyòng děng.

Guide: Before departure, the first thing is to make sure you've checked out of the hotel. Also, make sure to pay all your bills, including hotel charges, food expenses, and any additional fees.

游客B: 我们已经支付了大部分费用, 但我听说机场有一些离境税, 我们需要支付吗?

Yóukè B: Wǒmen yǐjīng zhīfù le dà bùfēn fèiyòng, dàn wǒ tīng shuō jīchǎng yǒu yīxiē líkè shuì, wǒmen xūyào zhīfù ma?

Tourist B: We've already paid most of the fees, but I heard that there might be departure taxes at the airport. Do we need to pay them?

导游: 是的, 印度的一些国际航班需要支付离境税。通常情况下, 这笔费用已经包括在机票价格里, 但有些机场可能要求您单独支付。

Dǎoyóu: Shì de, Yìndù de yīxiē guójì hángbān xūyào zhīfù líkè shuì. Tōngcháng qíngkuàng xià, zhè bǐ fèiyòng yǐjīng bāokuò zài jīpiào jiàgé lǐ, dàn yǒuxiē jīchǎng kěnéng yāoqiú nín dāndú zhīfù.

Guide: Yes, some international flights from India require a departure tax. Usually, this fee is already included in the price of the ticket, but some airports may require you to pay separately.

游客A: 我们应该提前支付这些费用, 还是在机场支付?

Yóukè A: Wǒmen yīnggāi tíqián zhīfù zhèxiē fèiyòng, hái shì zài jīchǎng zhīfù?

Tourist A: Should we pay these fees in advance or at the airport?

导游: 如果费用已经包含在机票里, 您在机场时只需确认一下。如果需要单独支付, 通常机场会提供支付的窗口或机器, 您可以在出发前支付。

Dǎoyóu: Rúguǒ fèiyòng yǐjīng bāokuò zài jīpiào lǐ, nín zài jīchǎng shí zhǐ xū quèrèn yīxià. Rúguǒ xūyào dāndú zhīfù, tōngcháng jīchǎng huì tígōng zhīfù de chuāngkǒu huò jīqì, nín kěyǐ zài chūfā qián zhīfù.

Guide: If the fee is included in the ticket price, you just need to confirm it at the airport. If you need to pay separately, airports usually have counters or machines for payment, and you can settle the payment before departure.

游客B: 那我们需要结清所有酒店账单吗?

Yóukè B: Nà wǒmen xūyào jiéqīng suǒyǒu jiǔdiàn zhàngdān ma?

Tourist B: Do we need to settle all the hotel bills?

导游: 是的, 离开前确保结清所有费用, 包括房费、餐饮、迷你吧费用以及任何额外的服务费用。如果有任何未结算的账单, 酒店可能会要求您在退房时支付。

Dǎoyóu: Shì de, líkāi qián quèbǎo jiéqīng suǒyǒu fèiyòng, bāokuò fángfèi, cānyǐn, míní bā fèiyòng yǐjí rènhe éwài de fúwù fèiyòng. Rúguǒ yǒu rènhe wèi jié suàn de zhàngdān, jiǔdiàn kěnéng huì yāoqiú nín zài tuìfáng shí zhīfù.

Guide: Yes, before you leave, make sure to settle all fees, including room charges, food and beverage, minibar charges, and any additional service fees. If there are any outstanding bills, the hotel may ask you to pay them during check-out.

游客A: 我们在酒店付款时能使用信用卡吗?

Yóukè A: Wǒmen zài jiǔdiàn fùkuǎn shí néng shǐyòng xìnyòngkǎ ma?

Tourist A: Can we use a credit card to pay at the hotel?

导游: 绝大多数酒店接受信用卡付款, 尤其是国际酒店。请确保您的信用卡可以在印度使用, 并检查是否有国际交易费用。

Dǎoyóu: Jué dà duōshù jiǔdiàn jiēshòu xìnyòngkǎ fùkuǎn, yóuqí shì guójì jiǔdiàn. Qǐng quèbǎo nín de xìnyòngkǎ kěyǐ zài Yìndù shǐyòng, bìng jiǎnchá shǐfǒu yǒu guójì jiāoyì fèiyòng.

Guide: Most hotels accept credit card payments, especially international hotels. Make sure your credit card can be used in India and check if there are any international transaction fees.

游客B: 如果我们有一些未支付的费用, 比如小费, 应该怎么处理?

Yóukè B: Rúguǒ wǒmen yǒu yīxiē wèi zhīfù de fèiyòng, bǐrú xiǎofèi, yīnggāi zěnmě chǔlǐ?

Tourist B: What if we have some unpaid charges, like tips? How should we handle them?

导游: 小费通常是自愿的, 您可以根据服务质量来决定是否给小费。在退房时, 您可以直接将小费留给酒店工作人员。

Dǎoyóu: Xiǎofèi tōngcháng shì zìyuàn de, nín kěyǐ gēnjù fúwù zhìliàng lái juéding shìfǒu gěi xiǎofèi. Zài tuìfáng shí, nín kěyǐ zhíjiē jiāng xiǎofèi liú gěi jiǔdiàn gōngzuò rényuán.

Guide: Tipping is usually voluntary, and you can decide whether to give a tip based on the quality of service. At check-out, you can leave the tip directly for the hotel staff.

游客A: 最后, 我们要确保什么手续呢?

Yóukè A: Zuìhòu, wǒmen yào quèbǎo shénme shǒuxù ne?

Tourist A: Finally, what other formalities should we make sure to complete?

导游: 确保您带齐所有个人物品, 检查您的护照和机票, 确认航班时间, 并提前到达机场。离开印度时, 确保办理好出境手续。

Dǎoyóu: Quèbǎo nín dài qí suǒyǒu gèrén wùpǐn, jiǎnchá nín de hùzhào hé jīpiào, quèrèn hángbān shíjiān, bìng tíqián dào dá jīchǎng. Líkāi Yīndù shí, quèbǎo bànlǐ hǎo chūjìng shǒuxù.

Guide: Make sure you have all your personal items, check your passport and ticket, confirm your flight time, and arrive at the airport in advance. Before leaving India, ensure you complete the departure procedures.

Lesson 28
List of Indian states, their major cities
印度各邦及其主要城市列表：
Yìndù gè bāng jí qí zhǔyào chéngshì lièbiǎo:

1. Andhra Pradesh Chinese: 安得拉邦 (Ān dé lā bāng)

Major Cities: Visakhapatnam: 维沙卡帕特南 (Wéi shā kǎ pà tè nán); Vijayawada: 维贾亚瓦达 (Wéi jiǎ yà wǎ dá)

2. Arunachal Pradesh Chinese: 阿鲁纳恰尔邦 (Ā lǔ nà qià ěr bāng)

Major City: Itanagar: 伊塔那噶 (Yī tā nà gé)

3. Assam Chinese: 阿萨姆邦 (Ā sà mǔ bāng) ;

Major Cities: Guwahati: 古瓦哈提 (Gǔ wǎ hā tí); Dibrugarh: 迪布鲁加尔 (Dí bù lǔ jiā ěr)

4. Bihar Chinese: 比哈尔邦 (Bǐ hā ěr bāng)

Major Cities: Patna: 巴特那 (Bā tè nà); Gaya: 伽耶 (Jiā yé)

5. Chhattisgarh-Chinese: 恰蒂斯加尔邦 (Qià dì sī jiā ěr bāng)

Major Cities: Raipur: 拉普尔 (Lā pǔ ěr); Bilaspur: 比拉斯普尔 (Bǐ lā sī pǔ ěr)

6. Goa - Chinese: 果阿邦 (Guǒ ā bāng)

Major City: Panaji: 帕纳吉 (Pà nà jí)

7. Gujarat-Chinese: 古吉拉特邦 (Gǔ jí lā tè bāng)

Major Cities: Ahmedabad: 艾哈迈达巴德 (Ài hā mài dá bā dé); Surat: 苏拉特 (Sū lā tè)

8. Haryana-Chinese: 哈里亚纳邦 (Hā lǐ yà nà bāng)

Major Cities: Gurgaon: 古尔冈 (Gǔ ěr gāng) ; Faridabad: 法里达巴德 (Fǎ lǐ dá bā dé)

9. Himachal Pradesh-Chinese: 喜马偕尔邦 (Xǐ mǎ xié ěr bāng)

Major Cities: Shimla: 西姆拉 (Xī mǔ lā); Manali: 马纳利 (Mǎ nà lì)

10. Jharkhand-Chinese: 贾坎德邦 (Jiǎ kǎn dé bāng)

Major Cities: Ranchi: 兰契 (Lán qì); Jamshedpur: 贾姆谢德普尔 (Jiǎ mǔ xié dé pǔ ěr)

11. Karnataka-Chinese: 卡纳塔克邦 (Kǎ nà tǎ kè bāng)

Major Cities: Bengaluru: 班加罗尔 (Bān jiā luó ěr); Mysore: 迈索尔 (Mài suǒ ěr)

12. Kerala-Chinese: 喀拉拉邦 (Kā lā lā bāng)

Major Cities: Thiruvananthapuram: 特里凡得琅 (Tè lǐ fán dé láng); Kochi: 科钦 (Kē qīn)

13. Madhya Pradesh-Chinese: 中央邦 (Zhōng yāng bāng)

Major Cities: Bhopal: 博帕尔 (Bó pà ěr); Indore: 印多尔 (Yìn duō ěr)

14. Maharashtra-Chinese: 马哈拉施特拉邦 (Mǎ hā lā shī tè lā bāng) Major

Cities: Mumbai: 孟买 (Mèng mǎi); Pune: 浦那 (Pǔ nà)

15. Manipur-Chinese: 曼尼普尔邦 (Màn ní pǔ ěr bāng)

Major City: Imphal: 因帕尔 (Yīn pà ěr);

16. Meghalaya-Chinese: 梅加拉亚邦 (Méi jiā lā yà bāng)

Major City: Shillong: 西隆 (Xī lóng)

17. Mizoram-Chinese: 米佐拉姆邦 (Mǐ zuǒ lā mǔ bāng)

Major City: Aizawl: 艾藻尔 (Ài zǎo ěr)

18. Nagaland-Chinese: 那加兰邦 (Nà jiā lán bāng)

Major City: Kohima: 科希马 (Kē xī mǎ)

19. Odisha-Chinese: 奥里萨邦 (Ào lǐ sà bāng)

Major Cities: Bhubaneswar: 布巴内斯瓦尔 (Bù bā nèi sī wǎ ěr); Cuttack: 卡塔克 (Kǎ tǎ kè)

20. Punjab-Chinese: 旁遮普邦 (Páng zhē pǔ bāng)

Major Cities: Chandigarh: 昌迪加尔 (Chāng dí jiā ěr); Amritsar: 阿姆利则 (Ā mǔ lì zé)

21. Rajasthan-Chinese: 拉贾斯坦邦 (Lā zhā sī tǎn bāng)

Major Cities: Jaipur: 斋浦尔 (Zhāi pǔ ěr); Udaipur: 乌代浦尔 (Wū dài pǔ ěr)

22. Sikkim-Chinese: 锡金邦 (Xī jīn bāng)

Major City: Gangtok: 甘托克 (Gān tuò kè)

23. Tamil Nadu-Chinese: 泰米尔纳德邦 (Tài mǐ ěr nà dé bāng)

Major Cities: Chennai: 钦奈 (Qīn nài); Coimbatore: 哥印拜陀 (Gē yìn bài tuó)

24. Telangana-Chinese: 特伦甘纳邦 (Tè lún gān nà bāng)

Major City: Hyderabad: 海得拉巴 (Hǎi dé lā bā)

25. Tripura-Chinese: 特里普拉邦 (Tè lǐ pǔ lā bāng)

Major City: Agartala: 阿加尔塔拉 (Ā jiā ěr tǎ lā)

26. Uttar Pradesh-Chinese: 北方邦 (Běi fāng bāng)

Major Cities: Lucknow: 拉克瑙 (Lā kè nǎo); Varanasi: 瓦拉纳西 (Wǎ lā nà xī)

27. Uttarakhand-Chinese: 北阿坎德邦 (Běi ā kǎn dé bāng)

Major Cities: Dehradun: 德拉敦 (Dé lā dūn); Haridwar: 哈里德瓦尔 (Hā lǐ dé wǎ ěr)

28. West Bengal-Chinese: 西孟加拉邦 (Xī mèng jiā lā bāng)

Major Cities: Kolkata: 加尔各答 (Jiā ěr gè dá); Darjeeling: 大吉岭 (Dà jí lǐng)

Indian Union Territories

1. Andaman and Nicobar Islands-Chinese: 安达曼-尼科巴群岛 (Ān dá màn - Ní kē bā qún dǎo) Pinyin: Ān dá màn - Ní kē bā qún dǎo

2. Chandigarh-Chinese: 昌迪加尔 (Chāng dí jiā ěr) –

3. Dadra and Nagar Haveli and Daman and Diu-Chinese: 达德拉-纳加尔哈维利和达曼-第乌 (Dá dé lā - Nà jiā ěr hā wéi lì hé Dá màn - Dì wū)

4. Delhi (National Capital Territory)-Chinese: 德里 (Dé lǐ)

5. Jammu and Kashmir-Chinese: 查谟和克什米尔 (Chá mó hé Kè shí mǐ ěr)

6. Ladakh-Chinese: 拉达克 (Lā dá kè)

7. Lakshadweep: Chinese: 拉克沙群岛 (Lā kè shā qún dǎo)

8. Puducherry-Chinese: 本地治里 (Běn dì zhì lǐ)

Lesson 29

Mock Conversation between a Chinese Guide and Tourists Visiting India (II)

印度中国导游与游客模拟对话（二）

Scene: Arrival at the airport in New Delhi, India.

Greeting and Introduction

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 欢迎来到印度！我是你的导游，我叫 Rahul。你们的航班还好吗？

Pinyin: Huānyíng lái dào Yìndù! Wǒ shì nǐmen de dǎoyóu, wǒ jiào Rahul. Nǐmen de hángbān hái hǎo ma?

English: Welcome to India! I am your guide, Rahul. How was your flight?

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 航班很顺利，谢谢！这里的天气怎么样？ Pinyin: Hángbān hěn shùnlì, xièxiè! Zhèlǐ de tiānqì zěnmeyàng? English: The flight was smooth, thank you! How is the weather here?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 现在是冬季，天气有点凉爽，大概 20 度左右。 Pinyin: Xiànzài shì dōngjì, tiānqì yǒudiǎn liángshuǎng, dàgài 20 dù zuǒyòu. English: It is winter now, and the weather is a bit cool, around 20 degrees. Luggage and Transportation

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 需要我帮您拿行李吗？我们已经安排了车送你们去酒店。 Pinyin: Xūyào wǒ bāng nín ná xínglǐ ma? Wǒmen yǐjīng ānpái le chē sòng nǐmen qù jiǔdiàn. English: Do you need help with your luggage? We have already arranged a car to take you to the hotel.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 谢谢，不用了，我们可以自己拿。酒店需要多久才能到？ Pinyin: Xièxiè, bù yòng le, wǒmen kěyǐ zìjǐ ná. Jiǔdiàn xūyào duōjiǔ cái néng dào? English: Thank you, no need. We can carry it ourselves. How long will it take to reach the hotel? Guide:

Chinese (中文): 从这里到酒店大约需要 30 分钟。一路上您可以欣赏德里的城市风景。

Pinyin: Cóng zhèlǐ dào jiǔdiàn dàyuē xūyào 30 fēnzhōng. Yí lù shàng nín kěyǐ xīnshǎng Dé Lǐ de chéngshì fēngjǐng.

English: It takes about 30 minutes to reach the hotel from here. Along the way, you can enjoy the cityscape of Delhi.

Hotel Check-in Guide:

Chinese (中文): 我们到了！您的房间已经以您的名字预订好了。请拿出护照办理入住手续。

Pinyin: Wǒmen dào le! Nín de fángjiān yǐjīng yǐ nín de míngzì yùdìng hǎo le. Qǐng ná chū hùzhào bàn lǐ rùzhù shǒuxù.

English: We've arrived! Your room has been booked under your name. Please present your passports to check in.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 好的，谢谢你。早餐的时间是什么时候？ Pinyin: Hǎo de, xièxiè nǐ. Zǎocān de shíjiān shì shénme shíhòu? English: Okay, thank you. What time is breakfast?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 酒店早餐供应时间是早上 7 点到 10 点。 Pinyin: Jiǔdiàn zǎocān gōngyìng shíjiān shì zǎoshang 7 diǎn dào 10 diǎn. English: Breakfast is served from 7:00 AM to 10:00 AM.

Exploring Local Cuisine

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 今天晚餐我们安排了印度风味的自助餐，您有没有饮食上的特别要求？

Pinyin: Jīntiān wǎncān wǒmen ānpái le Yìndù fēngwèi de zìzhùcān, nín yǒu méiyǒu yǐnshí shàng de tèbié yāoqiú?

English: For dinner tonight, we have arranged an Indian buffet. Do you have any dietary restrictions?

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 我们希望有一些不辣的菜，可以吗？ Pinyin: Wǒmen xīwàng yǒu yīxiē bù là de cài, kěyǐ ma? English:

We would like some non-spicy dishes. Is that possible?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 当然可以! 印度有很多不辣的素食和鸡肉菜品, 我会为您安排。

Pinyin: Dāngrán kěyǐ! Yīndù yǒu hěn duō bù là de sùshí hé jīròu cài pǐn, wǒ huì wèi nín ānpái.

English: Of course! India has many non-spicy vegetarian and chicken dishes. I will arrange that for you. City Tour Planning

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 明天我们会去参观印度门和红堡。有没有其他地方您特别想去的?

Pinyin: Míngtiān wǒmen huì qù cānguān Yīndùmén hé Hóng Bǎo. Yǒu méiyǒu qítā dìfāng nín tèbié xiǎng qù de?

English: Tomorrow, we will visit India Gate and the Red Fort. Are there any other places you would particularly like to visit?

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 我们听说阿克萨达姆神庙很美, 也想去看看。

Pinyin: Wǒmen tīngshuō Ākèsàdám Shénmiào hěn měi, yě xiǎng qù kàn kàn.

English: We heard that Akshardham Temple is beautiful, and we'd like to visit it too.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 好的, 没问题, 我会加到行程里。

Pinyin: Hǎo de, méi wèntí, wǒ huì jiā dào xíngchéng lǐ.

English: Sure, no problem. I'll add it to the itinerary.

Lesson 30

Detailed Conversation at Shopping 购物时的详细对话

Gòuwù shí de xiángxì duìhuà

Scene: At a bustling local market in Delhi, India.

Introduction to the Market

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 这是德里最有名的市场之一, 叫做昌德尼朝克。这里有很多传统手工艺品、衣服和珠宝。

Pinyin: Zhè shì Dé Lǐ zuì yǒumíng de shìchǎng zhī yī, jiào zuò Chāng Dé Ní Cháo Kè. Zhèlǐ yǒu hěn duō chuántǒng shǒugōng yìpǐn, yīfú hé zhūbǎo.

English: This is one of the most famous markets in Delhi, called Chandni Chowk. You'll find a variety of traditional handicrafts, clothes, and jewelry here.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 这里的東西看起来很漂亮! 可以讨价还价吗? Pinyin: Zhèlǐ de dōngxī kàn qǐlái hěn piàoliang! Kěyǐ tǎojià huánjià ma? English: The items here look so beautiful! Can we bargain?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 这是个传统市场, 讨价还价是很常见的。我可以帮您。

Pinyin: Shì de, zhè shì gè chuántǒng shìchǎng, tǎojià huánjià shì hěn chángjiàn de. Wǒ kěyǐ bāng nín.

English: Yes, this is a traditional market, and bargaining is very common here. I can help you.

Buying Jewelry

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 我喜欢这个银手镯, 多少钱? Pinyin: Wǒ xǐhuān zhège yín shǒuzhuó, duōshǎo qián? English: I like this silver bracelet. How much is it?

Shopkeeper:

Chinese (中文): 这个是1500 卢比。Pinyin: Zhège shì 1500 Lú bǐ. English: This is 1,500 rupees.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 这个价格有点贵。可以便宜点吗? Pinyin: Zhège jiàgé yǒudiǎn guì. Kěyǐ piányi diǎn ma?

English: This price is a bit high. Can you make it cheaper?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 老板, 她是游客, 能不能给个优惠价格? Pinyin: Lǎobǎn, tā shì yóukè, néng bùnéng gěi gè yōuhuì jiàgé? English: Shopkeeper, she is a tourist. Can you give her a discount?

Shopkeeper:

Chinese (中文): 好吧, 可以给您 1200 卢比。Pinyin: Hǎo ba, kěyǐ gěi nín 1200 Lú bǐ. English: Alright, I can give it to you for 1,200 rupees.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 谢谢, 我买了! Pinyin: Xièxiè, wǒ mǎi le! English: Thank you, I'll take it! Trying Local Clothes

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 我想试试这件纱丽, 这是什么材料做的? Pinyin: Wǒ xiǎng shì shì zhè jiàn shā lì, zhè shì shénme cáiliào zuò de? English: I want to try this saree. What material is it made of?

Shopkeeper:

Chinese (中文): 这是纯丝绸, 非常适合正式场合穿。Pinyin: Zhè shì chún sīchóu, fēicháng shìhé zhèngshì chǎngché chuān. English: This is pure silk, perfect for formal occasions.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 您可以试穿一下, 旁边有试衣间。Pinyin: Nín kěyǐ shì chuān yīxià, pángbiān yǒu shìyījiān. English: You can try it on. There's a fitting room nearby.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 好的, 谢谢! Pinyin: Hǎo de, xièxiè! English: Alright, thank you!

Buying Spices

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 印度的香料非常有名, 像姜黄、辣椒粉和咖喱粉都可以带回去做菜用。

Pinyin: Yìndù de xiāngliào fēicháng yǒumíng, xiàng jiānghuáng, làjiāo fěn hé kālǐ fěn dōu kěyǐ dài huíqù zuò cài yòng.

English: Indian spices are very famous. Turmeric, chili powder, and curry powder are great to take back home for cooking.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 这个咖喱粉多少钱一包? Pinyin: Zhège kālǐ fěn duōshǎo qián yì bāo? English: How much is this curry powder per pack?

Shopkeeper:

Chinese (中文): 一包是 200 卢比。Pinyin: Yì bāo shì 200 Lú bǐ. English: One pack is 200 rupees. Guide:

Chinese (中文): 如果买三包, 可以打折吗? Pinyin: Rúguǒ mǎi sān bāo, kěyǐ dǎzhé ma? English: If we buy three packs, can you give us a discount?

Shopkeeper:

Chinese (中文): 好的, 三包 500 卢比。Pinyin: Hǎo de, sān bāo 500 Lú bǐ. English: Alright, three packs for 500 rupees.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 太好了, 那我要三包! Pinyin: Tài hǎo le, nà wǒ yào sān bāo! English: Great, I'll take three packs!

Wrapping Up the Shopping Trip Guide:

Chinese (中文): 你们买得很开心! 还有其他想逛的地方吗? Pinyin: Nínmen mǎi de hěn kāixīn! Hái yǒu qítā xiǎng guàng de dìfāng ma? English: You all had a great time shopping! Is there anywhere else you'd like to visit?

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 已经买了很多了, 现在可以回酒店休息了, 谢谢你! Pinyin: Yǐjīng mǎi le hěn duō le, xiànzài kěyǐ huí jiǔdiàn xiūxi le, xièxiè nǐ! English: We've already bought a lot. We'd like to go back to the hotel to rest now. Thank you!

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 好的, 我们现在就回去! 希望您喜欢今天的购物体验! Pinyin: Hǎo de, wǒmen xiànzài jiù huíqù! Xīwàng nín xīhuān jīntiān de gòuwù tīyàn! English: Alright, let's head back now! I hope you enjoyed today's shopping experience!

Lesson 31
Detailed Conversation About Comfort at the Hotel 关于酒店舒适度的详细对话
Guānyú jiǔdiàn shūshì dù de xiángxì duìhuà

Scene: At the hotel lobby, after the tourists have checked into their rooms.

Guide Checking on Comfort 场景：游客入住酒店大堂。导游检查舒适度

Chǎngjǐng: Yóukè rùzhù jiǔdiàn dàtáng. Dǎoyóu jiǎnchá shūshì dù

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 您对房间满意吗？一切都舒适吗？

Pinyin: Nín duì fángjiān mǎnyì ma? Yīqiè dōu shūshì ma?

English: Are you satisfied with your room? Is everything comfortable?

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 房间很宽敞，但是空调好像有点问题。

Pinyin: Fángjiān hěn kuānchǎng, dànshì kòngtiáo hǎoxiàng yǒudiǎn wèntí. English: The room is spacious, but the air conditioner seems to have a problem.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 我马上帮您联系前台处理这个问题。Pinyin: Wǒ mǎshàng bāng nín liánxì qiántái chǔlǐ zhège wèntí. English: I will contact the front desk immediately to fix this issue.

Offering Assistance

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 您还需要什么吗？比如额外的枕头或毛巾？Pinyin: Nín hái xūyào shénme ma? Bǐrú éwài de zhěntou huò máojīn? English: Do you need anything else, like extra pillows or towels?

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 可以多给我们一瓶矿泉水吗？谢谢。Pinyin: Kěyǐ duō gěi wǒmen yì píng kuàngquánshuǐ ma? Xièxiè. English: Could we have an extra bottle of mineral water? Thank you.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 没问题，我会让酒店工作人员送到您的房间。Pinyin: Méi wèntí, wǒ huì ràng jiǔdiàn gōngzuò rényuán sòng dào nín de fángjiān. English: No problem, I'll ask the hotel staff to bring it to your room.

Explaining Hotel Facilities

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 酒店有健身房和游泳池，使用时间是早上6点到晚上10点。需要的话，我可以为您安排。

Pinyin: Jiǔdiàn yǒu jiànshēnfǎng hé yóuyǒngchí, shíyòng shíjiān shì zǎoshang 6 diǎn dào wǎnshàng 10 diǎn. Xūyào dehuà, wǒ kěyǐ wèi nín ānpái.

English: The hotel has a gym and a swimming pool, available from 6:00 AM to 10:00 PM. Let me know if you'd like me to arrange anything for you.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 太好了！游泳池在哪个楼层？

Pinyin: Tài hǎo le! Yóuyǒngchí zài nǎge lóucéng?

English: That's great! Which floor is the swimming pool on?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 游泳池在二楼，您可以直接乘电梯过去。

Pinyin: Yóuyǒngchí zài èr lóu, nín kěyǐ zhíjiē chéng diàntī guòqù.

English: The swimming pool is on the second floor, and you can take the elevator directly. Room Service

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 如果需要餐饮服务, 可以拨打电话联系客房服务。他们可以送餐到您的房间。 Pinyin: Rúguǒ

xūyào cānyǐn fúwù, kěyǐ bōdǎ diànhuà liánxì kèfáng fúwù. Tāmen kěyǐ sòng cān dào nín de fángjiān.

English: If you need food or drinks, you can call room service, and they will deliver to your room.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 太好了! 菜单在哪里?

Pinyin: Tài hǎo le! Càidān zài nǎlǐ? English: That's great! Where is the menu? Guide:

Chinese (中文): 菜单就在房间桌子上, 有中文和英文选项。

Pinyin: Càidān jiù zài fángjiān zhuōzi shàng, yǒu zhōngwén hé yīngwén xuǎnxiàng. English: The menu is on the table in your room, with options in Chinese and English.

Final Check

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 如果您有任何问题, 请随时告诉我, 或者直接联系酒店前台。他们会提供帮助。 Pinyin: Rúguǒ nín yǒu rènhé wèntí, qǐng suíshí gàosù wǒ, huòzhě zhíjiē liánxì jiǔdiàn qiántái. Tāmen huì tígōng bāngzhù.

English: If you have any problems, please feel free to let me know or contact the front desk directly. They'll assist you.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 好的, 非常感谢你的帮助! Pinyin: Hǎo de, fēicháng gǎnxiè nǐ de bāngzhù! English: Alright, thank you so much for your help! Guide: 不客气! 祝您入住愉快! Pinyin: Bù kèqì! Zhù nín rùzhù yúkuài!

English: You're welcome! Enjoy your stay!

Lesson 32

List of Items and Services in a Hotel 酒店物品和服务清单 **Jiǔdiàn wùpǐn hé fúwù qīngdān**

Rooms and Amenities 客房和设施 Kèfáng hé shèshī

Single Room: 单人房 (Dān Rén Fáng) A room with one bed for one person.

Double Room: 双人房 (Shuāng Rén Fáng) A room with a double bed or two single beds.

Suite: 套房 (Tào Fáng) A larger room with a living area and bedroom.

Bathroom Amenities: 卫生间配件 (Wèishēngjiān Pèijiàn) Includes soap, shampoo, towels, and toiletries.

Minibar-小冰箱 (Xiǎo Bīngxiāng)-A small refrigerator stocked with drinks and snacks.

Hotel Facilities

Swimming Pool 游泳池 (Yóuyóǒng Chí)-A pool available for guests to swim.

Gym-健身房 (Jiànshēn Fáng) A fitness center with exercise equipment.

Spa-水疗中心 (Shuǐliáo Zhōngxīn) A place offering massages and beauty treatments.

Conference Room-会议室 (Huìyì Shì)-A room equipped for meetings and conferences.

Parking-停车场 (Tíngchē Chǎng) An area for guests to park their vehicles.

Dining Services

Buffet Breakfast-自助餐 (Zìzhòu Zǎocān)-Breakfast served in a buffet style.

Room Service-房间服务 (Fángjiān Fúwù)-Meals and beverages delivered to the room.

Restaurant-餐厅 (Cāntīng)-A dining area offering various cuisines.

Bar-酒吧 (Jiǔbā)-A place serving alcoholic and non-alcoholic beverages.

Coffee Shop-咖啡店 (Kāfēidiàn)-A café serving coffee, tea, and snacks.

Guest Services

Reception 前台 (Qiántái) The front desk for check-in and guest inquiries.

Concierge- 门 卫 (Ménwèi)-Assistance with reservations, directions, and tickets.

Housekeeping-房务服务 (Fángwù Fúwù)-Cleaning and maintaining guest rooms.

Laundry Service-洗衣服务 (Xǐyī Fúwù)-Washing, drying, and ironing clothes for guests.

Wake-Up Call-叫醒服务 (Jiàoxǐng Fúwù)-A service to wake guests up at a specified time.

Entertainment Options-

TV and Streaming Services-电视和流播服务 (Diànshì Hé Liú Bō Fúwù)-Televisions and access to streaming platforms.

Gaming Room-游戏房 (Yóuxì Fáng)-A room equipped with gaming consoles and board games.

Live Entertainment-现场表演 (Xiànchǎng Biǎn Yǎn)-Music, dance, or comedy performances Kids' Play Area-

儿童游乐区 (Értóng Yóulèqū)-A play area designed for children.

Library- 图书馆 (Túshūguǎn)-A collection of books and reading materials.

Transportation Services

Airport Shuttle-机场接送服务 (Jīchǎng Jiēsòng Fúwù)-Transportation to and from the airport.

Car Rental-租车服务 (Zūchē Fúwù)-Renting cars for local travel.

Taxi Booking-打车预约 (Dǎchē Yùyuē)-Arranging taxis for guests.

Bicycle Rental-自行车租赁 (Zìxíngchē Zūzù)-Renting bicycles for exploring the area.

Tour Packages-游览包装 (Yóulǎn Bāozhuāng)-Organized tours to local attractions.

Lesson 33
Conversation During Dining at a Restaurant 在餐厅就餐时的对话
Zài cāntīng jiùcān shí de duìhuà

Scene: A group of Chinese tourists is dining at a popular Indian restaurant, guided by a local tour guide. Arriving at the Restaurant 场景：一群中国游客在当地导游的带领下，在一家受欢迎的印度餐厅就餐。到达餐厅

Chǎngjǐng: Yìqún zhōngguó yóukè zài dāngdì dǎoyóu de dǎilǐng xià, zài yíjiā shòu huānyíng de yīndù cāntīng jiùcān. Dàodá cāntīng

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 欢迎来到这家餐厅！这里的印度菜非常有特色，尤其是咖喱和烤饼。

Pinyin: Huānyíng lái dào zhè jiā cāntīng! Zhèlǐ de Yīndù cài fēicháng yǒu tèsè, yóuqí shì kǎlǐ hé kǎobǐng.

English: Welcome to this restaurant! The Indian dishes here are very special, especially the curries and naan.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 餐厅看起来很不错，有推荐的招牌菜吗？Pinyin: Cāntīng kàn qǐlái hěn bùcuò, yǒu tuījiàn de zhāopái cài ma? English: The restaurant looks great. Do you recommend any signature dishes?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的，他们的黄油鸡和羊肉咖喱非常受欢迎，还有烤饼和米饭搭配最好。Pinyin: Shì de, tāmen de huángyóu jī hé yáng ròu kǎlǐ fēicháng shòu huānyíng, hái yǒu kǎobǐng hé mǐfàn dāpèi zuì hǎo.

English: Yes, their butter chicken and mutton curry are very popular. They go best with naan or rice. Placing the Order

Waiter:

Chinese (中文): 您好，欢迎光临。您准备好点餐了吗？

Pinyin: Nín hǎo, huānyíng guānglín. Nín zhǔnbèi hǎo diǎn cān le ma? English: Hello, welcome. Are you ready to order?

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 我们想尝试一些不太辣的菜，有什么推荐吗？

Pinyin: Wǒmen xiǎng chángshì yìxiē bù tài là de cài, yǒu shénme tuījiàn ma?

English: We'd like to try some dishes that are not too spicy. What do you recommend?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 黄油鸡和奶油芝士咖喱口味比较温和，您可以试试这些。Pinyin: Huángyóu jī hé nǎiyóu zhīshì kǎlǐ kǒuwèi bǐjiào wēnhé, nín kěyǐ shì shì zhèxiē. English: Butter chicken and paneer curry have milder flavors. You can try these.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 好的，那就点一个黄油鸡，一个芝士咖喱，再来一些烤饼和米饭。Pinyin: Hǎo de, nà jiù diǎn yí gè huángyóu jī, yí gè zhīshì kǎlǐ, zài lái yìxiē kǎobǐng hé mǐfàn. English: Alright, let's order butter chicken, paneer curry, and some naan and rice.

Waiter:

Chinese (中文): 好的，您需要饮料吗？Pinyin: Hǎo de, nín xūyào yǐnliào ma? English: Sure. Would you like any drinks?

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 有没有当地特色的饮料？Pinyin: Yǒu méiyǒu dāngdì tèsè de yǐnliào? English: Do you have any local specialty drinks?

Waiter:

Chinese (中文): 有的，比如拉西（酸奶饮料）和姜茶。Pinyin: Yǒu de, bǐrú lāxī (suānnǎi yǐnliào) hé jiāngchá.

English: Yes, we have lassi (a yogurt-based drink) and ginger tea.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 好，那我们点两杯甜拉西和一壶姜茶。Pinyin: Hǎo, nà wǒmen diǎn liǎng bēi tián lāxī hé yì hú jiāngchá. English: Great, we'll have two sweet lassis and a pot of ginger tea.

During the Meal

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 您觉得味道怎么样? Pinyin: Nín juéde wèidào zěnmeyàng? English: How do you like the taste?

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 黄油鸡的味道非常棒, 不是很辣, 香料也很丰富! Pinyin: Huángyóu jī de wèidào fēicháng bàng, bùshì hěn là, xiāngliào yě hěn fēngfù! English: The butter chicken tastes amazing! It's not too spicy, and the spices are rich!

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 这个芝士咖喱有点奶香味, 很特别! 不过这个烤饼有点干, 可以再来一份吗? Pinyin: Zhège zhīshì kālǐ yǒudiǎn nǎixiāng wèi, hěn tèbié! Bùguò zhège kǎobǐng yǒudiǎn gān, kěyǐ zài lái yí fèn ma? English: The paneer curry has a slight milky flavor; it's unique! But the naan is a bit dry. Can we order another portion?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 当然可以, 我马上叫服务员再给您加一份。 Pinyin: Dāngrán kěyǐ, wǒ mǎshàng jiào fúwùyuán zài gěi nín jiā yí fèn. English: Of course. I'll ask the waiter to bring another portion.

Dessert Recommendation

Waiter:

Chinese (中文): 您想试试我们的甜点吗? 比如古拉布佳蒙或者米布丁。 Pinyin: Nín xiǎng shìshì wǒmen de tiándiǎn ma? Bǐrú gǔlābùjiāměng huòzhě mǐ bǔdīng. English: Would you like to try some desserts? Like gulab jamun or rice pudding?

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 古拉布佳蒙是什么? Pinyin: Gǔlābùjiāměng shì shénme? English: What is gulab jamun?

Waiter:

Chinese (中文): 是一种炸过的甜奶球, 泡在糖浆里, 非常受欢迎。 Pinyin: Shì yí zhǒng zhàguò de tián nǎi qiú, pào zài tángjiāng lǐ, fēicháng shòu huānyíng. English: It's a sweet fried milk ball soaked in condensed sweet water, very popular.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 那我们试试这个吧! 两份就可以了。 Pinyin: Nà wǒmen shì shì zhège ba! Liǎng fèn jiù kěyǐ le. English: Let's try that! Two pieces will do.

Wrapping Up Guide:

Chinese (中文): 今天的晚餐您觉得满意吗? Pinyin: Jīntiān de wǎncān nín juéde mǎnyì ma? English: Are you satisfied with tonight's dinner?

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 非常满意, 食物很美味, 服务也很好! Pinyin: Fēicháng mǎnyì, shíwù hěn měiwèi, fúwù yě hěn hǎo!

English: Very satisfied! The food was delicious, and the service was excellent! Tourist 2: Chinese (中文): 是的, 谢谢你的推荐! 我们非常喜欢这里的菜。 Pinyin: Shì de, xièxiè nǐ de tuījiàn! Wǒmen fēicháng xǐhuān zhèlǐ de cài.

English: Yes, thank you for your recommendations! We really enjoyed the food here.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 不客气, 很高兴您们喜欢! 如果有机会, 下次可以尝试更多印度美食。

Pinyin: Bù kèqì, hěn gāoxìng nínmen xǐhuān! Rúguǒ yǒu jīhuì, xiàcì kěyǐ chángshì gèng duō Yìndù měishí.

English: You're welcome! I'm glad you enjoyed it! If you have the chance, you can try more Indian food next time.

Lesson 34 **List of Indian Dishes** **印度菜清单**

Appetizers 开胃菜

Samosa 苏姆萨 (Sūmǐ sà) Fried pastry stuffed with potatoes, peas, and spices.

Pakora 拜考拉 (Bàikǎolā) Deep-fried fritters made with vegetables and chickpea flour.

Paneer Tikka 烤配尼尔 (Kǎo Pèini Ēr) Grilled cottage cheese cubes marinated with spices.

Bhel Puri 豆芝酸脆 (Dòuzhī Suāncuò) A tangy and spicy puffed rice snack with chutneys.

Main Courses 主菜

Vegetarian Dishes

Palak Paneer 菠菜配尼尔 (Bāluó Pèini Ēr) Cottage cheese cooked in a creamy spinach curry.

Chana Masala 咖啡豆咖喱沙拉 (Kāfēidòu Kālāshālā) Spiced chickpea curry.

Aloo Gobi 土豆苦瓜 (Tǔdòu Kǔguā) Potato and cauliflower curry with turmeric and spices.

Baingan Bharta-烤茄子布尔塔 (Kǎo Qiézi Bùěrtǎ) Roasted eggplant mashed with spices and onions.

Non-Vegetarian Dishes

Butter Chicken 奶油鸡 (Nǎi Yóu Jī) Creamy tomato-based chicken curry.

Chicken Tikka Masala-烤鸡咖喱沙拉 (Kǎo Jī Kālāshālā) Grilled chicken pieces in a spicy tomato curry.

Rogan Josh 红油烧羊肉 (Hóngyóu Shāo Yáng ròu) Aromatic lamb curry with Kashmiri spices.

Fish Curry-鱼咖喱 (Yú Kālā)-Fish cooked in a tangy and spicy curry sauce.

Breads-

Naan 香饭饼 (Xiāngfǎnbǐng) Leavened flatbread baked in a tandoor oven.

Roti 烤饼 (Kǎobǐng) Unleavened whole wheat flatbread.

Paratha 油饼 (Yóubǐng) Flaky, layered bread fried with ghee.

Poori 水烤饼 (Shuǐ Kǎobǐng) Deep-fried puffed bread.

Rice Dishes

Biryani 手捏食饭 (Shǒuniē Shíyǐn) Fragrant spiced rice with vegetables or meat.

Jeera Rice 姜鸡饭 (Jiāng Jīfǎn) Cumin-flavored basmati rice.

Pulao 小饮饭 (Xiǎo Yǐnfàn) Lightly spiced rice cooked with vegetables or meat.

Desserts

Gulab Jamun 蜜浆香圈 (Mìtàng Xiāngquān) Deep-fried milk-based balls soaked in sugar syrup.

Rasgulla 蜜浆奶球 (Mìtàng Nǎi Qiú) Spongy cottage cheese balls in sugar syrup.

Kheer 云朵饭 (Yúndǒ Fàn) Rice pudding cooked with milk, sugar, and nuts.

Jalebi 蜜圈儿 (Mìtàng Quānr) Crispy fried spirals soaked in saffron-flavored sugar syrup.

Beverages

Masala Chai 咖喱茶 (Kālā Chá) Spiced Indian tea with milk.

Lassi 酸奶 (Suān Nǎi) Yogurt-based sweet or savory drink.

Filter Coffee 过滤咖啡 (Guòlù Kāfēi) South Indian strong, frothy coffee.

Coconut Water 椰子水 (Yèzi Shuǐ) Fresh coconut water.

Lesson 35

Detailed Conversation on Cultural Differences Between China and India 详谈中印文化差异

Xiáng tán zhōng yìn wénhuà chāyì

Scene: A group of Chinese tourists is chatting with their Indian guide during a break at a historical site. Starting the Discussion

场景：一群中国游客在历史遗迹休息时与印度导游聊天。开始讨论

Chāngjǐng: Yīqún zhōngguó yóukè zài lìshǐ yíjì xiūxi shí yǔ yìndù dǎoyóu liáotiān. Kāishǐ tāolùn

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度和中国是两个很古老的文明，一定有很多文化上的差异。你能和我们说说吗？

Pinyin: Yìndù hé Zhōngguó shì liǎng gè hěn gǔlǎo de wénmíng, yíding yǒu hěn duō wénhuà shàng de chāyì. Nǐ néng hé wǒmen shuō shuō ma? English: India and China are two very ancient civilizations. There must be many cultural differences. Could you tell us about them?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 当然可以！虽然我们有很多相似之处，比如重视家庭和传统，但也有不少不同。 Pinyin: Dāngrán kěyǐ! Suīrán wǒmen yǒu hěn duō xiāngsì zhī chù, bǐrú zhòngshì jiātíng hé chuántǒng, dàn yě yǒu bù shǎo bùtóng.

English: Of course! While we have many similarities, like valuing family and traditions, there are also quite a few

differences.

On Religion Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 我听说印度是多宗教的国家, 而中国的宗教似乎不太多样, 对吗?

Pinyin: Wǒ tīng shuō Yìndù shì duō zōngjiào de guójiā, ér Zhōngguó de zōngjiào sìhū bù tài duōyàng, duì ma?

English: I heard that India is a multi-religious country, while China seems to have fewer religions. Is that correct?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 印度有很多宗教, 比如印度教、伊斯兰教、佛教和基督教, 每个宗教都有很大的影响力。中国的佛教其实起源于印度, 但在中国有了自己的发展。

Pinyin: Shì de, Yìndù yǒu hěn duō zōngjiào, bǐrú Yìndùjiào, Yīslánjiào, Fójiào hé Jīdūjiào, měi gè zōngjiào dōu yǒu hěn dà de yǐngxiǎnglì. Zhōngguó de Fójiào qíshí qǐyuán yú Yìndù, dàn zài Zhōngguó yǒule zìjǐ de fāzhǎn.

English: Yes, India has many religions, such as Hinduism, Islam, Buddhism, and Christianity, and each has a significant influence. Buddhism in China actually originated in India but developed its own identity in China.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 哦, 原来如此! 那印度人之间因为宗教会有冲突吗?

Pinyin: Ó, yuánlái rúcǐ! Nà Yìndù rén zhī jiān yīnwèi zōngjiào huì yǒu chōngtū ma? English: Oh, I see! Are there conflicts between Indians because of religion?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 有时候会有, 但大多数人尊重彼此的信仰。宗教在印度文化中是至关重要的一部分, 很多节日和习俗都和宗教有关。

Pinyin: Yǒu shíhòu huì yǒu, dàn dàduōshù rén zūnzhòng bǐcǐ de xìnyǎng. Zōngjiào zài Yìndù wénhuà zhōng shì fēicháng zhòngyào de yíbùfèn, hěn duō jiérì hé xísù dōu hé zōngjiào yǒuguān.

English: Sometimes there are, but most people respect each other's beliefs. Religion is a very important part of Indian culture, and many festivals and customs are connected to it.

On Food and Dining

Tourist 3:

Chinese (中文): 印度的食物和中国的完全不同, 你们是不是很多菜都用香料?

Pinyin: Yìndù de shíwù hé Zhōngguó de wánquán bùtóng, nǐmen shì bù shì hěn duō cài dōu yòng xiāngliào?

English: Indian food is completely different from Chinese food. Do you use spices in most dishes? Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 印度菜以香料闻名, 比如咖喱、姜黄和孜然。中国菜注重火候和调味, 而印度菜更强调浓郁的口感和香气。

Pinyin: Shì de, Yìndù cài yǐ xiāngliào wénmíng, bǐrú kālǐ, jiānghuáng hé zīrán. Zhōngguó cài zhùzhòng huǒhòu hé tiáowèi, ér Yìndù cài gèng qiángdiào nóngyù de kǒugǎn hé xiāngqì.

English: Yes, Indian cuisine is famous for its spices, like curry, turmeric, and cumin. Chinese cuisine focuses on cooking techniques and balanced seasoning, while Indian food emphasizes rich flavors and aromas.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 我发现很多印度人是素食者, 这在中国不太常见。

Pinyin: Wǒ fāxiàn hěn duō Yìndù rén shì sùshí zhě, zhè zài Zhōngguó bù tài chángjiàn. English: I noticed that many Indians are vegetarians, which is not very common in China. Guide:

Chinese (中文): 没错, 这是因为宗教和文化的影响。印度教和佛教鼓励不杀生, 所以很多人选择吃素。

Pinyin: Méi cuò, zhè shì yīnwèi zōngjiào hé wénhuà de yǐngxiǎng. Yìndùjiào hé Fójiào gǔlǐ bù shāshēng, suǒyǐ hěn duō rén xuǎnzé chī sù.

English: That's right. It's because of religious and cultural influences. Hinduism and Buddhism promote non-violence, so many people choose to be vegetarians.

On Social Customs

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 在中国, 我们见面一般握手或者点头, 你们见面时有特殊的礼节吗?

Pinyin: Zài Zhōngguó, wǒmen jiànmiàn yībān wòshǒu huòzhě diǎntóu, nǐmen jiànmiàn shí yǒu tèshū de lǐjié ma?

English: In China, we usually shake hands or nod when we meet. Do you have special greetings? Guide:

Chinese (中文): 我们一般双手合十说“Namaste”, 意思是“我向你致敬”。它不仅是问候, 也是一种尊重的表达。

Pinyin: Wǒmen yībān shuāngshǒu hé shí shuō "Namaste", yìsì shì "wǒ xiàng nǐ zhìjìng". Tā bùjǐn shì wènhòu, yě shì yì zhǒng zūnzhòng de biǎodá.

English: We usually greet with hands joined and say “Namaste,” which means “I bow to you.” It’s not just a greeting but also an expression of respect.

Tourist 3:

Chinese (中文): 真有趣! 那你们对长辈的态度是不是也像中国人一样很尊重?

Pinyin: Zhēn yǒuqù! Nà nǐmen duì zhǎngbèi de tàidù shì bù shì yě xiàng Zhōngguó rén yíyàng hěn zūnzhòng?

English: That’s interesting! Do you also respect elders like we do in China? Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 印度和中国一样, 非常重视家庭。我们对长辈非常尊敬, 经常和家人住在一起。

Pinyin: Shì de, Yīndù hé Zhōngguó yíyàng, fēicháng zhòngshì jiātíng. Wǒmen duì zhǎngbèi fēicháng zūnjìng, jīngcháng hé jiārén zhù zài yìqǐ.

English: Yes, India is similar to China in that we greatly value family. We respect our elders a lot and often live with our families.

On Festivals Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度的节日好像很多, 和中国的春节相比, 你们的节日有哪些特别的地方? Pinyin: Yīndù de jiérì hǎoxiàng hěn duō, hé Zhōngguó de Chūnjié xiāngbǐ, nǐmen de jiérì yǒu nǎxiē tèbié de dìfāng?

English: It seems India has many festivals. Compared to the Chinese New Year, what’s special about your festivals? Guide:

Chinese (中文): 印度的节日五彩缤纷, 比如排灯节和洒红节。排灯节就像中国的春节, 我们也会点灯、与家人团聚。洒红节则是庆祝色彩的节日, 非常热闹和欢乐。

Pinyin: Yīndù de jiérì wǔcǎibīnfēn, bǐrú Páidēngjié hé Sǎhóngjié. Páidēngjié jiù xiàng Zhōngguó de Chūnjié, wǒmen yě huì diǎndēng, yǔ jiārén tuánjù. Sǎhóngjié zé shì qīngzhù sècǎi de jiérì, fēicháng rènao hé huānlè.

English: Indian festivals are colorful, like Diwali and Holi. Diwali is similar to the Chinese New Year, where we light lamps and reunite with family. Holi, on the other hand, celebrates colors and is full of joy and excitement.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 听起来很有趣! 那在这些节日里, 大家都会放假吗? Pinyin: Tīng qǐlái hěn yǒuqù! Nà zài zhèxiē jiérì lǐ, dàjiā dōu huì fàngjià ma?

English: That sounds fun!

Do people get holidays during these festivals?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 大部分人都会放假庆祝节日, 特别是排灯节和国庆日, 这时候家家户户都会装饰得很漂亮。

Pinyin: Shì de, dàbùfèn rén dōu huì fàngjià qīngzhù jiérì, tèbié shì Páidēngjié hé Guóqīng rì, zhè shíhòu jiājiā hùhù dōu huì zhuāngshì dé hěn piàoliang.

English: Yes, most people get holidays to celebrate festivals, especially Diwali and Independence Day. During these times, houses are beautifully decorated.

On Education Tourist 3:

Chinese (中文): 印度的教育系统和中国的有什么不同? 听说印度人特别擅长数学和英语? Pinyin: Yìndù de jiàoyù xìtǒng hé Zhōngguó de yǒu shénme bùtóng? Tīngshuō Yìndù rén tèbié shàncháng shùxué hé Yīngyǔ?
English: How is India's education system different from China's? I heard Indians are very good at Math and English.
Guide:

Chinese (中文): 印度的教育也很严格, 特别注重理科和英语。我们从小学开始就学习英语, 数学是考试中最
重要的科目之一。

Pinyin: Yìndù de jiàoyù yě hěn yángé, tèbié zhùzhòng lǐkē hé Yīngyǔ. Wǒmen cóng xiǎoxué kāishǐ jiù xuéxí Yīngyǔ, shùxué shì kǎoshì zhōng zuì zhòngyào de kē mù zhī yī.

English: Education in India is also very rigorous, especially focusing on science and English. We start learning English in primary school, and math is one of the most important subjects in exams.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 中国的学生也学得很努力, 但我们的高考压力特别大, 你们呢?

Pinyin: Zhōngguó de xuéshēng yě xué de hěn nǔlì, dàn wǒmen de gāokǎo yālì tèbié dà, nǐmen ne? English: Chinese students also study very hard, but our college entrance exam is very stressful. What about yours?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 我们的考试也很有竞争性, 特别是进入顶尖的大学, 比如印度理工学院和印度管理学院。这些学校的入学考试非常难。

Pinyin: Wǒmen de kǎoshì yě hěn yǒu jìngzhēng xìng, tèbié shì jìn rù dǐngjiān de dàxué, bǐrú Yìndù Lǐgōng Xuéyuàn hé Yìndù Guǎnlǐ Xuéyuàn. Zhèxiē xuéxiào de rùxué kǎoshì fēicháng nán.

English: Our exams are also highly competitive, especially for top universities like the Indian Institutes of Technology (IIT) and Indian Institutes of Management (IIM). Their entrance exams are extremely difficult.

On Family Values

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 在中国, 家庭很重要, 尤其是对老人。印度是不是也一样?

Pinyin: Zài Zhōngguó, jiāting hěn zhòngyào, yóuqí shì duì lǎorén. Yìndù shì bù shì yě yíyàng? English: In China, family is very important, especially caring for the elderly. Is it the same in India? Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 印度也很重视家庭观念。很多家庭是几代人住在一起, 大家庭非常常见, 尤其是在乡村地区。

Pinyin: Shì de, Yìndù yě hěn zhòngshì jiāting guānniàn. Hěn duō jiāting shì jǐ dài rén zhù zài yìqǐ, dà jiāting fēicháng chángjiàn, yóuqí shì zài xiāngcūn dìqū.

English: Yes, India also places great emphasis on family values. Many families have multiple generations living together, and extended families are very common, especially in rural areas.

Tourist 3:

Chinese (中文): 在印度, 父母会为孩子安排婚姻吗?

Pinyin: Zài Yìndù, fùmǔ huì wèi háizi ānpái hūnyīn ma?

English: In India, do parents arrange marriages for their children? Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 在传统家庭中, 父母安排婚姻很常见, 不过现在越来越多年轻人选择自由恋爱。两种方式都很普遍。

Pinyin: Shì de, zài chuántǒng jiāting zhōng, fùmǔ ānpái hūnyīn hěn chángjiàn, bùguò xiànzài yuè lái yuè duō niánqīng rén xuǎnzé zìyóu liàn'ài. Liǎng zhǒng fāngshì dōu hěn pǔbiàn.

English: Yes, in traditional families, arranged marriages are common. However, more and more young people are choosing love marriages. Both approaches are quite prevalent.

On Work Culture Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 听说印度的软件行业很发达, 你们的工作文化是什么样的?

Pinyin: Tīngshuō Yīndù de ruǎnjiàn hángyè hěn fādá, nǐmen de gōngzuò wénhuà shì shénme yàng de? English: I heard India's software industry is very developed. What is your work culture like?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 印度的工作文化注重团队合作和创新, 但也非常灵活。员工通常有较多的自主权, 工作环境相对轻松。

Pinyin: Yīndù de gōngzuò wénhuà zhùzhòng tuándù hézuò hé chuàngxīn, dàn yě fēicháng línghuó. Yuángōng tōngcháng yǒu jiàoduō de zìzhǔquán, gōngzuò huánjìng xiāngduì qīngsōng.

English: India's work culture emphasizes teamwork and innovation but is also very flexible. Employees usually have more autonomy, and the work environment is relatively relaxed.

Tourist 3:

Chinese (中文): 听起来和中国有些不同, 我们的工作文化比较正式, 也更注重上下级关系。 Pinyin: Tīng qǐlái hé Zhōngguó yǒuxiē bùtóng, wǒmen de gōngzuò wénhuà bǐjiào zhèngshì, yě gèng zhùzhòng shàngxiàjí guānxì.

English: That sounds a bit different from China. Our work culture is more formal and places a greater emphasis on hierarchical relationships.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 这是一个很有趣的区别。我们也尊重领导, 但团队合作更加开放。 Pinyin: Shì de, zhè shì yīgè hěn yǒuqù de qūbié. Wǒmen yě zūnzhòng lǐngdǎo, dàn tuándù hézuò gèngjiā kāifàng.

English: Yes, that's an interesting difference. We also respect leaders, but teamwork is more open here. On Religion

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度是一个宗教多样的国家吧? 主要有哪些宗教?

Pinyin: Yīndù shì yīgè zōngjiào duōyàng de guójiā ba? Zhǔyào yǒu nǎxiē zōngjiào? English: India is a country with diverse religions, right? What are the major religions? Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 印度有很多宗教, 主要有印度教、伊斯兰教、基督教、锡克教和佛教。每个宗教都有自己独特的节日和文化。

Pinyin: Shì de, Yīndù yǒu hěn duō zōngjiào, zhǔyào yǒu Yīndùjiào, Yīslánjiào, Jīdūjiào, Xīkèjiào hé Fójiào. Měi gè zōngjiào dōu yǒu zìjǐ dúte de jiérì hé wénhuà.

English: Yes, India has many religions, mainly Hinduism, Islam, Christianity, Sikhism, and Buddhism. Each religion has its own unique festivals and culture.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 听起来很有意思! 中国的宗教文化相对简单, 主要是佛教、道教和儒家思想。 Pinyin: Tīng qǐlái hěn yǒuyìsi! Zhōngguó de zōngjiào wénhuà xiāngduì jiǎndān, zhǔyào shì Fójiào, Dàojiào hé Rújiā sīxiǎng.

English: That sounds fascinating! China's religious culture is relatively simpler, mainly Buddhism, Taoism, and Confucian philosophy.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 印度和中国在宗教上都有悠久的历史。我们的寺庙和清真寺各有特色, 游客们都很喜欢参观。

Pinyin: Shì de, Yīndù hé Zhōngguó zài zōngjiào shàng dōu yǒu yǒujiǔ de lìshǐ. Wǒmen de sìmiào hé Qīngzhēnsì gè yǒu tèshè, yóukèmen dōu hěn xǐhuān cānguān.

English: Yes, both India and China have a long history of religion. Our temples and mosques are unique, and visitors love exploring them.

On Traditional Attire

Tourist 3:

Chinese (中文): 印度的传统服饰很漂亮, 特别是纱丽! 你们在日常生活中也会穿吗?

Pinyin: Yìndù de chuántǒng fúshì hěn piàoliang, tèbié shì shā lì! Nǐmen zài rìcháng shēnghuó zhōng yě huì chuān ma?

English: Indian traditional clothing is so beautiful, especially the saree! Do you wear it in daily life? Guide:

Chinese (中文): 在特别的场合, 比如婚礼和节日, 我们会穿纱丽和库尔塔。日常生活中, 大家穿西式衣服更多一些, 但纱丽永远是我们文化的重要部分。

Pinyin: Zài tèbié de chǎnghé, bǐrú hūnlǐ hé jiérì, wǒmen huì chuān shā lì hé Kù'ěrtǎ. Rìcháng shēnghuó zhōng, dàjiā chuān xīshì yīfú gèng duō yīxiē, dàn shā lì yǒngyuǎn shì wǒmen wénhuà de zhòngyào bùfèn. English: On special occasions like weddings and festivals, we wear sarees and kurtas. In daily life, people wear more Western-style clothes, but sarees will always be an important part of our culture.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 在中国也是这样。旗袍通常在正式场合穿, 比如庆典或节日, 但现代生活中更常穿便装。

Pinyin: Zài Zhōngguó yě shì zhèyàng. Qíáo tōngcháng zài zhèngshì chǎnghé chuān, bǐrú qīngdiǎn huò jiérì, dàn xiàndài shēnghuó zhōng gèng cháng chuān biànzhuāng.

English: It's the same in China. The cheongsam is usually worn on formal occasions like celebrations or festivals, but in modern life, casual clothing is more common.

On Hospitality

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 印度人好像非常热情好客。我们到哪里都有人招待我们吃饭喝茶。

Pinyin: Yìndù rén hǎoxiàng fēicháng rèqíng hàokè. Wǒmen dào nǎlǐ dōu yǒu rén zhāodài wǒmen chīfàn hē chá.

English: Indians seem very hospitable. Everywhere we go, people offer us food and tea. Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 印度文化里, 客人被视为“上帝”。我们会尽最大努力让客人感到宾至如归。

Pinyin: Shì de, Yìndù wénhuà lǐ, kèrén bèi shì wéi “shàngdì”. Wǒmen huì jìn zuìdà nǚlì ràng kèrén gǎndào bīnzhìrúguī.

English: Yes, in Indian culture, guests are considered "God." We do our best to make them feel at home. Tourist 3:

Chinese (中文): 中国也有类似的传统, 叫“礼尚往来”。不过有时候, 我们可能会更含蓄一些, 不像印度那么直接。

Pinyin: Zhōngguó yě yǒu lèisì de chuántǒng, jiào “lǐ shàng wǎng lái”. Bùguò yǒu shíhòu, wǒmen kěnéng huì gèng hánxù yīxiē, bù xiàng Yìndù nàme zhíjiē.

English: China has a similar tradition called “reciprocity.” However, sometimes we might be more reserved and not as direct as in India.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 这很有趣。文化的不同让每个人都有自己独特的表达方式。

Pinyin: Zhè hěn yǒuqù. Wénhuà de bùtóng ràng měi gèrén dōu yǒu zìjǐ dúte de biǎodá fāngshì. English: That's very interesting. Cultural differences make everyone have their own unique way of expressing hospitality.

On Communication Styles

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 中国人说话比较委婉, 尤其是在拒绝别人的时候。印度人是不是更直接一些? Pinyin:

Zhōngguó rén shuōhuà bǐjiào wēiwǎn, yóuqí shì zài jùjué biérén de shíhòu. Yìndù rén shì bù shì gèng zhíjiē yīxiē?

English: Chinese people tend to speak indirectly, especially when declining others. Are Indians more direct?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 印度人在表达意见时通常会更直率, 但我们也会尽量保持礼貌, 特别是在正式场合。

Pinyin: Shì de, Yìndù rén zài biǎodá yìjiàn shí tōngcháng huì gèng zhíshuài, dàn wǒmen yě huì jǐnliàng bǎochí lǐmào, tèbié shì zài zhèngshì chǎnghé.

English: Yes, Indians are usually more straightforward when expressing opinions, but we also try to be polite, especially in formal settings.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 这种直接的风格可能会让人更容易理解。中国人有时候太委婉，反而让对方不清楚真实意思。

。

Pinyin: Zhè zhǒng zhíjiē de fēnggé kěnéng huì ràng rén gèng róngyì lǐjiě. Zhōngguó rén yǒu shíhòu tài wěiwǎn, fǎn'ér ràng duìfāng bù qīngchǔ zhēnshí yìsi.

English: This direct style might make things easier to understand. Sometimes Chinese people are so indirect that others can't grasp the true meaning.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 确实，这两种风格都有好处。最重要的是，我们能够互相理解并适应对方的方式。

Pinyin: Quèshí, zhè liǎng zhǒng fēnggé dōu yǒu hǎochù. Zuì zhòngyào de shì, wǒmen nénggòu hùxiāng lǐjiě bìng shìyìng duìfāng de fāngshì.

English: True, both styles have their advantages. The most important thing is that we understand and adapt to each other's ways.

On Education Systems

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度的教育系统怎么样？听说你们的工程和科技教育很有名。

Pinyin: Yìndù de jiàoyù xìtǒng zěnmeyàng? Tīng shuō nǐmen de gōngchéng hé kējì jiàoyù hěn yǒumíng. English: How is India's education system? I've heard your engineering and technology education is very famous.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的，印度的工程和 IT 教育确实很强，我们有许多优秀的大学，比如印度理工学院。基础教育也是免费的，但资源分布不均衡。

Pinyin: Shì de, Yìndù de gōngchéng hé IT jiàoyù quèshí hěn qiáng, wǒmen yǒu xǔduō yōuxiù de dàxué, bǐrú Yìndù Lígōng Xuéyuàn. Jīchǔ jiàoyù yěshì miǎnfèi de, dàn zīyuán fēnbù bù jūnhéng.

English: Yes, India's engineering and IT education is strong. We have many excellent universities, like the Indian Institutes of Technology (IIT). Basic education is free, but resources are unevenly distributed. Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 中国的教育也很注重竞争，特别是高考。这是每个学生都必须经历的考试。 Pinyin: Zhōngguó de jiàoyù yě hěn zhùzhòng jìngzhēng, tèbié shì gāokǎo. Zhè shì měi gè xuéshēng dōu bìxū jīnglì de kǎoshì.

English: Education in China also focuses heavily on competition, especially the gaokao. It's an exam every student has to go through.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 印度也有类似的考试，比如“JEE”和“NEET”，但我们在培养创造力方面可能更注重一些。

Pinyin: Yìndù yě yǒu lèisì de kǎoshì, bǐrú "JEE" hé "NEET," dàn wǒmen zài péiyǎng chuàngzàoli fāngmiàn kěnéng gèng zhùzhòng yīxiē.

English: India also has similar exams like the JEE and NEET, but we might focus more on fostering creativity.

On Festivals

Tourist 3:

Chinese (中文): 印度有很多节日吧？排灯节是不是最大的节日？ Pinyin:

Yìndù yǒu hěn duō jiérì ba? Páidēngjié shì bù shì zuìdà de jiérì? English: India has many festivals, right? Is Diwali the biggest one?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的，排灯节是印度教最重要的节日，象征光明战胜黑暗。除此之外，我们还有洒红节、独

立日和许多宗教节日。

Pinyin: Shì de, Páidēngjié shì Yīndùjiào zuì zhòngyào de jiérì, xiàngzhēng guāngmíng zhànshèng hēi'àn. Chúcǐ zhīwài, wǒmen hái yǒu Sǎhóngjié, Dúlì hé xǔduō zōngjiào jiérì.

English: Yes, Diwali is the most important Hindu festival, symbolizing the triumph of light over darkness. Besides that, we also have Holi, Independence Day, and many religious festivals.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 听起来很热闹！中国的春节和中秋节是我们最重要的节日。春节时我们会和家人团聚，吃饺子、放鞭炮。

Pinyin: Tīng qǐlái hěn rènao! Zhōngguó de Chūnjié hé Zhōngqiūjié shì wǒmen zuì zhòngyào de jiérì. Chūnjié shí wǒmen huì hé jiārén tuánjù, chī jiǎozi, fàng biānpào.

English: That sounds lively! In China, Spring Festival and Mid-Autumn Festival are our most important holidays. During Spring Festival, we reunite with family, eat dumplings, and set off firecrackers.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 中国的春节和印度的排灯节有点类似，都是一家人聚在一起庆祝的节日。 Pinyin: Zhōngguó de Chūnjié hé Yīndù de Páidēngjié yǒudiǎn lèisì, dōu shì yījiā rén jù zài yīqǐ qìngzhù de jiérì.

English: China's Spring Festival is somewhat similar to India's Diwali, as both are holidays where families gather to celebrate.

On Family Life

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 在印度，家庭关系是不是也很重要？你们会和父母住在一起吗？

Pinyin: Zài Yīndù, jiāting guānxì shì bù shì yě hěn zhòngyào? Nǐmen huì hé fùmǔ zhù zài yīqǐ ma? English: In India, are family relationships also very important? Do you live with your parents?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的，在印度，大家庭很普遍，特别是在农村地区。年轻人结婚后也常和父母住在一起。

Pinyin: Shì de, zài Yīndù, dà jiāting hěn pǔbiàn, tèbié shì zài nóngcūn dìqū. Niánqīng rén jiéhūn hòu yě cháng hé fùmǔ zhù zài yīqǐ.

English: Yes, in India, extended families are very common, especially in rural areas. Young people often live with their parents after marriage.

Tourist 3:

Chinese (中文): 中国的传统家庭观念也类似，但现在年轻人更喜欢独立居住，尤其是在大城市。 Pinyin: Zhōngguó de chuántǒng jiāting guānniàn yě lèisì, dàn xiànzài niánqīng rén gèng xǐhuān dúlì jūzhù, yóuqí shì zài dà chéngshì.

English: Traditional family values in China are similar, but nowadays, young people prefer to live independently, especially in big cities.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 这是城市化发展的趋势。无论住在哪里，家庭的支持和爱总是最重要的。 Pinyin: Zhè shì chéngshìhuà fāzhǎn de qūshì. Wúlùn zhù zài nǎlǐ, jiāting de zhīchí hé ài zǒng shì zuì zhòngyào de.

English: That's the trend with urbanization. No matter where you live, family support and love are always the most important.

On Traditional Arts

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度的传统舞蹈和音乐很有魅力, 尤其是宝莱坞的表演。

Pinyin: Yìndù de chuántǒng wǔdǎo hé yīnyuè hěn yǒu mèili, yóuqí shì Bǎolái wǔ de biǎoyǎn.

English: India's traditional dance and music are very captivating, especially Bollywood performances. Guide:

Chinese (中文): 谢谢! 宝莱坞确实是印度文化的重要部分, 但我们的传统舞蹈如巴拉特纳提亚姆和卡塔克也很特别。

Pinyin: Xièxiè! Bǎolái wǔ quèshí shì Yìndù wénhuà de zhòngyào bùfèn, dàn wǒmen de chuántǒng wǔdǎo rú Bālātēnātīyǎmǔ hé Kātkākè yě hěn tèbié.

English: Thank you! Bollywood is indeed an important part of Indian culture, but our traditional dances like Bharatanatyam and Kathak are also very special.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 我们的传统艺术有京剧和书法。京剧的表演方式很有趣, 有很多脸谱和唱腔。 Pinyin: Wǒmen de chuántǒng yìshù yǒu Jīngjù hé shūfǎ. Jīngjù de biǎoyǎn fāngshì hěn yǒuqù, yǒu hěn duō liǎnpǔ hé chàngqiāng.

English: Our traditional arts include Peking Opera and calligraphy. Peking Opera is very interesting, with many facial masks and unique singing styles.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 我一直很想亲眼看看京剧的表演! 也许以后有机会去中国学习更多。

Pinyin: Wǒ yīzhí hěn xiǎng qīnyǎn kàn kàn Jīngjù de biǎoyǎn! Yěxǔ yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì qù Zhōngguó xuéxí gèng duō.

English: I've always wanted to see a Peking Opera performance in person! Maybe someday I'll visit China to learn more.

On Healthcare Systems

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度的医疗服务怎么样? 听说印度的药物和疫苗出口很多。

Pinyin: Yìndù de yīliáo fúwù zěnmeyàng? Tīng shuō Yìndù de yàowù hé yìmiáo chūkǒu hěn duō. English: How are India's healthcare services? I've heard India exports many medicines and vaccines. Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 印度是全球最大的仿制药生产国之一, 我们的制药工业非常强大。但本地医疗资源分布不均, 公立医院和私立医院差别较大。

Pinyin: Shì de, Yìndù shì quánqiú zuì dà de fǎngzhì yào shēngchǎn guó zhī yī, wǒmen de zhìyào gōngyè fēicháng qiángdà. Dàn běndì yīliáo zīyuán fēnbù bù jūn, gōnglì yīyuàn hé sīlì yīyuàn chābié jiào dà.

English: Yes, India is one of the largest producers of generic medicines globally, and our pharmaceutical industry is very strong. However, local healthcare resources are unevenly distributed, with significant differences between public and private hospitals.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 在中国, 我们的公立医院占大多数, 但最近也在发展更多的私立医院和家庭医生制度。

Pinyin: Zài Zhōngguó, wǒmen de gōnglì yīyuàn zhàn dàduōshù, dàn zuìjìn yě zài fāzhǎn gèng duō de sīlì yīyuàn hé jiāting yīshēng zhìdù.

English: In China, public hospitals dominate, but recently, we've been developing more private hospitals and family doctor systems.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 两个国家都在不断进步。希望未来有更多的国际合作, 尤其是在疫苗研发和医疗技术方面。

Pinyin: Liǎng gè guójiā dōu zài bùduàn jìnbù. Xīwàng wèilái yǒu gèng duō de guójì hézuò, yóuqí shì zài yìmiáo yánfā hé yīliáo jìshù fāngmiàn.

English: Both countries are making constant progress. Hopefully, there will be more international collaboration in

the future, especially in vaccine research and medical technology.

On Technology and Innovation

Tourist 3:

Chinese (中文): 印度的IT 行业很强, 你们的科技创新有哪些值得骄傲的地方?

Pinyin: Yìndù de IT hángyè hěn qiáng, nǐmen de kējì chuàngxīn yǒu nǎxiē zhídé jiāo'ào de dìfāng? English: India's IT industry is strong. What are some of your proudest achievements in technology and innovation?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 我们在软件开发和人工智能领域取得了很大的进步, 班加罗尔被称为“印度的硅谷”。此外, 印度的空间研究也很有名, 比如“月船二号”任务。

Pinyin: Wǒmen zài ruǎnjiàn kāifā hé réngōng zhìnéng lǐngyù qǔdéle hěn dà de jìnbù, Bānjiālóu bèi chēng wéi “Yìndù de Guīgǔ.” Cǐwài, Yìndù de kōngjiān yánjiū yě hěn yǒumíng, bǐrú “Yuèchuán èrhào” rènwù. English: We've made great strides in software development and artificial intelligence, and Bengaluru is known as the “Silicon Valley of India.” Moreover, India's space research is well-known, like the Chandrayaan-2 mission.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 这很令人敬佩! 中国在 5G 技术和电商平台方面有很强的竞争力, 比如华为和阿里巴巴。

Pinyin: Zhè hěn lìng rén jìngpèi! Zhōngguó zài 5G jìshù hé diànshāng píngtái fāngmiàn yǒu hěn qiáng de jìngzhēng lì, bǐrú Huáwéi hé Ālibābā.

English: That's impressive! China has strong competitiveness in 5G technology and e-commerce platforms, like Huawei and Alibaba.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 我很欣赏阿里巴巴的规模和创新精神。中印两国在科技合作上还有很大的潜力。

Pinyin: Shì de, wǒ hěn xīnshǎng Ālibābā de guīmó hé chuàngxīn jīngshén. Zhōng-Yìn liǎng guó zài kējì hézuò shàng hái yǒu hěn dà de qiánlì.

English: Yes, I really admire Alibaba's scale and innovative spirit. There's great potential for China and India to collaborate in technology.

On Economy and Trade Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 印度和中国的贸易联系紧密吧? 哪些领域是最主要的合作方向?

Pinyin: Yìndù hé Zhōngguó de mào yì lián xì jǐn mǐ ba? Nǎxiē lǐng yù shì zuì zhǔ yào de hé zuò fāng xiàng? English: India and China have close trade ties, right? What are the main areas of collaboration?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 中印两国是重要的贸易伙伴。我们进口中国的电子产品, 同时向中国出口药品、纺织品和茶叶等。

Pinyin: Shì de, Zhōng-Yìn liǎng guó shì zhòng yào de mào yì huǒ bàn. Wǒmen jìn kǒu Zhōngguó de diàn zǐ chǎn pǐn, tóng shí xiàng Zhōngguó chū kǒu yào pǐn, fǎng zhī pǐn hé chá yè děng.

English: Yes, India and China are important trade partners. We import electronics from China and export pharmaceuticals, textiles, and tea to China.

Tourist 3:

Chinese (中文): 互补性很强! 中国的制造业和印度的软件业可以合作, 共同提升竞争力。 Pinyin: Hùbǔ xìng hěn qiáng! Zhōngguó de zhì zào yè hé Yìndù de ruǎn jiàn yè kě yǐ hé zuò, gòng tóng tí shēng jìng zhēng lì.

English: That's very complementary! China's manufacturing and India's software industry can work together to enhance competitiveness.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 我完全同意。这种互补关系可以推动我们两国的经济进一步发展。

Pinyin: Wǒ wánquán tóngyì. Zhè zhǒng hùbǔ guānxì kěyǐ tuīdòng wǒmen liǎng guó de jīngjì jìnyībù fāzhǎn.

English: I completely agree. This complementary relationship can drive further economic development for both our countries.

On Leisure and Hobbies Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度人喜欢什么样的休闲活动?

Pinyin: Yìndù rén xǐhuān shénme yàng de xiūxián huódòng? English:

What kind of leisure activities do Indian people enjoy?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 很多人喜欢打板球, 这是印度最流行的运动。另外, 瑜伽和宝莱坞电影也是大家很喜欢的休闲方式。

Pinyin: Hěn duō rén xǐhuān dǎ bǎnqiú, zhè shì Yìndù zuì liúxíng de yùndòng. Lìngwài, yújiā hé Bǎoláiwū diànyǐng yě shì dàjiā hěn xǐhuān de xiūxián fāngshì.

English: Many people love playing cricket, which is India's most popular sport. Additionally, yoga and Bollywood movies are also favorite leisure activities.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 这听起来很有趣! 在中国, 我们喜欢打乒乓球, 爬山, 还有看电视剧。

Pinyin: Zhè tīng qǐlái hěn yǒuqù! Zài Zhōngguó, wǒmen xǐhuān dǎ pīngpāngqiú, páshān, hái yǒu kàn diànshìjù.

English: That sounds fun! We like playing table tennis, hiking, and watching TV dramas in China.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 两国都有丰富的文化和娱乐活动, 真希望我们能互相体验更多!

Pinyin: Liǎng guó dōu yǒu fēngfù de wénhuà hé yúlè huódòng, zhēn xīwàng wǒmen néng hùxiāng tǐyàn gèng duō!

English: Both countries have rich cultures and entertainment activities. I truly hope we can experience more from each other!

On Family and Social Life

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 在印度, 家庭是怎样的? 大家都住在一起吗?

Pinyin: Zài Yìndù, jiāting shì zěnyàng de? Dàjiā dōu zhù zài yīqǐ ma?

English: How is family life in India? Do people usually live together?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 在印度, 大家通常有着很强的家庭观念。许多人和父母一起生活, 尤其是在传统家庭中, 三代同堂的情况也很常见。

Pinyin: Zài Yìndù, dàjiā tōngcháng yǒuzhe hěn qiáng de jiāting guānniàn. Xǔduō rén hé fùmǔ yīqǐ shēnghuó, yóuqí shì zài chuántǒng jiāting zhōng, sāndài tóngtáng de qíngkuàng yě hěn chángjiàn.

English: In India, family bonds are very strong. Many people live with their parents, especially in traditional households, and it is quite common for three generations to live together.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 这是和中国有些相似的，中国的传统家庭也有三代同堂的情况。

Pinyin: Zhè shì hé Zhōngguó yǒuxiē xiāngsì de, Zhōngguó de chuántǒng jiātíng yě yǒu sāndài tóngtáng de qíngkuàng.

English: This is somewhat similar to China, where traditional families also have multiple generations living together.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的，家庭在我们文化中非常重要。大家相互照顾，尤其是在照顾老人方面。 Pinyin: Shì de, jiātíng zài wǒmen wénhuà zhōng fēicháng zhòngyào. Dàjiā xiānghù zhàogù, yóuqí shì zài zhàogù lǎorén fāngmiàn.

English: Yes, family is very important in our culture. We take care of each other, especially when it comes to looking after the elderly.

On Festivals and Holidays

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度有哪些传统节日？我们中国人很喜欢春节和中秋节。

Pinyin: Yìndù yǒu nǎxiē chuántǒng jiérì? Wǒmen Zhōngguó rén hěn xǐhuān Chūn Jié hé Zhōng Qiū Jié. English: What traditional festivals are celebrated in India? In China, we really enjoy celebrating the Spring Festival and Mid-Autumn Festival.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 印度有很多传统节日，最重要的是排灯节（Diwali），这是一年一度的盛大节日，象征着光明战胜黑暗。还有霍利节（Holi），人们会互相抛洒彩色粉末。

Pinyin: Yìndù yǒu hěn duō chuántǒng jiérì, zuì zhòngyào de shì Páidēng Jié (Diwali), zhè shì yī nián yī dù de shèngdà jiérì, xiàngzhēng zhe guāngmíng zhànshèng hēi'àn. Hái yǒu Huòlì Jié (Holi), rénmen huì hùxiāng pāo sǎ cǎisè fěnmò.

English: India has many traditional festivals, the most important being Diwali, a grand festival celebrated annually, symbolizing the victory of light over darkness. There's also Holi, where people throw colored powders at each other.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 听起来很有趣！在中国，春节是我们最重要的节日，家人会团聚一起庆祝。 Pinyin: Tīng qǐlái hěn yǒuqù! Zài Zhōngguó, Chūn Jié shì wǒmen zuì zhòngyào de jiérì, jiārén huì tuánjù yīqǐ qīngzhù.

English: That sounds interesting! In China, the Spring Festival is our most important holiday, where family members reunite to celebrate.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 每个节日都有其特别的意义和庆祝方式。印度和中国的节日文化都充满了温馨和传统。

Pinyin: Měi gè jiérì dōu yǒu qí tèbié de yìyì hé qīngzhù fāngshì. Yìndù hé Zhōngguó de jiérì wénhuà dōu chōngmǎnle wēn xīn hé chuántǒng.

English: Every festival has its special meaning and way of celebration. Both India and China's festival cultures are filled with warmth and tradition.

On Sports and Physical Activities

Tourist 3:

Chinese (中文): 印度人喜欢什么体育活动? 除了板球, 我听说印度也有很强的羽毛球文化。 Pinyin: Yìndù rén xǐhuān shénme tǐyù huódòng? Chule bǎnqiú, wǒ tīng shuō Yìndù yě yǒu hěn qiáng de yǔmáoqiú wénhuà.

English: What sports do people in India enjoy? Besides cricket, I've heard India has a strong badminton culture too.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 羽毛球在印度非常受欢迎, 尤其是在城市和乡村的年轻人中。另外, 足球和篮球也非常受欢迎。

Pinyin: Shì de, yǔmáoqiú zài Yìndù fēicháng shòu huānyíng, yóuqí shì zài chéngshì hé xiāngcūn de niánqīngrén zhōng. Lìngwài, zúqiú hé lánqiú yě fēicháng shòu huānyíng.

English: Yes, badminton is very popular in India, especially among young people in cities and villages. Additionally, football and basketball are also very popular.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 在中国, 乒乓球和羽毛球是最受欢迎的运动, 尤其是在学校和社区中。

Pinyin: Zài Zhōngguó, pīngpāngqiú hé yǔmáoqiú shì zuì shòu huānyíng de yùndòng, yóuqí shì zài xuéxiào hé shèqū zhōng.

English: In China, table tennis and badminton are the most popular sports, especially in schools and communities.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 我们的体育活动确实有很多共同点, 真希望两国的运动员可以多交流。

Pinyin: Wǒmen de tǐyù huódòng quèshí yǒu hěn duō gòngtóng diǎn, zhēn xīwàng liǎng guó de yùndòngyuán kěyǐ duō jiāoliú.

English: Our sports activities do have many similarities, and I really hope athletes from both countries can exchange more.

On Weather and Climate

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 印度的天气怎么样? 我听说这里的气候有点炎热。

Pinyin: Yìndù de tiānqì zěnmeyàng? Wǒ tīng shuō zhèlǐ de qìhòu yǒudiǎn yánrè. English: What is the weather like in India? I've heard it can get quite hot here.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 印度的夏天确实非常炎热, 尤其是在北方的一些地区。我们这里的气候种类很多, 从热带气候到寒冷的山区都有。

Pinyin: Shì de, Yìndù de xiàtiān quèshí fēicháng yánrè, yóuqí shì zài běifāng de yīxiē dìqū. Wǒmen zhèlǐ de qìhòu zhǒnglèi hěn duō, cóng rèdài qìhòu dào hánlěng de shānqū dōu yǒu.

English: Yes, the summer in India can be very hot, especially in some regions in the north. We have many different types of climates here, ranging from tropical to cold mountain climates.

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 在中国, 南方的夏天也很热, 而北方的冬天则非常寒冷。

Pinyin: Zài Zhōngguó, nánfāng de xiàtiān yě hěn rè, ér běifāng de dōngtiān zé fēicháng hánlěng. English: In China,

the summer in the south is also very hot, while the winter in the north is very cold.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 气候差异是我们两国文化的一个大特色。无论如何, 我们总能适应不同的天气!

Pinyin: Shì de, qìhòu chāyì shì wǒmen liǎng guó wénhuà de yīgè dà tèshū. Wúlùn rúhé, wǒmen zǒng néng shìyìng bùtóng de tiānqì!

English: Yes, the climate differences are a big feature of our two cultures. But no matter what, we always manage to adapt to the different weather!

On Transportation

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度的交通怎样? 我听说这里的交通有点复杂。

Pinyin: Yìndù de jiāotōng zěnmeyàng? Wǒ tīng shuō zhèlǐ de jiāotōng yǒudiǎn fùzá. English: How is transportation in India? I've heard that the traffic can be a bit complicated.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 印度的交通有时候比较拥挤, 尤其是在大城市里。很多地方都有三轮车和摩托车, 这也让交通变得更加复杂。

Pinyin: Shì de, Yìndù de jiāotōng yǒu shíhòu bǐjiào yōngjǐ, yóuqí shì zài dà chéngshì lǐ. Hěn duō dìfāng dōu yǒu sānlúnchē hé mótuōchē, zhè yě ràng jiāotōng biàn dé gèngjiā fùzá.

English: Yes, the traffic in India can be quite congested, especially in big cities. Many places also have rickshaws and motorcycles, which make the traffic even more complex.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 在中国, 交通也是很繁忙, 尤其是在北京和上海。

Pinyin: Zài Zhōngguó, jiāotōng yě shì hěn fánmáng, yóuqí shì zài Běijīng hé Shànghǎi. English: In China, transportation can also be very busy, especially in Beijing and Shanghai.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 确实, 大城市的交通问题在全球都很常见。我们也有很多地铁系统, 尤其是在新德里和孟买。

Pinyin: Quèshí, dà chéngshì de jiāotōng wèntí zài quánqiú dōu hěn chángjiàn. Wǒmen yě yǒu hěn duō dìtiě xìtǒng, yóuqí shì zài Xīndé'ěr hé Mèngmǎi.

English: That's true. Traffic issues in big cities are common all over the world. We also have many metro systems, especially in New Delhi and Mumbai.

On Food Preferences

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度的食物辣吗? 我听说你们喜欢吃辣。 Pinyin:

Yìndù de shíwù là ma? Wǒ tīng shuō nǐmen xǐhuān chī là. English: Is Indian food spicy? I've heard that you all like spicy food.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 印度的很多菜肴都比较辣, 尤其是在南方的地区。我们习惯用很多香料调味。

Pinyin: Shì de, Yìndù de hěn duō cài'yáo dōu bǐjiào là, yóuqí shì zài nánfāng de dìqū. Wǒmen xíguàn yòng hěn duō xiāngliào tiáowèi.

English: Yes, many Indian dishes are quite spicy, especially in the southern regions. We are used to seasoning with many spices.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 在中国, 四川菜也是非常辣的, 尤其是麻辣火锅。

Pinyin: Zài Zhōngguó, Sìchuān cài yě shì fēicháng là de, yóuqí shì málà huǒguō. English: In China, Sichuan cuisine is also very spicy, especially the spicy hot pot.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 真的! 我们也有一些麻辣的菜肴, 像是咖喱和辣椒鸡。你们可以尝试看看。 Pinyin: Zhēn de!

Wǒmen yě yǒu yīxiē málà de cài yáo, xiàng shì gālí hé làjiāo jī. Nǐmen kěyǐ chángshì kànkàn.

English: Really! We also have some spicy dishes like curry and chili chicken. You can try them out.

On Shopping

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度的市场是什么样的? 有没有特别的东西可以买?

Pinyin: Yìndù de shìchǎng shì shénme yàng de? Yǒu méiyǒu tèbié de dōngxī kěyǐ mǎi? English: What are the markets like in India? Are there any special things to buy?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 印度的市场非常丰富, 尤其是传统的手工艺品非常有特色。你可以找到印度丝绸、珠宝、香料、还有精美的陶瓷。

Pinyin: Yìndù de shìchǎng fēicháng fēngfù, yóuqí shì chuántǒng de shǒugōng yìpǐn fēicháng yǒu tèshū. Nǐ kěyǐ zhǎodào Yìndù sīchóu, zhūbǎo, xiāngliào, hái yǒu jīngměi de táocí.

English: The markets in India are very vibrant, especially with traditional handicrafts. You can find Indian silk, jewelry, spices, and beautiful ceramics.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 听起来很有趣! 在中国, 我们的市场也有很多传统的手工艺品, 比如刺绣和瓷器。

Pinyin: Tīng qǐlái hěn yǒuqù! Zài Zhōngguó, wǒmen de shìchǎng yě yǒu hěn duō chuántǒng de shǒugōng yìpǐn, bǐrú cìxiù hé cíqì.

English: That sounds interesting! In China, we also have many traditional handicrafts in our markets, like embroidery and porcelain.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 手工艺品是我们文化的一部分。每个地区都有独特的风格。

Pinyin: Shì de, shǒugōng yìpǐn shì wǒmen wénhuà de yī bùfēn. Měi gè dìqū dōu yǒu dúte de fēnggé. English: Yes, handicrafts are an important part of our culture. Each region has its unique style.

On Language and Communication

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度有多少种语言? 我听说你们的官方语言是英语。

Pinyin: Yìndù yǒu duōshǎo zhǒng yǔyán? Wǒ tīng shuō nǐmen de guānfāng yǔyán shì yīngyǔ. English: How many

languages are spoken in India? I've heard that the official language is English.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 印度有很多种语言, 最常见的是印地语 (Hindi) 和英语。除此之外, 还有各种地方语言, 比如旁遮普语 (Punjabi)、孟加拉语 (Bengali) 等。

Pinyin: Yìndù yǒu hěnduō zhǒng yǔyán, zuì chángjiàn de shì Yìndì yǔ (Hindi) hé yīngyǔ. Chú cǐ zhīwài, hái yǒu gèzhǒng dìfāng yǔyán, bǐrú Pángzhēpǔ yǔ (Punjabi), Mèngjiālā yǔ (Bengali) děng.

English: India has many languages. The most common are Hindi and English. In addition, there are various regional languages, such as Punjabi, Bengali, and more.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 在中国, 我们有很多方言, 普通话是官方语言。

Pinyin: Zài Zhōngguó, wǒmen yǒu hěnduō fāngyán, pǔtōnghuà shì guānfāng yǔyán. English: In China, we have many dialects, with Mandarin being the official language.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 语言和方言在我们两个国家都非常多样。语言差异也是文化交流的一部分。

Pinyin: Shì de, yǔyán hé fāngyán zài wǒmen liǎng gè guójiā dōu fēicháng duōyàng. Yǔyán chāyì yě shì wénhuà jiāoliú de yī bùfēn.

English: Yes, languages and dialects are very diverse in both our countries. Language differences are also a part of cultural exchange.

On Weather

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度的气候怎么样?

Pinyin: Yìndù de qìhòu zěnmeyàng? English:

What is the climate like in India? Guide:

Chinese (中文): 印度的气候非常多样。北部山区天气比较冷, 而南方地区则热得多, 尤其是在夏季。

Pinyin: Yìndù de qìhòu fēicháng duōyàng. Běibù shānqū tiānqì bǐjiào lěng, ér nánfāng dìqū zé rè dé duō, yóuqí shì zài xiàjì.

English: India's climate is very diverse. The northern mountain regions are cooler, while the southern areas are much hotter, especially during the summer.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 在中国, 南方的夏天也很热, 冬天则是北方更冷。

Pinyin: Zài Zhōngguó, nánfāng de xiàtiān yě hěn rè, dōngtiān zé shì běifāng gèng lěng.

English: In China, the summer in the south is also very hot, while winter is much colder in the north. Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 气候的差异是我们两国文化的一个共同点。

Pinyin: Shì de, qìhòu de chāyì shì wǒmen liǎng guó wénhuà de yīgè gòngtóng diǎn. English: Yes, the climate differences are a common feature of our two cultures.

On Sightseeing

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度有哪些著名的旅游景点?

Pinyin: Yìndù yǒu nǎxiē zhù míng de lǚyóu jǐngdiǎn? English:

What are some famous tourist attractions in India?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 印度有很多著名的景点, 比如泰姬陵、金庙、还有瓦尔纳西的恒河。

Pinyin: Yìndù yǒu hěn duō zhùmíng de jǐngdiǎn, bǐrú Tàijīlíng, Jīnmào, hái yǒu Wǎ'ěr nàxī de Héng hé.

English: India has many famous attractions, such as the Taj Mahal, the Golden Temple, and the Ganges River in Varanasi.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 我听说过泰姬陵, 它是不是世界七大奇迹之一?

Pinyin: Wǒ tīng shuō guò Tàijīlíng, tā shì bù shì shìjiè qī dà qíjī zhī yī?

English: I've heard of the Taj Mahal. Is it one of the Seven Wonders of the World?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 对的, 泰姬陵被列为世界七大奇迹之一, 是印度的象征。

Pinyin: Duì de, Tàijīlíng bèi liè wéi shìjiè qī dà qíjī zhī yī, shì Yìndù de xiàngzhēng.

English: Yes, the Taj Mahal is listed as one of the Seven Wonders of the World and is a symbol of India.

On Religion

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度是一个宗教多样的国家, 你们有哪些主要的宗教信仰?

Pinyin: Yìndù shì yīgè zōngjiào duōyàng de guójiā, nǐmen yǒu nǎxiē zhǔyào de zōngjiào xìnyǎng? English: India is a country with diverse religions. What are the major religions practiced here?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 印度的主要宗教有印度教、伊斯兰教、基督教和佛教。

Pinyin: Yìndù de zhǔyào zōngjiào yǒu Yìndùjiào, Yīslánjiào, Jīdūjiào hé Fójiào. English: The major religions in India are Hinduism, Islam, Christianity, and Buddhism.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 在中国, 我们的主要宗教是佛教和道教。

Pinyin: Zài Zhōngguó, wǒmen de zhǔyào zōngjiào shì Fójiào hé Dàojiào. English:

In China, our major religions are Buddhism and Taoism.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 是的, 虽然我们有不同的宗教信仰, 但我们尊重每个人的宗教自由。

Pinyin: Shì de, suīrán wǒmen yǒu bùtóng de zōngjiào xìnyǎng, dàn wǒmen zūnzhòng měi gèrén de zōngjiào zìyóu.

English: Yes, although we have different religious beliefs, we respect everyone's religious freedom.

On Festivals

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度有哪些重要的节日?

Pinyin: Yìndù yǒu nǎxiē zhòngyào de jiérì?

English: What are some important festivals in India?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 印度有许多重要的节日, 比如排灯节 (Diwali)、胡里节 (Holi) 和古尔邦节 (Eid)。

Pinyin: Yìndù yǒu xǔduō zhòngyào de jiérì, bǐrú Páidēngjié (Diwali), Húlǐjié (Holi) hé Gǔ'ěrbāngjié (Eid).

English: India has many important festivals, such as Diwali (the Festival of Lights), Holi (the Festival of Colors), and Eid.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 在中国, 我们也有许多节日, 像春节和中秋节。

Pinyin: Zài Zhōngguó, wǒmen yě yǒu xǔduō jiérì, xiàng Chūnjié hé Zhōngqiūjié.

English: In China, we also have many festivals, such as the Spring Festival (Chinese New Year) and the Mid-Autumn Festival.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 每个节日背后都有深厚的文化意义和传统。

Pinyin: Měi gè jiérì bèi hòu dōu yǒu shēnhòu de wénhuà yìyì hé chuántǒng. English: Each festival has deep cultural significance and traditions behind it.

On Local Customs

Tourist 1:

Chinese (中文): 印度有哪些独特的风俗习惯?

Pinyin: Yìndù yǒu nǎxiē dú tè de fēngsú xíguàn?

English: What are some unique customs in India?

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 在印度, 尊重长辈是非常重要的。我们也有脱鞋的习惯, 尤其是在寺庙和一些家庭中。

Pinyin: Zài Yìndù, zūnzhòng zhǎngbèi shì fēicháng zhòngyào de. Wǒmen yě yǒu tuōxié de xíguàn, yóuqí shì zài sìmiào hé yīxiē jiāting zhōng.

English: In India, respecting elders is very important. We also have a custom of removing shoes, especially in temples and some homes.

Tourist 2:

Chinese (中文): 在中国, 我们也很注重长辈, 尤其是在家庭聚会时。

Pinyin: Zài Zhōngguó, wǒmen yě hěn zhùzhòng zhǎngbèi, yóuqí shì zài jiāting jùhuì shí. English: In China, we also respect elders, especially during family gatherings.

Guide:

Chinese (中文): 文化差异虽然存在, 但我们都能够互相理解和尊重。

Pinyin: Wénhuà chāyì suīrán cúnzài, dàn wǒmen dōu nénggòu hùxiāng lǐjiě hé zūnzhòng. English: While cultural differences exist, we can all understand and respect each other.

Similarities Between Chinese and Indian Cultures

China and India are two of the world's oldest civilizations, each with a rich cultural heritage that has shaped their societies over millennia. Despite being distinct in many ways, these two great cultures share numerous similarities that reflect their shared values, philosophies, and traditions. These similarities span areas such as family structures, spiritual beliefs, festivals, food, and the importance of education. Analyzing these parallels can deepen our understanding of the profound connection between these two ancient cultures.

中印文化的相似性

中国和印度是世界上最古老的文明之一，各自拥有着深厚的文化底蕴，并在数千年的发展中塑造了其社会结构和价值观。尽管两者在许多方面有所不同，但它们之间也有许多相似之处，体现在家庭结构、精神信仰、节日庆祝、饮食文化以及对教育的重视等方面。这些相似性反映了两国文化中共享的价值观和哲学理念，深入探讨这些共同点有助于加深对这两大古老文明深厚联系的理解。

1. Ancient Civilizations with Rich Histories

Both China and India are among the world's oldest civilizations, with histories dating back thousands of years. The Indus Valley Civilization in India and the Yellow River Civilization in China laid the foundations for complex societies, advanced agricultural practices, and sophisticated urban planning. These ancient roots have influenced the cultural and societal development of both nations.

1. 拥有悠久历史的古老文明

中国和印度是世界上历史最悠久的文明之一，历史可以追溯到数千年前。印度的印度河文明和中国的黄河文明奠定了复杂社会结构、先进农业技术以及城市规划的基础。这些古老的根基对两国的文化和社会发展产生了深远影响。

2. Spirituality and Philosophy

China and India are deeply spiritual societies, with philosophies and religions playing a central role in their cultural identities.

Religious Traditions: Buddhism originated in India and spread to China, becoming one of its major religions. Both cultures have also embraced other philosophical systems, such as Confucianism and Taoism in China, and Hinduism and Jainism in India. These systems emphasize morality, compassion, and the importance of harmony with nature.

Meditative Practices: Both cultures value meditation and introspection. Practices such as yoga in India and Tai Chi or Qigong in China reflect this shared emphasis on cultivating inner peace and balance.

2. 精神信仰与哲学

中国和印度是深具精神性的社会，哲学和宗教在其文化认同中起着核心作用。

宗教传统：佛教起源于印度，并传播至中国，成为中国主要宗教之一。两国还发展出其他哲学体系，如中国的儒家思想和道教，以及印度的印度教和耆那教。这些体系都强调道德、慈悲以及与自然的和谐相处。

冥想实践：两种文化都重视冥想和内省。印度的瑜伽以及中国的太极拳或气功都体现了对内心平静和平衡的追求。

3. Emphasis on Family and Social Structure

Family plays a pivotal role in both Indian and Chinese cultures.

Respect for Elders: In both societies, respect for elders is deeply ingrained. Elders are seen as the custodians of wisdom and tradition, and their advice is highly valued.

Joint Family Systems: Traditionally, both cultures emphasize joint family systems where multiple generations live together under one roof, supporting each other emotionally and economically.

Arranged Marriages: Arranged marriages, where families play a significant role in selecting partners, have been a common practice in both cultures, reflecting their shared emphasis on familial bonds.

3. 家庭与社会结构的重视

家庭在中印文化中占据着中心地位。

尊敬长辈：两种文化中对长辈的尊敬深深根植于传统中。长辈被视为智慧和传统的守护者，他们的建议备受重视。

大家庭制度：传统上，两国都提倡大家庭制度，多代同堂，共同承担情感和经济责任。

包办婚姻：在两种文化中，家庭在选择配偶方面的作用至关重要，这反映了对家庭纽带的重视。

4. Festivals and Celebrations

Festivals in both cultures are vibrant, community-oriented, and steeped in tradition.

Seasonal Festivals: Many Chinese and Indian festivals are tied to agricultural cycles and the changing seasons. For example, the Chinese Spring Festival (Lunar New Year) and the Indian festival of Makar Sankranti both celebrate new beginnings and the harvest season.

Lights and Colors: Both cultures use light and color to symbolize joy and prosperity. Diwali in India and the Lantern Festival in China feature vibrant displays of lights and decorations.

4. 节日与庆祝

两国的节日都充满活力，强调社区参与和传统习俗。

季节性节日：许多中国和印度的节日与农业周期和季节变化有关。例如，中国的春节和印度的马克桑克兰蒂（Makar Sankranti）都庆祝新年的开始和丰收季节。

灯光与色彩：两种文化中灯光和色彩象征着喜庆和繁荣。印度的排灯节（Diwali）和中国的元宵节都以绚丽的灯饰和装饰闻名。

5. Traditional Medicine and Wellness

Both China and India have long-standing traditions of holistic medicine.

Ayurveda and Traditional Chinese Medicine (TCM): Ayurveda in India and TCM in China are ancient systems of medicine that focus on balancing the body, mind, and spirit. Both emphasize the use of natural remedies, dietary practices, and preventive care.

Importance of Nature: Both systems view health as a harmonious relationship with nature, stressing the interconnectedness of the environment and human well-being.

5. 传统医学与健康养生

中国和印度都有悠久的整体医学传统。

阿育吠陀与中医：印度的阿育吠陀和中国的传统中医（TCM）是古老的医学体系，强调身心灵的平衡。两者都注重天然疗法、饮食习惯以及预防保健。

与自然的关系：两种体系都将健康视为与自然和谐相处，强调环境与人类福祉的相互关系。

6. Arts, Music, and Dance

The arts in both cultures are deeply reflective of their spiritual and philosophical values.

Classical Arts: Indian classical dance forms like Bharatanatyam and Chinese opera are rich in symbolism, storytelling, and intricate movements.

Musical Traditions: Traditional instruments such as the Indian sitar and the Chinese guzheng reflect the shared love for music as a medium for expressing emotion and spirituality.

Calligraphy and Handicrafts: Calligraphy is a highly respected art form in both cultures, emphasizing precision and beauty. Similarly, traditional handicrafts in India and China showcase exquisite craftsmanship, whether it's Chinese porcelain or Indian textiles.

6. 艺术、音乐与舞蹈

两国的艺术深刻反映了其精神与哲学价值观。

古典艺术：印度的传统舞蹈如婆罗多舞（Bharatanatyam）和中国的戏曲都具有丰富的象征意义和叙事性。

音乐传统：印度的西塔琴（Sitar）和中国的古筝（Guzheng）等传统乐器展示了两国音乐中对情感和精神表达的共同追求。

书法与手工艺：书法在两国文化中备受推崇，强调精准与美感。同时，中国的瓷器和印度的纺织品等传统手工艺展现了精湛的工艺水平。

7. Culinary Traditions

Food is central to both Chinese and Indian cultures, with a shared emphasis on flavor, diversity, and communal dining.

Spices and Flavor Profiles: Both cuisines are known for their bold flavors and the use of a wide variety of spices. Indian curries and Chinese stir-fries, though distinct, share a love for aromatic and well-balanced dishes.

Rice as a Staple: Rice is a staple food in both cultures, symbolizing prosperity and sustenance.

Shared Dining Culture: Meals in both societies are often communal, with an emphasis on sharing and enjoying food as a group activity.

7. 饮食文化

饮食在中印文化中占据重要地位，体现了对风味、多样性以及共享用餐的重视。

香料与口味：两国的菜肴以浓郁的口味和多种香料闻名。尽管印度的咖喱和中国的炒菜风格不同，但都注重芳香与均衡的口感。

以米为主食：米饭在两国饮食中都是主食，象征着繁荣和生计。

共享用餐文化：两种文化都强调共同用餐，体现了团结和集体意识。

8. Education and Scholarship

Both cultures have a deep respect for education and intellectual pursuits.

Ancient Centers of Learning: India's Nalanda and Takshashila and China's ancient academies were among the earliest institutions of higher learning, attracting scholars from around the world.

Philosophical Texts: Ancient texts like the Indian Vedas and the Chinese classics (such as the Analects of Confucius) highlight the value both cultures place on knowledge, wisdom, and moral development.

8. 教育与学术的重视

两国都高度重视教育和知识的追求。

古代学习中心：印度的那烂陀大学（Nalanda）和塔克西拉（Takshashila）以及中国的古代书院是世界上最早的高等学府之一，吸引了来自世界各地的学者。

哲学典籍：印度的《吠陀经》和中国的儒家经典（如《论语》）等古代典籍强调了知识、智慧和道德发展的重要性。

9. Resilience and Adaptability

China and India have faced numerous challenges throughout their histories, from invasions to colonization. Despite these hardships, both cultures have shown remarkable resilience, preserving their identities while adapting to changing times. This adaptability has allowed them to retain their traditions while embracing modernization.

9. 韧性与适应力

中国和印度在其历史发展过程中都经历了入侵和殖民等挑战。然而，这两种文化表现出了卓越的韧性，既保留了

自身的传统，又能适应时代的变化。这种适应力使得它们在现代化进程中既能保留文化特色，又能与时俱进。

The similarities between Chinese and Indian cultures reflect their shared emphasis on spirituality, family, education, and tradition. While the two cultures are unique in their expressions, their commonalities highlight universal human values and the deep-rooted wisdom of ancient civilizations. By appreciating these similarities, both nations can foster mutual respect and understanding, building stronger cultural and diplomatic ties in the modern era.

中印文化之间的相似性体现了两国对精神信仰、家庭、教育以及传统的共同重视。尽管两种文化在表达方式上有所不同，但它们的共同点凸显了普遍的人类价值观以及古老文明的深厚智慧。通过欣赏这些相似之处，两国能够加深彼此的尊重与理解，在现代社会中建立更紧密的文化和外交联系。

A detailed description on Chinese traditions, festivals, social norms, and preferences.

关于中国的传统、节日、社会规范和偏好的详细描述。

Chinese Traditions, Festivals, Social Norms, and Preferences

China, with its extensive history and diverse cultural heritage, is a land rich in traditions, vibrant festivals, and distinct social norms. Understanding these aspects offers a deeper appreciation of Chinese society and its way of life.

中国的传统、节日、社会规范和偏好

中国是一个拥有悠久历史和多样文化遗产的国家，其传统、丰富的节日以及独特的社会规范深深地影响着人们的生活方式。了解这些文化方面有助于深入认识中国社会。

1. Chinese Traditions

Chinese traditions are deeply rooted in Confucian, Taoist, and Buddhist philosophies, reflecting respect for family, nature, and harmony. These traditions continue to shape the values and practices of modern Chinese society.

1. 中国传统

中国的传统深受儒家、道教和佛教哲学的影响，体现了对家庭、自然以及和谐的尊重。这些传统在现代社会中依然具有重要作用。

a. Family Values

Filial Piety (Xiào) is a cornerstone of Chinese tradition, emphasizing respect and duty toward parents and elders.

Family Hierarchy: Roles within the family are clearly defined, with elders commanding respect and younger generations expected to care for them.

a. 家庭观念

孝道 (Xiào) 是中国传统文化的基石，强调对父母和长辈的尊敬和责任。

家庭等级：家庭中角色分工明确，长辈享有尊重，年轻一代需承担赡养义务。

b. Tea Culture

Symbol of Respect: Offering tea is a gesture of respect, often seen during family gatherings or business negotiations.

Health and Wellness: Tea is also associated with balance and wellness, reflecting traditional Chinese medicine principles.

b. 茶文化

尊敬的象征：奉茶是一种表示尊重的行为，常见于家庭聚会或商务洽谈中。

健康与养生：茶与传统中医理念相结合，代表了平衡与健康。

c. Traditional Medicine

Herbal Remedies: Chinese medicine emphasizes balance between yin and yang, using herbs, acupuncture, and dietary practices to maintain health.

Qigong and Tai Chi: These practices focus on cultivating life energy (Qi) through movement, meditation, and breathing.

c. 中医传统

草药疗法：中医通过草药、针灸和饮食疗法维持身体阴阳平衡。

气功与太极：通过运动、冥想和呼吸培养生命能量（气）。

d. Traditional Arts

Calligraphy: Viewed as a refined art form, it embodies the harmony of form and spirit.

Martial Arts: Kung Fu and Tai Chi reflect philosophical teachings and discipline.

d. 传统艺术

书法：书法被视为一种高雅的艺术形式，体现了形式与精神的和谐。

武术：功夫和太极展现了哲学思想与纪律的结合。

2. Chinese Festivals

Festivals in China are vibrant, family-oriented, and deeply connected to agricultural cycles, mythology, and history. They

often feature rituals, feasts, and celebrations.

2. 中国节日

中国的节日充满活力，注重家庭，深深扎根于农业周期、神话和历史。这些节日通常伴随着仪式、盛宴和庆祝活动。

a. Spring Festival (Chinese New Year)

When: Lunar New Year (usually January or February)

Highlights:

Family reunions and feasts

Giving of red envelopes (Hongbao) containing money

Fireworks to ward off evil spirits

Lion and dragon dances

Significance: Marks the beginning of the lunar calendar and symbolizes renewal and prosperity.

a. 春节（农历新年）

时间：农历新年（通常在1月或2月）

主要活动：

家庭团聚和年夜饭

发红包 (Hongbao)，内装钱币

放烟花以驱赶邪恶

舞狮舞龙表演

意义：标志着农历年的开始，象征着更新与繁荣。

b. Mid-Autumn Festival

When: 15th day of the 8th lunar month (September/October)

Highlights:

Mooncakes shared with family and friends

Moon gazing and lantern displays

Significance: Celebrates family unity and the harvest.

b. 中秋节

时间：农历八月十五日（9月或10月）

主要活动：

与家人和朋友共享月饼

赏月和展示灯笼

意义：庆祝家庭团圆和丰收。

c. Dragon Boat Festival

When: 5th day of the 5th lunar month (June)

Highlights:

Dragon boat races

Eating rice dumplings (Zongzi)

Significance: Honors the poet Qu Yuan and promotes community spirit.

c. 端午节

时间：农历五月初五（6月）

主要活动：

划龙舟比赛

吃粽子 (Zongzi)

意义：纪念诗人屈原，弘扬社区精神。

d. Lantern Festival

When: 15th day of the first lunar month (February)

Highlights:

Lighting and releasing lanterns

Solving lantern riddles

Eating glutinous rice balls (Tangyuan)

Significance: Marks the end of the Chinese New Year celebrations.

d. 元宵节

时间：农历正月十五日（2月）

主要活动：

点灯笼并放飞

猜灯谜

吃汤圆 (Tangyuan)

意义：标志着春节庆祝活动的结束。

3. Social Norms

Chinese social norms are strongly influenced by Confucian ideals, emphasizing respect, politeness, and harmony.

3. 社会规范

中国的社会规范深受儒家思想的影响，强调尊重、礼貌和和谐。

a. Respect for Authority and Hierarchy

Age, position, and experience are highly respected in social and professional settings.

Deferential language and gestures are common, especially toward elders and superiors.

a. 尊重权威与等级

年龄、地位和经验在社会和职业环境中受到高度重视。

对长辈和上级使用敬语和礼貌的姿态非常普遍。

b. Importance of Face (Mianzi)

Protecting one's reputation and avoiding public embarrassment is crucial.

Acts that enhance another's status, such as giving compliments or gifts, are appreciated.

b. 面子观念 (Mianzi)

维护个人声誉并避免公共尴尬非常重要。

提升他人地位的行为（如赞美或送礼）受到欢迎。

c. Politeness in Communication

Direct confrontation is avoided; indirect communication is preferred.

Silence can signify respect, contemplation, or a polite disagreement.

c. 礼貌的沟通方式

避免直接冲突，更倾向于间接表达。

沉默可能表示尊重、思考或礼貌地不同意。

d. Hospitality

Guests are treated with great care, and refusing an offer (such as food or gifts) multiple times before accepting is considered polite.

d. 好客之道

对客人非常关照，拒绝（如食物或礼物）几次后再接受被视为礼貌行为。

4. Preferences in Daily Life

Chinese preferences often reflect their cultural values and history, influencing food, fashion, and entertainment.

4. 日常生活中的偏好

中国人的偏好反映了他们的文化价值观和历史，这影响了饮食、时尚和娱乐等方面。

a. Food

Shared Meals: Dining is communal, with dishes placed in the center for all to share.

Staples: Rice, noodles, and dumplings are everyday staples, often accompanied by vegetables and meats.

Flavor Balance: Chinese cuisine emphasizes the balance of five flavors: sweet, sour, salty, bitter, and umami.

a. 饮食

共餐文化：用餐是集体活动，菜肴摆在中间供大家分享。

主食：米饭、面条和饺子是日常主食，常配以蔬菜和肉类。

味觉平衡：中国菜注重甜、酸、咸、苦和鲜五味的平衡。

b. Colors

Red: Symbolizes luck, happiness, and prosperity. It is prominent during celebrations.

Gold: Represents wealth and good fortune.

White: Associated with mourning and funerals.

b. 颜色

红色：象征好运、幸福和繁荣，是庆祝活动中的主色。

金色：代表财富和好运。
白色：与哀悼和葬礼相关。

c. Gift-Giving

Do's: Wrap gifts in red or gold paper.

Give gifts in pairs (odd numbers are considered unlucky).

Don'ts: Avoid clocks, white flowers, or sharp objects, as they are associated with bad luck or separation.

c. 礼物文化

注意事项：

用红色或金色纸包装礼物。

礼物成双（单数被认为不吉利）。

避免事项：

不送钟、白花或尖锐物品，这些象征不吉利或分离。

d. Entertainment

Traditional: Chinese opera, calligraphy, and tea ceremonies.

Modern: Online gaming, movies, and karaoke are widely popular, especially among the younger generation.

d. 娱乐

传统：京剧、书法和茶道。

现代：在线游戏、电影和KTV在年轻人中非常流行。

e. Preferences in Education and Work

Education is highly valued, with a strong emphasis on academic success and discipline.

Careers in engineering, medicine, and IT are highly sought after, reflecting practical aspirations.

e. 教育与职业

教育被高度重视，强调学术成就和纪律。

工程、医学和信息技术等职业备受追捧，体现了务实的职业观。

5. Modern Adaptations

While deeply traditional, Chinese society is also highly adaptable to modern influences:

Urban youth embrace global fashion, music, and trends while maintaining traditional values.

Digital platforms such as WeChat and Douyin (TikTok) shape social interactions and business practices.

5. 现代适应

虽然传统深厚，但中国社会也对现代影响高度适应：

城市年轻人既接受全球时尚、音乐和潮流，又保持传统价值观。

像微信、抖音（TikTok）这样的数字平台塑造了社交互动和商业实践。

Chinese traditions, festivals, social norms, and preferences create a rich tapestry of cultural identity that balances respect for history with an openness to modernity. Whether through family-oriented festivals, emphasis on education, or practices of politeness, Chinese culture offers insights into a society that values harmony, community, and continuity.

中国的传统、节日、社会规范和偏好共同构成了一个平衡历史与现代化的文化图景。无论是通过家庭导向的节日、对教育的重视，还是礼貌的行为方式，中国文化都展现了一个重视和谐、社区和传承的社会。

PART-II
Industrial Interpretation

Lesson 1

Role and Responsibilities of Chinese Industrial Interpreters in India

工业翻译在印度的角色和职责

The role of a Chinese industrial interpreter in India is crucial in ensuring smooth communication between Chinese engineers and Indian counterparts, especially when it comes to installing, repairing, and ensuring the quality of machinery and industrial products. As the global economy becomes more interconnected, the demand for skilled interpreters bridging the language gap between Chinese-speaking engineers and their local Indian teams has increased significantly. The role goes beyond simple translation; it involves a deep understanding of both the technical and cultural aspects of the work being done.

中文工业翻译在印度的角色至关重要，尤其是在协助中国工程师安装、修理机械并确保产品质量时。随着全球经济的日益互联互通，能够中国工程师和印度当地团队之间语言差距的专业翻译需求显著增加。这个角色不仅仅是简单的翻译，它还涉及对工作内容的技术性和文化性深刻理解。

Key Responsibilities of a Chinese Industrial Interpreter in India

中文工业翻译在印度的主要职责

Facilitating Communication 促进沟通

One of the primary responsibilities of a Chinese industrial interpreter is to facilitate clear and effective communication between Chinese engineers and their Indian counterparts. This involves interpreting technical instructions, manuals, and real-time discussions between engineers and workers. The interpreter must accurately translate technical terms related to machinery installation, maintenance, and troubleshooting to ensure that all parties understand the specific requirements and processes involved.

工业翻译的主要职责之一是促进中国工程师和印度同事之间的有效沟通。这包括翻译技术指示、手册以及工程师和工人之间的实时讨论。翻译人员必须准确地翻译涉及机械安装、维修和故障排除的技术术语，以确保各方都能理解具体要求和工作流程。

Example: A Chinese engineer might provide instructions to an Indian team on how to assemble a piece of machinery. The interpreter will translate these instructions in real-time, ensuring that the Indian engineers and technicians can follow the correct steps.

例子：中国工程师可能向印度团队提供如何组装机械的指示，翻译员将实时翻译这些指示，确保印度工程师和技术人员能够正确地按照步骤进行操作。

Assisting in Installation and Setup 协助安装和设置

Industrial interpreters are frequently involved in the installation and setup phase of machinery or equipment. They help translate detailed instructions, specifications, and manuals provided by the Chinese engineers to Indian workers. The interpreter ensures that the machinery is installed according to the manufacturer's specifications and that all safety measures are understood by the Indian team.

工业翻译通常参与到机械或设备的安装和设置阶段。他们帮助翻译由中国工程师提供的详细说明、规格和手册。翻译员确保设备按照制造商的要求安装，确保印度团队理解并落实所有安全措施。

Example: If a Chinese company is setting up a manufacturing plant in India, the interpreter will ensure that the Indian engineers are following the installation procedures precisely, reducing the chances of errors that could affect the machine's functionality or performance.

例子：如果中国公司在印度设立生产厂，翻译员将确保印度工程师严格按照安装程序操作，减少可能出现的错误，确保机器的功能和性能。

Ensuring Quality Control and Maintenance 确保质量控制和维护

Chinese industrial interpreters are also instrumental in ensuring that machinery and industrial equipment meet the required quality standards. They play a vital role in interpreting inspections, maintenance procedures, and repair processes. The interpreter ensures that the Indian team understands how to identify potential issues with the machinery and communicates any necessary adjustments or repairs to the Chinese engineers.

工业翻译在确保机械和工业设备达到所需质量标准方面发挥着重要作用。他们在检查、维护和修理过程中帮助翻译。翻译员确保印度团队理解如何识别机械故障，并与中国工程师沟通进行必要的调整或维修。

Example: During a routine quality inspection of a production line, the Chinese engineer might identify certain faults in the machinery. The interpreter's role is to ensure that the Indian team comprehends the problem and is able to follow the instructions given for fixing it.

例子：在对生产线进行定期质量检查时，若中国工程师发现机械存在故障，翻译员的作用是确保印度团队理解问题所在，并能够按照指示进行维修。

Translating Technical Documentation 翻译技术文档

A Chinese industrial interpreter is responsible for translating and conveying technical documentation from Chinese to Hindi, English, or other local languages spoken by the Indian team. This includes user manuals, technical specifications, safety guidelines, and repair documents. These documents must be accurately translated to ensure proper understanding and adherence to safety and operational standards.

工业翻译负责翻译技术文档，从中文翻译成印地语、英语或其他印度团队使用的当地语言。这些文档包括用户手册、技术规格、安全指南和维修手册。翻译员必须确保这些文档被准确翻译，以确保工作人员理解并遵守安全和操作标准。

Example: The Chinese engineer may have a detailed technical manual that is in Mandarin. The interpreter will translate this manual into English or Hindi, which will be accessible to the local team for future reference.

例子：中国工程师可能有一份详细的技术手册，这些手册是用普通话编写的，翻译员会将手册翻译成英语或印地语，以便印度团队将来参考。

Training and Skill Development 培训和技能发展

Often, Chinese industrial interpreters help facilitate training sessions for Indian workers, particularly when new equipment or technologies are introduced. They translate the instructions and provide clarification to ensure that the Indian workers are adequately trained in handling and operating the machinery. This ensures the successful integration of new technologies and systems into the Indian market.

工业翻译还经常协助为印度工人提供培训，特别是在引入新设备或技术时。他们会翻译相关指示并提供解释，确保印度工人能够理解如何操作和维护新机器。这有助于新技术和系统在印度市场的顺利融合。

Example: When a Chinese company introduces a new type of automation in a factory, the interpreter will assist in the training of Indian engineers and technicians, ensuring that they understand how to use the new system and maintain it efficiently.

例子：当中国公司在印度引入一种新的自动化生产线时，翻译员会帮助印度工程师和技术人员理解如何使用和维护新系统。

Liaison Between the Chinese and Indian Teams 中印团队之间的联络桥梁

Industrial interpreters also act as cultural liaisons between the Chinese engineers and the local Indian team. India and China have distinct work cultures, and the interpreter's role is to help bridge the cultural differences, ensuring that both parties work together effectively. The interpreter ensures that there is mutual respect, smooth collaboration, and that cultural sensitivities are respected during the course of the project.

工业翻译员还充当中国工程师和当地印度团队之间的文化联络人。印度和中国有着不同的工作文化，翻译员的角色是帮助弥合文化差异，确保双方能有效合作。翻译员确保双方在工作过程中互相尊重，合作顺畅，同时尊重文化差异。

Example: There might be cultural differences in terms of work etiquette, such as differences in how instructions are given or feedback is received. The interpreter can help both sides understand each other's expectations and create a more harmonious working environment.

例子：可能会有一些工作礼仪方面的文化差异，例如指示的给出方式或反馈的接收方式。翻译员可以帮助双方理解对方的期望，并促成更加和谐的工作环境。

Problem Solving and Troubleshooting 问题解决和故障排除

In many industrial settings, issues can arise during machinery installation or operation. A Chinese industrial interpreter plays a crucial role in translating troubleshooting steps and assisting in problem-solving. When unexpected issues arise, the interpreter communicates effectively between the Chinese engineers who designed the machinery and the Indian technicians on the ground.

在许多工业环境中，机器安装或操作过程中可能会出现问題。中国工业翻译在翻译故障排除步骤和协助问題解决方面发挥着至关重要的作用。当出现意外问題时，翻译员能有效地沟通中国工程师与印度技术人员之间的问題。

Example: If a machine malfunctions after installation, the interpreter will help explain the diagnostic steps taken by the Chinese engineer to identify the problem and ensure that the Indian team can carry out the necessary repairs.

例子：如果在安装后机器出现故障，翻译员将帮助解释中国工程师采取的诊断步骤，以便印度团队能够进行必要的修复。

Safety and Compliance 安全与合规

Ensuring that safety protocols are adhered to is an essential aspect of an industrial interpreter's job. Many Chinese industrial projects involve complex machinery that requires specific safety precautions. The interpreter must accurately translate safety guidelines and ensure that the Indian team follows these procedures strictly to avoid accidents or machinery damage. 确保遵守安全规程是工业翻译的重要职责之一。许多中国工业项目涉及复杂的机械，要求特别的安全防护措施。

翻译员必须准确翻译安全指导，并确保印度团队严格按照这些程序操作，以避免事故或机械损坏。

Example: If a safety procedure involves wearing protective gear while operating a specific machine, the interpreter will ensure that the Indian team understands the importance of these safety measures and follows them diligently.

例子：如果某项安全程序要求在操作某台机器时穿戴防护装备，翻译员会确保印度团队理解这些安全措施的重要性，并严格遵守。

The role of a Chinese industrial interpreter in India is both challenging and highly rewarding. It requires not only linguistic proficiency but also a deep understanding of industrial processes, machinery, and the technical jargon used in the field. By facilitating communication, assisting in installations and repairs, ensuring quality control, and addressing cultural differences, the interpreter plays a key role in the success of Chinese industrial ventures in India. The demand for skilled interpreters will continue to grow as China and India collaborate more in industrial and technological sectors, further cementing the importance of this role in the global economy.

工业翻译在印度的角色既具有挑战性，又充满回报。它不仅要求语言能力，还需要对工业过程、机械操作和该领域的技术术语有深入的理解。通过促进沟通、协助安装和维修、确保质量控制以及解决文化差异，翻译员在中国工业项目的成功实施中发挥着重要作用。随着中国和印度在工业和技术领域合作的不断加深，这一角色的需求将继续增长，从而进一步巩固其在全球经济中的重要性。

Lesson 2

Consecutive Interpretation: Theory & Practice

交替传译：理论与实践

Consecutive interpretation is a crucial mode of interpreting that involves listening to a speaker, taking notes, and then rendering the message into another language after the speaker pauses. This mode is widely used in business meetings, legal proceedings, and conferences, where precise and accurate communication is essential. Its theory and practice require interpreters to have strong linguistic skills, cultural competence, and effective note-taking techniques.

交替传译是一种重要的口译方式，包括倾听发言者讲话、记笔记，并在发言者暂停后将信息翻译成另一种语言。这种模式广泛应用于商务会议、法律程序和会议中，在这些场景中，准确而精确的沟通至关重要。其理论与实践要求译员具备强大的语言能力、文化理解力以及高效的记笔记技巧。

Theory of Consecutive Interpretation

The theory of consecutive interpretation is grounded in several key principles. First, it emphasizes the importance of active listening. Interpreters must grasp not only the literal meaning of the speaker's words but also the intent and context. Second, memory plays a pivotal role. Interpreters need to retain information over short periods while organizing it logically for accurate delivery. Lastly, note-taking systems are integral. These systems often rely on symbols and abbreviations to capture essential ideas without slowing down the interpreter.

交替传译的理论建立在几个关键原则之上。首先，它强调积极倾听的重要性。译员必须不仅理解发言者的字面意思，还要掌握其意图和语境。其次，记忆起着关键作用。译员需要在短时间内保留信息，并以逻辑方式组织这些信息以确保准确传达。最后，记笔记系统是不可或缺的。这些系统通常依靠符号和缩写来捕捉核心思想，而不影响翻译速度。

Practice of Consecutive Interpretation

The practical application of consecutive interpretation requires rigorous training. Interpreters often engage in exercises to enhance their memory, such as summarizing long speeches or practicing delayed repetition. Note-taking is another essential skill that interpreters refine through practice, learning to balance between writing enough to aid memory and staying focused on the speaker. Additionally, interpreters must develop adaptability to handle various subjects, from technical jargon to colloquial expressions, ensuring accurate and context-appropriate translations.

交替传译的实践应用需要严格的训练。译员通常通过总结长篇讲话或练习延时复述等练习来增强记忆能力。记笔记是另一项重要技能，译员通过实践不断完善，学习在记录足够信息以帮助记忆和集中注意力倾听讲话之间找到平衡。此外，译员必须培养适应能力，以应对各种主题，从技术术语到口语表达，确保翻译的准确性和语境的恰当性。

Advantages and Challenges

One significant advantage of consecutive interpretation is its ability to ensure accuracy and detail. Unlike simultaneous interpretation, where interpreters may miss nuances due to time constraints, consecutive interpretation allows more time for reflection and careful phrasing. However, it also presents challenges. The need for strong memory skills and effective note-taking can be demanding, and the process can be time-consuming, which may not suit fast-paced environments.

交替传译的一个显著优势是能够确保翻译的准确性和细节。与同声传译不同，由于时间限制可能会遗漏细微差别，交替传译为反思和精心措辞提供了更多时间。然而，它也存在挑战。对强大记忆能力和有效笔记技巧的需求可能令人望而却步，并且这一过程可能耗时，因此可能不适合快节奏的环境。

Cultural and Contextual Sensitivity

Cultural sensitivity is another critical aspect of consecutive interpretation. Interpreters must navigate cultural nuances and avoid literal translations that may lead to misunderstandings. Understanding both the source and target cultures allows interpreters to convey messages in a manner that resonates with the audience while preserving the speaker's intent. This requires continuous learning and awareness of cultural differences.

文化敏感性是交替传译的另一个关键方面。译员必须处理文化细微差别，避免可能导致误解的字面翻译。了解源语言和目标语言的文化，使译员能够以与听众产生共鸣的方式传达信息，同时保留发言者的意图。这需要不断学习和对文化差异的认识。

Consecutive interpretation is a demanding yet rewarding profession that bridges linguistic and cultural gaps. Its theory emphasizes active listening, memory, and note-taking, while its practice requires continuous training and adaptability. By mastering these skills, interpreters play an indispensable role in fostering understanding and collaboration across languages and cultures.

交替传译是一项既具有挑战性又充满成就感的职业，它弥合了语言和文化之间的差距。其理论强调积极倾听、记忆和记笔记，而其实践则需要持续的训练和适应能力。通过掌握这些技能，译员在促进跨语言和跨文化的理解与合作中发挥着不可或缺的作用。

Lesson 3 **Interpreting Tools and Techniques** **口译工具和技术**

Interpreting is a complex and dynamic process that requires a combination of cognitive skills, linguistic proficiency, and specialized tools to facilitate effective communication between speakers of different languages. Over time, interpreters have developed various tools and techniques to enhance their efficiency and accuracy. These include note-taking systems, memory enhancement exercises, and technological aids, each designed to address specific challenges in the interpreting process.

口译是一项复杂且充满活力的过程，需要结合认知能力、语言能力以及专业工具，以促进不同语言使用者之间的有效沟通。随着时间的推移，口译员开发了多种工具和技术，以提高工作效率和准确性。这些工具包括记笔记系统、记忆增强练习和技术辅助设备，每一种都旨在解决口译过程中面临的特定挑战。

Note-Taking Systems

Note-taking is one of the most fundamental tools in consecutive interpreting. A well-developed note-taking system allows interpreters to record key points quickly and effectively, without losing focus on the speaker. These systems typically involve the use of symbols, abbreviations, and structured layouts to capture essential information. For example, symbols like “↑” for increase or “→” for leads to can save time while ensuring clarity. A hierarchical structure in notes also helps interpreters maintain logical flow when rendering the message.

记笔记是交替传译中最基本的工具之一。一个完善的记笔记系统使译员能够快速有效地记录关键点，同时不会分散对发言者的注意力。这些系统通常包括使用符号、缩写和结构化布局来捕捉关键信息。例如，用“↑”表示增长或“→”表示导致，可以节省时间并确保清晰度。笔记中的层次结构还帮助译员在传达信息时保持逻辑性。

Memory Enhancement Techniques

Memory plays a vital role in both consecutive and simultaneous interpreting. Interpreters employ various techniques to improve their short-term memory, such as chunking, visualization, and association. Chunking involves breaking information into smaller, manageable parts, while visualization helps interpreters create mental images of the content they hear. Additionally, associating new information with familiar concepts or terms makes it easier to recall. Regular memory training exercises are essential for interpreters to perform effectively under pressure.

记忆在交替传译和同声传译中都起着至关重要的作用。译员运用多种技术来提高短期记忆能力，例如分组、可视化和联想。分组是指将信息分解成更小、更易管理的部分，而可视化则帮助译员在脑海中创建听到内容的画面。此外，将新信息与熟悉的概念或术语联系起来，可以更容易地回忆。定期的记忆训练练习对译员在高压下的表现至关重要。

Technological Aids

Modern interpreting benefits significantly from technological advancements. Tools like digital recorders, speech recognition software, and interpreting-specific apps aid interpreters in their work. For instance, digital recorders can help interpreters review complex sections of a speech, while apps like AI-powered glossaries assist with real-time terminology management. Additionally, simultaneous interpreting often relies on interpreter consoles and headsets for clear communication. These tools not only enhance accuracy but also reduce the cognitive load on interpreters.

现代口译从技术进步中获益良多。数字录音设备、语音识别软件和专为口译设计的应用程序等工具为译员提供了工作支持。例如，数字录音设备可以帮助译员回顾演讲中的复杂部分，而基于人工智能的术语库应用程序则有助于实时管理术语。此外，同声传译通常依赖于译员控制台和耳机以实现清晰的沟通。这些工具不仅提高了准确性，还减轻了译员的认知负担。

Pre-Session Preparation

Preparation is an indispensable part of interpreting. Before a session, interpreters often gather information about the topic, key terminology, and the cultural context. Glossaries and terminology databases are invaluable tools in this process. Additionally, interpreters may review previous sessions or conduct research to anticipate potential challenges. This proactive approach ensures interpreters are well-equipped to handle the demands of the assignment.

准备工作是口译不可或缺的一部分。在开始一场口译任务之前，译员通常会收集关于主题、关键术语和文化背景的信息。术语表和术语数据库在此过程中是无价的工具。此外，译员可能会回顾之前的任务或进行研究，以预测可能遇到的挑战。这种主动性的方法确保译员能够充分应对任务的要求。

Stress Management Techniques

Interpreting is a high-stress profession that requires quick thinking and composure. To manage stress, interpreters use techniques such as mindfulness, breathing exercises, and time management. Mindfulness helps interpreters stay present and focused, while controlled breathing reduces anxiety. Proper scheduling and taking breaks between sessions also prevent burnout. By maintaining their physical and mental well-being, interpreters can perform more consistently and effectively.

口译是一项压力很大的职业，需要快速思考和沉着冷静。为了管理压力，译员会使用一些技巧，例如正念练习、呼吸训练和时间管理。正念帮助译员保持专注，而控制呼吸则可以减轻焦虑。合理安排时间表并在任务之间适当休息也可以防止倦怠。通过保持身心健康，译员能够更加稳定和高效地发挥作用。

Continuous Skill Development

Interpreters must engage in continuous learning to stay updated with industry standards and language evolution. Attending workshops, joining professional organizations, and practicing regularly are key to honing their skills. For instance, role-playing exercises allow interpreters to simulate real-life scenarios, while feedback sessions with peers help identify areas for improvement. This commitment to growth ensures interpreters remain competitive and capable in their field.

译员必须持续学习，以跟上行业标准和语言发展的步伐。参加工作坊、加入专业组织以及定期练习是提高技能的关键。例如，角色扮演练习可以让译员模拟真实场景，而与同行的反馈会议有助于发现需要改进的地方。这种对成长的承诺确保译员在其领域中保持竞争力和胜任能力。

Interpreting tools and techniques are essential for ensuring accuracy, efficiency, and professionalism. From note-taking systems and memory enhancement techniques to technological aids and stress management, these tools empower interpreters to bridge linguistic and cultural gaps effectively. By mastering these methods and committing to continuous development, interpreters can excel in their profession and contribute significantly to cross-cultural communication.

口译工具和技术对于确保翻译的准确性、效率和专业性至关重要。从笔记系统和记忆增强技术到技术辅助工具和压力管理，这些工具使译员能够有效地弥合语言和文化之间的差距。通过掌握这些方法并致力于持续发展，译员能够在其职业中表现出色，并为跨文化交流做出重要贡献。

Lesson 4 **Professional Ethics of Interpreters** **口译员的职业道德**

Professional ethics are fundamental to the role of interpreters, who serve as bridges between languages and cultures. Ethical guidelines ensure that interpreters maintain impartiality, confidentiality, and professionalism while navigating complex and sensitive communication scenarios. By adhering to these principles, interpreters build trust with their clients and contribute to effective and respectful cross-cultural interactions.

专业伦理是口译员职业中的基本原则，口译员在语言和文化之间起着桥梁作用。伦理准则确保口译员在处理复杂和敏感的沟通场景时保持公正性、保密性和专业性。通过遵守这些原则，口译员能够赢得客户的信任，并促进高效且尊重的跨文化交流。

Impartiality

Impartiality is a cornerstone of interpreting ethics. Interpreters must remain neutral and avoid influencing the conversation with their own opinions, biases, or emotions. For instance, in a legal or medical setting, an interpreter should not advocate for one party or alter the message to fit their personal beliefs. This principle ensures fairness and allows all parties to communicate without fear of bias.

公正性是口译伦理的基石。口译员必须保持中立，避免因个人观点、偏见或情绪而影响对话。例如，在法律或医疗环境中，口译员不应为某一方辩护或为了迎合个人信念而篡改信息。这一原则确保了公平性，并使所有各方能够在没有偏见的情况下进行沟通。

Confidentiality

Confidentiality is another critical ethical principle for interpreters. Interpreters often handle sensitive or private information, such as medical diagnoses, legal cases, or business negotiations. It is their duty to protect this information and not disclose it to unauthorized parties. A breach of confidentiality can damage trust and lead to severe legal or professional consequences.

保密性是口译员另一个重要的伦理原则。口译员经常处理敏感或私人信息，例如医疗诊断、法律案件或商业谈判。他们有责任保护这些信息，不向未经授权的第三方披露。保密性失守可能破坏信任，并导致严重的法律或职业后果。

Accuracy and Fidelity

Accuracy and fidelity to the original message are essential components of an interpreter's ethical responsibility. Interpreters must convey the meaning, tone, and intent of the speaker's words without distortion or omission. This includes accurately translating technical terms, idioms, and culturally specific references. Maintaining fidelity ensures the integrity of communication and prevents misunderstandings.

准确性和忠实于原始信息是口译员伦理责任的核心组成部分。口译员必须传达发言者语言的含义、语气和意图，而不加以歪曲或遗漏。这包括准确翻译技术术语、成语以及文化特定的表达方式。保持忠实性确保了沟通的完整性，并防止误解的发生。

Professional Competence

Interpreters have an ethical obligation to ensure they are adequately trained and qualified for the assignments they accept. Taking on work beyond their linguistic or technical expertise can compromise the quality of interpretation. Continuous professional development, such as attending workshops or obtaining certifications, helps interpreters stay updated and competent in their field.

口译员有义务确保自己具备充分的训练和资格，能够胜任所接受的任务。承担超出其语言或技术能力范围的工作可能会影响口译质量。持续的职业发展，例如参加研讨会或获得认证，有助于口译员在其领域中保持更新和能力。

Cultural Sensitivity

Interpreters must navigate cultural differences with sensitivity and respect. Misunderstandings can arise if cultural norms, idiomatic expressions, or social etiquette are not properly interpreted. Ethical interpreters take the time to understand the cultural nuances of both the source and target languages, ensuring that the intended meaning is accurately conveyed while respecting cultural norms.

口译员必须敏感且尊重地处理文化差异。如果文化规范、习语表达或社会礼仪没有被正确翻译，可能会引发误解。具有伦理意识的口译员会花时间理解源语言和目标语言的文化细微差别，确保在尊重文化规范的同时，准确传达意图。

Avoiding Conflicts of Interest

Interpreters must avoid situations where their personal or professional interests could conflict with their role. For example, an interpreter working in a business negotiation should not have a vested interest in either party. When a conflict of interest arises, interpreters have a duty to disclose it and, if necessary, recuse themselves from the assignment to maintain integrity.

口译员必须避免个人或职业利益与其角色发生冲突的情况。例如，在商业谈判中工作的口译员不应任何一方有既得利益。当出现利益冲突时，口译员有责任披露冲突，并在必要时退出任务，以维护职业操守。

Ethical Dilemmas and Decision-Making

Interpreters may encounter ethical dilemmas, such as being asked to omit or alter information. In such cases, they must rely on professional guidelines and their own judgment to make ethical decisions. Seeking advice from peers, consulting codes of ethics, or discussing concerns with clients can help interpreters navigate these challenging situations.

口译员可能会遇到伦理困境，例如被要求省略或修改信息。在这种情况下，他们必须依靠专业准则和自身判断来做出伦理决策。向同行寻求建议、查阅伦理守则或与客户讨论问题，都可以帮助口译员应对这些具有挑战性的情况。

Professional ethics are the foundation of an interpreter's credibility and effectiveness. By adhering to principles such as impartiality, confidentiality, accuracy, and cultural sensitivity, interpreters can foster trust and facilitate clear communication across languages and cultures. Ethical conduct not only upholds the integrity of the profession but also ensures interpreters play a vital role in bridging linguistic and cultural divides.

专业伦理是口译员信誉和效率的基础。通过遵守公正性、保密性、准确性和文化敏感性等原则，口译员能够建立信任，并促进跨语言和文化的清晰沟通。道德行为不仅维护了职业的完整性，还确保了口译员在弥合语言和文化差异中发挥关键作用。

Lesson 5

Knowledge and Skill Sets Required by Industrial Interpreters in India Facilitating Chinese Engineers **在印度协助中国工程师的工业口译员所需的知识和技能**

Industrial interpreters play a critical role in facilitating the communication between Chinese engineers and their Indian

counterparts, particularly in the context of machinery installation, repairs, and quality control. Their expertise in language is only one part of the puzzle; they must also possess specific technical knowledge and a unique skill set to effectively bridge the gap between the two teams. Here's a detailed breakdown of the essential knowledge and skills required for industrial interpreters working with Chinese engineers in India.

工业口译员在中国工程师与印度本地团队之间的沟通中发挥着至关重要的作用，特别是在机械安装、维修和质量控制方面。他们的语言能力仅是其中的一部分；他们还需要具备特定的技术知识和独特的技能，以有效地搭建两者之间的桥梁。以下是工业口译员在与中国工程师合作时所需的关键知识和技能的详细解析。

1. Technical Knowledge of Machinery and Equipment

1. 机械设备的知识

Industrial interpreters must have a solid understanding of the machinery and equipment involved in the installation, maintenance, and repair processes. This includes knowledge of:

工业口译员必须具备对所涉及的机械设备和系统的全面理解，尤其是在安装、维护和修理过程中。包括以下方面：

Machinery Types and Functions: Interpreters should be familiar with the types of machinery being used, whether they are manufacturing machines, CNC machines, automation systems, or other industrial equipment. They should understand the machine's purpose, key components, and functions.

机械类型与功能：口译员应熟悉使用的各种机械类型，无论是制造机器、数控机床、自动化系统，还是其他工业设备。他们应理解这些机器的用途、关键部件和功能。

Installation Procedures: Understanding the specific procedures for setting up and installing industrial machinery, from basic steps like unboxing to complex tasks such as calibration, electrical connections, and aligning machine parts.

安装程序：口译员应理解机械安装的具体步骤，包括从开箱、对齐、调试到连接电源和校准等复杂任务。

Repair and Troubleshooting Knowledge: Interpreters should be able to understand common mechanical and electrical problems that may arise with machinery. They should have a basic understanding of troubleshooting procedures, such as diagnosing faulty components, troubleshooting wiring, or checking for mechanical wear and tear.

维修与故障排查：口译员应具备基本的故障排查知识，能够理解常见的机械和电气故障问题，例如故障部件的诊断、排查电路问题或检查机械磨损。

Maintenance Protocols: Familiarity with periodic maintenance processes to keep machinery running efficiently, including cleaning, lubrication, inspection, and part replacements.

维护协议：了解定期维护程序，确保机械设备高效运转，包括清洁、润滑、检查和零部件更换等。

2. Technical Vocabulary and Terminology

工业口译员需要掌握行业特有的术语，这些术语需要在中文和目标语言（如印地语或英语）之间准确转换。这对于准确翻译技术手册、操作说明或实时指令至关重要。口译员应该熟悉的术语包括：

2. 专业术语和词汇

Interpreters must possess a strong command over industry-specific terminology, both in Chinese and the target language (Hindi/English). This is critical for accurately translating technical documents, manuals, or instructions and ensuring that the communication between engineers and the local workforce is effective. Some important terms an interpreter should be familiar with include:

Mechanical Terms: Understanding terms related to gears, bearings, motors, drives, hydraulic systems, etc.

Electrical and Electronics Vocabulary: Knowledge of terms related to circuits, wiring, voltage, resistance, power supply, sensors, and controllers.

Maintenance and Repair Jargon: Familiarity with technical phrases related to diagnostics, fault finding, system failures, and rectifications.

机械术语：如齿轮、轴承、电动机、传动装置、液压系统等相关术语。

电气和电子词汇：如电路、接线、伏特、电阻、电源、传感器、控制器等相关术语。

维护与修理术语：如诊断、故障排查、系统故障和修复等相关词汇。

3. Language Proficiency and Cultural Sensitivity

3. 语言能力与文化敏感性

The core function of any interpreter is facilitating smooth communication. However, an industrial interpreter must also be culturally sensitive and aware of the nuances of both Chinese and Indian work cultures. This includes:

口译员的核心职能是促进顺畅的沟通。然而，工业口译员还必须具有文化敏感性，了解中印工作文化的不同。

包括以下方面：

Fluency in Chinese and Local Languages: An interpreter should have an advanced understanding of Chinese (Mandarin) and fluency in one or more local languages like Hindi or English. This includes both verbal and written proficiency to interpret technical manuals and real-time instructions accurately.

中文和当地语言的流利度：口译员应具备高级中文（普通话）能力，并且流利掌握印地语或英语中的一种或多种语言。这不仅包括口语能力，还包括书面能力，能准确翻译技术手册和实时指令。

Cultural Understanding: An interpreter should be familiar with Chinese and Indian working culture, which can differ significantly. For instance, Chinese engineers may have a more formal approach to communication, while Indian workers may be more informal in their interactions. The interpreter helps navigate these differences by fostering mutual respect.

文化理解: 口译员应熟悉中国和印度的工作文化, 两者可能存在显著差异。例如, 中国工程师可能更加正式, 而印度工人可能更随意。口译员帮助协调这些文化差异, 促进双方的理解和尊重。

4. Understanding of Health and Safety Standards

4. 健康与安全标准的理解

Health and safety are critical in industrial settings. The interpreter should be well-versed in safety protocols related to machinery operation, installation, and maintenance. They must ensure that both the Chinese engineers and the Indian workforce adhere to safety regulations. Key areas include:

健康与安全在工业环境中至关重要。口译员应熟悉与机械操作、安装和维护相关的安全协议, 并确保中国工程师和印度工人都遵守安全规定。主要领域包括:

安全设备: 确保工人正确使用个人防护设备 (PPE), 如手套、头盔、眼部保护和安全鞋。

Safety Equipment: Ensuring that workers are properly using personal protective equipment (PPE) such as gloves, helmets, eye protection, and safety shoes.

Workplace Safety Procedures: Knowledge of safe working practices when handling machinery, such as lock-out/tag-out procedures, electrical safety, and hazard identification.

工作场所安全程序: 了解机械操作的安全工作惯例, 例如锁定/标记程序、电气安全和危险识别。

紧急程序: 口译员应能传达紧急疏散程序、火灾安全协议和急救指令, 特别是在发生事故或机械故障时。

Emergency Procedures: The interpreter must be able to communicate emergency evacuation procedures, fire safety protocols, and first-aid instructions, particularly in the event of an accident or machinery malfunction.

5. Problem-Solving and Critical Thinking

5. 问题解决和批判性思维

During machinery installation, repair, or maintenance, unexpected issues often arise. The interpreter should possess problem-solving skills to understand the issues being discussed and help troubleshoot in real-time. This might involve:

Quick Thinking: Being able to process and relay complex technical information quickly and accurately during a fast-paced environment.

Analytical Skills: Interpreters should be able to understand complex technical problems and interpret the solutions suggested by engineers in a way that is understandable to the Indian workforce.

在机械安装、维修或维护过程中, 常常会遇到意外问题。口译员应具备问题解决技能, 能够理解讨论中的问题, 并实时提供帮助。包括以下方面:

快速反应: 口译员应能够快速并准确地处理复杂的技术信息, 尤其是在快节奏的环境中。

分析技能: 口译员应能够理解复杂的技术问题, 并将工程师提出的解决方案准确地传达给印度工人。

6. Document Translation and Interpretation

In addition to real-time interpreting, industrial interpreters are responsible for translating technical documents. These may include:

Technical Manuals: Translating Chinese-language manuals into Hindi/English for the Indian team, ensuring that all instructions related to installation, repair, and maintenance are clearly understood.

Reports and Schematics: Interpreters must be able to understand and translate detailed reports, including equipment performance evaluations, maintenance schedules, and diagnostic reports. This includes interpreting machine schematics or wiring diagrams.

6. 文档翻译与口译

除了实时口译外, 工业口译员还负责翻译技术文档。这些文档可能包括:

技术手册: 将中文手册翻译成印地语/英语, 确保有关安装、维修和维护的所有说明都能清晰地传达给印度团队。

报告和原理图: 口译员应能理解和翻译详细的报告, 包括设备性能评估、维护时间表和诊断报告。这包括理解机械原理图或电气接线图的能力。

7. Project Management Skills

Although industrial interpreters focus mainly on communication, they often take on a support role in helping coordinate the technical activities on-site. This can include:

Scheduling and Coordination: Assisting in scheduling installations, repairs, and maintenance activities to ensure minimal downtime for machines.

Logistics Support: Helping coordinate the delivery and handling of parts and materials needed for installations or repairs.

Team Collaboration: Working with engineers, project managers, and workers to ensure smooth execution of tasks within the project timeline.

7. 项目管理技能

尽管工业口译员的核心工作是口译，他们往往还在现场提供支持，帮助协调技术活动。这可能包括：

调度与协调：协助安排安装、维修和维护活动，确保机器停机时间最小化。

物流支持：帮助协调所需零部件和材料的配送和处理。

团队协作：与工程师、项目经理和工人密切合作，确保任务在项目时间内顺利完成。

8. Customer Service and Interpersonal Skills

8. 客户服务和人际交往能力

In industrial environments, the ability to manage relationships and interact with both engineers and local workers is crucial. Interpreters should be able to:

在工业环境中，能够管理人际关系并与工程师和本地工人互动是至关重要的。口译员应能够：

Provide Clear Instructions: Interpreters should be able to communicate instructions in a way that is easily understood by the Indian workforce, ensuring that they feel confident and comfortable in following the procedures.

提供清晰的指示：口译员应能够以简明易懂的方式传达指示，确保印度工人对操作程序有信心。

Maintain Professionalism: Being able to handle potentially tense situations professionally, such as when machinery is malfunctioning or delays occur, is crucial. Industrial interpreters should act as a calm, authoritative figure who can defuse misunderstandings and keep projects on track.

保持专业态度：在机械故障或项目延误等潜在紧张的情况下，口译员应保持冷静，并帮助缓解误解，确保项目按计划推进。

9. Understanding of Local Regulations and Industry Standards

9. 理解本地法规和行业标准

India has specific industry standards and regulations that govern machinery installation, repair, and maintenance. The interpreter must be familiar with:

印度有特定的行业标准和规定，适用于机械安装、维修和维护。口译员必须熟悉：

Indian Industry Standards: Understanding Indian standards for machinery operation, installation guidelines, and safety regulations.

印度行业标准：了解印度关于机械操作、安装指南和安全规定的标准。

Compliance with Local Laws: Ensuring that the machinery and the work being done comply with local labor laws, environmental regulations, and industry best practices.

遵守当地法律：确保机械设备和操作符合当地的劳动法、环境法规和行业最佳实践。

10. Flexibility and Adaptability

10. 灵活性和适应性

Working in the field often involves challenges such as dealing with unforeseen problems, changes in schedules, or varying levels of technical knowledge among the local workers. A good industrial interpreter must be adaptable, flexible, and willing to adjust to evolving situations. This includes:

在现场工作往往会遇到挑战，如处理突发问题、日程变更或本地工人的技术知识水平差异。优秀的工业口译员应具备适应性和灵活性，愿意根据不断变化的情况进行调整。包括：

Working in Varied Environments: Whether on construction sites, manufacturing plants, or during troubleshooting in harsh environments, interpreters must be prepared to work in diverse settings.

Handling Stressful Situations: Machinery breakdowns or delays can create stress in industrial environments. The interpreter should stay calm and maintain composure to help guide the team through solutions.

在不同环境中工作：无论是在建筑工地、制造工厂还是在恶劣环境中的故障排查，口译员都应适应不同的工作场所做好准备。

处理压力情境：机械故障或延误可能会带来压力。口译员应保持冷静，保持专业形象，并帮助团队找到解决方案。

Industrial interpreters in India who work with Chinese engineers on machinery installation, repair, and quality control must possess a blend of technical, linguistic, cultural, and problem-solving skills. By combining expertise in industrial processes with effective communication abilities, they ensure that complex machinery functions smoothly, repairs are made efficiently, and quality standards are met. Their role is indispensable in ensuring successful cross-border industrial projects, fostering strong relationships between Chinese companies and their Indian counterparts, and contributing to the overall success of industrial ventures.

在印度与中国工程师合作进行机械安装、维修和质量控制的工业口译员必须具备技术、语言、文化和解决问题的综合技能。通过结合工业过程的专业知识和有效的沟通能力，他们确保机械设备的顺利运行、维修的高效完成，并达到质量标准。他们的角色在跨境工业项目中至关重要，促进了中国公司与印度合作伙伴之间的强大关系，并为工业项目的成功做出了贡献。

Lesson 6

Training for industrial interpreters

行业口译员培训

Providing Comprehensive Training for Industrial Interpreters in India

Providing comprehensive training for industrial interpreters in India, particularly those assisting Chinese engineers in installing, repairing machines, and ensuring product quality, should cover several key areas to ensure the interpreters are fully prepared for the technical, linguistic, and cultural demands of the role.

为印度的工业翻译员提供全面的培训

在印度为工业翻译员提供全面的培训，尤其是为协助中国工程师安装、维修机器并确保产品质量的翻译员，应涵盖以下几个关键领域，以确保翻译员能够充分应对技术、语言和文化方面的挑战：

1. Role of the Industrial Interpreter

1. 工业翻译员的角色

Overview of Responsibilities: Clarify the interpreter's role in facilitating communication between Chinese engineers and local teams (Indian engineers, technicians, and workers).

职责概述：明确翻译员在中国工程师与本地团队（印度工程师、技术员和工人）之间沟通中的桥梁作用。

Importance of Accuracy: Emphasize the need for precise and clear translation to avoid miscommunication, especially in technical and safety-related matters.

准确性的重要性：强调精确和清晰翻译的重要性，尤其是在涉及技术和安全事项时，以避免沟通失误。

Expectations: Outline the standards and behavior expected from the interpreter in both professional settings and informal interactions.

期望标准：列出翻译员在专业场合和非正式交流中需要遵守的行为规范和标准。

2. Technical Knowledge and Skills

2. 技术知识与技能

Machine Types and Technical Terminology: Provide a glossary of terms and explanations for key equipment used in the industry, including machinery types, parts, and processes (e.g., CNC machines, assembly lines, hydraulic systems, etc.).

机械类型和技术术语：提供行业中常用设备的术语表和解释，包括机械种类、部件及工艺（如CNC机床、流水线、液压系统等）。

Example Terminology Lists:

术语示例：

Chinese term for CNC machine: 数控机床 (shù kòng jī chuáng)

English translation: CNC machine

Hindi translation: सीएनसी मशीन (CNC Machine)

Installation and Maintenance Procedures: Step-by-step guides for common machine installations, maintenance tasks, and troubleshooting procedures, alongside relevant terminology in all three languages (Chinese, English, and Hindi).

安装与维护程序：为常见的机器安装、维护任务及故障排除提供逐步指南，并附上中英印三种语言的相关术语。

Safety Standards: Highlight industrial safety terminology, key safety measures, and protocols that the interpreter should communicate clearly to both parties.

安全标准：强调工业安全术语、主要安全措施和翻译员需要清晰传达给双方的安全协议。

3. Language Proficiency

3. 语言能力

Vocabulary Building: Offer vocabulary lists and phrases common in the engineering, manufacturing, and technical fields. Include both general and industry-specific terms.

词汇扩展：提供工程、制造和技术领域常见的词汇表和短语，包括通用和行业特定术语。

Language Skills Development: Provide exercises and recommendations for language practice, with a focus on improving both technical vocabulary and the fluency necessary for real-time interpretation.

语言技能提升：提供语言练习的练习题和建议，重点提升技术词汇和实时翻译的流利度。

Cultural Sensitivity in Communication: Guide on effective and respectful communication between Chinese engineers and Indian workers, addressing differences in communication styles, expectations, and etiquette.

文化敏感度交流：指导翻译员在中印双方之间进行有效且尊重的沟通，关注不同的沟通风格、期望和礼节。

4. Cultural Competence

4. 文化适应能力

Cultural Differences: Include a section on understanding and bridging cultural gaps. For example:

文化差异：帮助翻译员理解并弥合文化差异，例如：

Understanding the importance of hierarchy in Chinese corporate culture vs. Indian workplace dynamics.

理解中国企业文化中的层级观念与印度工作场所动态之间的差异。

Differences in communication styles, including formality and indirectness in Chinese communication versus more direct

communication in some Indian settings.

不同的沟通风格：如中国沟通的正式性与间接性，以及印度某些场合中更直接的交流方式。

Building Rapport: Tips on how to build trust and ensure smooth cooperation between engineers and the local workforce.

建立融洽关系：提供建立信任并确保工程师与当地员工顺利合作的技巧。

Problem-Solving and Conflict Management: Guidance on how to handle miscommunications, cultural misunderstandings, or conflicts between teams.

问题解决与冲突管理：指导如何应对团队之间的沟通误解、文化冲突或其他问题。

5. Situational Guidance

5. 情境指导

Installation Scenarios: Provide sample dialogues or scripts for common installation scenarios (e.g., explaining how to set up a machine, calibrating settings, etc.).

安装场景：提供常见安装场景的示例对话或脚本（如解释如何安装机器、校准设置等）。

Maintenance and Repairs: Include role-playing scenarios that simulate troubleshooting, repairs, and follow-up procedures, along with vocabulary lists for these situations.

维护与维修：包含模拟故障排除、维修和后续程序的角色扮演场景，并附上相关术语表。

Emergencies: Offer templates or scripts for communicating during safety-related emergencies, machine breakdowns, or accidents.

紧急情况：提供安全紧急情况、机器故障或事故时的沟通模板或脚本。

6. Ethical Guidelines and Professional Conduct

6. 道德准则与职业行为

Confidentiality: Outline expectations for maintaining confidentiality about business operations, proprietary technologies, and company trade secrets.

保密性：明确保护业务运营、专有技术和公司商业机密的保密期望。

Impartiality: Ensure interpreters understand the importance of neutrality, especially when translating instructions, warnings, or technical issues.

中立性：确保翻译员理解中立的重要性，尤其是在翻译指令、警告或技术问题。

Cultural Sensitivity: Provide guidelines for avoiding cultural faux pas and sensitive situations, such as gestures or phrases that might be considered inappropriate.

文化敏感性：提供避免文化失礼或敏感场景（如可能被视为不适当的手势或短语）的指南。

7. Handling Technical Documentation

7. 技术文档处理

Technical Manuals and User Guides: Provide guidance on how to read, interpret, and translate technical documentation, including manuals, schematics, and safety protocols.

技术手册与用户指南：指导如何阅读、解释和翻译技术文档，包括手册、示意图和安全协议。

Document Formatting: Discuss the importance of maintaining the format of technical documents when translating, especially for operational guides and maintenance logs.

文档格式：讨论在翻译操作指南和维护日志等技术文档时保持格式的重要性。

8. Problem-Solving and Troubleshooting

8. 问题解决与故障排除

Troubleshooting Machines: A section dedicated to troubleshooting problems, identifying issues with equipment, and assisting in the repair process.

机器故障排除：专门介绍如何排查问题、识别设备故障并协助维修。

Diagnostic Vocabulary: Vocabulary specific to fault diagnostics (e.g., error codes, common machine malfunctions).

诊断词汇：针对故障诊断的专用词汇（如错误代码、常见机械故障）。

Working with Local Technicians: Ensure interpreters understand how to relay instructions and work with local technicians for quick problem resolution.

与本地技术人员合作：确保翻译员能够传达指令并与本地技术人员合作快速解决问题。

9. Practical Tips for Effective Interpretation

9. 高效翻译的实用技巧

Simultaneous vs. Consecutive Interpretation: Explain the difference between these two methods and offer advice on when each method is appropriate.

同声传译与交替传译：解释两种方法的区别，并建议适用场景。

Note-Taking Techniques: Teach effective note-taking for technical terms and instructions, particularly during complex installations or repairs.

笔记技巧：教授有效的笔记方法，用于记录技术术语和指令，特别是在复杂的安装或维修过程中。

Time Management: Tips for managing time during lengthy technical explanations or while coordinating between teams.

时间管理：提供在长时间技术解释或协调团队时的时间管理建议。

10. Resource Appendices

10. 资源附录

Glossaries: A multilingual glossary for key industrial terms (Chinese-English-Hindi) covering a wide range of mechanical, electrical, and technical terms.

术语表：提供覆盖广泛机械、电气和技术术语的多语言术语表（中-英-印）。

Technical Document Templates: Provide templates for technical reports, machine checklists, maintenance logs, etc., that can be adapted as required.

技术文档模板：提供技术报告、机器检查表、维护日志等模板，可根据需要调整。

Language Resources: Recommended resources for further language learning, including dictionaries, mobile apps, and online courses specific to technical language.

语言资源：推荐进一步学习语言的资源，包括字典、移动应用和在线课程，尤其是技术语言领域的资源。

11. Case Studies and Real-Life Examples

11. 案例研究与实际示例

Example Scenarios: Provide real-world case studies where interpreters helped Chinese engineers successfully install or repair machinery, highlighting the interpreter's role and approach to overcoming challenges.

场景示例：提供实际案例研究，展示翻译员如何帮助中国工程师成功安装或维修机械，强调翻译员的作用和克服挑战的方法。

Troubleshooting Examples: Include practical examples where interpreters had to act as mediators between engineers and local workers to resolve machine breakdowns or misunderstandings.

故障排除示例：包括实际案例，展示翻译员如何在工程师与当地工人之间充当调解人，解决机器故障或误解。

The handbook should be a comprehensive guide, blending technical expertise, language proficiency, and cultural competence to ensure industrial interpreters can support Chinese engineers effectively while facilitating smooth communication, safe operations, and successful machine installations and repairs. By including these essential elements, the handbook will empower interpreters to perform their roles with confidence and professionalism, ultimately contributing to the success of the engineering projects in India.

此手册应成为一份综合指南，融合技术专长、语言能力和文化适应力，确保工业翻译员能够高效支持中国工程师，促进顺畅沟通、安全操作以及机器安装和维修的成功。通过包含这些基本要素，此手册将赋予翻译员信心和专业性，最终为印度的工程项目成功做出贡献。

Lesson 7

Importance of Hierarchy in Chinese Corporate Culture vs. Indian Workplace Dynamics

中国企业文化中等级制度的重要性与印度职场动态

Hierarchy in Chinese Corporate Culture

中国企业文化中的层级结构

In Chinese corporate culture, hierarchy is deeply rooted in Confucian values that emphasize respect for authority, age, and seniority. Decisions often flow top-down, and employees are expected to show deference to managers or team leaders. Titles, formal roles, and chains of command are strictly adhered to. Chinese professionals may avoid questioning superiors directly, as it could be seen as disrespectful or undermining authority.

在中国企业文化中，层级制度深深植根于儒家价值观，强调尊重权威、年龄和资历。决策通常自上而下，员工应向经理或团队领导表示敬意。职称、正式角色和指挥链必须严格遵守。中国专业人士可能避免直接质疑上级，因为这可能被视为不尊重或破坏权威。

Example: In a meeting, Chinese employees might wait for their leader's opinion before voicing their own ideas to ensure

alignment with their superior's perspective.

例如：在会议中，中国员工可能会在发表自己的观点之前等待领导的意见，以确保与上级的观点一致。

Hierarchy in Indian Workplace Dynamics

印度职场动态中的层级结构

In contrast, Indian workplaces also value hierarchy, but the approach can be more flexible depending on the industry or organization. Traditionally, respect for authority and seniority is significant, particularly in family-owned businesses or government offices. However, with the rise of multinational companies and startups, Indian workplace dynamics are evolving, allowing for a more collaborative and participative approach. Young professionals are encouraged to contribute ideas, even when interacting with senior leaders.

相比之下，印度职场也重视层级结构，但根据行业或组织的不同，做法可能更为灵活。传统上，尤其是在家族企业或政府机关中，对权威和资历的尊重很重要。然而，随着跨国公司和初创企业的崛起，印度职场动态正在发展，允许更加合作和参与的工作方式。年轻专业人士被鼓励提出自己的想法，即使与资深领导互动时也是如此。

Example: In a modern corporate setting, Indian employees may be more comfortable sharing ideas or debating decisions during team discussions, even with higher-ranking officials.

例如：在现代企业环境中，印度员工可能更习惯在团队讨论中分享想法或辩论决策，即使是与更高职级的官员。

Bridging the Gap

弥合差距

To bridge this cultural gap, both sides must recognize and adapt to each other's expectations:

为了弥合文化差距，双方必须认识并适应对方的期望：

For Chinese professionals: Understanding that some Indian workplaces encourage open dialogue and less rigid hierarchies can lead to smoother collaboration.

对于中国专业人士：理解一些印度职场鼓励开放对话并拥有更灵活的层级结构有助于促进更顺畅的合作。

For Indian professionals: Acknowledging the importance of hierarchy in Chinese culture and adopting a more formal, respectful tone when dealing with superiors helps foster mutual respect.

对于印度专业人士：认识到在中国文化中层级的重要性，并在与上级沟通时采取更加正式、尊重的语气，有助于促进相互尊重。

2. Differences in Communication Styles

2. 沟通风格的差异

Chinese Communication: Formality and Indirectness

中国沟通：正式与间接

Chinese communication tends to be formal, polite, and indirect. Avoiding conflict or embarrassment (面子 miànzi, meaning "saving face") is a key priority. Chinese individuals may use euphemisms, vague language, or subtle cues to express disagreement or deliver unfavorable news. This indirect style ensures harmony in relationships and respects social decorum. 中国沟通通常正式、礼貌且间接。避免冲突或尴尬（面子，意为“留面子”）是首要任务。中国人可能使用委婉语、模糊语言或细微的暗示来表达不同意见或传达不利消息。这种间接风格有助于维持关系的和谐，并尊重社交礼仪。

Example: Instead of saying, "This plan will not work," a Chinese colleague might say, "This plan seems a bit challenging; perhaps we can consider another approach."

例如：与其直接说“这个计划行不通”，中国同事可能会说，“这个计划有点挑战性，也许我们可以考虑另一种方法。”

Indian Communication: Directness and Adaptability

印度沟通：直接与适应性

Indian communication, while respectful, can be more direct, especially in modern workplaces. People in India often value clarity and honesty in professional discussions, though they remain mindful of social hierarchies. Indians may combine verbal directness with non-verbal cues like head nods, hand gestures, or facial expressions to convey emotions or intentions. 印度沟通虽然尊重他人，但通常较为直接，尤其是在现代职场中。印度人往往在专业讨论中重视清晰和诚实，同时仍然注意社会层级。印度人可能会将言语上的直接性与非言语暗示（如点头、手势或面部表情）结合，用以表达情感或意图。

Example: An Indian colleague might straightforwardly say, "I don't think this plan is practical; let's look at an alternative option."

例如：一位印度同事可能会直接说，“我认为这个计划不太可行，我们看看其他的选择。”

Bridging the Gap 弥合差距

Misunderstandings often arise when one communication style is misinterpreted by the other. To overcome these differences: 当一种沟通风格被另一方误解时，常常会引发误会。为了克服这些差异：

For Chinese professionals: Recognizing that Indian colleagues may be more direct is essential. It's important not to mistake directness for disrespect.

对于中国专业人士：理解印度同事可能更加直接是非常重要的。不要把直接的表达误解为不尊重。

For Indian professionals: Understanding that Chinese colleagues prefer subtlety can help avoid direct criticism. Being more diplomatic and focusing on positive phrasing ensures effective communication.

对于印度专业人士：理解中国同事偏好含蓄的表达有助于避免直接批评。更加委婉并专注于积极的措辞能确保有效沟通。

Example Strategy: Indian professionals can phrase feedback as suggestions, such as, "We could consider adjusting this approach to achieve better results," while Chinese professionals can provide clearer signals during discussions to avoid ambiguity.

策略示例：印度专业人士可以将反馈表达为建议，例如：“我们可以考虑调整这个方法，以达到更好的结果”，而中国专业人士可以在讨论中提供更明确的信号，以避免歧义。

3. Navigating Cultural Norms and Work Etiquette

3. 掌握文化规范与工作礼仪

Beyond hierarchy and communication, smaller cultural norms can also impact professional interactions:

除了层级和沟通之外，较小的文化规范也可能影响职业互动：

Time Sensitivity: Chinese professionals often emphasize punctuality and strict timelines. Indians, while valuing deadlines, may display flexibility when unforeseen issues arise, adopting a more relaxed attitude.

时间观念：中国专业人士通常强调准时和严格的时间表。印度人虽然重视截止日期，但在遇到突发问题时可能会表现出更大的灵活性，采取更放松的态度。

Relationship Building: In China, trust is built gradually over time, often through formal settings like business dinners. In India, personal rapport and warmth often develop naturally through small talk and informal interactions.

关系建立：在中国，信任通常是通过时间的积累渐渐建立的，通常在正式场合如商务晚宴中进行。在印度，个人关系和温暖常常通过闲聊和非正式的互动自然发展。

Bridging the Gap: Both sides can respect each other's norms. Chinese professionals can appreciate the importance of personal relationships in Indian settings, while Indian professionals can adapt to the Chinese emphasis on time management and formal trust-building practices.

弥合差距：双方可以尊重彼此的规范。中国专业人士可以理解在印度环境中个人关系的重要性，而印度专业人士可以适应中国强调时间管理和正式建立信任的做法。

4. Strategies to Bridge Cultural Gaps

4. 弥合文化差距的策略

Successfully managing cultural differences requires awareness, sensitivity, and adaptability. Here are practical strategies for bridging cultural gaps:

成功管理文化差异需要意识、敏感性和适应性。以下是弥合文化差距的实用策略：

Cultural Awareness Training

文化意识培训

Conduct workshops to help professionals understand cultural norms, values, and communication styles of both China and India.

举办研讨会，帮助专业人士理解中国和印度的文化规范、价值观和沟通风格。

Active Listening and Observation

积极倾听与观察

Encourage employees to observe body language, tone, and non-verbal cues to better understand the other party's intent and preferences.

鼓励员工观察肢体语言、语气和非语言暗示，更好地理解对方的意图和偏好。

Clear and Respectful Communication

清晰与尊重的沟通

Use neutral, professional language to avoid misunderstandings. Frame criticisms or disagreements as suggestions or collaborative problem-solving.

使用中立、专业的语言避免误解。将批评或分歧表述为建议或合作解决问题的方式。

Building Relationships

建立关系

Invest time in building trust through small gestures, mutual respect, and acknowledgment of cultural norms. For example, understanding the significance of "saving face" in Chinese culture and "hospitality" in Indian culture can strengthen bonds. 通过小举动、相互尊重和理解文化规范来建立信任。例如，理解中国文化中的“面子”以及印度文化中的“好客”可以增强关系。

Flexibility and Compromise

灵活性与妥协

Being open-minded and flexible allows both cultures to find a middle ground. For example, combining Chinese formality with Indian informality can create an inclusive and balanced work environment.

保持开放心态和灵活性可以使两种文化找到折衷的空间。例如，结合中国的正式性与印度的非正式性，可以创造一个包容和平衡的工作环境。

Cultural differences, while significant, can be managed effectively through understanding, adaptation, and respect. In bridging the gaps between Chinese and Indian workplace cultures, recognizing the importance of hierarchy, adapting to distinct communication styles, and respecting cultural norms are key. By fostering cultural awareness, professionals from both countries can overcome barriers and create harmonious, productive partnerships. Ultimately, embracing these differences not only improves collaboration but also enriches the professional experience, leading to long-term success in cross-cultural environments.

文化差异虽然显著，但通过理解、适应和尊重可以有效地加以管理。在弥合中印职场文化差距时，认识到层级结构的重要性、适应不同的沟通风格和尊重文化规范是关键。通过培养文化意识，来自两国的专业人士可以克服障碍，建立和谐高效的合作关系。最终，接受这些差异不仅能改善合作，还能丰富职业经验，带来跨文化环境中的长期成功。

Lesson 8

Building Rapport: Tips for Trust and Cooperation

建立融洽关系：信任与合作的技巧

1. Understanding Cultural Values and Work Ethics

1. 理解文化价值观与工作伦理

Building rapport begins with understanding and respecting each other's cultural values and work ethics. Chinese engineers often prioritize discipline, hierarchy, and efficiency, while the Indian workforce values relationship-building, adaptability, and personal interaction.

建立融洽关系的第一步是理解和尊重彼此的文化价值观和工作伦理。中国工程师通常优先考虑纪律、层级和效率，而印度劳动力则更注重建立关系、适应性和个人互动。

Practical Tip: Encourage Chinese engineers to engage with the workforce through small talk and polite inquiries about their well-being. In India, personal rapport often leads to professional trust.

实用建议：鼓励中国工程师通过闲聊和礼貌地询问工人的健康状况与他们互动。在印度，个人关系常常会促进职业信任。

Example: Taking the time to greet workers in local languages, and asking about their families or daily lives, can create warmth and comfort.

例如：花时间用当地语言向工人问候，询问他们的家庭或日常生活，可以营造温暖与舒适。

2. Effective Communication

2. 有效沟通

Clear and respectful communication forms the backbone of rapport-building. Misunderstandings often arise due to language barriers, vague instructions, or differences in tone.

清晰而尊重的沟通是建立融洽关系的基础。由于语言障碍、不明确的指示或语气差异，常常会产生误解。

Use Simple Language: Convey instructions clearly and repeat essential points to ensure understanding. Use interpreters if

needed.

使用简单语言：清晰地传达指示并重复重要的要点，以确保理解。如有需要，使用翻译。

Visual Aids: Provide visual demonstrations, flowcharts, or diagrams to support verbal communication.

视觉辅助：提供视觉演示、流程图或图表，以支持口头沟通。

Example: Instead of giving long instructions verbally, Chinese engineers can use visuals or step-by-step checklists for machine installation or repairs.

例如：中国工程师可以使用视觉资料或逐步检查清单来进行机器安装或维修，而不是口头给出冗长的指示。

3. Active Listening and Respect for Input

3. 积极倾听与尊重意见

Trust grows when both teams feel heard and respected. Chinese engineers can encourage local workers to share their input or suggest alternative ways to solve problems based on their practical experience.

当两个团队都感到被倾听和尊重时，信任会增长。中国工程师可以鼓励当地工人根据他们的实践经验提出意见或建议替代的解决方法。

Practical Tip: Actively listen without dismissing suggestions. Reassure workers that their contributions are valued, even if the final decision differs.

实用建议：积极倾听并不轻视建议。即使最终决策不同，也要让工人知道他们的贡献受到重视。

Example: An engineer might say, “Thank you for sharing your idea. Let’s see how we can incorporate this into the plan.”

例如：一位工程师可能会说：“感谢你分享这个想法。让我们看看如何将其纳入计划。”

4. Be Culturally Sensitive and Adaptable

4. 尊重文化差异并具备适应性

Cultural sensitivity helps avoid unintended offences or barriers. For instance:

文化敏感性有助于避免无意间的冒犯或障碍。例如：

Chinese professionals may prefer formality and order, whereas Indian workers may respond positively to a more informal, team-based dynamic.

中国专业人士可能更偏好正式与秩序，而印度工人可能会对更非正式、团队化的动态做出积极回应。

Festivals, religious practices, or traditional customs in India should be acknowledged.

应当尊重印度的节日、宗教习俗或传统文化。

Practical Tip: Show respect for local customs by adjusting work schedules during major festivals or acknowledging workers' cultural celebrations.

实用建议：通过在重大节日调整工作安排或承认工人的文化庆祝活动来表达对当地习俗的尊重。

Example: A Chinese manager might greet workers during Diwali or allow short breaks for prayer times.

例如：一位中国经理可能会在排灯节时向工人问候，或允许在祈祷时间短暂休息。

5. Leading by Example

5. 以身作则

A manager or engineer who works alongside local teams, explains tasks clearly, and remains approachable builds credibility and trust. Avoiding an overly authoritative approach fosters a collaborative spirit.

一位与当地团队一起工作、清晰解释任务并且保持亲和力的经理或工程师可以建立信誉和信任。避免过于权威的方式有助于促进合作精神。

Practical Tip: Demonstrate humility and willingness to learn about local work processes or techniques.

实用建议：表现出谦逊并愿意学习当地的工作流程或技术。

Example: Instead of just issuing orders, Chinese engineers can work briefly alongside the workforce during machine setup to demonstrate camaraderie.

例如：中国工程师可以在机器安装期间与工人一起工作，简短地展示同事情谊，而不是仅仅发号施令。

Problem-Solving and Conflict Management

问题解决与冲突管理

In any cross-cultural collaboration, miscommunications, misunderstandings, or conflicts may arise due to differences in expectations, communication styles, or cultural norms. Effective problem-solving and conflict management are essential to

maintain harmony and productivity.

在任何跨文化合作中，由于期望、沟通方式或文化规范的差异，可能会出现误沟通、误解或冲突。有效的问题解决和冲突管理对维持和谐与生产力至关重要。

1. Identifying the Root Cause of Conflict

1. 确定冲突的根本原因

Understanding the underlying cause of a disagreement helps resolve it efficiently. Conflicts may arise due to:

了解分歧的根本原因有助于高效解决冲突。冲突可能由以下原因引起：

Miscommunication: Unclear instructions or differing interpretations.

误沟通：指示不明确或解释不同。

Cultural Misunderstandings: Perceived disrespect due to cultural norms (e.g., tone, body language).

文化误解：由于文化规范（如语气、肢体语言）引发的被认为不尊重。

Work Process Differences: Contrasting methods for achieving goals.

工作流程差异：为实现目标而采取的不同方法。

Practical Tip: Investigate conflicts calmly and objectively to pinpoint the cause before assigning blame.

实用建议：冷静客观地调查冲突，找出根本原因，再做出指责。

Example: If a machine is installed incorrectly, analyze whether it was due to unclear instructions, translation issues, or lack of proper training.

例如：如果机器安装不当，分析是否是由于指示不明确、翻译问题或缺乏适当培训造成的。

2. Open and Calm Communication

2. 开放与冷静的沟通

When conflicts arise, maintaining a calm tone and open dialogue ensures that both sides feel heard. Avoid heated arguments, as they can escalate tensions.

当冲突发生时，保持冷静的语气和开放的对话可以确保双方都感到被倾听。避免激烈争论，因为它们可能加剧紧张气氛。

Practical Tip:

Use mediators (e.g., interpreters) to bridge language gaps.

实用建议：

使用调解人（例如翻译）来弥补语言障碍。

Emphasize solutions rather than dwelling on blame.

强调解决方案，而非纠缠于责备。

Example: If a local worker misunderstands technical instructions, a Chinese engineer can say, "Let's revisit the installation steps together to avoid confusion and ensure everything is correct."

例如：如果当地工人误解了技术指示，一位中国工程师可以说：“让我们一起回顾安装步骤，避免混淆，确保一切正确。”

3. Cultural Sensitivity in Conflict Management

3. 冲突管理中的文化敏感性

Conflicts can sometimes stem from cultural differences. For instance:

冲突有时可能源于文化差异。例如：

A Chinese engineer's direct feedback may be perceived as harsh by Indian workers, who value a gentler approach.

中国工程师的直接反馈可能被印度工人视为严厉，而印度工人更重视温和的方式。

Indian workers' tendency to agree initially (even when unclear) may later confuse.

印度工人倾向于最初同意（即使不清楚），这可能稍后导致混乱。

Practical Tip: Adopt a balanced communication style:

实用建议：采用平衡的沟通方式：

Avoid excessive directness; rephrase feedback politely.

避免过度直白；礼貌地重述反馈意见。

Encourage questions to clarify doubts without embarrassment.

鼓励提问以澄清疑问，不要让提问者感到尴尬。

Example: If a mistake occurs, a Chinese manager could say, “It’s okay. Mistakes happen, but let’s work together to correct this step and avoid it next time.”

例如：如果发生错误，中国经理可以说：“没关系，错误是难免的，但让我们一起纠正这一环节，下次避免发生。”

4. Collaborative Problem-Solving

4. 协作解决问题

Conflicts are easier to resolve when teams work together towards solutions. Encourage brainstorming sessions where both parties contribute ideas.

当团队一起合作寻找解决方案时，冲突更容易解决。鼓励头脑风暴会议，让双方都提出意见。

Practical Tip: Involve local workers in problem-solving to make them feel included. Recognize and implement their practical suggestions whenever possible.

实用建议：让当地工人参与解决问题，让他们感到被包容。尽可能认可并采纳他们的实际建议。

Example: During a machine breakdown, ask, “Does anyone have experience fixing a similar issue? Let’s figure this out together.”

例如：在机器故障时，可以问：“有谁有修复类似问题的经验吗？我们一起想办法解决。”

5. Training and Clarification

5. 培训与澄清

Sometimes, conflicts arise due to a lack of clarity or training. Conduct regular sessions to ensure local workers understand technical processes and safety protocols.

有时，冲突是由于缺乏清晰的培训或理解。定期举办培训课程，确保当地工人理解技术流程和安全协议。

Practical Tip: Use hands-on demonstrations, Q&A sessions, and repetition to solidify understanding.

实用建议：使用实际演示、问答环节和重复讲解来加深理解。

Example: Before installation begins, engineers can demonstrate critical steps and encourage workers to practice under supervision.

例如：在安装开始之前，工程师可以演示关键步骤，并鼓励工人在监督下进行操作。

6. Building a Positive Team Environment

6. 构建积极的团队环境

A harmonious team environment reduces the chances of conflict. Creating opportunities for team bonding fosters mutual understanding and trust.

和谐的团队环境可以减少冲突的可能性。创造团队团建机会有助于增进相互理解和信任。

Practical Tip: Organize informal team gatherings, lunches, or celebrations to build personal relationships outside the workplace.

实用建议：组织非正式的团队聚会、午餐或庆祝活动，帮助团队在工作之外建立个人关系。

Example: A small meal or tea break after a major task completes can enhance team spirit and reduce workplace tension.

例如：在完成一项重要任务后，举办一顿小型聚餐或茶歇，可以增强团队精神，减少工作场所的紧张气氛。

Building rapport and managing conflicts in cross-cultural work environments require patience, understanding, and active effort. By respecting cultural differences, communicating clearly, and fostering collaboration, Chinese engineers and local Indian workforces can overcome challenges effectively. Strategies such as clear instructions, active listening, cultural sensitivity, and team-building initiatives help strengthen relationships and ensure smooth cooperation. Likewise, conflicts can be resolved through calm discussions, collaborative problem-solving, and training. Ultimately, successful rapport and conflict management not only enhance productivity but also creates a positive, respectful, and unified work environment. 在跨文化工作环境中建立融洽关系和管理冲突需要耐心、理解和积极努力。通过尊重文化差异、清晰沟通和促进合作，中国工程师与当地印度劳动力可以有效地克服挑战。明确的指示、积极倾听、文化敏感性和团队建设等策略有助于加深关系并确保顺利合作。同样，冲突也可以通过冷静讨论、协作解决问题和培训来解决。最终，成功的融洽关系与冲突管理不仅能提高生产力，还能创造积极、尊重且团结的工作环境。

Lesson 9
Note-taking
做笔记

Note-taking is important for interpreters in industrial settings, as it provides comprehensive techniques to help manage technical content effectively.

Why Note-Taking is Important?

为什么笔记很重要?

Wèishéme bǐjì hěn zhòngyào?

Precision: Accurate note-taking ensures complex instructions and technical terms are correctly interpreted.

Reference: Notes serve as a quick reference during or after the installation/repair process.

Retention: Writing down technical terms and processes improves memory.

Problem-Solving: Notes help identify gaps or unclear instructions during troubleshooting.

Essential Note-Taking Techniques

有效的笔记技巧

Yǒuxiào de bǐjì jìqiǎo

1. Use a Structured Format (结构化笔记法) Jiégòu huà bǐjì fǎ

Use a clear structure to organize your notes. Divide the page into sections for different purposes:

Title/Topic: Write the machine name, process, or step being discussed.

机器名称 (Jīqì míngchēng): Machine Name

操作步骤 (Cāozuò bùzhòu): Steps

Key Points: Main instructions or tasks described by the engineer.

Terminology: Write down technical terms, their meaning, and pronunciation.

Example Layout:

Section	Content
Machine Name	CNC Milling Machine (数控铣床, Shùkòng xǐchuáng)
Step 1: Assembly	Install the motor unit first. (先安装电机单元, Xiān ānzhuāng diànjī dānyuán)
Step 2: Connection	Connect power cables. (连接电缆, Liánjiē diànlǎn)

2. Abbreviation and Symbols (缩写和符号)

Suōxiě hé fúhào

Use abbreviations, symbols, and shorthand for technical notes to save time:

电机 (Diànjī): Motor – Abbreviate as MTR.

电源 (Diànyuán): Power Supply – Use PWR.

Use arrows: → for steps, ↑ for increase, ↓ for decrease.

数字缩写 (Shùzì suōxiě): Use numbers for ordered steps.

Example: Step 1 → Connect PWR → Test → OK.

3. Focus on Key Terminology (重点术语记录)

Zhòngdiǎn shùyǔ jìlù

Technical terms are the foundation of machine installation and repair processes. Write terms in three forms:

Chinese (中文): 电机 (Diànjī)

Pinyin: Diànjī

English: Motor

Techniques for Memorizing Technical Terms:

Repeat Terms: Write the term multiple times for practice.

Flashcards: Create small cards with the term and meaning for revision.

Example Sentences: Note how terms are used in instructions.

“安装电机” (Ānzhuāng diànjī) → Install the motor.

4. Step-by-Step Process Notes (逐步记录操作过程)

Zhúbù jìlù cāozuò guòchéng

Write down machine installation or repair processes step-by-step in short, concise sentences. Use simple language to avoid confusion.

Example:

Step 1: 拆开机器包装 (Chāi kāi jīqì bāozhuāng) → Unbox the machine.

Step 2: 安装基础部件 (Ānzhuāng jīchǔ bùjiàn) → Install basic components.

Step 3: 连接电缆 (Liánjiē diànlǎn) → Connect the power cables.

5. Use Visual Aids and Diagrams (使用图表和示意图)

Shǐyòng túbiǎo hé shìyì tú

Incorporate simple sketches, diagrams, or flowcharts to illustrate processes visually.

示意图 (Shìyì tú): Simple diagrams make it easier to understand complex installations.

Example: Draw a box to represent the machine and mark wires, inputs, and outputs.

Use lines and arrows to show steps visually.

6. Highlight Important Details (重点标记)

Zhòngdiǎn biāoji

Use tools like underlining, color codes, or boxes to highlight critical points:

Red pen for warnings (警告, Jǐnggào): Example → 注意: 电源未接地! (Zhùyì: Diànyuán wèi jiē dì!) – Warning: Power not grounded!

Yellow for reminders.

Use bold or asterisks (*) for essential steps.

Practical Example of Effective Note-Taking

Step Instruction Key Notes

Step 1 Install the motor unit. 安装电机 (Ānzhuāng diànjī) → Motor setup

Step 2 Align the belts properly. 对齐皮带 (Duìqí pí dài) → Align belts

Step 3 Connect the power supply and test. 连接电源测试 (Liánjiē diànyuán cèshì) → Test PWR

Best Practices for Effective Note-Taking

Listen Actively: Focus on listening carefully to engineers. Take brief notes and expand them later.

Clarify Doubts: If any step is unclear, ask the engineer immediately to avoid confusion.

Review Notes: After completing a session, review and organize your notes for clarity.

Practice: Regularly practice note-taking during machine installation videos or simulations.

Conclusion

Effective note-taking is an essential skill for industrial interpreters facilitating Chinese engineers during machine installations and repairs in India. By following structured techniques—such as abbreviations, visual aids, and step-by-step recording—interpreters can ensure clear, concise, and accurate communication. Proper notes improve understanding, reduce errors, and create a smooth workflow, ultimately helping both Chinese engineers and Indian workers achieve their goals efficiently.

Lesson 10

Mock Conversation Drill during Industrial Interpretation

工业口译模拟对话练习

Airport Pickup and Arrival

English: "Welcome to Delhi. How was your flight?" Chinese: "欢迎来到德里。您的航班怎么样?"

English: "Do you need help with your luggage?" Chinese: "需要我帮您拿行李吗?"

English: "We have arranged a car to take you to the hotel." Chinese: "我们安排了车送您去酒店。"

English: "The drive to the hotel will take about 30 minutes." Chinese: "到酒店大约需要 30 分钟车程。"

English: "Would you like some water or a snack?" Chinese: "您想喝点水或者吃点零食吗?"

Hotel Check-in

English: "Your room has been booked under your name." Chinese: "您的房间已经以您的名字预订好了。"

English: "Do you have your passport for the check-in process?" Chinese: "您有护照吗? 需要办理入住手续。"

English: "Your room is on the [floor number] floor." Chinese: "您的房间在[楼层号]层。"

English: "The hotel serves breakfast from 7:00 to 10:00 AM." Chinese: "酒店早餐供应时间是早上 7 点到 10 点。"

English: "If you need anything, feel free to call the reception." Chinese: "如果需要什么, 可以随时联系前台。"

Meal Preferences

English: "Do you have any dietary restrictions?" Chinese: "您对饮食有什么特别要求吗?"

English: "Would you prefer Chinese food or local cuisine?" Chinese: "您喜欢中餐还是当地美食?"

English: "We can arrange vegetarian or halal options if needed." Chinese: "如果需要, 我们可以安排素食或清真选项。"

English: "Lunch is usually served at 12:30 PM. Is that okay for you?" Chinese: "午餐通常在中午 12 点半, 您觉得可以吗?"

English: "Would you like some tea or coffee?" Chinese: "您想喝茶还是咖啡?"

Transportation

English: "We have arranged a company car for your daily commute." Chinese: "我们安排了公司车接送您上下班。"

English: "Do you need a ride to the worksite tomorrow morning?" Chinese: "明早 需要送您去工作地点吗?"

English: "The nearest metro station is a 5-minute walk from the hotel." Chinese: "最近的地铁站距离酒店步行 5 分钟。"

English: "Here's a city map for your reference." Chinese: "这是城市地图供您参考。"

English: "Would you like me to book a taxi for you?" Chinese: "需要我帮您叫出租车吗?"

Work Arrangements

English: "The work schedule starts at 9:00 AM every day." Chinese: "工作时间每天早上 9 点开始。"

English: "We have set up a meeting room for your use." Chinese: "我们为您准备了一个会议室。"

English: "Do you need any special tools or equipment?" Chinese: "您需要特别的工具或设备吗?"

English: "The team will assist you with any technical issues." Chinese: "团队会协助您解决技术问题。"

English: "Please let us know if you face any challenges." Chinese: "如果遇到任何问题，请告诉我们。"

Cultural Considerations

English: "Is there anything specific you'd like to experience in our city?"

Chinese: "您对我们的城市有什么特别想体验的吗？"

English: "The weather here is a bit cooler. Do you need an extra jacket?"

Chinese: "这里天气稍微凉一些，您需要多带一件外套吗？"

English: "We've prepared some Chinese tea for you in your room." Chinese: "我们为您的房间准备了中国茶。"

English: "Are you comfortable with the local time zone?" Chinese: "您适应当地时区了吗？"

English: "Let us know if you have any preferences for your stay." Chinese: "如果对住宿有任何要求，请告诉我们。"

Greetings and Introductions

你好，我是负责翻译的口译员。(Nǐ hǎo, wǒ shì fù zé fān yì de kǒu yì yuán.) Hello, I am the interpreter responsible for translation.

请问您怎么称呼？(Qǐng wèn nín zěn me chēng hu?) How should I address you?

很高兴见到您。(Hěn gāo xìng jiàn dào nín.) It's nice to meet you.

今天的会议安排是什么？(Jīn tiān de huì yì ān pái shì shén me?) What's the schedule for today's meeting?

让我们开始吧！(Ràng wǒ men kāi shǐ ba!) Let's get started!

Factory Tour

这边是我们的生产车间。(Zhè biān shì wǒ men de shēng chǎn chē jiān.) This is our production workshop.

我们可以参观您的设备吗？(Wǒ men kě yǐ cān guān nín de shè bèi ma?) Can we take a look at your equipment?

这个机器是用来做什么的？(Zhè gè jī qì shì yòng lái zuò shén me de?) What is this machine used for?

它每天可以生产多少件产品？(Tā měi tiān kě yǐ shēng chǎn duō shǎo jiàn chǎn pǐn?) How many products can it produce per day?

请注意佩戴安全帽。(Qǐng zhù yì pèi dài ān quán mào.) Please remember to wear a safety helmet.

Equipment Operation

这个设备是全自动的吗？(Zhè gè shè bèi shì quán zì dòng de ma?) Is this equipment fully automated?

我们需要对设备进行调试。(Wǒ men xū yào duì shè bèi jìn xíng tiáo shì.) We need to test the equipment.

请按照操作手册的要求来。(Qǐng àn zhào cāo zuò shǒu cè de yāo qiú lái.) Please follow the instructions in the operation manual.

如果设备出现故障，请立即停止操作。(Rú guǒ shè bèi chū xiàn gù zhàng, qǐng lì jí tíng zhǐ cāo zuò.) If the equipment malfunctions, stop operation immediately.

它的最大负载是多少？(Tā de zuì dà fù zài shì duō shǎo?) What is its maximum load capacity?

Technical Discussion

这个机器的效率是多少？(Zhè gè jī qì de xiào lǜ shì duō shǎo?) What is the efficiency of this machine?

它是否支持模块化设计？(Tā shì fǒu zhī chí mó kuài huà shè jì?) Does it support modular design?

能解释一下它的工作原理吗？(Néng jiě shì yī xià tā de gōng zuò yuán lǐ ma?) Can you explain how it works?

这个部件的材料是什么？(Zhè gè bù jiàn de cái liào shì shén me?) What is the material of this component?

我们可以对它进行定制吗？(Wǒ men kě yǐ duì tā jìn xíng dìng zhì ma?) Can we customize it?

Safety and Compliance

请确保遵守安全规定。(Qǐng què bǎo zūn shǒu ān quán guī dìng.) Please make sure to follow safety regulations.

设备是否符合国际标准？(Shè bèi shì fǒu fú hé guó jì biāo zhǔn?) Does the equipment comply with international standards?

这是我们的安全操作手册。(Zhè shì wǒ men de ān quán cāo zuò shǒu cè.) This is our safety operation manual.

在开始之前，我们需要进行风险评估。(Zài kāi shǐ zhī qián, wǒ men xū yào jìn xíng fēng xiǎn píng gū.) We need to conduct a risk assessment before starting.

请告诉我紧急出口的位置。(Qǐng gào sù wǒ jǐn jí chū kǒu de wèi zhì.) Please tell me the location of the emergency exits.

Quality Control

我们对所有产品都进行严格的质量检验。(Wǒ men duì suǒ yǒu chǎn pǐn dōu jìn xíng yán gé de zhì liàng jiǎn yàn.) We conduct strict quality checks on all products.

请提供您最近的检验报告。(Qǐng tí gōng nín zuì jìn de jiǎn yàn bào gào.) Please provide your latest inspection report.

这是我们的质量保证流程。(Zhè shì wǒ men de zhì liàng bǎo zhèng liú chéng.) This is our quality assurance process.

我们可以安排抽样检测。(Wǒ men kě yǐ ān pái chōu yàng jiǎn cè.) We can arrange for sample testing.

如果产品不符合规格，会有什么后果？(Rú guǒ chǎn pǐn bù fú hé guī gé, huì yǒu shén me hòu guǒ?) What happens if the product does not meet specifications?

Shipping and Logistics

货物将通过什么方式运输？(Huò wù jiāng tōng guò shén me fāng shì yùn shū?) How will the goods be transported?

运输时间需要多久？(Yùn shū shí jiān xū yào duō jiǔ?) How long will the shipping take?

请确保包装符合国际标准。(Qǐng què bāo bāo zhuāng fú hé guó jì biāo zhǔn.) Please ensure the packaging meets international standards.

这些货物是否需要清关？(Zhè xiē huò wù shì fǒu xū yào qīng guān?) Do these goods require customs clearance?

请提供装箱单和提单。(Qǐng tí gōng zhuāng xiāng dān hé tí dān.) Please provide the packing list and bill of lading.

Meetings and Negotiations

我们可以先讨论合同条款吗？(Wǒ men kě yǐ xiān tāo lùn hé tóng tiáo kuǎn ma?) Can we discuss the contract terms first?

您对价格有任何建议吗？(Nín duì jià gé yǒu rèn hé jiàn yì ma?) Do you have any suggestions regarding the price?

我们需要确认交货时间。(Wǒ men xū yào què rèn jiāo huò shí jiān.) We need to confirm the delivery time.

这项条款对我们不太有利。(Zhè xiàng tiáo kuǎn duì wǒ men bù tài yǒu lì.) This clause is not very favorable to us.

请给我们一个最终报价。(Qǐng gěi wǒ men yí gè zuì zhōng bào jià.) Please give us a final quote.

Troubleshooting and Problem-Solving

设备运行时出现异常噪音。(Shè bèi yùn xíng shí chū xiàn yì cháng zào yīn.) The equipment is making abnormal noise during operation.

请检查电缆连接是否正常。(Qǐng jiǎn chá diàn lǎn lián jiē shì fǒu zhèng cháng.) Please check if the cable connections are intact.

我们需要重新启动系统。(Wǒ men xū yào chóng xīn qǐ dòng xì tǒng.) We need to restart the system.

故障代码显示是什么？(Gù zhàng dài mǎ xiǎn shì shì shén me?) What does the error code indicate?

请提供技术支持团队的联系方式。(Qǐng tí gōng jì shù zhī chí tuán duì de lián xì fāng shì.) Please provide contact information for the technical support team.

Maintenance and Repair

我们需要对设备进行例行保养。(Wǒ men xū yào duì shè bèi jìn xíng lì xíng bǎo yǎng.) We need to perform routine maintenance on the equipment.

请更换这个磨损的零件。(Qǐng gēng huàn zhè gè mó sǔn de líng jiàn.) Please replace this worn-out component.

润滑油是否已经加注？(Rùn huá yóu shì fǒu yǐ jīng jiā zhù?) Has the lubricant been applied?

维修工作预计需要多长时间？(Wéi xiū gōng zuò yù jì xū yào duō cháng shí jiān?) How long is the repair work expected to take?

我们需要定期校准设备。(Wǒ men xū yào dìng qī jiào zhǔn shè bèi.) We need to calibrate the equipment regularly.

Production Planning and Scheduling

我们的月生产目标是多少？(Wǒ men de yuè shēng chǎn mù biāo shì duō shǎo?) What is our monthly production target?

请按照订单优先级安排生产。(Qǐng àn zhào dìng dān yōu xiān jí ān pái shēng chǎn.) Please schedule production based on the order priority.

生产线是否可以调整以满足新需求？(Shēng chǎn xiàn shì fǒu kě yǐ tiáo zhěng yǐ mǎn zú xīn xū qiú?) Can the production line be adjusted to meet the new requirements?

我们需要更多的原材料来满足生产计划。(Wǒ men xū yào gèng duō de yuán cái liào láo mǎn zú shēng chǎn jì huà.) We need more raw materials to meet the production schedule.

请确认生产周期和交货日期。(Qǐng què rèn shēng chǎn zhōu qī hé jiāo huò rì qī.) Please confirm the production cycle and delivery date.

Training and Instruction

我们需要为员工安排操作培训。(Wǒ men xū yào wèi yuán gōng ān pái cāo zuò péi xùn.) We need to arrange operational training for the staff.

请演示如何正确操作这台设备。(Qǐng yǎn shì rú hé zhèng què cāo zuò zhè tái shè bèi.) Please demonstrate how to operate this equipment correctly.

如果出现紧急情况，该如何处理？(Rú guǒ chū xiàn jǐn jí qíng kuàng, gāi rú hé chǔ lǐ?)

How should emergencies be handled?

我们提供设备安装和调试的培训服务。(Wǒ men tí gōng shè bèi ān zhuāng hé tiáo shì de péi xùn fú wù.) We offer training services for equipment installation and debugging.

每位员工都需要通过安全培训考核。(Měi wèi yuán gōng dōu xū yào tōng guò ān quán péi xùn kǎo hé.) Every employee must pass the safety training assessment.

Customer Service and Feedback

请告诉我们您对产品意见和建议。(Qǐng gào sù wǒ men nín duì chǎn pǐn de yì jiàn hé jiàn yì.)

Please tell us your opinions and suggestions about the product.

如果您对服务不满意，请随时联系我。(Rú guǒ nín duì fú wù bù mǎn yì, qǐng suí shí lián xì wǒ.)

If you are not satisfied with our service, please contact me anytime.

您是否遇到任何问题需要我们解决？(Nín shì fǒu yù dào rèn hé wèn tí xū yào wǒ men jiě jué?)

Have you encountered any issues that we need to address?

这是我们的售后服务政策。(Zhè shì wǒ men de shòu hòu fú wù zhèng cè.) This is our after-sales service policy.

我们会尽快为您提供解决方案。(Wǒ men huì jìn kuài wèi nín tí gōng jiě jué fāng àn.)
We will provide a solution for you as soon as possible.

Contract and Payment

请仔细阅读合同中的条款。(Qǐng zǐ xì yuè dú hé tóng zhōng de tiáo kuǎn.) Please carefully read the terms in the contract.

支付方式是什么？(Zhī fù fāng shì shì shén me?) What is the payment method?

合同中提到的保证金是多少？(Hé tóng zhōng tí dào de bǎo zhèng jīn shì duō shǎo?)

How much is the deposit mentioned in the contract?

发票可以开具增值税专用发票吗？(Fā piào kě yǐ kāi jù zēng zhí shuì zhuān yòng fā piào ma?)

Can the invoice be issued as a VAT invoice?

付款期限是多久？(Fù kuǎn qī xiàn shì duō jiǔ?) What is the payment deadline?

Miscellaneous Situations

请提供设备的保修期说明。(Qǐng tí gōng shè bèi de bǎo xiū qī shuō míng.) Please provide an explanation of the equipment warranty period.

我们需要更换供应商。(Wǒ men xū yào gēng huàn gōng yīng shāng.) We need to change the supplier.

请确保所有文件都已归档。(Qǐng què bǎo suǒ yǒu wén jiàn dōu yǐ guī dǎng.) Please ensure all documents are archived.

天气条件是否会影响运输？(Tiān qì tiáo jiàn shì fǒu huì yǐng xiǎng yùn shū?) Will the weather conditions affect transportation?

我们需要更详细的产品规格。(Wǒ men xū yào gèng xiáng xì de chǎn pǐn guī gé.) We need more detailed product specifications.

Lesson 11

Mock conversation between a Chinese engineer and an Indian interpreter during the repair of a machine.

模拟中国工程师和印度翻译在修理机器时进行的对话。

模拟对话：中国工程师和印度口译员

Conversation: Chinese Engineer and Indian Interpreter

Setting: A factory floor. A complex machine is malfunctioning. A Chinese engineer, Li Wei (李伟), has been called in to diagnose and repair the issue. An Indian interpreter, Rajeev, is assisting in the communication.

Li Wei (李伟): Chinese Engineer Rajeev: Indian Interpreter

Conversation

Scene 1: Initial Assessment

Li Wei (in Chinese): 这个机器一直这样吗？(Zhègè jīqì yīzhí zhèyàng ma?) Rajeev (translating to English): "Is the machine always like this?"

Indian Technician (in English): "Yes, it started malfunctioning yesterday."

Rajeev (translating to Chinese): “是的，昨天开始出现故障的。”(Shì de, zuótiān kāishǐ chūxiàn gùzhàng de.)

Li Wei (in Chinese): 好吧，让我检查一下。(Hǎo ba, ràng wǒ jiǎnchá yīxià.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Alright, let me check it."

Scene 2: Identifying the Issue

Li Wei (in Chinese): 看起来是传感器出了问题。(Kànshàngqù shì gǎnsuōqì chūle wèntí.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "It seems the sensor is the problem."

Indian Technician (in English): "Can you fix it?"

Rajeev (translating to Chinese): “你能修好吗？”(Nǐ néng xiū hǎo ma?)

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我会尽力，但需要更换传感器。(Wǒ huì jìnli, dàn xūyào gēnhuàn gǎnsuōqì.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "I'll try my best, but we need to replace the sensor."

Scene 3: Seeking Clarification

Li Wei (in Chinese): 这个型号的传感器，你们有备件吗？(Zhègè xíng hào de gǎnsuōqì, nǐmen yǒu bèijiàn ma?)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Do you have a spare part for this type of sensor?"

Indian Technician (in English): "I'm not sure, let me check the inventory."

Rajeev (translating to Chinese): “我不确定，让我查一下库存。”(Wǒ bù quèdìng, ràng wǒ chá yīxià kùcún.)

Scene 4: Providing Instructions

Li Wei (in Chinese): 你需要把机器断电，然后拆下这个盖板。(Nǐ xūyào bǎ jīqì duàn diàn, ránhòu chāi xià zhège gàibǎn.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "You need to power off the machine and then remove this cover." Indian Technician (in English): "Got it."

Scene 5: Troubleshooting Deeper

Li Wei (in Chinese): 你能帮我检查一下这个电线有没有松动？(Nǐ néng bāng wǒ jiǎnchá yīxià zhège diànxìàn yǒu méiyǒu sōngdòng?)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Can you help me check if this wire is loose?"

Indian Technician (in English): "I'll check."

Scene 6: Replacing the Sensor

Li Wei (in Chinese): 这个传感器需要用专用工具拆卸。(Zhège gǎnsuǒqì xūyào yòng zhuānyòng gōngjù chāixiè.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "This sensor needs a special tool to remove."

Indian Technician (in English): "We don't have that tool."

Rajeev (translating to Chinese): “我们没有那个工具。”(Wǒmen méiyǒu nàge gōngjù.)

Li Wei (in Chinese): 那就只能用钳子小心拆了。(Nà jiù zhǐ néng yòng qiánzi xiǎoxīn chāi le.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Then we'll have to use pliers to carefully remove it."

Scene 7: Testing the Repair

Li Wei (in Chinese): 好，现在重新启动机器，看看有没有问题。(Hǎo, xiànzài chóngxīn qǐdòng jīqì, kànkàn yǒu méiyǒu wèntí.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Okay, now let's restart the machine and see if there are any issues."

Indian Technician (in English): "It seems to be working now."

Rajeev (translating to Chinese): “现在看起来正常了。”(Xiànzài kànshàngqù zhèngcháng le.)

Li Wei (in Chinese): 很好，但要注意，这个传感器比较脆弱，以后使用要小心。(Hěn hǎo, dàn yào zhùyì, zhège gǎnsuǒqì bǐjiào cuiruò, yǐhòu shǐyòng yào xiǎoxīn.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Good, but be careful with this sensor. It's quite fragile."

Conversation: Installing a New Machine

Setting: A factory floor. A new machine, a CNC milling machine, is being installed. A Chinese engineer, Li Wei (李伟), is overseeing the installation, and an Indian interpreter, Rajeev, is assisting in the communication.

Scene 1: Unpacking and Inspection

Li Wei (in Chinese): 先检查一下机器有没有损坏。(Xiān jiǎnchá yīxià jīqì yǒu méiyǒu sǔnhuài.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Let's check the machine for any damage first."

Indian Technician (in English): "Okay, we'll do that."

Scene 2: Preparing the Installation Site

Li Wei (in Chinese): 这个机器需要放在平稳的地面上，并且周围要有足够的空间。(Zhège jīqì xūyào fàng zài píngwěn de dìmiàn shàng, bìngqiě zhōuyōu yǒu zúgòu de kōngjiān.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "This machine needs to be placed on a level surface with enough space around it."

Indian Technician (in English): "We've prepared the area."

Scene 3: Aligning the Machine

Li Wei (in Chinese): 用水平仪检查机器是否水平。(Yòng shuǐpíngyí jiǎnchá jīqì shìfǒu shuǐpíng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Use the level to check if the machine is level."

Indian Technician (in English): "It's level."

Scene 4: Connecting Power and Air Supply

Li Wei (in Chinese): 这个机器需要三相电源和压缩空气。(Zhègè jīqì xūyào sānxiāng diányuán hé yāsuo kōngqì.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "This machine requires three-phase power and compressed air." Indian Technician (in English): "We've connected the power, but we need to check the air pressure."

Scene 5: Installing Control Panel and Software

Li Wei (in Chinese): 现在安装控制面板，并连接电脑。(Xiànzài ānzhuāng kòngzhì miànbǎn, bìng liánjiē diànnǎo.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Now, we'll install the control panel and connect the computer."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll need your help with the software installation." 我们需要您帮助我们安装软件。”

Yìndù jìshùyuán (yīngyǔ): “Wǒmen xūyào nín bāngzhù wǒmen ānzhuāng ruǎnjiàn.”

Scene 6: Initial Testing

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们先进行空载测试。(Wǒmen xiān jìnxíng kōngzài cèshì.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Let's do an empty run test first." Indian Technician

(in English): "Okay, let's start."

Scene 7: Troubleshooting Initial Issues

Li Wei (in Chinese): 机器启动后，为什么 X 轴的运动不准确？(Jīqì qǐdòng hòu, wèishénme X zhóu de yùndòng bù zhǔnquè?)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Why is the X-axis movement inaccurate after starting the machine?"

Indian Technician (in English): "We've checked the settings, but it's still not working."

Li Wei (in Chinese): 检查一下伺服电机和驱动器有没有问题。(Jiǎnchá yīxià sífú diàndī hé qūdòngqì yǒu méiyǒu wèntí.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Check the servo motor and drive for any issues."

Scene 8: Calibrating the Machine

Li Wei (in Chinese): 需要对机器进行校准。(Xūyào duì jīqì jìnxíng xiàozhǔn.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "We need to calibrate the machine."

Indian Technician (in English): "How do we do that?"

Li Wei (in Chinese): 先进行零点校准，然后是几何误差校准。(Xiān jìnxíng língdiǎn xiàozhǔn, ránhòu shì jǐhé wùchā xiàozhǔn.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "First, we'll do zero-point calibration, and then geometric error calibration."

Scene 9: Testing the Machine's Capabilities

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们来测试一下机器的加工精度。(Wǒmen lái cèshì yīxià jīqì de jiāgōng jīngdù.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Let's test the machine's machining accuracy."

Indian Technician (in English): "What kind of test parts should we make?"

Li Wei (in Chinese): 可以先做一个简单的测试零件，比如一个标准的方块。(Kěyǐ xiān zuò yīgè jiǎndān de cèshì lǐngjiàn, bǐrú yīgè biāozhǔn de fāngkuài.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "We can start with a simple test part, like a standard block."

10: Unexpected Error Message

Li Wei (in Chinese): 机器突然出现“伺服电机过流”的报警，这是什么原因？(Jīqì tūrán chūxiàn “sífú diàndī guòliú” de bàojǐng, zhè shì shénme yuányīn?)

Rajeev (translating to English): "The machine suddenly showed a 'servo motor overcurrent' alarm. What could be the cause?"

Indian Technician (in English): "We've checked the power supply and the motor itself, but couldn't find anything wrong."

Li Wei (in Chinese): 可能是机械负载过大，或者驱动器参数设置不正确。(Kěnéng shì jīxiè fùzài guòdà, huòzhě qūdòngqì cānshù shèzhì bù zhèngquè.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "It might be due to excessive mechanical load or incorrect drive parameter settings."

Scene 11: Resolving Software Issues

Li Wei (in Chinese): 这个软件界面不太友好, 有些功能不太好找。(Zhège ruǎnjiàn jièmiàn bù tài yǒuhǎo, yǒuxiē gōngnéng bù tài hǎo zhǎo.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "This software interface isn't very user-friendly, and some functions are difficult to find."

Indian Technician (in English): "We're having trouble with the post-processor settings."

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我可以远程协助你们配置软件。(Wǒ kěyǐ yuǎnchóng xiézhù nǐmen pèizhì ruǎnjiàn.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "I can remotely assist you with the software configuration."

Scene 12: Long-Term Maintenance and Training

Li Wei (in Chinese): 定期对机器进行保养和维护很重要。(Dìngqī duì jīqì jìnxíng bǎoyǎng hé wéihù hěn zhòngyào.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Regular maintenance and servicing of the machine is crucial." Indian Technician (in English): "We'll follow the maintenance schedule."

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们也可以提供操作培训, 以提高你们的技能水平。(Wǒmen yě kěyǐ tígōng cāozuò peixùn, yǐ tígāo nǐmen de jìnéng shuǐpíng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "We can also provide operator training to enhance your skills." Expanded Conversation: Trial Run of the New Machine

Scene 13: Preparing for the Trial Run

Li Wei (in Chinese): 为了确保安全, 我们需要制定详细的试运行计划。(Wèile quèbǎo ānquán, wǒmen xūyào zhìdìng xiángxì de shìyùnxíng jìhuà.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "To ensure safety, we need to create a detailed trial run plan."

Indian Technician (in English): "We've prepared a checklist for the trial run."

Scene 14: Conducting the Trial Run

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们先进行低速空载试运行, 观察机器的运行状态。(Wǒmen xiān jìnxíng dī sù kōngzài shìyùnxíng, guānchá jīqì de yùnxíng zhuàngtài.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Let's start with a low-speed, no-load trial run to observe the machine's behavior."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll monitor the vibration and noise levels."

Li Wei (in Chinese): 如果一切正常, 我们可以逐渐增加负载, 并测试不同的加工参数。(Rúguǒ yīqiè zhèngcháng, wǒmen kěyǐ zhújiàn zēngjiā fùzài, bìng cèshì bùtóng de jiāgōng cānshù.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "If everything is okay, we can gradually increase the load and test different machining parameters."

Scene 15: Analyzing the Trial Run Results

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们需要仔细分析试运行数据, 包括加工精度、表面质量和效率。(Wǒmen xūyào zìxì fēnxī shìyùnxíng shùjù, bāokuò jiāgōng jīngdù, biǎomiàn zhiliàng hé xiàolǜ.) Rajeev (translating to English): "We need to carefully analyze the trial run data, including machining accuracy, surface finish, and efficiency."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll compare the results with the specifications."

Li Wei (in Chinese): 如果发现问题, 我们需要及时调整机器参数或维修设备。(Rúguǒ fāxiàn wèntí, wǒmen xūyào jíshí tiáozhěng jīqì cānshù huò wéixiū shèbèi.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "If we find any issues, we need to adjust the machine parameters or repair the equipment promptly."

Lesson 12
Training Technicians and Providing Instructions
培训技术人员并提供说明

Scene 16: Initial Operator Training

Li Wei (in Chinese): 首先, 我们要确保操作人员熟悉机器的基本结构和功能。(Shǒuxiān, wǒmen yào quèbǎo cāozuòyuányuán shúxī jīqì de jīběn jiégòu hé gōngnéng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "First, we need to ensure that the operators are familiar with the basic structure and functions of the machine."

Indian Technician (in English): "We've prepared a basic training manual."

Scene 17: Safety Training

Li Wei (in Chinese): 安全是最重要的。操作人员必须严格遵守安全规程。(Ānquán shì zuì zhòngyào de. Cāozuòyuányuán bìxū yángé zūnshǒu ānquán guīchéng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Safety is paramount. Operators must strictly adhere to safety regulations."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll conduct regular safety drills." Scene 18:

Emergency Procedures

Li Wei (in Chinese): 在紧急情况下, 操作人员应该知道如何正确地停机和报警。(Zài jǐnjí qíngkuàng xià, cāozuòyuányuán yīnggāi zhīdào rúhé zhèngquè de tíngjī hé bàojǐng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "In case of emergencies, operators should know how to properly stop the machine and sound the alarm."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll create emergency response procedures."

Scene 19: Machine Maintenance

Li Wei (in Chinese): 定期的维护保养可以延长机器的使用寿命。(Dìngqī de wéihù bǎoyǎng kěyǐ yáncháng jīqì de shǐyòng shòumíng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Regular maintenance and servicing can extend the machine's lifespan."

Indian Technician (in English): "We have a dedicated maintenance team."

Li Wei (in Chinese): 你们需要定期检查润滑油、冷却液和过滤器。(Nǐmen xūyào dìngqī jiǎnchá rùnhuálù, léngquèyè hé gùlǜqì.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "You need to regularly check the lubricants, coolant, and filters."

Scene 20: Troubleshooting Common Issues

Li Wei (in Chinese): 如果机器出现故障, 首先要检查电源和空气供应。(Rúguǒ jīqì chūxiàn gùzhàng, shǒuxiān yào jiǎnchá diànyuán hé kōngqì gōngyìng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "If the machine malfunctions, first check the power supply and air supply."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll have a checklist for troubleshooting common issues."

Scene 21: Remote Support

Li Wei (in Chinese): 如果遇到复杂的问题, 我们可以提供远程技术支持。(Rúguǒ yùdào fùzá de wèntí, wǒmen kěyǐ tígōng yuǎnchóng jìshù zīchí.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "If you encounter complex issues, we can provide remote technical support."

Indian Technician (in English): "How does the remote support work?"

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们可以使用远程桌面软件来控制机器, 并进行实时诊断和故障排除。(Wǒmen kěyǐ shǐyòng yuǎnchóng zhuōmiàn ruǎnjiàn lái kòngzhì jīqì, bìng jìnxíng shíshí zhénduàn hé gùzhàng páichú.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "We can use remote desktop software to control the machine and perform real-time diagnosis and troubleshooting."

Scene 22: Identifying the Need for Replacement Parts

Li Wei (in Chinese): 根据我们的诊断, 我们需要更换主轴轴承和电机驱动器。(Gēnjù wǒmen de zhěnduàn, wǒmen xūyào gēnhuàn zhǔzhóu zhóuchéng hé diàndòng qūdòngqì.) Rajeev (translating to English): "Based on our diagnosis, we need to replace the spindle bearings and motor drive."

Indian Technician (in English): "How long will it take to get the replacement parts?" Scene 23: Ordering Replacement Parts

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我会联系供应商, 尽快下单。(Wǒ huì liánxì gōngyīngshāng, jǐnkè xiàdān.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "I'll contact the supplier and place the order as soon as possible."

Indian Technician (in English): "What's the estimated delivery time?"

Li Wei (in Chinese): 正常情况下, 大约需要一周时间。(Zhèngcháng qíngkuàng xià, dàyuē xūyào yīzhōu shíjiān.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Normally, it should take about a week." Scene 24: Preparing for the Replacement

Li Wei (in Chinese): 在更换零件之前, 我们需要制定详细的维修计划。(Zài gēnhuàn língjiàn zhīqián, wǒmen xūyào zhìdìng xiángxì de wéixiū jìhuà.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Before replacing the parts, we need to create a detailed repair plan."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll need special tools and equipment for the replacement."

Scene 25: Post-Replacement Testing

Li Wei (in Chinese): 更换零件后, 我们需要进行全面的测试, 确保机器的性能恢复正常。(Gēnhuàn língjiàn hòu, wǒmen xūyào jìnxíng quánmiàn de cèshì, quèbǎo jīqì de xìngnéng huīfù zhèngcháng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "After replacing the parts, we need to conduct comprehensive tests to ensure the machine's performance is restored to normal."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll monitor the machine's performance closely." Scene 26: Dismantling the Faulty Component

Li Wei (in Chinese): 在更换主轴轴承之前, 我们需要先拆卸旧的轴承。(Zài gēnhuàn zhǔzhóu zhóuchéng zhīqián, wǒmen xūyào xiān chāixiè jiù de zhóuchéng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Before replacing the spindle bearings, we need to dismantle the old ones."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll need special tools for this." Scene 27:

Inspecting the Faulty Component

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们需要仔细检查旧轴承的损坏情况, 以便找出故障原因。(Wǒmen xūyào zǐxì jiǎnchá jiù zhóuchéng de sǔnhuài qíngkuàng, yǐbiàn zhǎochū gùzhàng yuányīn.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "We need to carefully inspect the damage to the old bearings to identify the cause of the failure."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll send the damaged parts for analysis."

Scene 28: Installing the New Component

Li Wei (in Chinese): 安装新轴承时, 一定要注意轴承的正确方向和间隙。(Ānzhuāng xīn zhóuchéng shí, yīdìng yào zhùyì zhóuchéng de zhèngquè fāngxiàng hé jiànxì.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "When installing the new bearings, pay attention to the correct orientation and clearance."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll follow the manufacturer's instructions."

Scene 29: Final Testing and Calibration

Li Wei (in Chinese): 安装完成后, 我们需要进行一系列测试, 包括空载运行、负载运行和精度测试。(Ānzhuāng wánchéng hòu, wǒmen xūyào jìnxíng yī xièliè cèshì, bāokuò kōngzài yùnxíng, fùzài yùnxíng hé jīngdù cèshì.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "After installation, we need to conduct a series of tests, including no-load runs, load runs, and accuracy tests."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll monitor the machine's performance closely."

Li Wei (in Chinese): 如果测试结果满意, 我们可以进行最后的校准, 以确保机器的最佳性能。(Rúguǒ cèshì jiéguǒ mǎnyì, wǒmen kěyǐ jìnxíng zuìhòu de xiàozhǔn, yǐ quèbǎo jīqì de zuìjiā xìngnéng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "If the test results are satisfactory, we can perform the final calibration to ensure the machine's optimal performance."

Scene 30: Emergency Stop Procedures

Li Wei (in Chinese): 在紧急情况下, 操作人员必须立即按下紧急停止按钮。(Zài jǐnjí qíngkuàng xià, cāozuòyuányuán bìxū lìjí ànxià jǐnjí tíngzhǐ ànniǔ.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "In an emergency, operators must immediately press the emergency stop button."

Indian Technician (in English): "We've trained our operators on emergency procedures."

Scene 31: Fire Safety

Li Wei (in Chinese): 机器附近禁止吸烟, 并配备灭火器。(Jīqì fùjìn jìnzhǐ xīyān, bìng pèibèi mièhuǒqì.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "No smoking is allowed near the machine, and fire extinguishers must be provided."

Indian Technician (in English): "We have fire extinguishers placed strategically around the machine."

Scene 32: Electrical Safety

Li Wei (in Chinese): 操作人员必须穿戴绝缘防护装备, 并避免接触裸露的电线。(Cāozuòrenyuán bìxū chuāndài juéyuán fǎnghù zhuangbei, bìng bìmiàn jiēchù luǒlù de diànxìàn.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Operators must wear insulated protective gear and avoid touching exposed wires."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll conduct regular electrical safety inspections." Scene 33: Hazardous Material Handling

Li Wei (in Chinese): 在处理冷却液和其他化学物质时, 必须佩戴防护手套和眼镜。(Zài chǔlǐ léngquèyè hé qítā huàxué wùzhì shí, bìxū pèidài fǎnghù shǒutào hé yǎnjìng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "When handling coolant and other chemicals, wear protective gloves and goggles."

Indian Technician (in English): "We have proper storage and disposal procedures for hazardous materials."

Scene 34: Identifying Damage

Li Wei (in Chinese): 机器出现了异常的噪音和振动, 我们需要检查一下。(Jīqì chūxiàn le yìcháng de zàoyīn hé zhèndòng, wǒmen xūyào jiǎnchá yíxià.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "The machine is making unusual noise and vibration. We need to check it."

Indian Technician (in English): "We've noticed it too. It started a few days ago."

Scene 35: Determining the Cause of Damage

Li Wei (in Chinese): 可能是由于过载或不正确的操作导致的。(Kěnéng shì yóuyú guòzài huò bù zhèngquè de cāozuò dǎozhì de.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "It might be due to overloading or incorrect operation."

Indian Technician (in English): "We've been careful to follow the operating procedures."

Scene 36: Assessing the Extent of Damage

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们需要拆卸部分组件, 才能准确评估损坏程度。(Wǒmen xūyào chāixiè bùfèn zǔjiàn, cáinéng zhǔnquè pínggū sǔnhuài chéngdù.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "We need to disassemble some components to accurately assess the extent of the damage."

Indian Technician (in English): "We hope it's not too serious."

Scene 37: Discussing Responsibility for Damage

Li Wei (in Chinese): 如果是由于机器本身的质量问题导致的损坏, 我们将会负责维修或更换。(Rúguǒ shì yóuyú jīqì běnshēn de zhìliàng wèntí dǎozhì de sǔnhuài, wǒmen jiānghuì fùzé wéixiū huò gēnhuàn.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "If the damage is due to a quality issue with the machine itself, we will take

responsibility for repair or replacement."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll need to investigate further to determine the cause." Scene 38: Resolving the Dispute

Li Wei (in Chinese): 为了避免争议，我们可以邀请第三方专家进行鉴定。(Wèile bìmiǎn zhēngyì, wǒmen kěyǐ yāoqǐng dīsānfāng zhuānjiā jìnxíng jiàndìng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "To avoid disputes, we can invite a third-party expert to conduct an assessment."

Indian Technician (in English): "That sounds reasonable." Scene 39:

Analyzing the Root Cause of Quality Issues

Li Wei (in Chinese): 考虑到机器的产地是中国，我们可能需要更深入地分析问题。

(Kǎolùdào jīqì de chāndì shì Zhōngguó, wǒmen kěnéng xūyào gēn shēnrù de fēnxī wèntí.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "Considering the machine's origin in China, we might need to delve deeper into the problem."

Indian Technician (in English): "Could it be a manufacturing defect or a design flaw?"

Scene 40: Communicating with the Chinese Supplier

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我会直接联系供应商，并要求他们提供技术支持和解决方案。(Wǒ huì zhíjiē liánxi gōngyīngshāng, bìng yāoqiú tāmen tígōng jìshù zīchí hé jiějué fāng'àn.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "I'll directly contact the supplier and request their technical support and solutions."

Indian Technician (in English): "Can they send a technical expert to inspect the machine?"

Scene 41: Implementing Corrective Actions

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们可能需要升级机器的控制系统或更换关键部件。(Wǒmen kěnéng xūyào shēngjí jīqì de kòngzhì xìtǒng huò gēnhuàn guānjiàn bùjiàn.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "We might need to upgrade the machine's control system or replace critical components."

Indian Technician (in English): "How long will these modifications take?" Scene 42: Quality

Assurance and Monitoring

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们需要建立严格的质量监控体系，定期检查机器的性能和产品质量。(Wǒmen xūyào jiànlì yángé de zhìliàng jiānkòng xìtǐ, dīngqī jiǎnchá jīqì de xìngnéng hé chǎnpǐn zhìliàng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "We need to establish a strict quality monitoring system to regularly check the machine's performance and product quality."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll implement a regular maintenance schedule." Scene 43: Future

Preventive Measures

Li Wei (in Chinese): 为了避免类似问题的再次发生，我们需要加强与供应商的沟通，并对机器进行定期维护和升级。(Wèile bìmiǎn lèisì wèntí de zàicì fāshēng, wǒmen xūyào jiāqiáng yǔ gōngyīngshāng de gōutōng, bìng duì jīqì jìnxíng dīngqī wéihù hé shēngjí.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "To prevent similar issues from happening again, we need to strengthen communication with the supplier and perform regular maintenance and upgrades on the machine."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll establish a long-term maintenance plan." Scene 44:

Negotiating with the Supplier

Li Wei (in Chinese): 这些备件的价格似乎有点高，我们可以争取更好的折扣吗？(Zhèxiē bèijiàn de jiàgé sìhū yǒudiǎn gāo, wǒmen kěyǐ zhēngqǔ gèng hǎo de zhékòu ma?)

Rajeev (translating to English): "These spare parts seem a bit expensive. Can we negotiate a better discount?"

Supplier's Representative (in English): "We can offer a 10% discount on bulk orders."

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们可以考虑增加订单量，但需要更大幅度的折扣。(Wǒmen kěyǐ kǎolǜ zēngjiā dìngdàn liàng, dàn xūyào gèng dà fúdu de zhékòu.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "We can consider increasing the order quantity, but we need a significant discount."

Scene 45: Exploring Alternative Suppliers

Li Wei (in Chinese): 如果供应商无法提供满意的价格, 我们可以考虑寻找其他供应商。(Rúguǒ gōngyīngshāng wúfǎ tígōng mǎnyì de jiàgé, wǒmen kěyǐ kǎolǔ xúnzhǎo qítā gōngyīngshāng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "If the supplier cannot offer a satisfactory price, we can consider finding alternative suppliers."

Indian Technician (in English): "How long would it take to find a new supplier and get the parts?" Scene 46: Cost-Cutting Measures

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们可以通过优化库存管理和降低物流成本来降低整体成本。(Wǒmen kěyǐ tōngguò yōuhuà kùcún guǎnlǐ hé jiàngdī wùliú chéngběn lái jiàngdī zǒngtǐ chéngběn.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "We can reduce overall costs by optimizing inventory management and lowering logistics costs."

Indian Technician (in English): "We can also explore opportunities for bulk purchasing and long-term contracts."

Scene 47: Identifying Dissatisfaction with the Repair

Indian Technician (in English): The machine is still not functioning properly after the repair. Rajeev (translating to English): "The machine is still not working correctly after the repair."

Li Wei (in Chinese): 非常抱歉, 我们会尽快找出问题并解决。(Fēicháng bàoqiàn, wǒmen huì jǐnkè zhǎochū wèntí bìng jiějué.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "I apologize. We'll find the problem and fix it as soon as possible."

Scene 48: Analyzing the Repair Process

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们需要回顾维修过程, 找出可能出错的地方。(Wǒmen xūyào hòugù wéixiū guòchéng, zhǎochū kěnéng chūcuò de dìfang.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "We need to review the repair process to identify potential mistakes."

Indian Technician (in English): "The machine was not calibrated properly after the repair."

Scene 49: Implementing Corrective Actions

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们会重新校准机器, 并进行更全面的测试。(Wǒmen huì chóngxīn xiàozhǔn jīqì, bìng jìnxíng gèng quánmiàn de cèshì.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "We'll recalibrate the machine and conduct more comprehensive tests."

Indian Technician (in English): "We hope it will be fixed this time." Scene 50:

Communicating with the Chinese Supplier

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我会联系供应商, 并要求他们提供技术支持和解决方案。(Wǒ huì liánxì gōngyīngshāng, bìng yāoqiú tāmen tígōng jìshù zhīchí hé jiějué fāng'àn.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "I'll contact the supplier and request their technical support and solutions."

Indian Technician (in English): "Can they send a technical expert to inspect the machine?"

Scene 51: Improving Future Maintenance

Li Wei (in Chinese): 我们需要加强维修人员的培训, 并建立更完善的维修记录系统。(Wǒmen xūyào jiāqiáng wéixiū rényuán de péixùn, bìng jiànlì gèng wánshàn de wéixiū jìlù xìtǒng.)

Rajeev (translating to English): "We need to strengthen the training of maintenance personnel and establish a more comprehensive maintenance record system."

Indian Technician (in English): "We'll implement a regular maintenance schedule and document all repairs."

Lesson 13

Installation and Maintenance Procedures

机器的安装和维护程序

A detailed description of Installation and Maintenance Procedures for machines, focusing on step-by-step guides for common machine installations, maintenance tasks, and troubleshooting procedures, alongside relevant terminology in Chinese, Pinyin, and English.

Machine Installation Procedures (机器安装步骤)

Step 1: Pre-Installation Preparation 步骤 1: 安装前准备

检查设备和工具 (Jiǎnchá shèbèi hé gōngjù) – Inspect equipment and tools

确保所有必需工具都已准备好。Ensure all required tools are available.

检查机器组件和包装。Verify the machine components and packaging.

确保安装区域没有障碍物。Ensure the installation area is clear of obstructions.

Check the power supply, safety equipment, and other necessary utilities.

检查电源、安全设备和其他必要的设施。

步骤 2: 拆箱和定位 Step 2: Unboxing and Positioning

拆开包装 (Chāi kāi bāozhuāng) – Unbox the machine

Remove the machine and parts from packaging carefully to avoid damage. 小心地从包装中取出机器和零件，以免损坏

定位机器 (Dìngwèi jīqì) – Position the machine

Place the machine at the intended location, ensuring it's level and stable. 将机器放置在预定位置，确保其水平且稳定。

步骤 3: 机械设置

Step 3: Mechanical Setup

安装基础部件 (Ānzhūāng jīchǔ bùjiàn) – Install basic components

Attach components like legs, support beams, etc.

Ensure all mechanical parts fit securely and are aligned correctly. 安装支腿、支撑梁等部件。

确保所有机械部件牢固安装并正确对齐。

步骤 4: 电气连接

Step 4: Electrical Connections

连接电源 (Liánjiē diànyuán) – Connect the power supply

Ensure the machine is connected to the correct power source. 确保机器连接到正确的电源。

接地线 (Jiē dì xiàn) – Grounding wire

Attach grounding wires to avoid electrical hazards. 连接接地线以避免电气危险。

步骤 5: 校准和测试

Step 5: Calibration and Testing

调试机器 (Tiáoshì jīqì) – Calibrate the machine

Follow the manufacturer's instructions to calibrate the machine. 按照制造商的说明校准机器。

进行初步测试以确保所有功能均正常运行。

Perform initial testing to ensure all functions are operational.

启动测试 (Qǐdòng cèshì) – Initial test run

Step 6: Safety Check 第 6 步: 安全检查

检查安全设施 (Jiǎnchá ānquán shèshī) – Check safety equipment

Verify the machine's emergency stop and safety features are working. 确认机器的紧急停止和安全功能正常运作。

检查保护装置 (Jiǎnchá bǎohù zhuāngzhì) – Check protective devices

Machine Maintenance Procedures (机器维护步骤)

Step 1: Regular Cleaning (定期清洁)

清洁机器 (Qīngjié jīqì) – Clean the machine

Regularly remove dust, debris, and residues from machine surfaces. 定期清除机器表面的灰尘、碎屑和残留物。

使用适当的清洁材料，如刷子或鼓风机。

Use appropriate cleaning materials such as brushes or air blowers.

清洁滤网 (Qīngjié lǜwǎng) – Clean the filters

Step 2: Lubrication (润滑)

润滑系统 (Rùnhuá xìtǒng) – Lubrication system

Check oil levels and apply lubrication to moving parts to prevent friction. 检查油位并对运动部件进行润滑以防止摩擦。

确保所有轴承、齿轮和皮带都得到适当润滑

Ensure that all bearings, gears, and belts are properly lubricated.

检查油位 (Jiǎnchá yóu wèi) – Check oil level

Step 3: Component Inspection (部件检查)

检查零件 (Jiǎnchá língjiàn) – Inspect parts

Regularly inspect belts, gears, and electrical components for wear and tear. 定期检查皮带、齿轮和电气元件的磨损情况。

更换损坏部件 (Gēnghuàn sǔnhuài bùjiàn) – Replace damaged components

Replace worn-out or damaged parts immediately to avoid breakdowns. 立即更换磨损或损坏的部件，以避免故障。

Step 4: Electrical and Mechanical System Check (电气和机械系统检查)

检查电气系统 (Jiǎnchá diànlì xìtǒng) – Inspect electrical system

Check wiring, voltage, and fuses. 检查接线、电压和保险丝。

检查机械部件 (Jiǎnchá jīxiè bùjiàn) – Inspect mechanical parts

Examine mechanical parts like shafts, pulleys, and motors for signs of damage or wear. 检查轴、滑轮和电机等机械部件是否有损坏或磨损的迹象。

Step 5: Calibration (重新调试)

重新调试 (Chóngxīn tiáoshì) – Recalibrate

Perform recalibration of the machine after long-term use or following major repairs. 长期使用或大修后，对机器进行重新校准。

Troubleshooting Procedures (故障排除步骤)

Step 1: Identifying the Problem (识别问题)

检查故障现象 (Jiǎnchá gùzhàng xiànxàng) – Check the malfunction symptoms

Examine machine behavior for abnormal sounds, vibrations, or failure to operate. 检查机器行为是否有异常声音、振动或运行故障。

检查显示器/警报 (Jiǎnchá xiǎnshìqì / jǐngbào) – Check the display/alerts

Look for any warnings or error messages. 查找任何警告或错误消息。

Step 2: Diagnosing Common Issues (诊断常见问题)

电气故障 (Diànlì gùzhàng) – Electrical malfunction

Check if the machine is powered properly. 检查机器是否正常通电

检查电源和电缆 (Jiǎnchá diànyuán hé diànlǎn) – Check the power supply and cables

机械故障 (Jīxiè gùzhàng) – Mechanical malfunction

Inspect belts, motors, and gears for any blockages or misalignments. 检查皮带、电机和齿轮是否有任何堵塞或错位

检查传动系统 (Jiǎnchá chuándòng xìtǒng) – Check the transmission system

Step 3: Addressing the Issue (解决问题)

更换电气部件 (Gēnghuàn diànlì bùjiàn) – Replace electrical components

If fuses, wires, or circuit breakers are faulty, replace them. 如果保险丝、电线或断路器有故障，请更换它们。

调整或修复机械部件 (Tiáozhěng huò xiūfù jīxiè bùjiàn) – Adjust or repair mechanical parts

Realign parts, replace worn belts, or lubricate moving parts to restore functionality. 重新调整零件、更换磨损的皮带或润滑运动部件以恢复功能。

Step 4: Post-Troubleshooting Test (故障修复后测试)

修复后测试 (Xiūfù hòu cèshì) – Post-repair test

After repairing, perform an operational test to verify that the machine works as expected. 修理后，进行操作测试以验证机器是否按预期工作。

确保所有功能正常 (Quèbǎo suǒyǒu gōngnéng zhèngcháng) – Ensure all functions are normal

Relevant Terminology for Installation and Maintenance. 安装及维护相关术语

安装手册 (Ānzhūāng shǒucè) – Installation manual

操作手册 (Cāozuò shǒucè) – Operating manual

维修手册 (Wéixiū shǒucè) – Maintenance manual

部件 (Bùjiàn) – Component

电气连接 (Diànlì liánjiē) – Electrical connection

调节 (Tiáojié) – Adjust

检测 (Jiǎncè) – Test

维修记录 (Wéixiū jìlù) – Maintenance records

设备故障 (Shèbèi gùzhàng) – Equipment failure

Machine installation and maintenance require a systematic approach, with attention to detail and safety. Interpreters must ensure that instructions are accurately communicated in both languages, especially technical terms that relate to installation, maintenance, and troubleshooting. Clear communication will help both Chinese engineers and local Indian workers avoid errors and ensure the equipment is properly installed, maintained, and repaired when necessary.

机器安装和维护需要系统的方法，并注重细节和安全。口译员必须确保用两种语言准确传达指令，尤其是与安装、维护和故障排除相关的技术术语。清晰的沟通将有助于中国工程师和当地印度工人避免错误，并确保设备在必要时得到正确安装、维护和维修。

Lesson 14
PART III: TECHNICAL VOCABULARY
技术词汇

General Industry Terms

工业(gōng yè) – Industry;
制造(zhì zào) – Manufacturing;
工厂(gōng chǎng) – Factory;
生产(shēng chǎn) – Production;
技术(jì shù) – Technology;
自动化(zì dòng huà) – Automation;
设备(shè bèi) – Equipment;
操作(cāo zuò) – Operation;
工艺(gōng yì) – Process;
质量(zhì liàng) – Quality;
原材料(yuán cái liào) – Raw material;
成品(chéng pǐn) – Finished product;
半成品(bàn chéng pǐn) – Semi-finished product;
供应链(gōng yìng liàn) – Supply chain;
生产线(shēng chǎn xiàn) – Production line
工程(gōng chéng) – Engineering
流程(liú chéng) – Workflow
工时(gōng shí) – Working hours
项目(xiàng mù) – Project
承包商(chéng bāo shāng) – Contractor
分包商(fēn bāo shāng) – Subcontractor
管道(guǎn dào) – Pipeline
计划(jì huà) – Plan
审核(shěn hé) – Review
提交(tí jiāo) – Submission
Tools and Machines;
机床(jī chuáng) Machine tool;
铸造机(zhù zào jī) Casting machine;
注塑机(zhù sù jī) Injection molding machine;
焊机(hàn jī) Welding machine ;
传送带(chuán sòng dài) Conveyor belt;
起重机(qǐ zhòng jī) Crane;
叉车(chā chē) Forklift ;
钻机(zuàn jī) Drilling machine ;
机器人(jī qì rén) – Robot ;
液压机(yè yā jī) – Hydraulic press

Materials;

钢(gāng) – Steel ;
铝(lǚ) – Aluminum;
塑料(sù liào) – Plastic;
合金(hé jīn) – Alloy ;
橡胶(xiàng jiāo) – Rubber;
木材(mù cái) – Timber
纤维(xiān wéi) – Fiber;
玻璃(bō lí) – Glass;
陶瓷(táo cí) – Ceramic;
复合材料(fù hé cái liào) – Composite material
铜(tóng) – Copper
锌(xīn) – Zinc
镍(niè) – Nickel
钛(tài) – Titanium
铅(qiān) – Lead

石墨(shí mò) - Graphite
石英(shí yīng) - Quartz
碳纤维(tàn xiān wéi) - Carbon fiber
聚酯(jù zhǐ) - Polyester
不锈钢(bù xiù gāng) - Stainless steel

Material Science

聚氨酯(jù ān zhǐ) - Polyurethane
热塑性材料(rè sù xìng cái liào) - Thermoplastic material
热固性材料(rè gù xìng cái liào) - Thermoset material
高分子(gāo fēn zǐ) - Polymer
石膏(shí gāo) - Gypsum
混凝土(hùn níng tǔ) - Concrete
玻璃钢(bō lí gāng) - Fiberglass
陶土(táo tǔ) - Clay
塑料板(sù liào bǎn) - Plastic sheet
防火材料(fáng huǒ cái liào) - Fireproof material

Processes;

焊接(hàn jiē) - Welding;
切割(qiē gē) - Cutting;
铸造(zhù zào) - Casting;
轧制(zhà zhì) - Rolling;
锻造(duàn zào) - Forging ;
冲压(chōng yā) - Stamping;
机加工(jī jiā gōng) - Machining;
抛光(pāo guāng) - Polishing;
表面处理(biǎo miàn chǔ lǐ) - Surface treatment;
热处理(rè chǔ lǐ) - Heat treatment
电镀(diàn dù) - Electroplating
粉末冶金(fěn mò yě jīn) - Powder metallurgy
熔炼(róng liàn) - Smelting
退火(tuì huǒ) - Annealing
淬火(cuì huǒ) - Quenching
冷却(lěng què) - Cooling
抗腐蚀处理(kàng fǔ shí chǔ lǐ) - Anti-corrosion treatment
表面硬化(biǎo miàn yìng huà) - Surface hardening
铣床加工(xǐ chuáng jiā gōng) - Milling machine processing
自动组装(zì dòng zǔ zhuāng) - Automated assembly

Measurements and Metrics

尺寸(chǐ cùn) - Dimension
重量(zhòng liàng) - Weight
厚度(hòu dù) - Thickness
长度(cháng dù) - Length
宽度(kuān dù) - Width
直径(zhí jìng) - Diameter ;
温度(wēn dù) - Temperature;
压力(yā lì) - Pressure;
扭矩(niǔ jǔ) - Torque;
强度(qiáng dù) - Strength

Safety and Standards;

安全(ān quán) - Safety;
危险(wēi xiǎn) - Hazard;
防护(fáng hù) - Protection
防火(fáng huǒ) - Fireproof;
防水(fáng shuǐ) - Waterproof;
标准(biāo zhǔn) - Standard;
规范(guī fàn) - Specification ;
认证(rèn zhèng) - Certification;

合规(hé guī) – Compliance;
操作手册(cāo zuò shǒu cè) - Operating manual

Business and Logistics

订单(dìng dān) - Order
合同(hé tóng) - Contract
运输(yùn shū) - Transportation
仓库(cāng kù) – Warehouse
库存(kù cún) - Inventory
成本(chéng běn) - Cost
销售(xiāo shòu) - Sales
客户(kè hù) - Client
报价(bào jià) - Quotation
采购(cǎi gòu) - Procurement

Advanced Manufacturing Terms

精密加工(jīng mì jiā gōng) - Precision machining
数控(shù kòng) - Numerical control (CNC)
增材制造(zēng cái zhì zào) - Additive manufacturing (3D printing)
车削(chē xuē) - Turning
铣削(xǐ xiāo) - Milling
激光切割(jī guāng qiē gē) - Laser cutting
电火花加工(diàn huǒ huā jiā gōng) - Electrical discharge machining (EDM)
水切割(shuǐ qiē gē) - Waterjet cutting
冲孔(chōng kǒng) – Punching
模具(mó jù) – Mold

Industrial Technology

人工智能(rén gōng zhì néng) - Artificial intelligence (AI)
物联网(wù lián wǎng) - Internet of Things (IoT)
云计算(yún jì suàn) - Cloud computing
大数据(dà shù jù) - Big data
数据分析(shù jù fēn xī) - Data analysis
智能工厂(zhì néng gōng chǎng) - Smart factory
数字化(shù zì huà) - Digitalization
工业机器人(gōng yè jī qì rén) - Industrial robot
虚拟现实(xū nǐ xiàn shí) - Virtual reality (VR)
远程监控(yuǎn chéng jiān kòng) - Remote monitoring

Quality and inspection

无损检测(wú sǔn jiǎn cè) - Non-destructive testing (NDT)
超声波检测(chāo shēng bō jiǎn cè) - Ultrasonic testing
磁粉检测(cí fěn jiǎn cè) - Magnetic particle testing
尺寸测量(chǐ cùn cè liáng) - Dimensional measurement
校准(jiào zhǔn) – Calibration
公差(gōng chā) – Tolerance
缺陷(quē xiàn) - Defect
检验报告(jiǎn yàn bào gào) - Inspection report
质量控制(zhì liàng kòng zhì) - Quality control (QC)
质量保证(zhì liàng bǎo zhèng) - Quality assurance (QA)

Energy and Environment

能源(néng yuán) – Energy
电力(diàn lì) - Electricity
风能(fēng néng) - Wind energy
太阳能(tài yáng néng) - Solar energy
生物能(shēng wù néng) - Biomass energy
废气(fèi qì) - Emissions
噪声(zào shēng) - Noise
减排(jiǎn pái) - Emission reduction
循环利用(xún huán lì yòng) - Recycling

环保设备(huán bǎo shè bèi) - Environmental protection equipment

Logistics and Supply Chain

物流(wù liú) - Logistics

运输方式(yùn shū fāng shì) - Mode of transportation

集装箱(jí zhuāng xiāng) - Container

装卸(zhuāng xiè) - Loading and unloading

仓储(cāng chǔ) - Warehousing

配送(pèi sòng) - Distribution

海运(hǎi yùn) - Sea freight

空运(kōng yùn) - Air freight

货运代理(huò yùn dài lǐ) - Freight forwarding

关税(guān shuì) - Customs duty

Maintenance and Troubleshooting

故障(gù zhàng) - Failure

维修(wéi xiū) - Maintenance

检修(jiǎn xiū) - Overhaul

保养(bǎo yǎng) - Servicing

更换(gēng huàn) - Replacement

检测仪(jiǎn cè yí) - Tester

备件(bèi jiàn) - Spare part

润滑油(rùn huá yóu) - Lubricant

系统升级(xì tǒng shēng jí) - System upgrade

故障诊断(gù zhàng zhěn duàn) - Fault diagnosis

Workplace Roles and Positions

工程师(gōng chéng shī) - Engineer

技师(jì shī) - Technician

操作员(cāo zuò yuán) - Operator

检验员(jiǎn yàn yuán) - Inspector

管理员(guǎn lǐ yuán) - Supervisor

项目经理(xiàng mù jīng lǐ) - Project manager

生产主管(shēng chǎn zhǔ guǎn) - Production manager

设计师(shè jì shī) - Designer

工人(gōng rén) - Worker

客户经理(kè hù jīng lǐ) - Client manager

Machinery Components

电机(diàn jī) - Electric motor

齿轮(chǐ lún) - Gear

轴承(zhóu chéng) - Bearing

皮带(pí dài) - Belt

链条(liàn tiáo) - Chain

阀门(fá mén) - Valve

液压缸(yè yā gāng) - Hydraulic cylinder

活塞(huó sāi) - Piston

螺栓(luó shuān) - Bolt

螺母(luó mǔ) - Nut

密封件(mì fēng jiàn) - Seal

垫片(diàn piàn) - Gasket

轴(zhóu) - Shaft

冷却器(lěng què qì) - Cooler

加热器(jiā rè qì) - Heater

Electrical and Electronics

电路(diàn lù) - Circuit

开关(kāi guān) - Switch

控制器(kòng zhì qì) - Controller

电源(diàn yuán) - Power supply

电缆(diàn lǎn) - Cable
插头(chā tóu) - Plug
接口(jiē kǒu) - Interface
传感器(chuán gǎn qì) - Sensor
电阻(diàn zǔ) - Resistor
电容器(diàn róng qì) - Capacitor
继电器(jì diàn qì) - Relay
电压表(diàn yā biǎo) - Voltmeter
变频器(biàn pín qì) - Frequency converter
印刷电路板(yìn shuā diàn lù bǎn) - PCB
光纤(guāng xiān) - Optical fiber

Safety and Emergency

急停按钮(jí tíng àn niǔ) - Emergency stop button
防护罩(fǎng hù zhào) - Protective cover
消防设备(xiāo fǎng shè bèi) - Firefighting equipment
防毒面具(fáng dú miàn jù) - Gas mask
安全帽(ān quán mào) - Safety helmet
安全绳(ān quán shéng) - Safety rope
紧急疏散(jǐn jí shū sǎn) - Emergency evacuation
报警器(bào jǐng qì) - Alarm
事故报告(shì gù bào gào) - Accident report
漏电保护(lòu diàn bǎo hù) - Leakage protection

Environmental and Sustainability

可持续发展(kě chí xù fā zhǎn) - Sustainable development
节能(jié néng) - Energy saving
减排技术(jiǎn pái jì shù) - Emission reduction technology
污染控制(wū rǎn kòng zhì) - Pollution control
环境评估(huán jìng píng gū) - Environmental assessment
垃圾分类(lā jī fēn lèi) - Waste sorting
废料回收(fèi liào huí shōu) - Waste recycling
可再生能源(kě zài shēng néng yuán) - Renewable energy
水处理(shuǐ chǔ lǐ) - Water treatment
空气净化(kōng qì jìng huà) - Air purification

Advanced Technology Terms

传感网络(chuán gǎn wǎng luò) - Sensor network
增强现实(zēng qiáng xiàn shí) - Augmented reality (AR)
机器学习(jī qì xué xí) - Machine learning
深度学习(shēn dù xué xí) - Deep learning
智能算法(zhì néng suàn fǎ) - Smart algorithm
区块链(qū kuài liàn) - Blockchain
自动驾驶(zì dòng jià shǐ) - Autonomous driving
人机交互(rén jī jiāo hù) - Human-computer interaction
数据采集(shù jù cǎi jí) - Data acquisition
数字孪生(shù zì luán shēng) - Digital twin

Project Management

任务分配(rèn wù fēn pèi) - Task allocation
工期(gōng qī) - Project timeline
成本预算(chéng běn yù suàn) - Cost budget
资源管理(zī yuán guǎn lǐ) - Resource management
风险评估(fēng xiǎn píng gū) - Risk assessment
会议纪要(huì yì jì yào) - Meeting minutes
项目评审(xiàng mù píng shěn) - Project review
关键路径(guān jiàn lù jìng) - Critical path
工程验收(gōng chéng yàn shōu) - Project acceptance

变更管理(biàn gēng guǎn lǐ) - Change management

Lesson 15

Mechanical Terms: Understanding Gears, Bearings, Motors, Drives, and Hydraulic Systems

机械术语：了解齿轮、轴承、电机、驱动器和液压系统

English	Chinese (汉字)	Pinyin
Gear	齿轮	Chǐlún
Spur Gear	正齿轮	Zhèng chǐlún
Helical Gear	斜齿轮	Xié chǐlún
Bevel Gear	锥齿轮	Zhuī chǐlún
Worm Gear	蜗轮	Wōlún
Rack and Pinion	齿条与小齿轮	Chǐtiáo yǔ xiǎo chǐlún
Bearing	轴承	Zhóuchéng
Ball Bearing	滚珠轴承	Gǔnzhū zhóuchéng
Roller Bearing	滚柱轴承	Gǔnzhù zhóuchéng
Motor	电动机	Diàndòngjī
Drive System	传动系统	Chuándòng xìtǒng
Hydraulic System	液压系统	Yèyā xìtǒng
Hydraulic Pressure	液压压力	Yèyā yālì
Cylinder	气缸	Qìgāng
Piston	活塞	Huósāi
Valve	阀门	Fámén
Pump	泵	Bèng
Hydraulic Fluid	液压油	Yèyā yóu
Shaft	轴	Zhóu
Coupling	联轴器	Liánzhóuqì
Pulley	滑轮	Huálún
Belt	皮带	Pídài
Chain	链条	Liàntiáo
Bolt	螺栓	Luóshuān
Nut	螺母	Luómǔ
Screw	螺丝	Luósī
Washer	垫圈	Diànquān
Lubrication	润滑	Rùnhuá
Friction	摩擦	Mócā
Torque	扭矩	Niǔjǔ

Electrical and Electronics Vocabulary

Circuit	电路	Diànlù
Open Circuit	开路	Kāilù
Short Circuit	短路	Duǎnlù
Wiring	接线	Jiēxiàn
Conductor	导体	Dǎotǐ
Insulator	绝缘体	Juéyuántǐ
Voltage	电压	Diànyā
Current	电流	Diànliú
Resistance	电阻	Diànzǔ
Power Supply	电源	Diànyuán
Transformer	变压器	Biànyāqì
Fuse	保险丝	Bǎoxiǎnsī
Relay	继电器	Jìdiànqì
Circuit Breaker	断路器	Duànlùqì
Sensor	传感器	Chuángǎnqì
Controller	控制器	Kòngzhìqì
Capacitor	电容器	Diànróngqì
Resistor	电阻器	Diànzǔqì
Inductor	电感器	Diàngǎnqì
Alternating Current (AC)	交流电	Jiāoliúdiàn
Direct Current (DC)	直流电	Zhíliúdiàn
Power	功率	Gōnglǜ

Frequency	频率	Pínlǜ
Phase	相位	Xiàngwèi
Switch	开关	Kāiguān
Connector	接头	Jiētóu
Grounding	接地	Jiēdì
Load	负载	Fùzǎi
Overload	过载	Guòzǎi

Maintenance and Repair Jargon

Maintenance	维护	Wéihù
Repair	修理	Xiūlǐ
Diagnostics	诊断	Zhěnduàn
Troubleshooting	故障排除	Gùzhàng páichú
Fault	故障	Gùzhàng
Failure	失效	Shīxiào
Inspection	检查	Jiǎnchá
Rectification	整改	Zhěnggǎi
Calibration	校准	Jiàozhǔn
Alignment	调整	Tiáozhěng
Replacement	更换	Gēnghuàn
Wear and Tear	磨损	Mósǔn
Preventive Maintenance	预防性维护	Yùfángxìng wéihù
Breakdown Maintenance	故障维修	Gùzhàng wéixiū
Spare Parts	备件	Bèijiàn
Downtime	停机时间	Tíngjī shíjiān
Restart	重启	Chóngqǐ
Overhaul	大修	Dàxiū
Adjustment	调节	Tiáojié
Lubrication	润滑	Rùnhuá
Testing	测试	Cèshì
Service Life	使用寿命	Shǐyòng shòumìng
Defect	缺陷	Quēxiàn
Safety Check	安全检查	Ānquán jiǎnchá
Shutdown	停机	Tíngjī
Operational Efficiency	运行效率	Yùnxíng xiàolǜ

Additional Mechanical Terms

Gearbox	齿轮箱	Chǐlúnxiāng
Camshaft	凸轮轴	Túlúnzhóu
Crankshaft	曲轴	Qūzhóu
Flywheel	飞轮	Fēilún
Clutch	离合器	Líhéqì
Brake	制动器	Zhìdòngqì
Brake Pad	刹车片	Shāchēpiàn
Spring	弹簧	Tánhuáng
Tensioner	张紧器	Zhāngjǐnqì
Seal	密封件	Mìfēngjiàn
Gasket	垫片	Diànpiàn
Housing	外壳	Wàiké
Bolt Torque	螺栓扭矩	Luóshuān niǔjǔ
Cooling System	冷却系统	Lěngquè xítǒng
Radiator	散热器	Sànrèqì
Fan Belt	风扇皮带	Fēngshàn pídài
Exhaust Pipe	排气管	Páiqìguǎn
Compressor	压缩机	Yāsuōjī
Turbocharger	涡轮增压器	Wōlún zēngyāqì
Gear Ratio	齿轮比	Chǐlúnbǐ
Load Capacity	承载能力	Chéngzài nénglì
Lubricant	润滑剂	Rùnhuájì
Metal Fatigue	金属疲劳	Jīnshǔ pí láo

Vibration	振动	Zhèndòng
Shock Absorber	减震器	Jiǎnzhènqì
Bearing Clearance	轴承间隙	Zhóuchéng jiànxi
Alignment Tool	对准工具	Duìzhǔn gōngjù
Ground Wire	地线	Dìxiàn
Neutral Wire	零线	Língxiàn
Live Wire	火线	Huǒxiàn
Voltage Regulator	稳压器	Wěnyāqì
Inverter	逆变器	Nìbiànqì
Rectifier	整流器	Zhěngliúqì
Diode	二极管	Èrjíguǎn
Transistor	晶体管	Jīngtǐguǎn
Semiconductor	半导体	Bàndǎotǐ
Relay Switch	继电器	Jìdiàn kāiguān
Overcurrent Protection	过流保护	Guòliú bǎohù
Overvoltage Protection	过压保护	Guòyā bǎohù
Insulation Resistance	绝缘电阻	Juéyuán diànzǔ
Surge Protector	防浪涌保护器	Fáng làngyǒng bǎohùqì
Frequency Converter	变频器	Biànpínqì
Power Cable	电源线	Diànyuánxìàn
Wiring Harness	线束	Xiànshù
Sensor Calibration	传感器校准	Chuángǎnqì jiàozhǔn
Signal Interference	信号干扰	Xìnhào gānrǎo
Power Output	功率输出	Gōnglǜ shūchū
Battery Charger	电池充电器	Diànchí chōngdiànqì
Load Balancing	负载平衡	Fùzǎi pínghéng
High Voltage	高电压	Gāo diànyā
Low Voltage	低电压	Dī diànyā
Power Surge	电涌	Diànyǒng
Breakdown	故障	Gùzhàng
Downtime Analysis	停机分析	Tíngjī fēnxī
Performance Test	性能测试	Xìngnéng cèshì
Preventive Inspection	预防性检查	Yùfángxìng jiǎnchá
Component Replacement	部件更换	Bùjiàn gēnghuàn
Wear Analysis	磨损分析	Mósun fēnxī
Predictive Maintenance	预测性维护	Yùcèxìng wéihù
Alignment Check	校准检查	Jiàozhǔn jiǎnchá
System Reset	系统重置	Xìtǒng chóngzhì
Heat Dissipation	散热	Sǎnrè
Friction Damage	摩擦损坏	Mócā sǔnhuài
Clearance Adjustment	间隙调整	Jiànxi tiáozhěng
Corrosion Check	腐蚀检查	Fǔshí jiǎnchá
Noise Analysis	噪音分析	Zàoyīn fēnxī
Thermal Inspection	热力检查	Rèlì jiǎnchá
Routine Check	常规检查	Chángguī jiǎnchá
Reconditioning	翻新	Fānxīn
Failure Prediction	故障预测	Gùzhàng yùcè
Emergency Repair	紧急维修	Jǐnjí wéixiū
Lubrication Schedule	润滑计划	Rùnhuá jìhuà

Lesson 16

Industrial safety terminology, key safety measures, and protocols

工业安全术语、关键安全措施和协议

1. General Safety Terms

安全 (Ānquán) – Safety

安全措施 (Ānquán cuòshī) – Safety measures

安全规范 (Ānquán guīfàn) – Safety regulations

安全检查 (Ānquán jiǎnchá) – Safety inspection

紧急停机 (Jǐnjí tíngjī) – Emergency stop

危险区域 (Wéixiǎn qūyù) – Hazardous area

个人防护装备 (Gèrén fānghù zhuāngbèi) – Personal protective equipment (PPE)

2. Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)

头盔 (Tóukuī) – Helmet

耳罩 (Ěr zhào) – Ear protection

安全眼镜 (Ānquán yǎnjìng) – Safety goggles

防护手套 (Fánghù shǒutào) – Protective gloves

工作鞋 (Gōngzuò xié) – Safety shoes

工作服 (Gōngzuò fú) – Work suit

面罩 (Miàn zhào) – Face shield

3. Safety Signs and Warnings

危险 (Wéixiǎn) – Danger

注意 (Zhùyì) – Caution

高温 (Gāo wēn) – High temperature

化学品 (Huàxué pǐn) – Chemicals

电击危险 (Diànjī wéixiǎn) – Electrical shock hazard

紧急出口 (Jǐnjí chūkǒu) – Emergency exit

消防设施 (Xiāofáng shèshī) – Fire safety equipment

4. Key Safety Measures and Protocols

Emergency Procedures

紧急情况 (Jǐnjí qíngkuàng) – Emergency situation

火灾 (Huǒzāi) – Fire

泄漏 (Xièlòu) – Leakage (gas/liquid)

急救 (Jíjiù) – First aid

撤离 (Chèlí) – Evacuation

紧急疏散通道 (Jǐnjí shūsàn tōngdào) – Emergency evacuation route

Lock-out/Tag-out (LOTO)

锁定 (Suǒdìng) – Lockout

挂牌 (Guàpái) – Tagout

设备停机 (Shèbèi tíngjī) – Equipment shutdown

电源断开 (Diànyuán duàn kāi) – Disconnect power source

Machine Operation and Safety

机器启动 (Jīqì qǐdòng) – Machine start-up

机器停止 (Jīqì tíngzhǐ) – Machine shut-down

安全操作 (Ānquán cāozuò) – Safe operation

设备检查 (Shèbèi jiǎnchá) – Equipment inspection

设备维护 (Shèbèi wéihù) – Equipment maintenance

操作手册 (Cāozuò shǒucè) – Operation manual

安全指示 (Ānquán zhǐshì) – Safety instructions

Electrical Safety

电气安全 (Diànlì ānquán) – Electrical safety

电气设备 (Diànlì shèbèi) – Electrical equipment

电流 (Diànlǐú) – Current

电压 (Diànyā) – Voltage

电击 (Diànjī) – Electric shock

接地 (Jiēdì) – Grounding

Fire Safety

灭火器 (Mièhuǒqì) – Fire extinguisher

火警 (Huǒjǐng) – Fire alarm

消防栓 (Xiāofáng shuān) – Fire hydrant

火灾应急程序 (Huǒzāi yìngjí chéngxù) – Fire emergency procedure

烟雾报警器 (Yānwù bào jǐngqì) – Smoke detector

Handling Hazardous Materials

有害物质 (Yǒuhài wùzhì) – Hazardous materials

化学品储存 (Huàxué pǐn chúcún) – Chemical storage

泄漏处理 (Xièlòu chǔlǐ) – Leak handling

危险品标签 (Wéixiǎn pǐn biāoqiān) – Hazardous material labels

5. Safety Training and Responsibilities

安全培训 (Ānquán péixùn) – Safety training

定期检查 (Dìngqī jiǎnchá) – Regular inspections

安全记录 (Ānquán jìlù) – Safety records

安全负责人 (Ānquán fùzérén) – Safety officer

应急响应小组 (Yìngjí xiǎngyìng xiǎozǔ) – Emergency response team

6. Excessive Workload and Fatigue Safety

过度劳累 (Guòdù láolèi) – Excessive fatigue

轮班制度 (Lúnban zhìdù) – Shift system

休息时间 (Xiūxi shíjiān) – Rest period

劳逸结合 (Láo yì jiéhé) – Work-rest balance

Lesson 17

A Detailed and Exhaustive List of Measurement and Scientific Units, Organized by Category.

General Measurement Units

Meter	米	mǐ
Kilometer	千米	qiānmǐ
Centimeter	厘米	lícmǐ
Millimeter	毫米	háomǐ
Micrometer	微米	wēimǐ
Nanometer	纳米	nànmǐ
Inch	英寸	yīngcùn
Foot	英尺	yīngchǐ
Yard	码	mǎ
Mile	英里	yīnglǐ
Square meter	平方米	píngfāngmǐ
Cubic meter	立方米	lìfāngmǐ
Liter	升	shēng
Milliliter	毫升	háoshēng

Mass/Weight Units

Kilogram	千克 / 公斤	qiānkè / gōngjīn
Gram	克	kè
Milligram	毫克	háokè
Metric ton	公吨	gōngdùn
Pound	磅	bàng
Ounce	盎司	àngsī
Carat	克拉	kèlā

Time Units

Second	秒	miǎo
Minute	分钟	fēnzhōng
Hour	小时	xiǎoshí
Day	天 / 日	tiān / rì
Week	周 / 星期	zhōu / xīngqī
Month	月	yuè
Year	年	nián

Temperature Units

Celsius	摄氏度	shèshìdù
Fahrenheit	华氏度	huáshìdù
Kelvin	开尔文	kāi'ěrwén
Pressure Units		
Pascal	帕斯卡	pàsīkā
Bar	巴	bā
Atmosphere	标准大气压	biāozhǔn dàqìyā
Torr	托	tuō
mmHg	毫米汞柱	háomǐ gǒngzhù
Energy and Power Units		
Joule	焦耳	jiāo'ěr
Kilojoule	千焦	qiānjiāo
Watt	瓦特	wǎtè
Kilowatt	千瓦	qiānwǎ
Horsepower	马力	mǎlì
Calorie	卡路里	kǎlùlǐ
Electric Units		
Volt	伏特	fútè
Ampere	安培	ānpéi
Ohm	欧姆	ōumǔ
Watt-hour	瓦时	wǎshí
Coulomb	库仑	kùlún
Frequency and Data Units		
Hertz	赫兹	hèzī
Kilohertz	千赫	qiānhè
Megahertz	兆赫	zhàohè
Gigahertz	吉赫	jíhè
Bit	比特	bǐtè
Byte	字节	zìjié
Kilobyte	千字节	qiānzìjié
Megabyte	兆字节	zhàozìjié
Gigabyte	吉字节	jízìjié
Industrial Units		
RPM (Revolutions Per Minute)	每分钟转数	měi fēnzhōng zhuànshù
Newton	牛顿	niúdùn
Newton-meter	牛顿米	niúdùnmǐ
Kilonewton	千牛	qiānniú
Chemical and Molar Units		
Mole	摩尔	mó'ěr
Millimole	毫摩尔	háomó'ěr
Concentration (mol/L)	浓度 (摩尔每升)	nóngdù (mó'ěr měi shēng)
ppm (Parts Per Million)	百万分之一	bǎiwànfēnzhīyī
Radiation Units		
Becquerel	贝克勒尔	bèikèlè'ěr
Gray	戈瑞	gēruì
Sievert	希沃特	xīwòtè
Curie	居里	jūlǐ
Others		
Degree	度	dù
Radian	弧度	húdù
Steradian	球面度	qiúmiàndù
Speed and Velocity Units		
Meters per second	米每秒	mǐ měi miǎo

Kilometers per hour	公里每小时	gōnglǐ měi xiǎoshí
Miles per hour	英里每小时	yīnglǐ měi xiǎoshí
Knots	节	jié

Volume and Capacity Units

Cubic centimeter	立方厘米	lìfāng límǐ
Cubic millimeter	立方毫米	lìfāng háomǐ
Cubic foot	立方英尺	lìfāng yīngchǐ
Gallon (US)	加仑 (美制)	jiālún (měizhì)
Gallon (UK)	加仑 (英制)	jiālún (yīngzhì)
Pint	品脱	pǐntuō
Barrel (oil)	桶 (石油)	tǒng (shíyóu)

Light and Optical Units

Candela	坎德拉	kǎndéla
Lumen	流明	liú míng
Lux	勒克斯	lèkèsī
Watt per square meter	瓦每平方米	wǎ měi píngfāngmǐ

Sound Units

Decibel	分贝	fēnbèi
Hertz (frequency)	赫兹	hèzī

Magnetic Units

Tesla	特斯拉	tèsīlā
Gauss	高斯	gāosī
Weber	韦伯	wéibó
Magnetic flux density	磁通密度	cítōng mìdù

Angular Units

Degree	度	dù
Arcminute	角分	jiǎofēn
Arcsecond	角秒	jiǎomiǎo
Radian	弧度	húdù
Revolution	转数	zhuǎnshù

Force Units

Dyne	达因	dáyīn
Kilonewton	千牛	qiānniú
Pound-force	磅力	bànglì

Thermal Units

BTU (British Thermal Unit)	英国热量单位	yīngguó rèliàng dānwèi
Kilocalorie	千卡	qiānkǎ
Joule	焦耳	jiāo'ěr
Thermal conductivity (W/m·K)	热导率 (瓦每米开尔文)	rè dǎolǜ (wǎ měi mǐ kāi'ěrwén)

Viscosity Units

Pascal-second	帕斯卡秒	pàsīkāmiǎo
Poise	泊	bō
Centipoise	厘泊	líbō

Chemical Units

Molarity (mol/L)	摩尔浓度	mó'ěr nóngdù
Molality (mol/kg)	摩尔质量浓度	mó'ěr zhìliàng nóngdù
ppm (Parts Per Million)	百万分之一	bǎiwàn fēnzhīyī
ppb (Parts Per Billion)	十亿分之一	shíyì fēnzhīyī

Industrial and Engineering Units

Kilowatt-hour	千瓦时	qiānwǎshí
BTU (Energy)	英国热量单位	yīngguó rèliàng dānwèi
Torque (Newton-meter)	扭矩 (牛米)	niǔjǔ (niú mǐ)

Linear density (kg/m) 线密度 (千克每米) xiàn mìdù (qiānkè měi mǐ)

Environmental and Pollution Units

AQI (Air Quality Index) 空气质量指数 kōngqì zhìliàng zhǐshù

Particulate matter (PM2.5/PM10) 颗粒物 (PM2.5/PM10) kēliwù

(PM2.5/PM10) Microgram per cubic meter 微克每立方米 wēikè měi lìfāngmǐ

Biological Units

Colony-forming units (CFU) 菌落形成单位 jūnlùò xíngchéng dānwèi

Enzyme activity (U) 酶活性单位 méi huóxìng dānwèi

DNA concentration (ng/μL) DNA 浓度 (纳克每微升) DNA nóngdù (nàkè měi wēishēng)

Data Storage and Memory Units

Bit 比特 bǐtè

Byte 字节 zìjié

Kilobyte (KB) 千字节 qiānzìjié

Megabyte (MB) 兆字节 zhàozìjié

Gigabyte (GB) 吉字节 jízié

Terabyte (TB) 太字节 tàzìjié

Petabyte (PB) 拍字节 pāizìjié

Exabyte (EB) 艾字节 àizìjié

Zettabyte (ZB) 泽字节 zézìjié

Yottabyte (YB) 尧字节 yáozìjié

Word 字 zì

Processing Speed and Frequency Hertz (Hz) 赫兹 hèzī

Megahertz (MHz) 兆赫 zhàohè

Gigahertz (GHz) 吉赫 jíhè

FLOPS (Floating Point Operations Per Second) 浮点运算每秒 fúdiǎn yùnsuàn měi miǎo

TFLOPS 万亿浮点运算每秒 wànyì fúdiǎn yùnsuàn měi miǎo

Instructions Per Second (IPS) 每秒指令数 měi miǎo zhǐlìng shù

Data Transfer and Bandwidth

Bits per second (bps) 每秒比特 měi miǎo bǐtè

Kilobits per second (Kbps) 每秒千比特 měi miǎo qiānbǐtè

Megabits per second (Mbps) 每秒兆比特 měi miǎo zhàobǐtè

Gigabits per second (Gbps) 每秒吉比特 měi miǎo jíbǐtè

Bandwidth 带宽 dàikuān

Latency 延迟 yánchí Throughput 吞吐量 tūntǔliàng

Data Units in Machine Learning

Feature 特征 tèzhēng

Label 标签 biāoqiān

Data Point 数据点 shùjù diǎn

Dataset 数据集 shùjù jí

Training Set 训练集 xùnlìanjí

Test Set 测试集 cèshìjí

Validation Set 验证集 yànzhèngjí

Probability and Statistics

Mean 均值 jūnzhí

Median 中位数 zhōngwèishù

Variance 方差 fāngchā

Standard Deviation 标准差 biāozhǔnchā

Correlation Coefficient 相关系数 xiāngguān xìshù

Probability Distribution 概率分布 gài lǜ fēnbù

Units in Neural Networks and AI

Epoch 轮次 lúncì

Batch Size 批量大小 pīliàng dàxiǎo

Learning Rate 学习率 xuéxí lǜ

Activation Function 激活函数 jīhuó hánshù

Neuron神经元 shénjīngyuán
Weight权重 quánzhòng Bias 偏置 piānzhì

Algorithm Complexity
Big-O Notation 大 O 表示法 dà O biǎoshìfǎ
Time Complexity 时间复杂度 shíjiān fùzá dù
Space Complexity 空间复杂度 kōngjiān fùzá dù

Database Metrics
Query Per Second (QPS)每秒查询数 měi miǎo cháxún shù
Transactions Per Second (TPS) 每秒事务数 měi miǎo shìwù shù
Read Latency 读取延迟 dúqǔ yánchí
Write Latency 写入延迟 xiěrù yánchí

Performance Metrics in AI
Accuracy 准确率 zhǔnquǎnlǜ
Precision 精确率 jīngquǎnlǜ
Recall 召回率 zhàohuílǜ
F1-Score F1 得分 F1 défēn
ROC Curve ROC 曲线 ROC qūxiàn
AUC (Area Under Curve) 曲线下面积 qūxiàn xià miànjī

Programming Units
Line of Code (LOC) 代码行数 dàimǎ hángshù
Execution Time 执行时间 zhíxíng shíjiān
Compile Time 编译时间 biānyì shíjiān

Data Science and Analytics Metrics
Mean Absolute Error (MAE) 平均绝对误差 píngjūn juéduì wùchā
Root Mean Squared Error (RMSE) 均方根误差 jūnfānggēn wùchā
R-Squared (R²) R 平方 R píngfāng
Cross-Entropy Loss 交叉熵损失 jiāochā chāng sǔnshī
Others in AI/ML
Gradient Descent 梯度下降 tī dù xiàjiàng
Backpropagation 反向传播 fǎnxiàng chuánbò
Convolution 卷积 juǎnjī
Reinforcement Learning 强化学习 qiánguà xuéxí

Lesson 18

A comprehensive list of tools and equipment used by industrial engineers **工业工程师使用的工具和设备的综合清单，**

Measurement and Inspection Tools
Calipers (游标卡尺, yóubiāo kǎchǐ)
Micrometers (千分尺, qiānfēnchǐ)
Rulers and Tape Measures (尺子和卷尺, chǐzi hé juǎnchǐ)
Laser Measurement Tools (激光测量工具, jīguāng cèliáng gōngjù)
Dial Indicators (千分表, qiānfēnbiǎo)
Coordinate Measuring Machines (CMM) (三坐标测量机, sān zuòbiāo cèliáng jī)
Gauges (量规, liàngguī)
Plug Gauges (塞规, sāiguī)
Thread Gauges (螺纹规, luówénguī)

Design and Modeling Tools
Computer-Aided Design (CAD) Software (计算机辅助设计软件, jìsuànjī fūzhù shèjì ruǎnjiàn)
AutoCAD
SolidWorks CATIA
Siemens NX
3D Printers (3D 打印机, 3D dǎyìnjī)
Finite Element Analysis (FEA) Tools (有限元分析工具, yǒuxiàn yuán fēnxī gōngjù)

Process Analysis and Optimization Tools

Time-Study Equipment (时间研究设备, shíjiān yánjiū shèbèi)

Stopwatches (秒表, miǎobiǎo)

Video Analysis Software (视频分析软件, shìpín fēnxī ruǎnjiàn)

Lean Manufacturing Tools (精益生产工具, jīngyì shēngchǎn gōngjù)

Kanban Boards (看板, kànbǎn)

Value Stream Mapping Tools (价值流映射工具, jiàzhí liú yìngshè gōngjù)

Simulation Software (仿真软件, fǎngzhēn ruǎnjiàn)

Material Handling and Logistics Equipment Conveyors (输送机, shūsòngjī)

Forklifts (叉车, chāchē)

Automated Guided Vehicles (AGVs) (自动导引车, zìdòng dǎoyǐn chē)

Pallet Jacks (托盘搬运车, tuōpán bānyùnnchē)

Cranes (起重机, qǐzhòngjī)

Hoists (提升机, tíshēngjī)

Quality Control and Testing Equipment

Statistical Process Control (SPC) Software (统计过程控制软件, tǒngjì guòchéng kòngzhì ruǎnjiàn)

Non-Destructive Testing (NDT) Equipment (无损检测设备, wúsǔn jiǎncè shèbèi)

Ultrasonic Testers (超声检测仪, chāoshēng jiǎncèyí)

Radiographic Testers (射线检测仪, shèxiàn jiǎncèyí)

Dye Penetrant Test Kits (渗透检测工具, shèntòu jiǎncè gōngjù)

Hardness Testers (硬度计, yìngdùjì)

Tensile Testing Machines (拉伸试验机, lāshēn shìyànjī)

Environmental Testing Chambers (环境测试箱, huánjìng cèshì xiāng)

Production and Manufacturing Tools

Lathes (车床, chēchuáng)

Milling Machines (铣床, xǐchuáng)

CNC Machines (数控机床, shùkòng jīchuáng)

Welding Equipment (焊接设备, hànjiē shèbèi)

Drills and Drill Presses (钻床, zuànchuáng)

Robotic Arms (机械臂, jīxièbì)

Safety and Ergonomic Tools

Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) (个人防护装备, gèrén fǎnghù zhuāngbèi)

Safety Helmets (安全帽, ānquán mào)

Gloves (手套, shǒutào)

Eye Protection (护目镜, hù mù jìng)

Ergonomic Assessment Tools (人体工程学评估工具, réntǐ gōngchéngxué pínggū gōngjù)

Force Gauges (力计, lìjì)

Posture Analysis Tools (姿态分析工具, zītài fēnxī gōngjù)

Environmental Monitoring Equipment (环境监测设备, huánjìng jiǎncè shèbèi)

Noise Meters (噪声计, zàoshēngjì)

Air Quality Monitors (空气质量监测仪, kōngqì zhìliàng jiāncèyí)

Project Management Tools

Gantt Chart Software (甘特图软件, gāntè tú ruǎnjiàn)

Resource Planning Tools (资源规划工具, zīyuán guīhuà gōngjù)

ERP Systems (企业资源计划系统, qīyè zīyuán guīhuà xìtǒng)

Collaboration Software (协作软件, xiézuò ruǎnjiàn)

Energy and Efficiency Tools Power Meters (功率计, gōnglǜjì)

Thermal Imaging Cameras (热成像相机, rèchéngxiàng xiàngjī)

Energy Auditing Tools (能量审计工具, néngliàng shěnjì gōngjù)

Industrial IoT (IIoT) Tools

Sensors and Actuators (传感器和执行器, chuángǎnqì hé zhíxíngqì)

Temperature Sensors (温度传感器, wēndù chuángǎnqì)

Pressure Sensors (压力传感器, yālì chuángǎnqì)

Proximity Sensors (接近传感器, jiējìn chuángǎnqì)

Data Acquisition Systems (DAQ) (数据采集系统, shùjù cǎijí xìtǒng)

Lesson 19

List of metals and chemical compounds commonly used in industries

工业中常用的金属和化合物列表

Metals (金属)

铝 (Lǚ) - Aluminum

铁 (Tiě) - Iron

铜 (Tóng) - Copper

锌 (Xīn) - Zinc

镍 (Niè) - Nickel

钴 (Gǔ) - Cobalt

钛 (Tài) - Titanium

铅 (Qiān) - Lead

银 (Yín) - Silver

金 (Jīn) - Gold

铂 (Bó) - Platinum

钼 (Mù) - Molybdenum

锡 (Xī) - Tin

铬 (Gè) - Chromium

锰 (Měng) - Manganese

钒 (Fán) - Vanadium

镉 (Gé) - Cadmium

钨 (Wū) - Tungsten

镧 (Lán) - Lanthanum

铈 (Shì) - Cerium

钕 (Nǚ) - Neodymium

钆 (Gá) - Gadolinium

钍 (Tǔ) - Thorium

钐 (Shān) - Samarium

钽 (Tǎn) - Tantalum

锂 (Lǐ) - Lithium

铷 (Rú) - Rubidium

锶 (Sī) - Strontium

钙 (Gài) - Calcium

钾 (Jiǎ) - Potassium

铂钯合金 (Bó Bǎ Héjīn) - Platinum-Palladium Alloy

铈 (Yì) - Ytterbium

钡 (Bèi) - Barium

镱 (Lǚ) - Lutetium

锗 (Zhě) - Germanium

铟 (Yīn) - Indium

钪 (Kàng) - Scandium

钇 (Yǐ) - Yttrium

锆 (Gào) - Zirconium

铪 (Hā) - Hafnium

Chemical Compounds (化合物)

Oxides (氧化物)

二氧化硅 (Èr Yǎng Huà Guī) - Silicon Dioxide

氧化铝 (Yǎng Huà Lǚ) - Aluminum Oxide

氧化锌 (Yǎng Huà Xīn) - Zinc Oxide

氧化铁 (Yǎng Huà Tiě) - Iron Oxide

氧化镁 (Yǎng Huà Méi) - Magnesium Oxide

二氧化锰 (Èr Yǎng Huà Měng) - Manganese Dioxide

氧化铜 (Yǎng Huà Tóng) - Copper Oxide

二氧化钛 (Èr Yǎng Huà Tài) - Titanium Dioxide

氧化镍 (Yǎng Huà Niè) - Nickel Oxide

氧化铬 (Yǎng Huà Gè) - Chromium Oxide

Salts (盐类)

氯化钠 (Lǚ Huà Nà) - Sodium Chloride

氯化钾 (Lǚ Huà Jiǎ) - Potassium Chloride

硫酸钠 (Liú Suān Nà) - Sodium Sulfate

硫酸铜 (Liú Suān Tóng) - Copper Sulfate

硝酸银 (Xiāo Suān Yín) - Silver Nitrate

硝酸钾 (Xiāo Suān Jiǎ) - Potassium Nitrate

硫酸钙 (Liú Suān Gài) - Calcium Sulfate

碳酸钙 (Tàn Suān Gài) - Calcium Carbonate

氯化钙 (Lǚ Huà Gài) - Calcium Chloride

硫化镉 (Liú Huà Gé) - Cadmium Sulfide

Acids (酸类)

硫酸 (Liú Suān) - Sulfuric Acid

盐酸 (Yán Suān) - Hydrochloric Acid

硝酸 (Xiāo Suān) - Nitric Acid

磷酸 (Lín Suān) - Phosphoric Acid

醋酸 (Cù Suān) - Acetic Acid

Bases (碱类)

氢氧化钠 (Qīng Yǎng Huà Nà) - Sodium Hydroxide

氢氧化钙 (Qīng Yǎng Huà Gài) - Calcium Hydroxide

氢氧化铝 (Qīng Yǎng Huà Lǚ) - Aluminum Hydroxide

氢氧化镁 (Qīng Yǎng Huà Méi) - Magnesium Hydroxide

氢氧化钾 (Qīng Yǎng Huà Jiǎ) - Potassium Hydroxide

Polymers (聚合物)

聚乙烯 (Jù Yǐ Xīng) - Polyethylene

聚丙烯 (Jù Bǐng Xīng) - Polypropylene

聚氯乙烯 (Jù Lǜ Yǐ Xīng) - Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC)

聚酯 (Jù Zhǐ) - Polyester

聚氨酯 (Jù Ān Zhǐ) - Polyurethane

聚苯乙烯 (Jù Běn Yǐ Xīng) - Polystyrene

硅胶 (Guī Jiāo) - Silicone

环氧树脂 (Huán Yǎng Shù Zhǐ) - Epoxy Resin

酚醛树脂 (Fēn Quán Shù Zhǐ) - Phenolic Resin

丙烯腈 (Bǐng Xīng Níng) - Acrylonitrile

Organic Compounds (有机化合物)

甲醇 (Jiǎ Chún) - Methanol

乙醇 (Yǐ Chún) - Ethanol

异丙醇 (Yì Pǔ Chún) - Isopropanol

乙酸乙酯 (Yǐ Suān Yǐ Zhǐ) - Ethyl Acetate

甲醛 (Jiǎ Quán) - Formaldehyde

苯 (Běn) - Benzene

甲苯 (Jiǎ Běn) - Toluene

二甲苯 (Èr Jiǎ Běn) - Xylene

苯酚 (Běn Fēn) - Phenol

乙二醇 (Yǐ Èr Chún) - Ethylene Glycol

Gases (气体)

氧气 (Yǎng Qì) - Oxygen

氢气 (Qīng Qì) - Hydrogen

二氧化碳 (Èr Yǎng Huà Tàn) - Carbon Dioxide

一氧化碳 (Yī Yǎng Huà Tàn) - Carbon Monoxide

氨气 (Ān Qì) - Ammonia Gas

Metals (金属)

钚 (Bù) - Plutonium

钚镓合金 (Bù Jiā Hé Jīn) - Plutonium-Gallium Alloy

铍 (Pí) - Beryllium

钠 (Nà) - Sodium (Metallic Form)

锶钙合金 (Sī Gài Hé Jīn) - Strontium-Calcium Alloy

镨 (Pǔ) - Praseodymium

镝 (Dí) - Dysprosium

钷 (Pǐ) - Promethium

镭 (Āi) - Einsteinium
 钚铬合金 (Bù Gè Hé Jīn) - Plutonium-Chromium Alloy
 铱 (Yī) - Iridium
 铑 (Lǎo) - Rhodium
 锗铟合金 (Zhě Yīn Hé Jīn) - Germanium-Indium Alloy
 锇 (É) - Osmium
 钡 (Bèi) - Barium (Metallic Form)
 铀 (Yóu) - Uranium
 钫 (Fāng) - Francium
 钆铈合金 (Gá Nǚ Hé Jīn) - Gadolinium-Neodymium Alloy
 镧钇合金 (Lán Yǐ Hé Jīn) - Lanthanum-Yttrium Alloy
 铯 (Sè) - Cesium
 钫镭合金 (Fāng Léi Hé Jīn) - Francium-Radium Alloy
 镨铈合金 (Pǔ Yǒu Hé Jīn) - Praseodymium-Europium Alloy
 镭钾 (Āi Jiǎ) - Einsteinium-Potassium Alloy
 锰钢 (Měng Gāng) - Manganese Steel
 钒铬合金 (Fán Gè Hé Jīn) - Vanadium-Chromium Alloy
 钍铀合金 (Tǔ Yóu Hé Jīn) - Thorium-Uranium Alloy
 锑 (Tī) - Antimony
 铊 (Tā) - Thallium
 镎 (Ná) - Neptunium
 锔 (Kǎi) - Californium
 锝 (Dé) - Technetium
 钇铥合金 (Yǐ Huǒ Hé Jīn) - Yttrium-Holmium Alloy
 镝铽合金 (Dí Yì Hé Jīn) - Dysprosium-Ytterbium Alloy
 Chemical Compounds (化合物)
 Oxides (氧化物)
 氧化钙 (Yǎng Huà Gài) - Calcium Oxide (Quicklime)
 氧化钒 (Yǎng Huà Fán) - Vanadium Oxide
 氧化铅 (Yǎng Huà Qiān) - Lead Oxide
 氧化铋 (Yǎng Huà Bì) - Bismuth Oxide
 氧化锡 (Yǎng Huà Xī) - Tin Oxide
 氧化锗 (Yǎng Huà Zhě) - Germanium Oxide
 氧化镨 (Yǎng Huà Pǔ) - Praseodymium Oxide
 氧化钆 (Yǎng Huà Gá) - Gadolinium Oxide
 氧化铈 (Yǎng Huà Shì) - Cerium Oxide
 氧化钬 (Yǎng Huà Huǒ) - Holmium Oxide
 氧化铽 (Yǎng Huà Yì) - Ytterbium Oxide
 氧化铂 (Yǎng Huà Bó) - Platinum Oxide

氧化铬 (Yǎng Huà Gè) - Chromium Oxide

氧化镧 (Yǎng Huà Lán) - Lanthanum Oxide

氧化钌 (Yǎng Huà Liù) - Ruthenium Oxide

氧化钯 (Yǎng Huà Bā) - Palladium Oxide

Salts (盐类)

硫酸钡 (Liú Suān Bèi) - Barium Sulfate

硫化锌 (Liú Huà Xīn) - Zinc Sulfide

氯化锌 (Lǜ Huà Xīn) - Zinc Chloride

硫酸锰 (Liú Suān Měng) - Manganese Sulfate

硝酸镍 (Xiāo Suān Niè) - Nickel Nitrate

硫酸镁 (Liú Suān Méi) - Magnesium Sulfate

硫化钼 (Liú Huà Mù) - Molybdenum Sulfide

磷酸钾 (Lín Suān Jiǎ) - Potassium Phosphate

氯化镁 (Lǜ Huà Méi) - Magnesium Chloride

碳酸镁 (Tàn Suān Méi) - Magnesium Carbonate

硫化铁 (Liú Huà Tiě) - Iron Sulfide

Acids (酸类)

草酸 (Cǎo Suān) - Oxalic Acid

氢氟酸 (Qīng Fú Suān) - Hydrofluoric Acid

过氧化氢 (Guò Yǎng Huà Qīng) - Hydrogen Peroxide

次氯酸 (Cì Lǜ Suān) - Hypochlorous Acid

甲酸 (Jiǎ Suān) - Formic Acid

丙酸 (Bǐng Suān) - Propionic Acid

丁酸 (Dīng Suān) - Butyric Acid

Bases (碱类)

氨水 (Ān Shuǐ) - Ammonium Hydroxide

碳酸钾 (Tàn Suān Jiǎ) - Potassium Carbonate

氢氧化钡 (Qīng Yǎng Huà Bèi) - Barium Hydroxide

氢氧化锂 (Qīng Yǎng Huà Lǐ) - Lithium Hydroxide

氢氧化钠 (Qīng Yǎng Huà Nà) - Sodium Hydroxide

Organic Compounds (有机化合物)

氯仿 (Lǜ Fǎng) - Chloroform

苯乙烯 (Běn Yǐ Xīng) - Styrene

甲苯 (Jiǎ Běn) - Toluene

硝基苯 (Xiāo Jī Běn) - Nitrobenzene

甘油 (Gān Yóu) - Glycerin

乙二胺 (Yǐ Èr Àn) - Ethylenediamine

丙烯酰胺 (Bǐng Xī Xiǎn Àn) - Acrylamide

Gases (气体)

氦气 (Hài Qì) - Helium

氩气 (Yà Qì) - Argon

氖气 (Nǎi Qì) - Neon

氪气 (Kè Qì) - Krypton

氙气 (Xiān Qì) - Xenon

氟气 (Fú Qì) - Fluorine

Additional Compounds (其他化合物)

氯酸钠 (Lǜ Suān Nà) - Sodium Chlorate

二氯甲烷 (Èr Lǜ Jiǎ Quán) - Dichloromethane

四氯化碳 (Sì Lǜ Huà Tàn) - Carbon Tetrachloride

氨基磺酸 (Ān Jī Huáng Suān) - Sulfamic Acid

溴化钠 (Xiù Huà Nà) - Sodium Bromide

次氯酸钙 (Cì Lǜ Suān Gài) - Calcium Hypochlorite

亚硝酸钠 (Yà Xiāo Suān Nà) - Sodium Nitrite

硫化铅 (Liú Huà Qiān) - Lead Sulfide

碳化硅 (Tàn Huà Guī) - Silicon Carbide

氮化硅 (Dàn Huà Guī) - Silicon Nitride

Metals (金属)

镁铝合金 (Méi Lǚ Hé Jīn) - Magnesium-Aluminum Alloy

钨铜合金 (Wū Tóng Hé Jīn) - Tungsten-Copper Alloy

钛镍合金 (Tài Niè Hé Jīn) - Titanium-Nickel Alloy (Shape Memory Alloy)

锂铝合金 (Lǐ Lǚ Hé Jīn) - Lithium-Aluminum Alloy

铍铜合金 (Pí Tóng Hé Jīn) - Beryllium-Copper Alloy

Chemical Compounds (化合物)

三氧化二铁 (Sān Yǎng Huà Èr Tiě) - Iron(III) Oxide (Rust)

四氟化硅 (Sì Fú Huà Guī) - Silicon Tetrafluoride

硼酸 (Péng Suān) - Boric Acid

五氧化二磷 (Wǔ Yǎng Huà Èr Lín) - Phosphorus Pentoxide

次氯酸钠 (Cì Lǜ Suān Nà) - Sodium Hypochlorite (Bleach)

Lesson 20

A list of vocabulary on major industries in India:

印度主要行业词汇列表：

1. Information Technology (IT) 行业 (Xìnxī jìshù hángyè)

信息技术	xìnxī jìshù	Information Technology
软件开发	ruǎnjiàn kāifā	Software Development
数据分析	shùjù fēnxī	Data Analysis
人工智能	réngōng zhìnéng	Artificial Intelligence
网络安全	wǎngluò ānquán	Cybersecurity
云计算	yún jìsuàn	Cloud Computing
区块链	qūkuài liàn	Blockchain
编程语言	biānchéng yǔyán	Programming Language
数据库	shùjùkù	Database
编程	biānchéng	Programming
软件测试	ruǎnjiàn cèshì	Software Testing
人机交互	rénjī jiāohù	Human-Computer Interaction
网络协议	wǎngluò xiéyì	Network Protocol
用户界面	yònghù jièmiàn	User Interface
应用程序	yìngyòng chéngxù	Application Program
大数据	dàshùjù	Big Data
算法	suànfǎ	Algorithm
加密	jiāmì	Encryption
编译器	biānyìqì	Compiler
软件即服务	ruǎnjiàn jí fúwù	Software as a Service (SaaS)
信息检索	xìnxī jiǎnsuǒ	Information Retrieval

2. Pharmaceuticals 制药业 (Zhìyào yè)

药品制造	yàopǐn zhìzào	Drug Manufacturing
临床试验	línchuáng shìyàn	Clinical Trials
生物技术	shēngwù jìshù	Biotechnology
仿制药	fǎngzhì yào	Generic Drugs
活性成分	huóxìng chéngfēn	Active Ingredients
疫苗	yìmiáo	Vaccine
药物研发	yàowù yánfā	Drug Development
医药市场	yīyào shìchǎng	Pharmaceutical Market
化学药品	huàxué yàopǐn	Chemical Drugs
中药	zhōngyào	Traditional Chinese Medicine
药剂学	yàojì xué	Pharmacology
医疗设备	yīliáo shèbèi	Medical Devices
药效	yàoxiào	Drug Efficacy

副作用	fùzuòyòng	Side Effects
临床研究	línchuáng yánjiū	Clinical Research
疾病预防	jíbìng yùfáng	Disease Prevention
化学成分	huàxué chéngfèn	Chemical Composition
医药物流	yīyào wùliú	Pharmaceutical Logistics
生物制剂	shēngwù zhìjì	Biologics
基因疗法	jīyīn liáofǎ	Gene Therapy
医药法规	yīyào fǎguī	Pharmaceutical Regulations

3. Textiles 纺织业 (Fǎngzhī yè)

棉花	miánhuā	Cotton
纤维	xiānwéi	Fiber
织布	zhī bù	Weaving
染色	rǎnsè	Dyeing
丝绸	sīchóu	Silk
印染	yìnǎn	Printing and Dyeing
服装制造	fúzhuāng zhizào	Garment Manufacturing
合成纤维	héchéng xiānwéi	Synthetic Fiber
棉纺织	mián fǎngzhī	Cotton Spinning
织物	zhīwù	Fabric
人造纤维	rénzào xiānwéi	Artificial Fiber
化学纤维	huàxué xiānwéi	Chemical Fiber
羊毛	yángmáo	Wool
缝纫机	féng rèn jī	Sewing Machine
服装设计	fúzhuāng shèjì	Fashion Design
手工艺品	shǒugōng yìpǐn	Handicrafts
出口市场	chūkǒu shìchǎng	Export Market
针织品	zhēnzhī pǐn	Knitted Goods
染料	rǎnliào	Dye
皮革	pígé	Leather
工作服	gōngzuò fú	Workwear

4. Automotive 汽车工业 (Qìchē gōngyè)

汽车制造	qìchē zhizào	Automobile Manufacturing
零部件	líng bùjiàn	Components
电动车	diàndòngchē	Electric Vehicles
发动机	fādòngjī	Engine
自动驾驶	zìdòng jiàoshǐ	Autonomous Driving
汽车设计	qìchē shèjì	Automotive Design
燃油效率	rányóu xiàolǜ	Fuel Efficiency
制动系统	zhìdòng xìtǒng	Brake System

汽车制造商	qìchē zhìzàoshāng	Automobile Manufacturer
变速箱	biànsùxiāng	Gearbox
悬挂系统	xuánguà xìtǒng	Suspension System
底盘	dǐpán	Chassis
车身	chēshēn	Car Body
排放标准	páifàng biāozhǔn	Emission Standards
电池	diànchí	Battery
充电站	chōngdiàn zhàn	Charging Station
轮胎	lúntāi	Tires
制动器	zhìdòngqì	Brake
车联网	chē liánwǎng	Internet of Vehicles (IoV)
动力传动	dònglì chuándòng	Power Transmission

5. Agriculture 农业 (Nóngyè)

农作物	nóngzuòwù	Crops
水稻	shuǐdào	Rice
小麦	xiǎomài	Wheat
灌溉系统	guàngài xìtǒng	Irrigation System
有机农业	yǒujī nóngyè	Organic Farming
化肥	huàféi	Fertilizer
农机设备	nóngjī shèbèi	Agricultural Machinery
畜牧业	xù mù yè	Animal Husbandry
农田	nóngtián	Farmland
收割机	shōugējī	Harvester
农作物病害	nóngzuòwù bìngzhài	Crop Diseases
灌溉技术	guàngài jìshù	Irrigation Technology
温室农业	wēnshì nóngyè	Greenhouse Agriculture
农村发展	nóngcūn fāzhǎn	Rural Development
转基因技术	zhuǎnjīyīn jìshù	Genetically Modified Tech
粮食作物	liángshí zuòwù	Food Crops
农民	nóngmín	Farmer
种植	zhòngzhí	Planting
畜牧场	xù mù chǎng	Livestock Farm
耕作	gēngzuò	Farming

6. Renewable Energy 可再生能源 (Kě zài shēng néng yuán)

太阳能	tàiyángnéng	Solar Energy
风能	fēngnéng	Wind Energy
水力发电	shuǐlì fādiàn	Hydropower
生物质能	shēngwùzhì néng	Biomass Energy
能源存储	néngyuán cúnchú	Energy Storage

清洁能源	qīngjié néngyuán	Clean Energy
能源效率	néngyuán xiàolǜ	Energy Efficiency
风力发电机	fēnglì fādiànjī	Wind Turbine
太阳能板	tàiyángnéng bǎn	Solar Panels
储能技术	chǔnéng jìshù	Energy Storage Technology
氢能	qīngnéng	Hydrogen Energy
生物燃料	shēngwù ránliào	Biofuels
智能电网	zhìnéng diànwǎng	Smart Grid
可再生资源	kě zàishēng zīyuán	Renewable Resources
能源政策	néngyuán zhèngcè	Energy Policy
可持续发展	kěchíxù fāzhǎn	Sustainable Development

7. Tourism 旅游业 (Lǚyóu yè)

文化遗产	wénhuà yíchǎn	Cultural Heritage
生态旅游	shēngtài lǚyóu	Ecotourism
酒店管理	jiǔdiàn guǎnlǐ	Hotel Management
导游	dǎoyóu	Tour Guide
景点	jǐngdiǎn	Tourist Attraction
签证服务	qiānzhèng fúwù	Visa Services
旅游套餐	lǚyóu tàocān	Tour Package
导游证	dǎoyóu zhèng	Tour Guide License
旅行社	lǚxíng shè	Travel Agency
景区管理	jǐngqū guǎnlǐ	Scenic Area Management
文化体验	wénhuà tīyàn	Cultural Experience
旅游日程	lǚyóu rìchéng	Travel Itinerary
豪华旅游	háohuá lǚyóu	Luxury Tourism
背包旅行	bèibāo lǚxíng	Backpacking Travel
出境游	chūjìng yóu	Outbound Tourism
自驾游	zìjià yóu	Self-Drive Tour
民宿	mínsù	Homestay
生态保护	shēngtài bǎohù	Ecological Protection
照片打卡点	zhàopiàn dǎkǎ diǎn	Photo Spot
手工艺制作	shǒugōngyì zhìzuò	Handicraft Making
餐饮文化	cānyǐn wénhuà	Culinary Culture
节庆活动	jiéqìng huódòng	Festival Activities
高端服务	gāoduān fúwù	High-End Service
邮轮旅行	yóulún lǚxíng	Cruise Travel
遗产保护	yíchǎn bǎohù	Heritage Protection
无障碍旅游	wúzhàng'ài lǚyóu	Accessible Tourism
国际游客	guójì yóukè	International Tourists

8. Banking and Finance 银行与金融 (Yínháng yǔ jīnróng)

银行	yínháng	Bank
贷款	dàikuǎn	Loan
利率	lǐlǜ	Interest Rate
股票市场	gǔpiào shìchǎng	Stock Market
保险	bǎoxiǎn	Insurance
投资	tóuzī	Investment
金融科技	jīnróng kējì	Fintech
账户余额	zhàngù yú'é	Account Balance
在线银行	zàixiàn yínháng	Online Banking
货币兑换	huòbì duìhuàn	Currency Exchange
财务规划	cáiwù guīhuà	Financial Planning
债务管理	zhàiwù guǎnlǐ	Debt Management
自动取款机	zìdòng qǔkuǎn jī	ATM
贷款利率	dàikuǎn lǐlǜ	Loan Interest Rate
宏观经济	hóngguān jīngjì	Macroeconomics
资产负债表	zīchǎn fùzhài biǎo	Balance Sheet
税收筹划	shuìshōu chóuhuà	Tax Planning
投资组合	tóuzī zǔhé	Investment Portfolio
流动资金	liúdòng zījīn	Working Capital
证券	zhèngquàn	Securities
风险评估	fēngxiǎn pínggū	Risk Assessment
资本市场	zīběn shìchǎng	Capital Market
储蓄账户	chúxù zhàngù	Savings Account
信用评分	xìnyòng píngfēn	Credit Score
银行利率	yínháng lǐlǜ	Bank Interest Rate
财务报表	cáiwù bàobiǎo	Financial Statement
信用卡费用	xìnyòngkǎ fèiyòng	Credit Card Charges
货币政策	huòbì zhèngcè	Monetary Policy
银行转账	yínháng zhuǎnzhàng	Bank Transfer
金融衍生品	jīnróng yǎnshēngpǐn	Financial Derivatives
风险投资	fēngxiǎn tóuzī	Venture Capital
区域经济	qūyù jīngjì	Regional Economy
股票交易	gǔpiào jiāoyì	Stock Trading
外汇市场	wàihuì shìchǎng	Foreign Exchange Market
基础设施投资	jīchǔ shèshī tóuzī	Infrastructure Investment
支票簿	zhīpiào bù	Checkbook
跨境支付	kuàijìngzhīfù	Cross-Border Payment
General Legal Terms 法律术语 (Fǎlǜ shùyǔ)		

合同	hétóng	Contract
仲裁	zhòngcái	Arbitration
诉讼	sùsòng	Litigation
法律责任	fǎlǚ zérèn	Legal Liability
知识产权	zhīshì chǎnquán	Intellectual Property
商标	shāngbiāo	Trademark
专利	zhuānli	Patent
合法权益	héfǎ quányì	Legal Rights and Interests
商业秘密	shāngyè mìmì	Trade Secrets
法律顾问	fǎlǚ gùwèn	Legal Counsel
仲裁协议	zhòngcái xiéyì	Arbitration Agreement
司法管辖	sīfǎ guǎnxiá	Judicial Jurisdiction
诉讼费用	sùsòng fèiyòng	Litigation Costs
违约条款	wéiyuē tiáokuǎn	Breach of Contract Clause
双边协议	shuāngbiān xiéyì	Bilateral Agreement
法律修订	fǎlǚ xiūdìng	Legal Amendments
Regulatory Compliance 法规合规 (Fǎ guī héguī)		
Chinese	Pinyin	English
合规管理	héguī guǎnlǐ	Compliance Management
数据隐私	shùjù yǐnsī	Data Privacy
环境保护法	huánjìng bǎohù fǎ	Environmental Protection Law
反垄断法	fǎn lǒngduàn fǎ	Anti-Monopoly Law
税务合规	shuìwù héguī	Tax Compliance
许可证	xǔkězhèng	License
市场监管	shìchǎng jiānguǎn	Market Regulation
劳动法	láodòng fǎ	Labor Law
消费者保护法	xiāofèizhě bǎohù fǎ	Consumer Protection Law
投资法规	tóuzī fǎguī	Investment Regulations
产业政策	chǎnyè zhèngcè	Industrial Policy
经济制裁	jīngjì zhìcái	Economic Sanctions
跨境贸易	kuàijìng mào yì	Cross-Border Trade
安全标准	ānquán biāozhǔn	Safety Standards
符合性声明	fúhéxìng shēngmíng	Declaration of Conformity
Corporate Governance 公司治理 (Gōngsī zhìlǐ)		
董事会	dǒngshì huì	Board of Directors
公司章程	gōngsī zhāngchéng	Articles of Association
股东大会	gǔdōng dàhuì	Shareholders' Meeting
公司合并	gōngsī hébìng	Corporate Merger
债务重组	zhàiwù chóngzǔ	Debt Restructuring

公司清算	gōngsī qīngsuàn	Corporate Liquidation
财务透明	cáiwù tòumíng	Financial Transparency
董事会决议	dǒngshìhuì juéyì	Board Resolution
商业登记	shāngyè dēngjì	Business Registration
公司并购	gōngsī bìnggòu	Mergers and Acquisitions
股东权益	gǔdōng quán yì	Shareholders' Rights
风险管理	fēngxiǎn guǎnlǐ	Risk Management
内部审计	nèibù shěnjì	Internal Audit
Trade and Customs 贸易与海关 (Màoyì yǔ hǎiguān)		
关税	guānshuì	Tariff
原产地证书	yuánchǎndì zhèngshū	Certificate of Origin
进口限制	jìnkǒu xiànzhi	Import Restrictions
出口许可证	chūkǒu xǔkězhèng	Export License
自贸协定	zìmào xiédìng	Free Trade Agreement
海关申报	hǎiguān shēnbào	Customs Declaration
非关税壁垒	fēi guānshuì bìlěi	Non-Tariff Barriers
贸易纠纷	màoyì jiūfēn	Trade Disputes
商检	shāngjiǎn	Commodity Inspection
特许经营权	tèxǔ jīngyíngquán	Franchise
贸易政策	màoyì zhèngcè	Trade Policy
海关监管	hǎiguān jiānguǎn	Customs Supervision
Employment and Labor Relations 劳动关系 (Láodòng guānxì)		
雇佣合同	gùyōng hétóng	Employment Contract
最低工资	zuìdī gōngzī	Minimum Wage
工作时间	gōngzuò shíjiān	Working Hours
工伤赔偿	gōngshāng péicháng	Workers' Compensation
社会保险	shèhuì bǎoxiǎn	Social Insurance
解雇	jiěgù	Dismissal
劳动争议	láodòng zhēngyì	Labor Disputes
工资单	gōngzī dān	Pay Slip
职业健康与安全	zhíyè jiànkāng yǔ ānquán	Occupational Health and Safety

PART: IV TECHNICAL VOCAB

1	measure size	Cèliáng chǐcùn	测量尺寸
2	open meter	dǎkāi jìshùqì	打开计数器
3	three pin plug	sān zhǎo chātóu	三爪插头
4	a Jar shaped vessel	qìgāng	汽缸
5	a new series of molds	mújù de xīn de kuǎnshì	模具的新的款式
6	abortion	huài yùn	坏孕
7	abrasive paper	shāzhǐ	砂纸
8	acre	yīngmǔ	英亩
9	actual performance	shíjì yǎnshì	实际演示
10	add mtrl	jiāliào	加料
11	addidas	ài dí dá	爱迪达
12	adhesive	jiāoshuǐ	胶水
13	adhesive tape	jiāobù	胶布
14	adjust	tiáozhěng	调整
15	adjust/ regulate	tiáojié	调节
16	adjustable spanner	huódòng bānshǒu	活动扳手
17	adjuster	tiáozhěng qì	调整器
18	adjustment of temp	wēndù tiáojié	温度调节
19	age and years of service, seniority	nián zī	年资
20	air knife	fèng dāo guā shuǐ	风刀刮水
21	alloy	héjīn	合金
22	aluminium	lǚ	铝
23	aluminium case meter	lǚ hé biǎo	铝盒表
24	amount of material	liào liàng	料量
25	apply break	shāchē	刹车
26	are	gōng mǔ	公亩
27	area	miànjī,	面积,
28	argon	yà	氩
29	argon welding	yà hàn	氩焊
30	arrange	ānpái	安排
31	arsenic	shēn	砷
32	as per requirement	àn yāoqiú	按要求
33	assemble	zhuāngpèi	装配
34	assessory	fùshǔ pǐn	附属品
35	axle	zhuǎnzhóu	转轴
36	axle bush	zhóuwǎ	轴瓦
37	bar	huá zhóu	滑轴
38	barrel	tǒng	桶
39	bastard	húndàn	混蛋
40	battery	diànchí	电池
41	bearing	zhóuchéng	轴承
42	Beijing roasted duck	běijīng kǎoyā	北京烤鸭
43	belt	dài	带
44	bend head	wān tóu	弯头
45	bend type preumatic tool	wān qìdònggōngjù	弯气动工具

46	bernier callipers	yóubiāokǎchǐ	游标卡尺
47	bit of a drill	zuàntóu	钻头
48	bit pressure	zuān yā	钻压
49	black spots	hēi wūdiǎn	黑污点
50	boil	zhǔ	煮
51	boiled water	kāishuǐ	开水
52	water	shuǐ	水
53	bolt	luóshuān	螺栓
54	bottom sole	dà dǐ	大底
55	brands	pǐnpái	品牌
56	break off/finish work	xiàbān	下班
57	breadth	kuāndù	宽度
58	broad	kuān	宽
59	bus	zǒngxiàn	总线
60	bush	zhóu. . Jù	轴。。具
61	buz	fēng míng qì	蜂鸣器
62	calcium	gài	钙
63	can't make call	dǎbùtōng	打不通
64	carat	kèlā	克拉
65	carbon	tàn	碳
66	carbon -di- oxide	èryǎnghuàtàn	二氧化碳
67	carbon paper	fùxiězhǐ	复写纸
68	carbonic acid	tànsuān	碳酸
69	carburetor	huà yóu qì	化油器
70	cement	shuǐní	水泥
71	cementing material	jiāo gěi cáiliào	胶给材料
72	chain	liàn	链
73	chains	liàntiáo	链条
74	chain belt	liàn dài	链带
75	chain gear	liàn lún	链轮
76	chain smoke	yī zhī jiē yī zhī de chōuyān	一支接一支地抽烟
77	change	gēnggǎi	更改
78	channel	liú dào	流道
79	charger	chōngdiàn qì	充电器
80	check and repair	zài zuò jiǎnxiū	再做检修
81	check for 10 minutes	yùnxíng jiǎnchá shí fēnzhōng	运行检查十分钟
82	chemical composition	huàxué chéngfèn	化学成分
83	chemical compound	huàhéwù	化合物
84	chemical industry	huàgōng	化工
85	chemical plant	huàgōng chǎn	化工产
86	chemical property	huàxué xìngzhì	化学性质
87	chemical reaction	huàhé fǎnyìng	化合反应
88	chhole	jiàng tāng	酱汤
89	chiller	lěngquè jī	冷却机
90	chiller instruction for use	lěngdòng jī shǐyòng zhùyì	冷冻机使用注意
91	chlorine	lǜ	氯
92	chromium	gè	铬
93	circuit	xiànlù	线路

94	circuit diagram	xiànlù tú	线路图
95	clamping force	hé mó lì	合模力
96	clay	jiāoní	胶泥
97	clean up	xǐ gānjìng	洗干净
98	cm	lí mǐ	厘米
99	cm3	lìfāng límǐ	立方厘米
100	cm2	Píngfāng límǐ	平方厘米
101	CO poisoning	méiqì zhòngdú	煤气中毒
102	coal field	méitàn tián	煤炭田
103	coal gas	méiqì	煤气
104	coal industry	méitàn gōngyè	煤炭工业
105	coal smoke pollution	méi yān wūrǎn	煤烟污染
106	coal soot (smoke)	méi yān	煤烟
107	coating	tú céng	涂层
108	cobalt	gǔ	钴
109	cobbler	xiéjiàng	鞋匠
110	coil	xiànquān	线圈
111	cold welding	lěng hàn	冷焊
112	commercial use	gōngyè yòng	工业用
113	compression	yāsuō jī	压缩机
114	congbao rou	cōng bào ròu	葱爆肉
115	connector	liánjiē zuò	连接座
116	consumption	xiāohào liàng	消耗量
117	consumption of gas	méiqì de xiāohào liàng	煤气的消耗量
118	control box	kòngzhì xiāng	控制箱
119	control out	kòngzhì shūchū	控制输出
120	conversion rate	Zhuǎnhuàn lǜ	转换率
121	conversion table	zhuǎnhuàn biǎo	转换表
122	converter	zhuǎnhuàn qì	转换器
123	conveyor belt	chuánsòngdài	传送带
124	cooling on	lěngquè kāiqǐ	冷却开启
125	cooling water	lěngquè shuǐ	冷却水
126	coordinate with me	yǔ wǒ xiétiáo	与我协调
127	copper	tóng	铜
128	cosmetics	huàzhuāngpǐn	化妆品
129	cosmetics put on make up	huàzhuāng yòng de huàzhuāngpǐn	化妆用的化妆品
130	cotton rope	mián shéng	棉绳
131	couple	fūfù	夫妇
132	cover	gài	盖
133	crane	qǐzhòngjī	起重机
134	canteen stores department	Shítáng yòngpǐn bù Shítáng yòngpǐn bù	食堂用品部
135	cubic	lìfāng	立方
136	cubic feet	lìfāng yīngchǐ	立方英尺
137	cubic measure volume	lìfāng cèliáng tǐjī	立方测量体积
138	cure time	gùhuà shíjiān	固化时间
139	current	diànlíu	电流
140	cutter	qiēgē qì	切割器

141	cycle	xúnhuán	循环
142	cylinder	qìgāng	气缸
143	D fuze	D yǐnxìn	D 引信
144	damage	sǔnhuài	损坏
145	damn it	gāisǐ de	该死的
146	danger	wéixiǎn	危险
147	deadlocked	jiāngjú	僵局
148	depth	shēndù	深度
149	describe problems	miáoshù wèntí	描述问题
150	design	shèjì	设计
151	detergent	xǐdí jì	洗涤剂
152	dia head	zhíjìng tóu	直径头
153	dia neck	zhíjìng jǐng	直径颈
154	diagram	túbiǎo	图表
155	diameter	zhíjìng	直径
156	diamond	zuànshí	钻石
157	diamond ring	zuànshí jièzhǐ	钻石戒指
158	diesel	cháiyóu	柴油
159	digestion	xiāohuà	消化
160	digital input output modular	shùzì shūrù shūchū mókuài huà	数字输入输出模块化
161	dimentions	chǐcùn	尺寸
162	dimentions of equipment	Shèbèi chǐcùn	设备尺寸
163	diploma	wénpíng	文凭
164	dirty man	zàng rén	脏人
165	domestic use	jiā yòng	家用
166	Degree celcius	Shèshìdù	摄氏度
167	don't take reading	bùyào dúshū	不要读书
168	door frame	ménkuàng	门框
169	dim light	Hūn'àn de dēngguāng	昏暗的灯光
170	drawing	túzhǐ	图纸
171	dresssing room	gēngyī shì	更衣室
172	drier	hōng gān jī	烘干机
173	drill	zuān	钻
174	drill a hole	zuān kǒng	钻孔
175	drill bore	zuàntóu	钻头
176	drill rod	zuān gǎn	钻杆
177	drill depth	Zuān kǒng shēndù	钻孔深度
178	drill, bore, diamond	zuàntóu, zuān kǒng, jīngāngshí	钻头，钻孔，金刚石
179	drilling	zuān kǒng	钻孔
180	drilling equipment	zuān kǒng shèbèi	钻孔设备
181	Diafram	Gémó	隔膜
182	machine	jī	机
183	drilling machine	zuān kǒng jī	钻孔机
184	drilling tool	zuàn jù	钻具
185	each factory	gè gōngchǎng	各工厂
186	earthern pipe	de guǎn	地管

187	ECG	xīndiàntú	心电图
188	electric arc welding	diàn hú hàn	电弧焊
189	electric cable	diàn lǎn	电缆
190	electric charge	diàn hè	电荷
191	electric consumption	hào diàn liàng	耗电量
192	electric current intensity	diàn liú qiáng dù	电流强度
193	electric discharge	fàng diàn	放电
194	electric fan	diàn fēng shàn	电风扇
195	electric field	diàn chǎng	电场
196	electric fire	diàn huǒ	电火
197	electric generater	fā diàn jī	发电机
198	electric heater	diàn jiā rè qì	电加热器
199	electric induction	diàn gǎn yìng	电感应
200	electric iron	diàn yùn dòu	电熨斗
201	electric light	Diàn dēng	电灯
202	electric meter	diàn biǎo	电表
203	electric needle	diàn zhēn	电针
204	electric parts	diàn qì yuán jiàn	电气零件
205	electric power	diàn lì	电力
206	electric screw driver	diàn dòng luó sī dāo	电动螺丝刀
207	electric shaver	diàn dòng tì xū dāo	电动剃须刀
208	electric shock	diàn jī	电击
209	electric supply	diàn yuán	电源
210	electric torch	shǒu diàn tǒng	手电筒
211	electric transducer	diàn huàn néng qì	电换能器
212	electric welding	diàn hàn	电焊
213	electrical appliance	diàn qì	电器
214	electrical conductivity	diàn dǎo lǜ	电导率
215	electrical engineer	diàn qì gōng chéng shī	电气工程师
216	electrician	diàn gōng	电工
217	electrics	diàn qì xué	电气学
218	electro chemical	diàn huà xué	电化学
219	electrolysis	diàn jiě	电解
220	electromagnet	diàn cí tiě	电磁铁
221	emergency stop	jǐn jí tíng zhǐ	紧急停止
222	emery cloth	shā bù	砂布
223	emery paper	shā zhǐ	砂纸
224	emery wheel, grinding wheel	shā lún, shā lún	砂轮，砂轮
225	engine oil	jī yóu	机油
226	error	cuò wù	错误
227	estimate	gū suàn	估算
228	Exhaust fan	pái qì shān	排气扇
229	exhaust	pái qì	排气
230	exchange	jiāo huàn	交换
231	expand	kuò dà	扩大
232	expansion	péng zhàng	扩大
233	External size	wài bù chǐ cùn	外部尺寸
234	file	cuò dāo	锉刀

235	file sth smooth	cuò píng	锉平某物
236	filing	cuò xuē	锉削
237	fitter	qiángōng	钳工
238	fixed spanner	gùdìng bānshǒu	固定扳手
239	flight	fēixíng	飞行
240	flow chart	liúchéng tú	流程图
241	flow conditions	liúdòng tiáojiàn	流动条件
242	fluctuate	bōdòng	波动
243	fluorine	fú	氟
244	foot wear	xié lèi	鞋类
245	formal speech	zhèngshì yǎnjiǎng	正式演讲
246	freezing	dòngjié	冻结
247	function	gōngnéng	功能
248	function of brakes	shāchē de gōngnéng	刹车的功能
249	function of an interpreter	fānyì de gōngnéng	翻译的功能
250	function of machine	jīqì de gōngnéng	机器的功能
251	Gap	jiànxi	间隙
252	gas cooker	ránqì zào	燃气灶
253	gas engine	ránqì fādòngjī	燃气发动机
254	gas fitting	ránqì pèijiàn	燃气配件
255	gas lamp	ránqì dēng	燃气灯
256	Gas meter	ránqì biǎo	燃气表
257	gas pipe	ránqì guǎndào	燃气管道
258	gas stove	ránqì lú	燃气灶
259	gas stove at home	jiāyòng ránqì lú	家用燃气灶
260	gas welding	ránqì hànjiē	燃气焊接
261	gas works	ránqì chǎng	燃气厂
262	gear wheel	chǐlún	齿轮
263	general assembly	zǒngzhuāng	总装
264	General Manager	zǒng jīnglǐ	总经理
265	generator	fādiànjī	发电机
266	get lost	mílù	迷路
267	glass paper	bōlizhǐ	玻璃纸
268	glue together	jiāoshuǐ yīqǐ	粘合
269	glue, gum	jiāoshuǐ, shùjiāo	胶水，树胶
270	gold	jīn	金
271	gold medal	jīnpái	金牌
272	gong bao chicken	gōng bǎo jī dīng	宫保鸡丁
273	gram	kè	克
274	greasing gun	zhùyóu qiāng	注油枪
275	grease	rùnhuá zhī	润滑脂
276	grind	yánmó	研磨
277	grind stone	mó shí	磨石
278	grind	yánmó	研磨
279	grinder	yánmó jī	研磨机
280	gun temp	qiāng wēn	枪温
281	hammer	chuízi	锤子
282	hammering	chuí jī	锤击

283	handle	shǒubǐng	手柄
284	heater	jiārè qì	加热器
285	heating plate dimension	jiārè bǎn chǐcùn	加热板尺寸
286	heating	jiārè	加热
287	heating power	jiārè gōnglǜ	加热功率
288	heating tube	jiārè guǎn	加热管
289	heating zone	jiārè qū	加热区
290	height	gāodù	高度
291	height of injection nozzle	zhùshè pēnzǔi gāodù	注射喷嘴高度
292	high pressure cut out	gāoyā qiēduàn	高压切断
293	hotel	jiǔdiàn	酒店
294	hydraulic circuit board	yèyā diànlù bǎn	液压电路板
295	hydraulic system	yèyā xìtǒng	液压系统
296	hydraulic unit motor	yèyā dānyuán diànjī	液压单元电机
297	hydro carbon	tàn qīng huàhéwù	碳氢化合物
298	hydrogen	qīngqì	氢气
299	IBC control	IBC kòngzhì	IBC控制
300	idiot	shǎguā	傻瓜
301	emergency stop	jǐnjí tíngzhǐ	紧急停止
302	in roaming	mànyóu zhōng	漫游中
303	increase speed	jiāsù	加速
304	individual	dāndú	单独
305	individual packing	dāndú bāozhuāng	单独包装
306	inj speed	zhùshè sùdù	注射速度
307	inj statute pre stressing time	zhùshè guīchéng yù yìnglì shíjiān	注射规程 预应力时间
308	injection pressure	zhùshè yālì	注射压力
309	injection speed	zhùshè sùdù	注射速度
310	injection time	zhùshè shíjiān	注射时间
311	injection unit	zhùshè dānyuán	注射单元
312	injector	zhùshèqì	注射器
313	inlet	rùkǒu	入口
314	input	shūrù	输入
315	input section	shūrù bùfèn	输入部分
316	installation	ānzhuāng	安装
317	installation of machine	jīqì ānzhuāng	机器安装
318	iodine	diǎn	碘
319	iron	tiě	铁
320	jack hoisting jack	qiānjīndǐng qǐ zhòng	千斤顶起重千斤顶
321	jiaozi	jiǎozǐ	饺子
322	joint connection,	jiētóu liánjiē	接头连接
323	kerosine	méiyóu	煤油
324	kerosine stove	méiyóu lúzi	煤油炉子
325	kg	qiānkè	千克
326	kg/cm2	qiānkè/píngfāng límǐ	千克/平方厘米
327	km	gōnglǐ	公里
328	lab test report	shíyàn shì cèshì bàogào	实验室测试报告

329	latex	rǔjiāo	乳胶
330	layer	céng	层
331	lead	qiān	铅
332	leakage	xièlòu	泄漏
333	leakage of mtrl	xiàngjiāo xièlòu	橡胶泄漏
334	leakage of oil	lòu yóu	漏油
335	learn/ training	xuéxí/péixùn	学习/培训
336	leave	líkāi	离开
337	led lamp	LED dēng	LED灯
338	legal	héfǎ	合法
339	length	chángdù	长度
340	level	yè wèi	液位
341	liang	liáng	梁
342	limit switch	xiàn wèi kāiguān	限位开关
343	line voltage	xiànlù diànyā	线路电压
344	liquor	jiu	酒
345	lithium	lǐ	锂
346	logogram	fúhào	符号
347	long ton	cháng dùn	长吨
348	loose	sōngsǎn	松散
349	loose bolt	luóshuān sōngdòng	螺栓松动
350	low press cut out	dīyā qiēduàn	低压切断
351	LPG	yèhuà shíyóu qì	液化石油气
352	LPG Cylinder	yèhuà shíyóu qì gāngpíng	液化石油气钢瓶
353	lubricate	rùnhuá	润滑
354	machanism	jīgòu	机构
355	Machine Installation	jīqì ānzhuāng	机器安装
356	machine type	jīqì lèixíng	机器类型
357	machine weight	jīqì zhòngliàng	机器重量
358	mad	fēngkuáng	疯狂
359	magnese	měng	锰
360	magnesium	měi	镁
361	magnet	cí tiě	磁铁
362	magnetic field	cíchǎng	磁场
363	magnetic pole	cíjí	磁极
364	main gear	zhǔ chǐlún	主齿轮
365	motor power	diànjī gōnglǜ	电机功率
366	main motor power	zhǔ diàn jī gōnglǜ	主电机功率
367	mainshaft	zhǔzhóu	主轴
368	maintenance	wéihù	维护
369	make telephone call	dǎ diàn huà	打电话
370	make up man	huàzhuāng shī	化妆师
371	manager	jīnglǐ	经理
372	margin	lìrùn	利润
373	mask	miànjù	面具
374	material jam time	cáiliào dǔsè shíjiān	材料堵塞时间
375	material leakage	cáiliào xièlòu	材料泄漏
376	material name	cáiliào míngchēng	材料名称

377	max inj time	zuìdà zhùshè shíjiān	最大注射时间
378	maximum injection speed	zuìdà zhùshè sùdù	最大注射速度
379	maximum injection volume	zuìdà zhùshè liàng	最大注射量
380	measurement	cèliáng	测量
381	measuring tape	juǎnchǐ	卷尺
382	mercury	shuǐyín	水银
383	metal	jīnshǔ	金属
384	meter	mǐ	米
385	method of heating	jiārè fāngfǎ	加热方法
386	micrometre	Wéimǐ	微米
387	mg	háokè	毫克
388	micron	wéimǐ	微米
389	mid sole	zhōng dǐ	中底
390	mid sole bottom sole mismatch	zhōng dǐ dǐbù bù pǐpèi	中底 底部不匹配
391	mile	yīnglǐ	英里
392	mineral	kuàngwù	矿物
393	mis calculation	jìsuàn cuòwù	计算错误
394	mis carrige	yùnnshū cuòwù	运输错误
395	mix	hùnhé	混合
396	mixture	hùnhéwù	混合物
397	ml, cl,dl,l,kl	háoshēng, háoshēng, fēn shēng, shēng, qiān shēng	毫升，毫升，分升，升，千升
398	mm	háomǐ	毫米
399	mm,cm,dm,m,dam,hm,km	háomǐ, límǐ, fēn mǐ, mǐ, dànmǐ, xiǎoshí, gōnglǐ	毫米，厘米，分米，米，大米，小时，公里
400	mobile	Yídòng	移动
401	model	xínghào	型号
402	model no	xínghào biānhào	型号编号
403	model type pattern	xínghào lèixíng	型号类型
404	mold clean time in station	mújù zài gōng wèi qīngjié shíjiān	模具在工位清洁时间
405	mold fixing screw	mújù gùdìng luódīng	模具固定螺钉
406	mold temp	mújù wēndù	模具温度
407	mold testing	mújù cèshì	模具测试
408	mold testing table	mújù cèshì tái	模具测试台
409	mortar, lime.,cement..	shājiāng, shíhuī, shuǐní.....	砂浆、石灰、水泥.....
410	motor	diànjī	电机
411	motor for injector	zhùsù jī diànjī	注塑机电机
412	mould clampping unit	suǒ mó dānyuán	锁模单元
413	mould height	mújù gāodù	模具高度
414	mtrl proportion	cáiliào bǐlì	材料比例
415	mtrl too much	cáiliàoguò duō	材料过多
416	mu	mu	亩
417	multiplication	chéngfǎ	乘法
418	multiplication table	chéngfǎ biǎo	乘法表
419	multiplication factor	chéngfǎ yīnshù	乘法因数

420	multiplication sign	chéngfǎ fúhào	乘法符号
421	multiplier	chéng shù	乘数
422	multiply	chéngfǎ	乘法
423	murcury	gǒng	汞
424	nail	dīngzǐ	钉子
425	naked	luǒlù de	裸露的
426	narrow	xiázhǎi de	狭窄的
427	Natural gas	tiānránqì	天然气
428	needs shave	xūyào guāxiāo	需要刮削
429	nickel	niè	镍
430	nitrogen	dànqì	氮气
431	noise	zàoyīn	噪音
432	noodles	miàntiáo	面条
433	not pasted well	zhāntiē bùliáng	粘贴不良
434	nozzle	pēnzǔǐ	喷嘴
435	nut	luómǔ	螺母
436	nut bolt	uómǔ luóshuān	螺母螺栓
437	offshore drilling	hǎishàng zuǎnjǐng	海上钻井
438	oil Paint	yóuqī	油漆
439	oil pump	yóubèng	油泵
440	oil ring	yóu huán	油环
441	oil seal	yóufēng	油封
442	oil tank	yóuxiāng	油箱
443	oil tank size	yóuxiāng chǐcùn	油箱尺寸
444	omlet	jiān dàn juǎn	煎蛋卷
445	on the site	xiànchǎng	现场
446	open apart	dǎkāi fēnkāi	打开分开
447	open mouth 6mm	kāikǒu 6mm	开口6mm
448	opening stroke	dǎkāi xíngchéng	打开行程
449	operation manual	cāozuò shǒucè	操作手册
450	orbital speed	guǐdào sùdù	轨道速度
451	original wheel	yuánzhuāng lún	原装轮
452	other parts	qítā bùjiàn	其他部件
453	outlet	chūkǒu	出口
454	outlet blockage	chūkǒu dǔsè	出口堵塞
455	output	shūchū	输出
456	output issue	shūchū wèntí	输出问题
457	output	shūchū	输出
458	output meter	shūchū biǎo	输出表
459	output transformer	shūchū biànyāqì	输出变压器
460	over load	guòzǎi	过载
461	overload problem	guòzǎi wèntí	过载问题
462	owner	suǒyǒu zhě	所有者
463	oxygen	yǎngqì	氧气
464	P max	P zuìdà	P最大
465	packing box	bāozhuāng hé	包装盒
466	paint	yóuqī	油漆
467	paper knife	cái zhǐ dāo	裁纸刀

468	paper machine	zàozhǐ jī	造纸机
469	paper mill	zàozhǐ chǎng	造纸厂
470	paper money	zhǐbì	纸币
471	paper pulp	zhǐjiāng	纸浆
472	paper weight	zhǐzhāng zhòngliàng	纸张重量
473	parts	língjiàn	零件
474	passport	hùzhào	护照
475	passport making procedure	Hùzhào zhìzuò chéngxù	护照制作程序
476	paste	zhāntiē	粘贴
477	pattern, type	tú'àn, lèixíng	图案，类型
478	pigeon	gezi	鸽子
479	pepper	hújiāo	胡椒
480	petrol	qìyóu	汽油
481	phosphorus	lín	磷
482	pigtail steel pipe	zhū wěibā gāngguǎn	猪尾巴钢管
483	pipe	guǎn	管
484	piston ring	huósāi huán	活塞环
485	piston rod	huósāi gǎn	活塞杆
486	plain rice	báimǐ	白米
487	plastic	sùliào	塑料
488	plate	pánzi	盘子
489	platinum	bó	铂
490	playing card	pūkè pái	扑克牌
491	plier	qiánzi	钳子
492	plug	chātóu	插头
493	plug in	chārù	插入
494	plutonium	bù	钚
495	pointed forceps plier	jiān tóu qián	尖头钳
496	pork	zhūròu	猪肉
497	potassium	jiǎ	钾
498	pound	bàng	磅
499	powder	fěnmò	粉末
500	power	diànyuán	电源
501	power off	Guānbì diànyuán	关闭电源
502	power indicator	diànyuán zhǐshì dēng	电源指示灯
503	power on	diànyuán kāiqǐ	电源开启
504	power switch	diànyuán kāiguān	电源开关
505	pre stressing pressure	yù yìnglì yālì	预应力压力
506	precise device	jīngmì zhuāngzhì	精密装置
507	pressure	yālì	压力
508	pressure gauge	yālì biǎo	压力表
509	pressure of mtrl entering into gun	jìnrù qiāng de wùliào yālì	进入枪的物料压力
510	pressure reducer	jiǎn yā qì	减压器
511	pressure regulator	yālì tiáojié qì	压力调节器
512	print	dǎyìn	打印

513	procedure of solving problem	jiějué wèntí de chéngxù	解决问题的程序
514	product	chǎnpǐn	产品
515	production	shēngchǎn	生产
516	prolong withdraw	yáncháng chèhuí	延长撤回
517	prototype of a machine	jīqì yuánxíng	机器原型
518	proximity switch	jiējìn kāiguān	接近开关
519	PSI pounds per sq inch	PSI bàng/píngfāng yīngcùn	PSI 磅/平方英寸
520	pulley	huálún	滑轮
521	pump	bèng	泵
522	pump function	Bèng gōngnéng	泵功能
523	Push button switch	ànniǔ kāiguān	按钮开关
524	qian (money)	qián	钱
525	Quantity max	zuìdà shùliàng	最大数量
526	radium	léi	镭
527	rate of exchange	huìlǜ	汇率
528	raw materials	yuáncáiliào	原材料
529	reading	dúshù	读数
530	reading error	du qǔ cuòwù	读取错误
531	reading recorder	dúshù lùyīnjī	读数录音机
532	red engine oil	hóngsè jīyóu	红色机油
533	reebok	ruì bù	锐步
534	refer	cānkǎo	参考
535	remarks	bèizhù	备注
536	revert	huīfù	恢复
537	revolution	xuánzhuǎn	旋转
538	revolution speed	zhuǎnsù	转速
539	revolver	zuǒlún shǒuqiāng	左轮手枪
540	revolving chair	xuán zhuàn yǐ	旋转椅
541	rice pulao	yìndù xiāng fàn	印度香饭
542	RMB	rénmínbì	人民币
543	roasted chicken	kǎo jī	烤鸡
544	rod, pole	gān	杆
545	roll	gǔndòng	滚动
546	roll on	gǔndòng	滚动
547	rolling friction	gǔndòng mócā	滚动摩擦
548	rotation	xuánzhuǎn	旋转
549	roti, paratha	yìndù jiānbǐng,	印度煎饼
550	rough	cū mó	粗磨
551	round file	yuán cuò	圆锉
552	rpm 2000	zhuǎnsù 2000	转速 2000
553	rub, scrub	mócā, cāxǐ	摩擦，擦洗
554	rubber	xiàngjiāo	橡胶
555	rubber band	Xiàngpí j ī n	橡皮筋
556	rubber tire	xiàngjiāo lúntāi	橡胶轮胎
557	rubbing, friction	mócā	摩擦
558	ruling	kèdù xiàn	刻度线
559	rusting	shēng xiù	生锈

560	safety door system	ānquánmén xìtǒng	安全门系统
561	safety rod	ānquán gān	安全杆
562	safety valve	ānquán fá	安全阀
563	salty	xián de	咸的
564	sample, specimen	yàngpǐn, biāoběn	样品，标本
565	sand casting	shāxíng zhùzào	砂型铸造
566	sand model	shāxíng móxíng	砂型模型
567	sand stone	shā shí	砂石
568	sand, grit	shā, shāli	砂，砂砾
569	sand oil	shāxíng yóu	砂型油
570	scale	chèng	秤
571	scheme of site	chǎngdì guīhuà tú	场地规划图
572	scissors	jiǎndāo	剪刀
573	screw	luósī	螺丝
574	screw diameter	luósī zhíjìng	螺丝直径
575	screw driver	luósīdāo	螺丝刀
576	screw driver line type	xiàn xíng luósīdāo	线型螺丝刀
577	screw driver star	xīng xíng luósīdāo	星型螺丝刀
578	screw gauge	luósī guī	螺丝规
579	screw l/d ratio	luósī chǎng jìng bǐ	螺丝长径比
580	screw thread	luówén	螺纹
581	screw, screw nail	luósī, luósīdīng	螺丝，螺丝钉
582	sealing glue	mìfēng jiāo	密封胶
583	selective switch	xuǎnzé kāiguān	选择开关
584	series, pattern	xìliè, tú'àn	系列，图案
585	setting	shè dìng	设定
586	shaft, axle ,rod	zhóu, chēzhóu, gān	轴，车轴,杆
587	shaving	tì xū	剃须
588	shichi	shí chí	石池
589	shicun	shícūn	石村
590	shijin	shíjīn	石津
591	shili	shí lǐ	石里
592	shizhang	shí zhāng	石张
593	shoe factory	xié chǎng	鞋厂
594	shoe industry	xié yè	鞋业
595	shoe pad	xiédiàn	鞋垫
596	shoe pattern	xié wén	鞋纹
597	short circuit	duǎnlù	短路
598	short ton	duǎn dùn	短吨
599	shrink	shōusuō	收缩
600	silicon	guī	硅
601	silver	Yín	银
602	site	xiànchǎng	现场
603	six angled spanner rod type	liùjiǎo bǎnshǒu gān shì	六角扳手杆式
604	sizing mtrl	Ji ā ng liào	浆料
605	smog	yānwù	烟雾
606	smooth	guānghuá	光滑

607	socket	tào tǒng	套筒
608	sodium	nà	钠
609	solder	hànliào	焊料
610	soldering fluid	hàn yè	焊液
611	sole	xiédǐ	鞋底
612	solve problem	jiějué wèntí	解决问题
613	sour	suān	酸
614	spanner	bǎnshǒu	扳手
615	spare parts	bèijiàn	备件
616	spare parts and specifications	bèijiàn jí guīgé	备件及规格
617	spark	huǒhuā	火花
618	specially made parts	tèzhì jiàn	特制件
619	specifications	guīgé	规格
620	speed of mtrl entry	jìn liào sùdù	进料速度
621	speed revolution	zhuǎnsù	转速
622	speedometer	sùdù jì	速度计
623	sperm	jīngzǐ	精子
624	spinning of plate	bǎn de xuánzhuǎn	板的旋转
625	spiral drill	luóxuán zuān	螺旋钻
626	spiral shell	luó ké	螺壳
627	squire file	fāng cuò	方锉
628	start	qǐdòng	启动
629	start machine	qǐdòng jīqì	启动机器
630	start work	kāishǐ gōngzuò	开始工作
631	steel	gāng	钢
632	stenographer	sùjì yuán	速记员
633	sticky	zhān chóu de	粘稠的
634	stop water	tíng shuǐ	停水
635	suancai cuyu	suāncài cù yú	酸菜醋鱼
636	sulfur	liúhuáng	硫磺
637	sulfuric acid	liúsuān	硫酸
638	supply line	gòngjǐ guǎnxiàn	供给管线
639	sweet	tián de	甜的
640	switch	kāiguān	开关
641	Switching between	Qiēhuàn	切换
642	switch board	pèi diàn bǎn	配电板
643	switch off engine	Guān diào yǐnqíng	关掉引擎
644	switch off	guānbì	关闭
645	switch off lights	Guān dēng	关灯
646	switch on	dǎkāi	打开
647	switch on lights	kāidēng	开灯
648	switch over	kāiguānguò	开关过
649	table	biǎo	表
650	table of conversion	huànsuàn biǎo	换算表
651	take out	qǔchū	取出
652	tank	yóuxiāng	油箱

653	Tank	Tǎnkè	坦克
654	tape	jiāodài	胶带
655	taxy	huáchē	滑车
656	technological process	gōngyì liúchéng	工艺流程
657	process	gōngyì liúchéng	流程
658	teeth	chǐshǔ	齿数
659	temp control section	wēn kòng duàn	温控段
660	temp reached	dádào wēndù	达到温度
661	tempo of production	shēngchǎn jiépāi	生产节拍
662	test	cèshì	测试
663	Testing machine	Shìyàn jī	试验机
664	tester	cèshì yí	测试仪
665	thermocontroller	wēn kòng qì	温控器
666	thick	hòu	厚
667	thickness	hòudù	厚度
668	thin	báo	薄
669	thread	Xiàchéng shù	线程数
670	thread of a screw	luówén	螺纹
671	threading tool	gōng sī gōngjù	攻丝工具
672	three dimentional	sānwéi	三维
673	tight	jǐn	紧
674	time of injection statute prolonging	zhùshè shíjiān yáncháng	注射时间延长
675	time of most mtrl entering	dà duōshù cáiliào jìnrù shíjiān	大多数材料进入时间
676	tin	guǎn	罐
677	to file	cuò	锉
678	to grip with plier	qián jiā	钳夹
679	tomato egg soup	fānqié jīdàn tāng	番茄鸡蛋汤
680	ton	dūn	吨
681	too long	tài zhǎng	太长
682	tool	gōngjù	工具
683	tool box	gōngjù xiāng	工具箱
684	trouble shooting	gùzhàng páichú	故障排除
685	turning speed	zhuǎnsù	转速
686	UK bushel	yīngzhì púshì'ěr	英制蒲式耳
687	ultrasonic sensor	chāoshēngbō chuángǎnqì	超声波传感器
688	under emergency stop	jǐnjí tíngzhǐ	紧急停止
689	unit of measurement	jìliàng dānwèi	计量单位
690	units of capacity	róngliàng dānwèi	容量单位
691	unmatched	bù pǐpèi	不匹配
692	uranium	yóu	铀
693	US barrel	měizhì tǒng	美制桶
694	US bushel	měizhì púshì'ěr	美制蒲式耳
695	US gallon	měizhì jiālún	美制加仑
696	vaccume	zhēnkōng	真空
697	vaccume oil tank size	zhēnkōng yóuxiāng chǐcùn	真空油箱尺寸

698	vaccume pressure	zhēnkōng yālì	真空压力
699	vaccume time	zhēn kòng shíjiān	真空时间
700	Valve	fámén	阀门
701	vernier callipers	yóubiāokǎchǐ	游标卡尺
702	visa	wéi sà kǎ	维萨卡
703	VIVA mark	VIVA biāoji	VIVA 标记
704	volt	fútè	伏特
705	volt meter	diànyā biǎo	电压表
706	voltage	diànyā	电压
707	voltage meter	diànyā biǎo	电压表
708	waist 32"	yāowéi 32 yīngcùn	腰围 32 英寸
709	wash room	qīngxǐ fángjiān	清洗房间
710	washer	xǐyījī	洗衣机
711	waste like dust	huīchén děng fèiwù	灰尘等废物
712	water level	shuǐwèi	水位
713	water pressure	shuǐ yā	水压
714	water rinse	shuǐ chōngxǐ	水冲洗
715	watt	wǎtè	瓦特
716	weight	zhòngliàng	重量
717	weld line	róngjiē xiàn	熔接线
718	weld,	hàn fèng	焊缝
719	welding	hànjiē	焊接
720	welding rod	hàntiáo	焊条
721	welding torch	hànqiāng	焊枪
722	welding, soldering	hànjiē, qiān hàn	焊接, 钎焊
723	wheel	chēlún	车轮
724	wheel base	lúngǔ dǐzuò	轮毂底座
725	while taking out	qǔchū shí	取出时
726	width setting	kuāndù shè dìng	宽度设定
727	wire	diànxiàn	电线
728	wooden scale	mù chéng	木秤
729	work station	gōngzuòzhàn	工作站
730	wrench	bǎnshǒu	扳手
731	write repair plan	zhuànxǐ wéixiū jìhuà	撰写维修计划
732	yard	gōngchǎng	工厂
733	yingchi	yǐngchí	英尺
734	yingcun	yǐng cūn	英寸
735	zinc	xīn héjīn	锌合金
736	zmeva	kùnhuò	困惑
737	wheel	chēlún	车轮
738	wheel base	lúngǔ dǐzuò	轮毂底座
739	while taking out	qǔchū shí	取出时
740	width setting	kuāndù shè dìng	宽度设定
741	wire	diànxiàn	电线

742	wooden scale	mù chéng	木秤
743	work station	gōngzuòzhàn	工作站
744	wrench	bǎnshǒu	扳手
745	write repair plan	zhuànxǐe wéixiū jìhuà	撰写维修计划
745	yard	gōngchǎng	工厂
746	yingchi	yīngchǐ	英尺
747	yingcun	yǐng cūn	影村
748	zinc	xīn héjīn	锌合金
749	zmeva	zmeva	兹梅娃 Zī méi wá
750	try	shìyòng	试用
751	examine	jiǎnchá	检查
752	on line	zàixiàn	在线
753	plug out	bá chū	拔出
754	reconnect	chóngxīn liánjiē	重新连接
755	insert	chārù	插入
756	power cable	diànyuán xiàn	电源线
757	restart	chóngqǐ	重启
758	no response	wú fǎnyìng	无反应
759	stop functioning	tíngzhǐ yùnxíng	停止运行
760	refer	cānkǎo	参考
761	shows error	xiǎnshì cuòwù	显示错误
762	name of project	xiàngmù míngchēng	项目名称
763	lighting	zhàomíng	照明
764	in common use	chángyòng	常用
765	certificate	zhèngshū	证书
766	total calculated	zǒngjì	总计
767	on time	ànsí	按时
768	performance excellent	xìngnéng yōuliáng	性能优良
769	quality reliable	zhìliàng kěkào	质量可靠
770	technical parameter test	jìshù cānshù cèshì	技术参数测试
771	GE brand	GE pǐnpái	GE品牌
772	satisfy demand	mǎnzú yāoqiú	满足要求
773	good results	xiàoguǒ liánghǎo	效果良好
774	contract	hétóng	合同
775	first and second both sides	yī, èr, sānfāng	一、二、三方
776	two copies	liǎng fèn	两份

777	serial number	xùliè hào	序列号
778	place an order for purchase	xià dìngdān cǎigòu	下订单采购
779	reach an agreement	dáchéng xiéyì	达成协议
780	unit	dānwèi	单位
781	quantity	shùliàng	数量
782	unit price	dānjià	单价
783	amount	jīn'é	金额
784	appendix	fùjiàn	附件
785	total amount	zǒng jīn'é	总金额
786	period of delivery of goods	jiāo huò qī	交货期
787	advanced money	yùfùkuǎn	预付款
788	mode of payment	fùkuǎn fāngshì	付款方式
789	pay	fùkuǎn	付款
790	material reaches to site	cáiliào dào chǎng	材料到场
791	remaining amount	yú'é	余额
792	pay and clear	fù kuǎn jiésuàn	付款结算
793	invite tender	zhāobiāo	招标
794	brand new	quánxīn	全新
795	latest technology	zuìxīn jìshù	最新技术
796	drawback	tuìhuàn huò	退换货
797	packing material	bāozhuāng cáiliào	包装材料
798	loading unloading	zhuāngxiè	装卸
799	miscellaneous expenditure	záfèi	杂费
800	liquid	yètǐ	液体
801	solid	gùtǐ	固体
802	gas	qìtǐ	气体
803	technical training	jìshù péixùn	技术培训
804	technology transfer	jìshù zhuǎnràng	技术转让
805	useful tips	shíyòng jìqiǎo	实用技巧
806	manual	shǒucè	手册
807	sensitive part	mǐngǎn bùjiàn	敏感部件
808	ask to send	yāoqiú fā huò	要求发货
809	do fast	kuàisù fā huò	快速发货
810	quantity not up to standard	shùliàng bù hégé	数量不合格
811	loss incurred	fāshēng sǔnshī	发生损失
812	claim damage	suǒpéi	索赔

813	invoice	fāpiào	发票
814	affirm by signing and affixing seal	qiānzì gài zhāng quèrèn	签字盖章确认
815	component	bùjiàn	部件
816	free of cost	miǎnfèi	免费
817	repair	wéixiū	维修
818	equipment maintenance	shèbèi wéihù	设备维护
819	initial checking	chū jiǎn	初检
820	final test	zuìzhōng cèshì	最终测试
821	telegraphic transfer	diànhuì	电汇
822	advance payment	yùfù kuǎn	预付款
823	fax	chuánzhēn	传真
824	written document	shūmiàn wénjiàn	书面文件
825	delay	yánwù	延误
826	risky	yǒu fēngxiǎn	有风险
827	be careful	xiǎoxīn	小心
828	guarantee card	bǎoxiū kǎ	保修卡
829	warranty period	bǎoxiū qī	保修期
830	unavoidable	bùkě bìmiǎn de	不可避免的
831	operate	cāozuò	操作
832	repair and change	wéixiū hé gēnghuàn	维修和更换
833	negligency	shūhū	疏忽
834	misuse	wù yòng	误用
835	wrong functioning	gōngnéng cuòwù	功能错误
836	hand over	yíjiāo	移交
837	credit card	xìnyòngkǎ	信用卡

Concluding Remarks

The *‘Tourism and Industrial Interpreting: A Practical Guide for Chinese-Speaking Professionals in India’* serves as a comprehensive and practical resource for professionals working in cross-cultural settings between China and India. By combining detailed insights into India’s geography, history, culture, economy, and tourism with practical guidance for tourist guides and industrial interpreters, this handbook addresses the diverse challenges and opportunities that arise in these roles.

Key Highlights of the Handbook

1. Comprehensive Overview of India: Part I provides a thorough understanding of India’s social, cultural, and political landscape, laying the groundwork for effective interaction with local communities and clients.
2. Tourism-Focused Insights: Part II is an invaluable resource for understanding India’s famous landmarks and providing meaningful commentary to Chinese tourists, enriched with historical and cultural context.
3. Practical Guide Training: Part III offers theoretical principles and actionable tips for tour guides, enabling them to meet the high expectations of Chinese tourists while managing group dynamics and navigating cultural nuances.
4. Industrial Interpretation Skills: Part IV delves into the unique challenges faced by industrial interpreters, emphasizing the importance of technical vocabulary, communication skills, and professionalism in cross-border industrial collaboration.

Empowering Cross-Cultural Professionals

This handbook bridges the cultural and linguistic gap, equipping Chinese tourist guides and industrial interpreters with the tools necessary to succeed in India’s vibrant, dynamic environment. By fostering cultural sensitivity, clear communication, and professionalism, it enhances both the tourist experience and industrial collaboration.

Whether you are leading a group through the bustling streets of Delhi or facilitating technical discussions between Chinese engineers and Indian technicians, this handbook is your trusted companion. It empowers you to build rapport, navigate challenges, and excel in your role, contributing to stronger ties between China and India.

The study material is selected from various sources. It provides a rich linguistic source, however the facts may need updation due to fast changing world. Readers are required to validate the facts by updation and cross referencing.

In conclusion, the *‘Tourism and Industrial Interpreting: A Practical Guide for Chinese-Speaking Professionals in India’* is not just a guidebook—it is a gateway to meaningful cultural exchange, professional excellence, and enhanced mutual understanding.

References

1. AI Tools -ChatGPT, Bard, Gemini
2. Wikipedia
3. Precis
4. Chinese websites
5. Indian Tourism websites
6. Google Translate
7. Pathshala : Subject Tour and Hospitality; Tour Guiding Essentials
8. Handbook for Tour Guides by Prof Nimit Chowdhary

